

Durham E-Theses

English spelling in the seventeenth century : a study of the nature of standardisation as seen through the MS and printed versions of the Duke of Newcastle's 'A New Method ...'.

Margaret J-M. Soenmez

How to cite:

Soenmez, Margaret J-M. (1993) English spelling in the seventeenth century : a study of the nature of standardisation as seen through the MS and printed versions of the Duke of Newcastle's 'A New Method ...'. Doctoral thesis, Durham University.

Use policy

The full-text may be used and/or reproduced, and given to third parties in any format or medium, without prior permission or charge, for personal research or study, educational, or not-for-profit purposes provided that:

- a full bibliographic reference is made to the original source
- a <https://etheses.durham.ac.uk/id/eprint/999/> is made to the metadata record in Durham E-Theses
- the full-text is not changed in any way

The full-text must not be sold in any format or medium without the formal permission of the copyright holders.

Please consult the [full Durham E-Theses policy](#) for further details.

The copyright of this thesis rests with the author.
No quotation from it should be published without
his prior written consent and information derived
from it should be acknowledged.

English Spelling in the Seventeenth Century

(Volume Two of Two Volumes)

by

Margaret J-M Sönmez

A Thesis submitted in partial fulfilment
of the requirements for the degree of
Doctor of Philosophy

School of English and Linguistics

The University of Durham
1993


- 4 FEB 1994

Appendix C

Transcriptions of PwV21 and PwV22

Editing principles

The texts of PwV21 and PwV22 are presented here with as little alteration as possible. Deleted words appear in italics and interlinear additions are placed in superscript in the appropriate place, wherever that can be gauged. In this transcription there is only one level of writing per line, whether that is on the line or above it. In the manuscript most superscript additions occur directly above written lines, whereas in this copy they are above and to the right of the words on top of which they are written in MS.

Marginal comments and additions have been placed in separate paragraphs within curly brackets. Where letters or words have had to be reconstructed they appear in square brackets, as do other editorial comments concerning the graphic or material parts of the text; these include folio references, descriptions of the hand, indications of omitted diagrams. Footnotes are used for additional, extra-textual information.

The punctuation has been reproduced with no attempts to modernise it. An equals sign is used to indicate the double-lined hyphen that is frequently used in the MSS; single-lined hyphens indicate single-lined hyphens in the MSS. Reproduction of the MSS capitalisation is not claimed to be perfectly accurate. Variation in the height of letters and in the forms of some letters means that these factors cannot always be used as reliable guides. In spite of this and with the exception of the letter *i*²⁰⁹, it was nevertheless possible to identify a letter as majuscule or miniscule in most of the cases. Similarly, variation in the use of ⟨u⟩ and ⟨v⟩ may not be perfectly represented here, due to the intermediate forms of many of the MS instances. All cases of long *s* have been transcribed as ⟨s⟩.

Lineation is indicated but, for reasons of space, not reproduced. The line ends are indicated by short vertical lines. On many occasions, and especially in the earlier pages of PwV21, horizontal lines are used as liner fillers. These

²⁰⁹ See Chapter 5, section on capitalisation.

have been transcribed as long dashes. In F a line of small crosses is sometimes used instead of these horizontal lines, and these have been transcribed as such. Abbreviations, ampersand, diacritics (macrons) and word division are retained, but the size of spacing between words is a product of the printing and not related to the spacing in the MSS. A caret is indicated only where such a mark is to be found in the MSS. Trefoils and non—referential asterisks are not transcribed. In the MSS sections of text are more often separated by long rules than by the space followed by indentation that is now common for paragraphing. The rules have not been reproduced, a blank line being left between these sections instead. On the rare occasions where the MSS showed indented paragraphs these have been reproduced.

PwV21

This is to followe the laste thinge in this Booke a bouthe working with the Cavatsane [...].

[pp 1, 2 and part of 3^r, which provide a continuation of the text from the last page of PwV21, are to be found at the end of this transcription, before the transcription of PwV22]

[f.3^r. Fair Hand, not cancelled] This is the Epitomey of the New | Methood And Rare Invention of Makinge | or Dressing of Horses, working | according to Nature And Putting | Nature In order By Sutle Arte, | neuer yett founde out but by His | Excellency the Marquis of Newcastle |

[f.3^v. Cramped Hand. cancelled]

Firste Instructions for a younge or Ignorante | Horse |

For a younge or Ignorante Horse, att firste you | muste nott tie the Cavatzane my waye to the | Poñell, butt Ride with the Cavatzane the olde | waye untill the Horse goes frelye forwarde both | vppoñ his trot, & Gallope ^Λin Large & Narowe ^Λcircles stopps | and goes back, Indiferente well & that you finde | hee is pretye firme off the Hande — & then tie | the Cavatzane my waye to the Poñell for before | hee bee a litle thus Instructed tienge the Cavatzane | Rayne to the poñell, maye bee Verye dangerous, | affter that litle Instructions, nott att all | dangerous butt off the Greateste use thatt anye | thinge Cañ bee off, for dressinge Horses Iñ | the manege. ——— |

You muste fitt your Horse with a Bitt | proper for hiñ thatt Is a Cañoñ or a Scatch | a La Pignotell, & Branches[?] a La Counetable, | & the same Bitt I give my Horse att the | firste I will alwayes Ride hiñ with Itt | For Itt Is a Great follye with their pistoll | Cañoñs, nott to fitt a Horse for two yeares | & then to Bitt hiñ vpp,— Butt I will alwayes | Bitt, and fitt my Horse att the firste which | hee shoulde alwayes weare or such an other | when thatts broke or was warne Iñ peeces. |

The Firste Booke.

[This title occurs twice in the MS as it does here.]

[f.4^r Fair hand]

The Firste Booke

There is no man can make or Dress a Horse perfectly | Thatt doth not Exactly understand all y^e Naturall | Paces, & Actions of A Horses leggs In Every one of | Them & all y^e Actions of his legges made by Arte, | And this for a generall Rule, Arte muste neuer bee | A gaineste nature, but to follow Nature, & to sette | Her in order,— Butt firste of y^e naturall Paces that | Heere follows. xxxxxxxxxx|

1 Firste A Horse vpon his walke y^e Action of his Legges | In that motion, is two Leggs in y^e Ayre, & two Legges ——— | vppon y^e Ground, att y^e same time, moued Cross, fore | Legg, & hinder Legg, Cross, w^{ch} is y^e motion of a slow | Trote. |

2 Secondly a trot, y^e Action of his legges, in that motion | Is two Leggs in y^e Ayre, & two Legges vppon y^e ground | Att y^e same time moued Cross, fore Legg, & hinder Legg, | Cross, wh is y^e motion of a swifter walke, for ——— | A walke & a Trott y^e motion of y^e Horses leggs are | All one, wh his Leggs makes Cross, two in y^e Ayre | Cross, & two vppon y^e Ground cross, at y^e same time, | Fore Legg, & hinder Legg cross, & Euery remoue changes | His legges, Cross, as those that weare in the Ayre |

[f.4^v] Cross are now sett Downe, & those that weare vppon the ground cross, are now Pulld vpp, in y^e Ayre ——— | Cross, and this is the Juste motion of a Horses Leggs | In A Trott. xxxxxxxxxx|

3 Thirdly for an Amble, hee remoues both his Leggs ——— | off a side, as for Exsample take y^e farr side hee | Remoues his fore Legg, & his hinder Legg, of y^e same | Side at one time, whilst y^e other two Leggs of y^e narr | side standes still, & when those Leggs are vppon y^e | Ground, wh hee firste remoued, at y^e same time | they are vppon y^e ground, y^e other side wh is y^e narr | side remoues, fore legg, & hinder legg, on that side, | And y^e other Leggs of y^e farr side standes still, ——— | thus an Amble remoues both his Leggs of a side, | And Euery Remoue Changes Sides, two of a side

in | the Ayre; & two vppon y^e ground, at y^e same time, | And this is A
perfecte Amble; |

4 Forthly A Gallope is an other motion, for in A | Gallope hee may
Leade wth wh fore legg you please, | But then y^e hinder legg of y^e same
side muste follow | Itt, I meane when hee gallopes strayte forwards ——— |
And then this is A perfecte Gallope, but to | vnderstand what is meante by
his fore | Legg leading |

[f.5^r] And his hinder ^{legge} on y^e same side following, that fore | Legg is thus,
— As for Exsample if y^e farr fore legg | Leade, by that fore legg Leading, is
meante that fore | Legg muste bee before y^e other fore legg alwayes & | the
hinder Legg to follow itt on y^e same side, w^{ch} | Hinder Legg muste alwayes
bee before y^e other hinder | legg, & this is A true Gallope, — Butt now to
——— | Shew you y^e motion of a gallope is thus, y^e Horse | Liftes both his
fore Leggs vpp att a time in that | Action, that I told you, wh is one Legg
before an other, | And as his fore Leggs are falling, I say before they touch
| the ground his hinder Leggs in that posture I formerly | told you, followes
his fore Leggs, being once all in y^e Ayre | Att one time, for as his fore
Leggs are falling, his hinder | Leggs moues at y^e same time, & then hee is
all in the | Ayre, for how is it possible Else as a Horse is ——— | Runinge
that hee should Spring forward twice [illeg. deleted] His length, were not
y^e motion of a Gallope A Leape | Forward, & this Discription is moste
true both in his | Motion & Posture of a Horses Leggs, when hee ——— |
Gallopes — But a softe & Low gallope, in that it is | Hardly perceued,
though it bee true, but in runing | Itt is Easeyly perceued where y^e motion
is more violante | For there it is playne you shall see all his fore feete | In
y^e Ayre at one time, for runing is butt a swifte | Gallope |

[f.5^v] Gallope for y^e motion & posture of his Leggs are all | one,— But you
muste remember that galloping vppon | Circles y^e Horse alwayes oughte to
Leade wth is two Leggs | w^{thin} y^e turne, fore Legg, & hinder Legg w^{thin}
y^e turne | And this is A true Gallope,xxxxxxxxx|

5 For A Horse when hee runs y^e motion hee makes | And y^e action of
his Leggs, are all one, wth a gallope | only a swifter motion, wh you may

Call a Swift | Gallope. & a gallope a slow runinge, & this is the | truth of
the motion of Runinge ——— |xxxxxxxxxxxx|

Now I muste tell you of that wh Euery body speakes of And no body tells
what it is, for they say a horse may | Gallope wth y^e wrong legg before, wh
is Imposible, for | Iff y^e hinder legg of y^e same side followes it is a righte |
Gallope, so that rather it is y^e wrong Legg behinde, but | that wh they call
y^e wrong Legg before is thus, a true | Gallope, that legg wh Leades before;
y^e hinder legg of | the same side muste follow itt, & as y^e horse falls wth |
His two fore Legges, his hinder legges followes them, before | His fore Legges
touches y^e Ground, so that att that | very time all y^e horses fowre Leggs
are in y^e Ayre, so | that it is a Leape forward, Now that wh they | Call y^e
wrong legg before is this, when y^e horse is ——— | Vppon y^e motion vppon
y^e swiftnes of a Gallope ——— |

[f.6^r] Hee changes his Legges Crose wh is y^e action of A | Trott, wh is cross,
two Legges in y^e Ayre & two vppon | the Ground, wh is so contrary to
A gallope as then | Itt is such a cross motion, as makes y^e horse ready |
To fall, & this is one way of that wh they call | the wrong Legg before,—
An other way is this, that when y^e horse is vppon y^e Action of a Gallope,
as I told | you before, vppon y^e swiftnes of a gallope, where hee | Should
keepe alwayes two Leggs of a side forward, | Now hee changes sides Euery
time, fore Legg and | Hinder Legg, of a side & changing sides Euery time |
that is y^e action of an Amble wh is two leggs of | A side in y^e Ayre, & two
leggs of y^e other side vppon | the ground, at y^e same time, & Changing
sides euery | Time this action of an Amble vppon y^e swiftnes ——— | of a
gallope Differes so much from y^e action of A | Gallope as it makes y^e horse
ready to fall, & these | Two y^e-actions of a trott, & y^e action of an Amble
——— | Vppon y^e swiftnes of a gallope, is that wh their | Ignorance calles
y^e wrong Legg before, it is true | that though a horse Doe gallope right,
wh is | His hinder Legg to follow his fore Legg on y^e same | side, yett if hee
bee not acoustomed to that side | Hee will gallope neyther so nimbley, nor
so faste, | As wth that side hee is acoustomed to Leade ——— | wthhall, for
it is juste as a Lefte handed man | or |

[f.6^v] or a righte handed man, Coustome hath so great | A power, both ouer
man & beaste, & Indeed | ouer Euery thing Else:— xxxxxxxxxxxx |

For A Trott, |

A trot is y^e foundation of a gallope, y^e reson is ——— | A trot being Cross,
& a gallope, both of a side ——— | When you trot him faste, beyond y^e
power of A | Trott it forces him when his Inward fore Legg is | vpp to sett
Doune his outward hinder Legg so ——— | suddenly, as to make his Inward
hinder Legg to | Follow his inward fore Legg, wh is a true gallope | And
thus a trot is y^e foundation of a gallope, |

A Gallope |

A Gallope is y^e foundation of terra, terra, for y^e action | of his Leggs are
all one, Leading wth y^e fore Legg w^{thin} y^e | Turne, & following that Legg
wth his hinder Legg w^{thin} | The turne, only, you stay him a litle more of
y^e hand | In Terra, Terra, that hee may goe A time, |

An Amble, wh I would haue banishte y^e manege, being a Shuffling | Action,
for hee remoues both his Leggs of a side, & changes | sides Euery remoue,
— wh is so contrary to y^e manege as | Can bee, butt if you make him to
gallope, — where vppon | An Amble you muste stay him vppon y^e hand,
to | Take his Gallope, xxxxxxxxxxxx|

[f.7^r] For the Artefitiall Motions of | A Horses Leggs Are Thus ——— |

1 Firste for Terra, Terra, y^e Horse alwayes leades wth | the Leggs w^{thin}
y^e turne, like a gallope, his two fore | legges vppe, & as they are falling his
two hinder leggs | Followes, & at that time all his foure leggs are | In y^e
Ayre, so that it is a Leape forward, y^e same | vppon Demy Voltaes, for it
is all but y^e Action | of Terra, Terra, xxxxxxxxxxxx|

2: Secondly for Coruetts, A Demy Ayre, A Groupado, ——— | A
Balatado, or a Caprioll, Is All but A Leape ——— | Vppward, for all his
foure Leggs Are In the Ayre, | Both as his fore partes are falling & as his
——— | Fore partes goes vpp, & there are no more ——— | Artefitiall

motions then these two, Terra, | Terra, And these Ayres Laste mentioned
xxxxxxxxxx|

Heere Endes the True Discription | of all the Naturall motions, and all | the
Arteftiall motions A Horse | Makes, or A Horse Can Make. |

[f.7^v]

How A Man should Sitt | Perfectly A Horse Backe |

Before hee mountes his Horse hee muste see ——— | Euery thinge in order,
aboute y^e horse, wh is done | In an Instante, w^thout peeringe, & priinge
a boutte | Euery thinge, as they say pour fayre Landtandew [*pour faire
l'entendu?*] | then when hee is in y^e sadle, for I suppose moste | Men knowe
how to gett vpp; hee muste sitt doune | In y^e sadle vpon his twist, & not
of his Buttockes | though moste thinke nature made those to sitt of, | Butt
not a horse-backe, — will then being placet | Vppon his twist, in y^e midle
of y^e sadle. aduancing | Towardes y^e Poñell of y^e sadle, as much as hee
can, | leauing a handfull space betweene his hinder parts | And y^e cantle,
or Larson of y^e sadle, his Legges strayte | Doune, as if hee were a foote,
his knees & thighs | Turned Inwardes, to y^e sadle, holding both of them
——— | Faste as if they weare glewed to y^e sadle, for a horse= | man, hath
no other thinge but those two, w^th y^e ——— | Counterpoise of his body,
to keepe him a Horse backe | His feete planted firmly Vppon y^e sturropps,
his | Heeles a litle lower then his toes, that y^e End of | His toes may Pass y^e
sturropps halfe an Inch or | A Litle more, — & Stiff in y^e hañs or Jarett,
his Leggs Nott to farr from y^e horse sides, nor to neere, that | Is not to
touch them, for helps that I will shew ——— | Hereafter, y^e raynes of y^e
bridle in y^e Lefte hand, his | Litle finger to seperatt y^e raynes, grasping y^e
reste | In his hand, w^th his thumbe vppon raynes his | Arme |

[f.8^r] Arme bente close to his body but not constraynd his | Bridle hand some
three fingers a boue y^e Poñell, & some | Two fingers before y^e Poñell, that
y^e Poñell may not | Hinder y^e raynes in their workeing, & Juste ouer the |
Necke of y^e horse, In y^e right hand a whistleing Rodd | Nott to Longe like
an Angle Rodd, nor to shorte like | A Poyson, but if Eyther shorte. for
ther are many | Gracefull helps, w^th a shorte Rodd, that a Long ——— |

Rodd will not admitt of. you muste holde itt wth a litle | of that End
 beyond yo^r hand, not only to make much | of yo^r horse wth itt, but to
 hold it y^e faster, — the | Righte hand where y^e Rodd is, a litle before
 your | Bridle hand, y^e right Arme a litle Looser, then yo^r Lefte Arme but
 not to farr from yo^r body, y^e poynte | of y^e Rodd bending a litle Inwards,
 yo^r breaste out, ——— | Lookeing a Litle Gaye, & pleasantley, but not
 laughing | Lookeing directly betweene y^e Horses Eares, when ——— | Hee
 goes forward, I doe not meane you should bee ——— | Stiff like a stake,
 or like a statue a horse backe | Butt much other wise, that is free, and
 wthhall the | Liberty In y^e World as y^e french man sayes In dancinge | A la
 neglegence, & so I would haue a man a horse backe | En Caualleir, and not
 formall, for that shewes A ——— | Scoller, more then a master, & I neuer
 sawe any | Formallity but my thaught ^{itt} *hee* Lookte something | of y^e
 simple, & foolish, y^e seate is so much as you ——— | shall see hereafter,
 as it is y^e only thinge that | Makes A horse goe perfectly, y^e very maner of
 | sitting |

[f.8^v] Sitting, beyond all other helps, therefore Dispise | Itt not, for I Dare
 boldly say that is not | Belle Home De Cheuall, shall neuer bee Bon |
 Home De Cheuall, for y^e raynes both of y^e bridle | And the Cauatzaine I
will ^{haue} shewde *hereafter* you, that | w^{ch} was neuer yett knowne before
 xxxxxxxxxxx|

So Much for the Seate of | The Cauallier xxxxxxxxxxx|

[f.9^r] How to worke Horses truely as they | Aughte — And firste the Seuerall
 thinges | That tying the cauatzaïne Rayne wthhin | the turne to the Poñell
 is good for, |

It is good to trot him, & Gallope him, vppon Larg Circles, | As also
 narrower Duñ piste, or rather his Croupe out, | Legg, & rayne on y^e Inside
 as also y^e rayne of y^e bridle | on y^e Inside, & to helpe wth y^e outward
 rayne of y^e bridle | to, this putts him vppon y^e sholders, for itt pulls doune
 | His heade, & therefore putts him vppon y^e Apewie, ——— | Pulls In
 his outward sholder, & narrowes him before, | And therefore — inLarges
 him behinde & workes & suples | His sholders, Extreamly, but his croupe

is Loste, ——— | Strayghtend w^thin y^e turne, & at Liberty w^thout the |
Turne, hee gallopes thus righte Leading w^th his fore | Legg w^thin y^e turne,
& so following that fore legg w^th | His hinder ^leggs w^thin y^e turne, w^ch is a
right Gallope, and | These benefitts Comes of tieing y^e Inward Cauatzaine |
Rayne, to y^e Poñell my way, w^th these helps Legg ——— | And rayne of
a side, w^ch suples & workes his sholders | Itt is y^e beste Lesson for a young,
or Ignorante ——— | Horse that Can bee, xxxxxxxxx|

[uncancelled]

[diagrams]

A Trott for y^e right & Lefte hand |

A Gallope for y^e right & lefte hand

[notes above adjacent diagrams]

[f.9^v] An other benefitt of Tieing the Inward | Cauatziane Rayne to the poñell
my way |

[cancelled] Iff you tie itt on the Righte hand, put his head | To y^e piller, & goe
on y^e Lefte hand, & helpe thus | Legg, & rayne of a side, putting out his
Croupe to y^e | Lefte hand, but though you goe on y^e Lefte hand ——— |
The horses sholders are supled & wraughte for the | Righte hand, — And
so if you tie, y^e Lefte Cauatzaine | Rayne to y^e Poñell, his head to y^e piller,
Legg & rayne | on the Same side, though you goe on y^e righte hand ——— |
And his Croupe out, on y^e right hand, yett y^e horses | Sholders are supled
& wraughte for y^e Lefte hand | this way workes & Suples a horses sholders
Extreamly | Butt his Croupe is Loste, because Legg & rayne ——— | Is of
A side, — this is vppon a walke, xxxxxxxxx|

The Cauatzaine Rayne still tied to the Poñell, | To worke sholders, &
Croupe together, vppon ——— | Paseger, vppon A walke, Eyther his head
to the Piller, or his croupe to the Piller, but heere it | Is otherwise, then
before, for now you muste | Helpe w^th y^e Inward rayne, & outward Legg:
x |

When you put y^e horses head to y^e piller, on y^e right | Hand, bee sure that
y^e Piller, bee w^thout his head, | And then hee can neuer bee Entier, for
his Sholders | will alwayes goe before his Croupe, rayne & Legg ——— |
Contrary, thus workes both sholders & Croupe, this | action |

[f.10^r] Action is y^e action of a trot, w^{ch} is Cross, & so hee | Is straightend &
InLargd; Euery Second time, because | Itt is a trot, w^{ch} is cross, when
hee Lapps, his out= | ward fore legg ouer his Inward fore Legg, then hee Is
narrow before, & Inlargd behinde, his hinder Legg | Goeing a litle forward &
wide, & when hee lapps ——— | His outward hinder Legg ouer his Inward
hinder legg | Being narrow behinde then hee is Inlargd before | So Euery
Second time, hee is In largd & Straightend | And where hee is narrow, hee
is alwayes vppon ——— | that, & neuer where ^{hee}is wide, — so euery
second ——— | Time, hee is vppon y^e sholders, & vppon y^e hanches, & |
that w^{ch} is nexte y^e Center, is y^e Leaste Circle, ——— | therefore a litle
preste ther, & his croupe being out | that is y^e largeste Circle, & therefore
more wraughte | Is make him obey y^e heele, if you tie y^e Cauatzaine |
Rayne, to y^e Poñell on y^e Lefte hand, his head to the | Piller, see that y^e
Piller bee on y^e outside of his | Heade, & worke him Legg & rayne contrary
as you | Did before, for y^e same resons, & his head being to y^e Piller, his
fore parts leading, therefore his fore— | Parts, goes towards y^e Center, &
his hinder parts flyes itt, | this workes his outward hanch & suples him to
y^e heele | the horse makes but two circles his head to y^e piller, his | Fore
partes y^e narrow circle, & his hinder parts y^e Larg Circle, |

[Notes accompanying a diagram:]

For y^e right & | Lefte hand his | head to y^e piller | vppon a walke | where
hee makes | but two Circles

[f.10^v] Now to putt his Croupe to the Piller, Rayne and | Legg contrary, still
tied to y^e Poñell vppon a walke | Thus, |

Now that his Croupe is to y^e Center, bee shure ——— | that y^e Piller bee
on y^e Inside of his croupe, so hee | Shall neuer bee Entier, because then
his sholders | will alwayes goe before his Croupe *his Croupe* his | Croupe
now, being to y^e Piller, his fore parts leads | And therefore tendes to

y^e Center, & his hinder parts | Flyes y^e Center, workeing rayne & Legg
 Contrary, because | Paseger w^{ch} is a vppon a walke w^{ch} is Cross, therefore
 | Hee is narrowed & InLarged Euery second time, when | Hee is narrow
 behinde, at y^e same time Larg before | This workes his sholders, & his
 outward hinder Legg, | w^{ch} makes hime obedient to y^e heele, his fore parts
 | makes y^e greater Circle, & therefore moste wraughte | But his hinder parts
 are more preste, & Subiected | Because it is y^e narrower Circle, w^{ch} puts
 him vppon ——— | the hanches, this is a moste Excellent Lesson for itt |
 Prepeares him for Terra, Terra, for when hee is | Straightend before, then
 his Inward hinder Legg goes | Forward w^{ch} is halfe Terra, Terra, & when
 hee | Is straightend behinde, then his forward fore Legg | Goes forward,
 w^{ch} is halfe Terra, Terra, so hee goes | Euery second time, y^e action wth
 his Leggs Terra ——— | Terra, before, & Euery second time Terra, Terra,
 | Behinde that is Euery time Eyther before or behinde | the action of terra,
 terra, & because it is Euery |

[f.11^r] Second time y^e reson is that it is y^e action of A | Trott, w^{ch} is Cross.
 — A better Lesson then this | there is not, — for to Paseger vppon his
 walke | the Inward Cauatzaine raynes tied hard & straight | To y^e Poñell
 bringes In his outward sholder A | walke being y^e action of a trot, when
 hee is narrowed | Before, his head is wthin his fore leggs, but at y^e same |
 time, his Inward hinder Legg is before his heade & when | Hee is narrow
 behinde then his Inward fore Legge is | Before his head, but at y^e same
 time, his head is ——— | Before his Inward hinder Legg, — so his head is
 always | Before one legg, & one legg alwayes, before his heade att | the same
 time, that is euery second time before tis a trot | w^{ch} action is Cross, his
 outward Sholder muste bee | Braught In very much, & thus hee is preste within
 the Turne, thatt liberty withoute the turne w^{ch} is y^e beste thinge vppon | A walke
 that can bee, his Croupe In, for thus hee will bee | Both wthin y^e hand, &
 y^e heele, — because hee is conuex wthout | Makes him suffer y^e heele, &
 obay itt, because hee cannott | Fly from itt, for y^e Inward rayne keepes him
 still to y^e | Heele, a better lesson ther is not, thus hee is wraughte | Before
 & subiected behinde, hee makes but two Circles | wth his foure leggs when
 hee Doth paseger his croup to y^e | Piller his fore parts y^e largest circle, &
 his hinder parts | the narrower Circle, xxxxxxxx|

[heading to diagram:]

Vppon y^e right & Lefte hand vppon a walke |

[f.11^v]

To tie the Rayne still to |
the Pomell |

[cancelled] To Paseger him In his Length vppon A walke | Doth Worke his
sholders, because it is y^e Larger | Circle, but it Presses his hinder parts, &
putts | Him vppon y^e hanches, & fixes them, because itt | Is y^e narrower
Circle, workes his outward hanch | And so makes him obay y^e heele, A
better Lesson ——— | ther is nott, xxxxxxxxx|

[uncancelled: note accompanying diagram]

For y^e righte & | Lefte hand in | his Length vppon | A Walke |

The Cauatzaine Rayne still tied to the Pomell ——— | His head to the wall
Legg & Rayne Contrary, |

[This next passage, which doesn't seem to follow the fractured sentence above,
is transcribed exactly as found]

[cancelled] the horses head to y^e wall, is Eyther like his head to y^e | Piller.
or his Croupe to y^e Piller, itt is like his head to y^e | Piller, when you
make his croupe goe before his heade | then his croupe is wraught, & his
sholders preste and | subiected, — when his sholders goes before his croupe
——— | then his sholders are more wraughte, but his croupe | more preste,
& subiected \wedge & so vppon y^e hanches wh hand soeuer you goe on | Itt is y^e
inward rayne still \wedge & the outward legg that muste bee wraught, the | wall
putts him vppon y^e hanches for feare of hurting his head, |

[Diagram]

[notes below diagram:] this is his sholders before | his croupe, w^{ch} workes his |
sholder, & subiects his croupe | this is his croupe before his | sholders, w^{ch}
it wo^rkes his | Croupe, & straightens his | sholders |

[f.12^r] To tie the Inward Cauatzaine Rayne to the | Pomell Legg and Rayne of
A Side, |

Is ^{it} ^a moste ^a Excellence thinge vppon a shorte Trott, to | Putt a horse
vppon y^e hanches, so hee goes forward | Dun Piste, for a horses hinder
legges, being made like | our Armes, puting his In ward hinder Legg out,
makes | Him bow In y^e Cambrills, & therefore vppon y^e hanches, | A better
Lesson ther is not for that, xxxxxxxxx|

For all these former seauen thinges & seuerall wayes | off workeing A Horse;
tieing the Inward Cauatzaine | Rayne to the Pomell, is moste Excellent, Six
of these | Are all vppon A walke, xxxxxxxxx|

To pull y^e Inward Cauatzaine Rayne to yo^r thigh ——— | In his Length,
Is Excellence to worke him and ——— | Prepeare him vppon his walke, for
the Piroite ——— | For it Workes his Sholders, & his croupe more fixte |
Butt I haue no feeleing of him thus, butt as if the ——— | Horse weare
w^hout mee, ——— | xxxxxxxxx|

[f.12^v] A true obseruation, vppon A walke a trotte a gallope | Dunpiste vppon
Circles, to paseger y^e horse heade to y^e | Piller, or his Croupe to y^e piller,
or terra, terra. his | Croupe to y^e Piller, or Coruetts Demy Ayre his croupe
to | the piller, or Croupadoes Balotadoes, or Capriolls, vppon | Circles, or
his heade tied shorte, w^h y^e Cauatzaine rayne | My way, to y^e single Piller,
vppon Coruetts, | Eyther De | Firme A firme, forward, or | Backward, legg
& rayne of | A side, or legg & rayne Contrary, that in all those you | shall
obserue, that what so euer Leades tendes to the | Center, & y^e other parte
of y^e Horse flyes the Center, | And this Rule neuer fayles, wether his fore
parts | or his hinder parts leades as for Exsample xxxxxxxxx |

the Inward Cauatzaine Rayne tied to y^e Pomell Legg | And rayne of a side
Eyther trotting, or Galloping Dun | Piste, his fore parts leades & comes
In, & therefore ——— | Tendes to y^e Center, & his hinder parts flyes y^e
Center, | His head to y^e Piller, Legg & rayne of a side, his hinder | Parts
Leades, & therefore tendes to y^e Center, & his fore | Parts flyes y^e Center,
——— | Rayne & Legg Contrary his head | To y^e piller, y^e piller on y^e

out side of his heade then his | Fore parts Leades, & tendes to y^e Center,
 ——— | & his Croupe | Flyes y^e Center, w^{ch} hand so euer hee goes of, —
 the | Horses Croupe to y^e Piller, y^e piller on y^e Inside of his | Croupe, his
 fore parts leades, & therefore tendes to y^e | Center, & his Croupe flies y^e
 Center, this vppon a walke |

[f.13^r] or Pasegger for terra, terra, his fore parts leades | And therefore tendes
 to y^e Center, & his croupe flies | the Center, ——— | And so y^e Piroite, or
 Demy Voltaes, vppon | Pasadoes, w^{ch} is but halfe a piroyte his fore parts
 | Leades, & therefore tendes to y^e Center, & his Croupe | Flyes y^e Center,
 so in Coruetts, Demy Ayres Groupadoes | Balotadoes, & Capriolls vppon
 Circles, or voltaes y^e fore | Parts Leades & therefore tendes to y^e Center,
 & his Croupe | Flyes y^e Center, — & so my way at y^e Single piller, the |
 Cauatzaine tied shorte, to y^e Piller, his fore parts ——— | Leades, vppon
 y^e Circle & therefore tendes to y^e Center, | And his croupe flies y^e Center,
 so when hee goes backe | this may in Coruetts his croupe then Leades, &
 therefore | Tendes to y^e Center, & his foreparts flies y^e Center, | this is a
 rule that neuer failes that what Soeuer | Leades tendes to y^e Center, wether
 you doe it righte | or wrong, — As for Exsample wrong when you make |
 His croupe to Leade In terra, terra, then his croupe | tendes to y^e Center,
 & his fore parts shun itt, so | the Rule is alwayes true though you Ride yo^r
 | Horse wrong, xxxxxxxxx|

This Is A Generall Rule |

What soeuer Leades, fore parts, or hinder parts, that | w^c still Leades,
 tendes to y^e Center, & y^e other parts | of y^c horse flies y^c Center, — And it
 is as Generall | A Rule & true that what soeuer is y^e greater Circle | before
 |

[f.13^v] Before, or behinde, that w^{ch} is y^e Greateste Circle | Is moste wraughte,
 for it goes moste ground, & att | Liberty, wether it tendes to y^e Center
 or from itt, ——— | And y^e Less Circle moste subiected, & preste, — for
 | His head to y^e piller, y^e piller on y^e outside of his ——— | Heade, his
 foreparts Leades, & therefore tendes to y^e | Center, & his hinder parts flies
 y^e Center, yett his | Hinder parts are moste wraughte, because it is y^e |

Greater Circle, & therefore his foreparts more ——— | subiected, & vppon them, w^{ch} is vppon y^e sholders ——— | So y^e horse croupe to y^e piller, y^e piller on y^e Inside of his | Croupe, his croupe In, — his foreparts Leades, & therefore | tendes to y^e Center, & his croupe flyes y^e Center, but | His foreparts are more wraughte, because it is y^e | Larger Circle, & his hinder parts more subiected ——— | And preste because it is y^e narrower Circle, and so | vppon the hanches — so In his Length the same ——— |

[Cramped Hand] & Vppon Paseger hee Laps his legges ouer butt Everye |
Seconde time because they are cross & vppon the action off | A Trott |

[Fair hand]

An obseruation |

To tie y^e Cauatzaine Rayne to y^e Girthes my way ——— | Is y^e beste, for itt pulls Doune his heade, & therefore | will bringe In his outward sholder more, w^{ch} is beste | For all thinges, In workeing a horse, but naught for | Terra, terra, And Coruetts xxxxxxxxx|

All these are Perfecte & moste Excellence Lessons | And y^e true way of workeing A horse Exactly In | the manege, for what can you haue more — for no | Horse makes a faulte, but it is Eyther before or | bea[?] |

[f.14^r] Behinde. Eyther In his Sholders or in ^{his} Croupe, Eyther ——— | In y^e hand, or y^e heeles, — & heere you haue Excellence | Lessons Eyther to Suple his sholders, or Suple his Croupe | To make him obedient Eyther to y^e hand or the heele, | And to make him obedient both together, & more Cannot bee, xxxxxxxxx|

[uncancelled]

A true obseruation for Dressinge of Horses | Thus |

A Horse being y^e Nobleste Creature nexte man ——— | For hee is as farr aboue all other Creaturs as hee | Is below man, so that hee is between man & beaste | this noble Animall is wise & subtile, & therefore | Man should keepe his prerogatiue ouer him, as ——— | knowing his wisdom

& subtlety to bee to hard for | Him ther, — as for Exsample wheresoeuer
y^e horse | Is preste hee will finde his Ease sooner then any ——— | Man,
can tell, therefore wee muste worke vppon ——— | that, As thus, when
you giue him a stopp, if hee bee | vppon his fore parts itt hurts his nose,
wth y^e ——— | Cauatzaine, & his mouth wth y^e bitt, to shun those | Two
pressures hee puts himselfe vppon y^e hanches, | And pulls In his heade, w^{ch}
frees him from both ——— | Those troubles, & by this meanes, Doth that
w^{ch} y^e | Horse man desires, — between y^e Piller if hee boltes | Forward, y^e
Cauatzaine hurtes his nose, if hee goes ——— | Backwardes y^e Cauatzaine
vnderneath hurtes his | Jawe, |

[f.14^v] Jawe so of each side, when hee goes Extrauagantly, y^e Cauatzaine |
Hurtes him of Each side, when y^e horse hath found all these | Inconueniencies,
then hee keepes himselfe in y^e midle, & Rises | To shun those blessures, w^{ch}
is that w^{ch} y^e horseman Desires, | So when you tie y^e Cauatzaine rayne
shorte to y^e Pomell | My way, itt bringes In & bowes his necke, Extreemly y^e
| Horse striues againeste itt, but then it hurts him, so | much, as hee findes
Ease from that trouble, by not Pressing y^e Cauatzaine rayne, by bending
his necke more, | w^{ch} is as y^e horseman Desires, — then at y^e Single piller
——— | my way, y^e Inward Cavatzaine rayne Is tied so shorte as | the
horse cannot Rise wth Ease for it still pulls him ——— | Doune againe,
so y^e horse very subtly Eases himselfe wth | Goeing vppon y^e hanches,
for there is no other way in y^e | world to Ease him, & when hee is on y^e
hanches, that is | As y^e horseman Desires, so when you put y^e horses head
| To y^e wall, for feare of hurting his head wth y^e wall | Hee putts himselfe
on y^e hanches, to bee further of, of | the wall, & so being on y^e hanches, is
as y^e horseman ——— | Desires, — so what action soeuer hee Doth, if y^e
horseman | Pinch him, when hee is on y^e sholders wth y^e Cauatzaine or |
Bitt, to Ease himselfe, y^e horse will put himselfe on y^e | Hanches, & that
is as y^e horseman Desires, — for no horse | Can bee perfectly Dreeste that
Doth not goe vppon y^e | Hanches & then y^e Curbe is a litle Slacke, & playes,
| But y^e Curbe may bee slacke, & y^e horse not vppon y^e hanches | But no
horse is vppon y^e hanches, but y^e Curbe is slacke, ——— | Therefore y^e
horse to Ease himselfe, muste put himselfe | Vppon y^e hanches, & not the
horse man xxxxxxxxxxxx|

[f.15^r. cancelled] Now to obey the Heeles | Thus |

When a horse is restye, & will not goe forward, spurr | Him, vntill hee
doe goes forward, & when hee obayes, hee findes | Ease that hee is not
spurde, & so will Continue in obeying | of you, if hee doe not obey y^e firste
morninge hee will | the nexte, day, but then you muste forgiue him faults
| And not bee so stricte, Excepte hee bee malitius, & | then spurr him,
agayne vntill hee obey you, & so when= | soeuer hee Doth Disobay y^e heele
In any thinge, for assure | yo^rselfe y^e horse to finde Ease will obey you at
Laste, ——— | therefore they are mightyly Deceued, & very Ignorant, |
that thinkes, to make a horse obey is heele w^hout this | Method, it will
not make him more Restie by y^e fauor | off their great Bhillosoppers that
haue written, & ——— | mistaken y^e busines totally — Itt is not y^e Rodd,
nor y^e | Nerue, nor y^e Calfe of y^e Leggs, that will Reduce vitius | Jades,
nor gentlenes, you had as good giue him, Rose watter, | And suger, but to
End all Disputes, there hath been | No horse that Euer I haue had, but
hath been ——— | Reducet thus, — therefore y^e Medcin Is Excellente |
Probatum Este, xxxxxxxxx|

To worke A Horses Croupe before his fore parts | or Sholders vppon Circles,
Is Obhominable naughti, but | In greate Extreameytes, but for my parte I
would | neuer haue Itt vsed.

When y^e horses head is to y^e Piller, y^e Piller on y^e Inside | of his heade,
then his Croupe goes before his sholders, ——— | when y^e horses Croupe
is to y^e Piller, if y^e Piller bee | on y^e outside of his croupe, then his croupe
goes before | his |

[f.15^v] His sholders, — this is naughte In Extreameyte, for when | His heade
is to y^e Piller, & both his fore Leggs w^hin the | Piller, hee cannot goe
so a quarter of a turne, but bee | Antier, so if his croupe bee to y^e piller,
on y^e outside | of his croupe, hee cannot goe a quarter of a turne, but |
Bee Antier, — besides hee vnwindes y^e side hee should goe of, | And goes
a trott Cross, to what hee goes forward, Circularly | Backward, & w^h is
worse, hee is bente circularly for | the right hand, & his sholders goes on
y^e Lefte hand, ——— | A gaineste that Circle, & his Croupe on y^e right

hande, & | Indeed keepes no Center or Circle, but Looses them | Both,
 & so y^e Same on y^e lefte hand, & whereas you may ——— | thinke itt
 workes his croupe, it is not so, for it goes from | you, not flyes yo^r heele,
 but you put y^e Croupe from you, | wth putting his head y^e Contrary way,
 & y^e truth is ——— | Itt neyther workes sholders, nor Croupe, but both
 Lose, | And keepes neyther Center, nor Circle, & a false trot & | Goes
 backward, — So it is an abhominable thinge, for A | Horse Croupe to
 goe before his sholders, in all maner of | thinges, In y^e world, but Coruetts
 vppon voltaes backward, or Coruetts Vppon a strayte Line backwards, —
 & y^e reson | Is because y^e Action of a Coruett, Differes so much, from y^e
 | Action of a walke, w^{ch} is y^e Action of a trot, w^{ch} motion | or action
 is Cross, but then you may aske mee why A | Horse is not Antier, when
 hee goes terra, terra, wth | His croupe before his sholders, w^{ch} hee may
 Doe, — I | Answer because hee hath but one hanch before his ——— |
 sholder, & so hee may goe although hee goes false, but | Had hee both his
 hinder Leggs on y^e inside of y^e piller, hee | Could not goe but bee Antier,
 but howsoeuer, shun puting | His croupe, or halfe his Croupe before his
 Sholders, for one of y^e falseste & moste Dangerous thinges that Can | bee,
 |

[f.16^r] Bee in y^e world, for a horse, — A horse should suffer | And obey y^e
 heele, and this way Doth neyther | nor obey the hand, or worke y^e sholders
 xxxxxxxxx|

For Terra, terra, |

Firste putt y^e horse bias, his head from y^e turne, ——— | And his Croupe
 to y^e Center, & Leane on y^e outward | sturrope y^e outward Legg Close to
 him, yo^r toe of y^e | Inward Legg a Litle out, so yo^r body a Litle oblike, |
 Turning upp yo^r head, not In, wth yo^r forward Eye to | Looke to yo^r Inward
 sholder, this puts y^e Inward Sholder | oblikly *forward* ^{back}, & *keepes backe*
 putts forwarde y^e outward sholder | Yo^r bridle Raynes a Litle long, pullde
 on y^e outside of | the Poñell towards yo^r outward sholder, to pull vpp | His
 head wth y^e Inward rayne to make him Looke wthin | the turne, this presses
 y^e horse on y^e outside of y^e | turne, & giues his Leggs wthin y^e turne Liberty
 to lead, | And putts him vppon y^e hanches, & so alwayes goes forward, | So

y^e same action you make a horse backe, y^e same action | the horse makes,
 — thus hee shall obey y^e hand & y^e | Heele & bee vppon y^e hanches, & goe
 Easeley, & freely | According to nature, & not againeste itt, & this is y^e |
 Perfection of terra, terra, to stay his sholders wth y^e | Hand, & to press his
 croupe, y^e same helps for y^e lefte | Hand, only chang body, Legg, & hand,
 — The same helps | for |

[f.16^v]

For le Petit Gallope, his Croupe In, Demy ——— |
 Voltas, and Terra, terra, and Coruetts, ——— |

[cramped hand] In Terra Terra the Horse aughte to bee large | before, th [sic]
 narowe behinde accordinge to this | figure [small diagram follows] The Horse
 makes foure Circles In | Terra Terra his fore legg within the turne the
 largeste | Circle, his fore legg withoute the turne the seconde Circle his
 hinder | legg withoute the turne the thirde Circle, & his hinder legg |
 within the turne |

[notes to diagram]

Righte hande

Lefte hande

[uncancelled] For to walke him Vppon Paseger | His Croupe In, or his Croupe
 out, |

[cramped hand] Legg & Rayne Contrarye |

[fair hand, cancelled] Always to pull vpp his head to press him wth out the |
 turne, & att Liberty wthin y^e turne, w^{ch} makes him ——— | Alwayes goe
 forward, & y^e righte Legg still to Lead ——— | To prepeare him for Terra,
 terra, & puts him vppon | the hanches, and so muste bee Easey vppon y^e
 hand, |

This way is y^e perfection for Paseger for Terra, terra, | And for Coruetts,
 & therefore thinke of no other, |

[f.17^r uncancelled] True obseruations

[cancelled] When soeuer A horse Gallopes Dunpiste, Larg, or | Narrow;
 — you muste straighten his fore parts ——— | And his Croupe at Liberty,
 his fore partes to Come | In, towards y^e Center, & his hinder partes to
 fly | Itt, Preste w^thin y^e turne, & att Liberty w^thout, | the turne, — the
 Cauatzaine Rayne w^thin y^e turne, | Doth itt, Legg, & rayne of a side, or
 to helpe w^th | the outward rayne, of y^e bridle, or Inward false | Rayne,
 but his Croupe is Loste, this suples his | Sholders, because it bringes In his
 outward sholder, | Puts him vppon y^e hand because itt putts him vppon |
 The sholders, — so his head to y^e Piller, Legg, & rayne | of a side, workes
 & straightens his sholders, ——— | though on y^e Contrary hand hee goes
 on, — so his | Croupe to y^e Piller, Legg, & rayne on y^e Contrary side |
 Strayghtens his sholders, though for y^e contrary Hand, hee goes on, & his
 croupe Loste ther, because | Itt is to much w^thin y^e turne, as much as when
 itt | Is w^thout y^e turne, & wide, & so y^e horse vppon | the Sholders, & so
 straightend w^thout y^e turne | Butt wrong, xxxxxxxxx|

when soeuer y^c horse Croupe is In, | you muste ^{alwaies} neuer bring
 In his outward sholder, *Neyther* vppon Paseger, on his walke ^{butt in} Terra,
 terra, nor in Coruetts, vppon his voltaes, for if his | outward sholder Comes
 In, then hee is preste | w^thin,|

[f.17^v] w^thin y^e turne, s^ch is false, & his croupe being In, |

{ for terra. terre or coruetts. }

Hee muste alwayes be preste w^thout , y^c turne, w^ch | Is to keepe backe
 y^e outward sholder, his head vpp, | To Looke Into y^e turne, w^th his Eye
 w^thin y^e turne | And not w^th y^e other, for Did hee looke in w^th | Both his
 Eyes, his outward sholder muste come | In, w^ch is false, that is to worke
 him only to | Turne his head, or rather his mossell vpp, & not | sturr his
 necke, for feare of bringing In, his ——— | outward sholder, this turning
 vpp his mussell ——— | Presses him on y^e outward side, [Cramped hand]
 but for paseger | vppoñ Circles, hee muste bee preste oñ the Inside off the
 Turne. |

[Fair hand] To tie y^e Inward Cauatzaine rayne to y^e Poñell Is | False when

his Croupe is put In, *butt nott ffor itt vppon paseger itt presses* | Him w^thin
 y^e turne, x & when you Ride him only w^th | the Bitt, y^e Coustome of
 being preste w^thin the | Turne, makes him goe so still, & his head being
 att | More Liberty makes him Looke out of y^e turne, ——— | Because itt
 is Easey & naturall for him to doe so, ——— | And no otherwise, because
 hee is preste w^thin y^e turne, | And when hee is preste w^thout y^e turne, of
 nesesity | Hee muste Looke w^thin y^e turne, for it is Easey | And naturall,
 for him to doe so, & cannot well doe | otherwise, xxxxxxxxx|

[cramped hand] { butt you maye | prese him | withoute | the Turne | & then
 the | Cauetzane | tied to the | poñell Is | good. | }

[f.18^r. Fair hand] When Soeuer A Horse Gallopes Dunpiste, you | Muste keepe
 out his Croupe & press him w^thin, |

When soeuer A horse Croupe is In, vppon any action, | what soeuer, you
 muste press him w^thout to keepe |

{butt paseger |}

His Croupe In, xxxxxxxxx|

To tie the Inward Cauatzaine Rayne to the | Poñell pulls Doune his head,
 & therefore putts | Him on the Sholders, & of, of the hanches, & so | Doth
 bringing In his outward sholder, y^e same, | All this is good to giue a horse
 an A pewie, ——— | But itt putts him of, of y^e hanches, & makes ——— |
 Him not subiecte to y^e heele, — therefore ——— | yo^r Bridle hand Higher
 to pull vpp, & In ——— | His mussell, & this presses him on y^e outside
 | Putts him on y^e hanches, & makes him obay | The heele, — the same
 helpes his head to y^e | Wall, or any thing Legg & rayne Contrary ——— |
 And his Croupe In, out, or Bias, xxxxxxxxx|

[f.18^v] 1: Iff A Horse vppon Terra, terra, bring In | His sholders to much, hee
 muste put out his | Croupe, therefore y^e way to remedy itt is to ——— |
 Stay his sholders, & to press his Croupe, ——— |

2: Iff A horse bringes not his sholders In Enough ——— | then hee muste
 put In his Croupe to much, therefore | the way to remedy itt, is to pull In

his Inward | Sholder, & helpe him wth both yo^r Leggs, Euen, | But wthin,
rather A Litle harder, & his sholders | Alwayes to goe before his Croupe,
Bais w^{ch} is | The beste thing that Can bee, xxxxxxxxx|

3: To Change vppon Terra, terra, | Bring y^e horses sholders a Litle more
into y^e turne | To fix his Croupe, & then chang him, changing hand | And
Legg, & worke y^e inward rayne, still, xxxxxxxxx|

4: The same helpes that you vse for Terra, terra, | you muste vse for
Demy voltaes, Terra, terra, for | Itt is all one, only halfe a Turne, xxxxxxxxx|

5: To chang vppon a Gallope In soldat, wether it bee wthin y^e turne
or | wthout y^e turne, A Demy Volta, or a quarter of | A turne, it muste
alwayes bee, parte of Terra, Terra, & always then to helpe wth y^e inward
—— | Rayne & outward Legg, but as you gallope y^e inward | Rayne, &
inward Legg, or rather y^e in ward rayne & | outward Legg, to put him on
y^e Hanches xxxxxxxxx|

{Butt better the outward rayne & outwarde legg}

[f.19^r] For tieing y^e cautzaine Rayne shorte to y^e Poñell | My way, y^e
Conuenienceies, of itt, & y^e Inconuenienceis | of itt. Thus |

The Cauatzaine Rayne tied shorte to y^e Poñell | My way is Excellent to
giue A horse an Apewie | And setle him vppon y^e hand, & make him firme
| And his head steady, w^{ch} pulls him Doune, — so itt | Is Excellente also
for a horse that is to hard | of y^e hand, for y^e Cauatzaine rayne being tied
very | straight to y^e Pomell, alwayes wthin y^e turne, | Keepes him from
restinge to much of y^e Bitt, | w^{ch} makes him Lighte & firme of y^e hand —
y^e | Cauatzaine rayne, tied shorte to y^e Poñell is | Excellent also to suple
a horses sholders, w^{ch} | Is y^e beste thing that can bee, — soe itt giues an
Apewie, where there is non, & where there is to | Much Apewie, it takes it
a way, & suples his | sholders Extreemly w^{ch} is an Excellent thing, — itt
| Also makes a horse Gallope very righte wth his | Leggs, as also his Leggs
very righte for Terra, terra, | For it Lengthens his Leggs wthin y^e turne, &
shortens | His Leggs wthout y^e turne, w^{ch} is righte as it should | Bee, — so
itt is good for working his sholders in all | kindes & his croupe Loste, Legg

& rayne of a side as also | To worke Legg & rayne contrary in all kindes
of, seuerall | Lessons, & these are y^e Conueniences of tying y^e inward |
Cauatzaine Rayne Shorte to y^e Pomell, xxxxxxxxx|

[f.19^v] The Inconuenienceis tying the Inward | Rayne of the Cauatzaine to the
| Poñell for Terra, terra, |

Firste tying y^e Inward rayne of y^e Cauatzaine to y^e | Po-mell bringes In
his outward sholder, very much, & | In Terra, terra, his Inward sholder,
should bee braught | In, pulling his outward sholder In, — narrowes him
—— | Extreamley, before & therefore of nesesety hee muste | Bee Large
behinde, — & in Terra, terra, hee should bee | In Largd before, & narrow
behinde, putting In his outward | Sholder so much, if you put in his Croupe
then his —— | Croupe goes before his sholders, & in Terra, terra, his |
Sholders, should goe before his Croupe, pulling In his | outward sholder, so
much, & putting In his croupe —— | Makes him goe backward wth his
croupe, — & In Terra, | Terra, hee should goe forward wth his fore partes,
| When hee is straightned so before, & his croupe In, | Hee Leades wth his
Croupe, & his fore parts followes | And in Terra, terra, hee should Lead wth
his foreparts | And his croupe follow, when hee is straightened so —— |
Before & his croupe In his fore partes are wthin the | Lines of his hinder
Leggs, & In Terra, terra, his hinder | Leggs, should bee wthin y^e Lines of
his fore Leggs, when | Hee is straightend so before & his Croupe In, hee Is
—— | Straightend wthin y^e turne, & at Liberty & In Largd wth | out y^e
turne, & in Terra, terra, hee should bee straightend | wthout y^e turne, & at
Liberty wthin y^e turne, to Imbrace | The turne y^e better, when his croupe
goes before his | sholders |

[f.20^r] Sholders, hee goes restely & stickes of y^e spurrs —— | Because hee
goes backward,& when his sholders goes | Before his croupe, that hee goes
forward, hee goes | Freeley, as if hee would Eate y^e Earth, & when his |
Croupe goes before his sholders, as if y^e Earth would | Eate him, besides
this Ill Coustume when you ride, | Him only wth y^e bridle, when hee putts
his Croupe | Before his sholders, hee Lookes out of y^e turne, | Because hee
cannot Looke into y^e turne, & when his | sholders goes before his Croupe,

then hee Lookes in to | The turne, as hee, aughte because hee cannot Looke
 | out of y^e Turne,. — But that w^{ch} is worste of all | when his croupe goes
 before his sholders, that his Leggs | Goes Cross w^{ch} is y^e action of a trot,
 vppon y^e swiftnes | of a gallope, that is his outward Legg leades, & his |
 Inward hinder Legg followes, w^{ch} is Cross, & so a trot, | Is Cross, butt here
 is y^e Difference a trot Changes | Leggs Euery time cross, & In this false
 action hee | Keeps y^e same Leggs cross continually, — & in Terra, | Terra,
 his two Leggs wthin y^e turne, should Leade, w^{ch} | Is a righte Gallope, &
 Terra, terra, is no more only, | wth a time, — And when you ride wth y^e
 raynes of y^e Bridle you muste pull in y^e Inward rayne, for if you | Pull y^e
 outward rayne, itt is as Ill & false, as y^e inward | Cauatzaine rayne, tied
 to y^e Poñell, for it straightens | Him as much before, & helping wth yo^r
 outward Legg, | putts |

[f.20^v] Putts his Croupe as much before his sholders, — & ——— | Now you
 see playnily how false tieing is inward | Cauatzaine rayne to y^e Poñell is
 for Terra. terra, | For in Terra, terra, itt is false in Euery thinge, & | A
 gaineste nature, for that Ayre, — & so y^e like vppon | Circles, In Coruettts,
 so you see that no one medicine | will serve for all Diseases, no more then
 one salue for | All sores — [Cramped hand] Onlye thus the cauatzane tiede
 to the poñell | Is Exselente for Terra, Terra, if you pres hiñ on the oute
 sides | off the Turne, — butt to press him oñ the Inside | of the turne is
 false | & naughte.]

[Fair Hand]

For the Piroyte

The actions of y^e horses Leggs In y^e Piroyte, Is very strange, | For workeing
 violently wth y^e outward rayne of y^e bridle | Straightens his foreparts, &
 his hinder parts at more | Liberty, *helping not helpeing wth yo^r outwarde*
legge at all, so y^e action of | His Leggs are Thus, — on y^e righte hand when
 hee Liftes vpp | Both his fore Leggs, at y^e same time, hee Liftes vpp his |
 Hinder Legg wthout y^e turne, so hee hath three Leggs vpp, | Att a time, &
 reste only on y^e Inward hinder Legg, and | when those three Leggs Comes
 to y^e ground his outward | sholder Coming In so faste, his Inward hinder

Legg, ——— | Remoues, at y^e same time almoste in a place, to keepe | The
Circle, & I say at y^e same time those three Leggs | Are sett Doune, his
Inward hinder Legg remoues to goe | A Long wth y^e Circle, but in a maner
in a place, so that | Indeed y^e Inward hinder Legg, is y^e Center, though itt
| Remoues, itt remoues In y^e place rounde, — And when y^e | Horse is so
Dissey as hee can goe no longer, for feare | of |

[f.21^r] Off falling, then hee settis his Inward hinder Leggs ——— | Forward, to
stoppe him selfe, ——— | This is Exactly y^e | Helpes, & the motions of
the horses Leggs in the | Piroyte, or Else hee Could not goe so Swiftly as
he aught, |

[uncancelled] For Pasadoes |

[cancelled] The Demy volta, Is butt halfe a piroyte, & ——— | Therefore muste
haue y^e same helpes, only in A ——— | Pasadoe, wether y^e petite Gallope
or touta, bride | The horse aughte to make two or three Litle | Faleadoes,
or sliding on his Hanches, before hee | Turnes, y^c way to teach itt him, is
to Gallope him | Straight forward, gently, & then stoppe him, & | After a
Litle pause, turne him vppon his walke | And so Gallope him & stoppe
him agen. & then turne | Him agen, & this will make him goe in Pasadoes
Perfectly, xxxxxxxxxxxx|

[f.21^v, uncancelled] The Seuerall helpes wth the Inward | Cauatzaine Rayne *or*
false, Rayne In your hand |

[cancelled] There are three seuerall halpes wth y^r Inward | cauatzaine Rayne
In yo^r hand, — The firste helpe | Is to pull In his outward Sholder, the
second helpe | wth itt is, to pull In his Inward Sholder, and the | Thirde
helpe wth itt is, to stay his sholders, — *in* | *All these three seuerall helpes*
you muste before | Still to bringe In, yo^r outward sholder, still to | The
turne, — there is a forth w^{ch} is false, w^{ch} is | To putt his fore parts of y^e
right hand, when you | Goe on y^e lefte hand, & put in yo^r Inward Sholder,
| And helpe him wth y^e outward Legg, though you doe | Helpe him wth y^e
Inward rayne, itt is false because | His Croupe goes before his sholders, so

goes backe= | wardes, and his Leggs false, therefore neuer vse | Itt, butt In
great Extremities, but in deed I ——— | would neuer vse Itt, xxxxxxxxx|

The Vse of the two Rayns of y^e Bridle |

you muste helpe wth y^e outward rayne of y^e bridle in | the Piroyte, because
his fore parts are straightend, | And his hinder parts, at Liberty, so you
muste helpe | wth y^e outward rayne of y^e bridle, for Demy Voltaes | In |

[f.22^r] In Pasadoes by a wall, because his fore parts | Are straightend, & his
hinder parts at Liberty, | being but halfe a Piroyte, — so you muste helpe
——— | wth y^e outward rayne of y^e bridle, in Coruetts backward, | Vppon
a straight Line, because his fore parts are | straightend & his hinder parts
at Liberty. because | His hinder parts Leades, In Coruetts Backwardes,
— so | you must helpe wth y^e outward rayne of y^e bridle, | In all leapes,
Gro^upadoes, Balatadoes, & Capriolls ——— | Eyther forward or vppon
voltaes, because his | Foreparts are straightend, & his Croupe at Liberty, |
or Else hee Could not Leape, — Thus much for y^e | outward Rayne of y^e
Bridle, xxxxxxxxx|

Now for y^e Inward rayne of y^e Bridle, you muste | helpe wth y^e Inward
rayne of y^e Bridle, for Terra ——— | Terra, because then his hinder parts,
are straightend | And his fore parts In largd, so wth y^e Inward rayne for
| Demy Voltaes, Terra, terra, because his hinder parts | Are subiected, &
his fore parts Inlargd, & so forward | In Coruetts, wth y^e inward rayne of
y^e bridle, because | Ther his hinder parts, are subiected & his fore parts
——— | Inlargd, & att Liberty, to goe forward, because they lead, | And
thus much for y^e Inward Rayne of y^e Bridle, |

[f.22^v, uncanceled]

Observations

[cancelled] Legg, & rayne of a side workes y^e sholders, & y^e croupe | Loste, —
Legg, & rayne Contrary, his heade to y^e pillar | The pillar on y^e outside of
his head, workes his | Croupe & preses his sholders, — his Croupe to the
| Piller y^e pillar on y^e inside of his Croupe workes ——— | His sholders,
& preses his Croupe, & putts him vppon | the Hanches, so In his Length

y^e same, & putts him | vppon y^e Hanches, & so his head to y^e wall, putts
 ——— | Him vppon y^e Hanches, — so Legg, & rayne of a side vpon | A
 shorte Trott, putts him vppon y^e hanches, stopping | Putts him vppon y^e
 hanches, goeing backe putts him ——— | Vppon y^e hanches, raysing him,
 but very litle putts | Him vpp on y^e hanches, so doth le petit Galloppe |
 Vppon Circiles, as also Terra, terra, putts him vppon | The hanches, butt
 my way at y^e single piller, In ——— | Coruetts, putts a horse moste of
 y^e hanches, — To putt | A horse vppon y^e hanches, is y^e Quintesence of
 ——— | our Arte, for if a horse bee vppon y^e hanches, | Hee will Doe any
 thing, you can Desire, that ——— | His Inclination, & forces will giue him
 leaue, |

[f.23^r. uncanceled] The secrett Helpe of the Horsemans | Body |

[cancelled] To sitt straighte vppon yo^r twiste, & alwayes to | Keepe yo^r selfe
 so, what action soeuer y^e horse | Makes, & to that End you should alwayes
 goe to | That, w^{ch} Comes to you, w^{ch} is a Contrary ——— | Action, — As
 for Exsample y^e horse rises before, | Then you muste putt yo^r body a Litle
 forward, to him, | For Did you goe a long w^t y^e horse, you muste putt | Itt
 Backeward, — if y^e horse strike behinde or ——— | Rayses his Croupe, you
 muste putt yo^r Body Backe= | ward, w^{ch} is contrary to y^e horses motion,
 for | Did you follow y^e horse, you muste putt yo^r body ——— | Forward &
 bee throwne but y^e beste is to sitt | Straighte & y^e Action of y^e horse will
 keepe | you on yo^r twiste, xxxxxxxxx|

For the Secret helps of y^e thigh, | The knees, y^e Calfe of y^e Legg and | The
 Spurrs, are Thus |

When you are stiffe in y^e Hañs w^{ch} is putting doune | Yo^r heeles, then y^e
 Calfe of y^e Legg comes to y^e horse, | Butt y^e heele, y^e knee, & y^e thigh, is
 remoued from | Him, — when you bend in y^e hañs, w^{ch} is to putt ——— |
 Doune yo^r toes, then y^e Calfe of y^e Legg is remoued ——— | From him, but
 y^e heele, y^e knee, & y^e thigh, Comes to | Him, — These are greate secrets,
 & great truths |

[f.23^v] What Action soeuer the horse is In, alwayes keepe ——— | Him vppon

y^e hanches, Excepte to giue him an ——— | Apewie, & then you muste
put him vppon y^e sholders, |

The Secretts for the hand |

When soeuer you hold yo^r hand even wth y^e Po^mell | Itt slackens y^e Curbe,
if in y^e midle, of y^e po^mell, itt | Is slackend more, if vppon his necke itt is
slackend | Moste, because it is furtherest from y^e perpendicular | Line, & y^e
higher you hold yo^r bridle hand a boue y^e | Po^mell, y^e Curbe is strightend
y^e more, because itt | Goes neerer, by that meanes, to y^e perpendicular
Line, |

When A Horse Goes By Rote or Routine | I will shew you truely what
Makes itt, |

That w^{ch} makes a horse goe by Rote, or Routine, | Is absolutly his Eyes,
therefore I would aduise you to haue | As few markes as you can In yo^r
manege, — that is no pillers | But at an outside, & there but one, for my
way vppon | Ayres, & that will not fix his sight, so that then hee will not
attend y^e hand & y^e heele, nor to neere walls, for | Then his Eyes will attend
them, nor to make him goe in | one place alwayes, for there his Eyes will
make him goe | bye rote, a gen, butt seuerall places, will make him ——— |
Attend y^e hand & y^e heele, — & this way & no other Is | To Cuer him of
Goeing by Rote, xxxxxxxxxx|

[f.24^r] Vppon Quarters his Croupe In, is Excellente for a younge | Horse, to
worke his sholders, & to subiecte & fix, his | Croupe, y^e Lines betweene y^e
Quarters, Long or shorte | According to y^e horses being Lighter of y^e hand,
or ——— | Harder, if Light of y^e hand, y^e Lines Longer, if heauier | of y^e
hand y^e lines shorter, xxxxxxxxxx|

Vppon Quarters his Croupe out, Is a very good Lesson, for | Itt workes
his croupe, & fixes his fore parts, if hee bee | Lighte of y^e hand y^e lines
betweene y^e quarters Longer, | Iff hee bee hauey of y^e hand y^e lines between
y^e quarters | Shorter, & if hee bee very heauy of y^e hand, then pull | Him
backe; vppon those Lines, & then make yo^r quarters | of w^{ch} hand you will,

for you may worke thus on both | Hands, but alwayes worke him of that
hand that hee | Is moste Difficulte of, xxxxxxxxxx|

To make y^e Horse to attend y^e hand, & y^e Heele, ——— | There is nothinge
better then to walke him bias, | of one hand, & then putt him a litle forward,
| And then walke him bias on y^e other hand, & so | From side to side, &
forward Euery time, — this ——— | Makes him perfectly attende yo^r will,
& to obay y^e | Hand & y^e Heele, you muste alwayes helpe him wth | The
Inward Rayne of y^e bridle, w^{ch} is y^e rayne ——— | Still on that side that
hee goes of, xxxxxxxxxx|

[f.24^v] Itt is an Excellente Lesson to Gallope him fore righte | Le petit Gallope,
for it giues him an Apewie, if hee | wants itt, & makes him Lighte of y^e hand,
if hee | Haue to much, & y^e stopping firmes him to, Itt is A | Dangerous
thing to giue a horse to much [f]ouge, or [f]ury, | I can giue it when I will,
butt it is hard to take itt | A way, — you muste haue a method at firste,
from | Lesson, to Lesson, but after hee, is halfe Dreste you | Muste, vary
yo^r Lessons, perpetually, & yo^r places, for | Feare hee should goe by rote,
— & neuer giue y^e horse | Any thing to Eate, nor Lett y^e Groome Rubb
him, ——— | For horses of greate memory & speritt, will thinke | To goe
agen as soone as hee hath had his reward, or | That y^e Groome hath Done
Rubbinge of him, ——— |

For a horse to Lighte of y^e hand, or a horse that | Is to heauie of y^e hand,
yo^r former Rules & Lessons ——— | will helpe both, — only if a horse haue
any Imperfection | or foreansdes In any of his Legges, hee muste of nesesity
| Bee hard of y^e hand, — & then y^e mareshall muste Cuer | Him, & so make
him Lighte of y^e hand, & not y^e rider | As also if his raynes bee not good
that is to haue | A weake backe hee muste of nesesity bee hard of | The
hand & no body can helpe that Imperfection ——— | of nature, |

[f.25^r] Iff A horse bee restye giue him y^e spurrs vntill hee obays you ——— | Iff
hee run away, a gentle Bitt, & a gentle Cauatzaine, & | A Lighte hand on
both, walke him, then trot, then Gallope | Him, butt a good time in Euery
one, before you goe from | one to y^e other, & doe not stopp him, butt stay
him by | Litle, & Litle, & a Lighte hand, & Ride him wthout spurrs, | For

a run away horse needes no spurrs, & this by Litle, | And Litle, will Cuer him, — xxxxxxxxxxx|

Gentle helps for all horses, for to sitt strong a horse | backe, Astonishes y^e weake, makes y^e strong horse goe | Counter times, & forces him to much makes a furious | Horse madd, makes a Restye, horse, more restye, & a horse | Horse hard on y^e hand, to run a way, — & Displeases all | Sortes of horses, — therefore to sitt Easey a horse backe | And Gentle helps, is beste, for it fitts all horses and | Pleases all horses beste, — xxxxxxxxxxx|

A young horse of three yeares old you muste stay for him, | Three yeares at Leaste, being but a Gristle, & Easely spoyld | Besides his vnderstanding, is not Comed to him, so that wanting | Vnderstanding & being so weake, you muste haue patience to | Stay y^e good time, vntill hee hath both stopps & goinge backe | will strayne his backe & spoyle him, so that I would rather | Haue a horse of six seauen eyght or nine yeares old so hee | Bee sounde, & not vitious, then a horse of three yeares old | For I can force him, & make him a ready horse, in three months, | But some will say boyes Learne beste, & so colts, I answere no, | For if men could bee beaten to it as boyes are, they would learne | Much better, & Sooner, but I can force my horses of those yeares | Haueing both vnderstanding & strength, they will & muste | of nesesity learne much sooner, & better, xxxxxxxxxxx|

[f.25^v]

A Treue obseruation In Ridinge

Ther is no man that hath not a musicall head | That Can bee a good horse man, because all horses | Aught to goe In a Juste & musicall time, though y^e | time varies in Euery horse, some slower, & some | Quicker, & besides as no man playes y^e Lute | But y^e stringes that hee stoppes wth his Lefte hand | Hee alwayes stricke those strings wth his righte | Hand or Else itt would bee Ill musicke, — so in riding | What soeuer you touch, or helpe wth yo^r Lefte hand | You muste stricke wth yo^r heele, calfe of yo^r Legg, or | Else itt will bee Ill musick, a horse backe, and ——— | Therefore a good horse man, should neuer fayle | To haue hand & heele to goe together, no more | Then y^e mutitian his two hands together, — xxxxxxxxxxx|

Thus Much For Dressinge | All maner of Horses vppon | The Ground, to
make him obay | Perfectly both hand & heele, | And to put him Vppon the
| Hanches, w^{ch} is y^e quintesence | of our Arte, |

[f.26^r] The *Second* ^{thirde} Booke for Dressing & making | of Horses In all
seuerall Ayrs my ——— | New way, |

You muste In all Ayres follow y^e strength, Speritt, | And Dispotition of y^e
horse, & Doe nothing againeste | Nature, for Arte is butt to sett nature
In | order, & nothing Else, — Butt to make a horse ——— | Gallope, &
Change, & to goe Terra, terra, that | May bee forcet for y^e moste parte,
In Pasadoes, | The like, butt if y^e horse bee Impatiente, hee will | Hardly
goe well In Pasadoes, : but no other Ayres | Are to bee forced, but Euary
horse to Chuse his | owne Ayre, Vnto w^{ch} nature hath moste fitted | Him
to w^{ch} you may Easely see when hee is tied | shorte to y^e single piller,
my way, — for Coruetts | A horse aughte to haue a great Dell of patience
to, | wth a Discreet Rider as they say, but I haue ——— | Seldome seen
that Discreet rider, I doubte ther | Is a mistake in itt, w^{ch} is this, firste y^e
horse hath | Patience, & then that horse goes in Coruetts, but | Seldome
Impatiente horses are made patiente by | Coruetts, so seeing moste horses
that goe well In | Coruetts, haueing patience, they thinke Coruetts | Giues
them patience, — when it is patience that | Giues them Coruetts, — But
ther is no rule w^{thout} | An Exseption, yett I Doubte I am in y^e righte, |
but |

[f.26^v] Butt though some young horses may by Chance goe in Coruetts | yett I
assure you, for y^e moste parte horses muste haue | A great dell of time, wth
y^e Coustome of often Repetitions, | To bee In some yeares, & to haue gray
haires in his beard, | Before hee will bee settled & firmd, to goe sertenly
in | Coruetts, — both forwards, & vppon his voltaes, therefore | Itt is an
Error in those that thinks they can force ——— | Coruetts, if y^e horses
Inclination, bee not to goe in that | Ayre, for I haue knowne many horses,
that all the | Force in y^e world, would neuer make him goe in Coruetts, |
Their Dispotition being againeste itt, — Coruetts is an Ayre | Builte only
of Arte, for if hee bee not perfectly | In y^e hand & y^e heeles, & vppon y^e

hanches, hee will neuer | Goe In Coruetts, — yett I muste tell you, this
new way | of myne, will make horses goe, In Coruetts w^{ch} is | By no other
way, would haue been braught to itt, | And seldome, or neuer fayled mee,
xxxxxxxxxx|

For Leaping Horses ther are foure seuerall Ayres, | W^{ch} are Groupadoes,
Balotadoes, Capriolls, & a Pace, | And A Leape, y^e highte of these may bee
all A Like, | Butt not y^e maner, though that horse that goes y^e | Longeste
time, muste needes goe y^e higheste, ——— | Groupadoes is a Leape, where
y^e horse pulls vpp his |

[f.27^r] Hinder Leggs as if hee Drew or Puld them vpp into | His body, Balotadoes
is a Leape where y^e horse offers | To stricke out, wth his hinder Leggs, but
Doth not, | only an offer, or halfe strokes, shewing only his | Shooes, of his
hinder Leggs, but Doth not stricke, | only an offer and no more, xxxxxxxxxxxx|

Capriolls Is a Leape that when y^e horse is att his | Full highte of his Leape,
hee yerkes or strickes out | His hinder Leggs, as neere & as Euen together,
& as | Farr out, as Euer hee Can stretch them, w^{ch} y^e | French Calls Nowe
Le Quillett. w^{ch} is to tie y^e | Poynte, — A Pace & a Leape is as itt weare
three | Ayres, y^e pace Terra, terra, y^e raysing of him A | Coruett, & then A
Leape, these Ayres Can neuer | Bee forcet, to goe well In them, In spighte
of | Their Poyntsons, but what nature ordaines tham | *For*, for they are
Cald Disposed horses, — what | Belonges to Leaping horses according to
y^e old opinion, | Are these, — A horse of a hugh & vaste strength, | An
Excellente mouth, Perfecte good feete, wherein | They haue not much sayd
A mise, — for good feete | Is very requisitt, for Else y^e horse Dare neuer |
Light |

[f.27^v] Lighte of them, for feare of hurting them, no more | Then A man, that
hath y^e Goute, Durste Leape | And so will neuer rise, — , And I could wish,
| A good mouth, w^{ch} is A good Apewie, neyther | To hard, nor to softe,
but to suffer a good apewie | Vpp on y^e barrs, & so to suffer y^e Curbe, w^{ch}
is | To bee vnderstood a good mouth, yett I muste | Tell you y^e rareste
Leapeing horses, that Euer | I sawe, or ridd wente not att all vppon y^e
Curbe, | But only vppon y^e barrs, of his mouth, w^{ch} I doe | Nott Coñeñd,

but it was better to haue them | Leape so, being so rare horses, then to bee
 so ouer | Curious as not to haue them Leape at all, because | They wente
 not vppon y^e Curbe, — y^e nexte that | They muste bee very strong horses,
 that muste | Bee Leapeing horses, w^{ch} is a very greate ——— | Error, for it
 is not y^e strongeste horses that | Are fitteste for y^e Delighte of y^e manege,
 and ——— | Espetially not Leaping horses, for I haue seen | Many strong
 horses, that muste bee Galloped | Very long before you could abatte y^e
 strength | of their Chines, & all that while they would | Doe nothing but
 yerke & fetch Disorderd Counter | times, |

[f.28^r] Times of false Leapes, & y^e beste Horse men in y^e | world could neuer
 make them Leaping Horses, ——— | So itt is not strength, but Disposed
 horses for y^e | Beste Leapeing horses that Euer I knew, were | The weakeste,
 horses I haue seen, — for one of | the Gard y^e strongeste fellow that is, Ile
 bring | A Litle fellow shall out Leape him many A foote | Yett that strong
 fellow would crush that | Litle fellow to Death, In his Armes, — so tis not
 | Strength, but Disposed for Leaping, but some | will lay that Litle mans
 strength, is a boue | His waighte, & y^c greate man his Waighte | Is a boue
 his strength, but that is not so, for y^c | Greate mans strength, shall bee
 more a boue | His waighte, then y^c Litle mans strength a boue | His, & yett
 y^e Little man shall out Leape him, nay two Little men of Equall strength,
 y^e one | Shall leape Excellently, & y^c other not, — nay A | weaker litle man
 shall out Leape y^e stronger, | Nay sometimes a weake slender slim fellow |
 Will out Leape a knitt strong fellow, so that itt | Is nothing but Disposed,
 w^{ch} nature giues them | And not Arte, some times, a strong great fellow |
 will |

[f.28^v] Will out leape a litle man, but that is seldome, | Because their speritts
 are more Dilated & ^{sunder} slender | And Defused, then in Litle, men, y^e
 like I will assure | You in horses, as I haue told you of men, — ther ——— |
 May bee a strong horse Disposed for Leapeing & | That no Doubte but is
 an Excellent horse, butt | For y^e moste parte, they are but weake horses,
 | That are Disposed for Leapeing, some times a horse | Findes himselfe so
 pincht wth Coruetts vppon y^e | Hanches, being weake, that hee findes Ease
 In ——— | Leaping, — Thus you see that Leaping horses are | Disposed

by nature, & not Arte, being full of | Speritts & Lighte, so that horse men
 hath nothing | To doe in makeing Leaping horses, but only to giue | Them
 y^e time, w^{ch} is all y^e Arte aught to bee giuen | To a Leapeing horse, &
 hee that thinkes to shew | More Arte In a Leapeing horse, will but shew
 | His Ignorance, & folly, — A pace & a Leape Comonly | Horses goes In
 that Ayre when they haue not | A good Apewie, for y^e pace putts them on
 y^e hand, | And y^e pace giues them A Kise to Leape, like one | That runs
 before hee Leapes, & so may leape higher, | Then hee that goes Euery time
 a Leape, — Thus |

[f.29^r] I haue shewd you these Ayres, Coruetts, Groupadoes, Balotadoes,
 Capriolls & a pace, & a leape w^{ch} nature | Muste doe more then Arte,
 two paces, & three paces, | And a Leape are neyther Comon^{lye}y, & Indeed
 rather | Gallope Galliard, then to bee Cald an Ayre - - - - - |

The new way, or news In horse manship, the ——— | Elixzer for teaching Horses
 In all Ayres, at y^e | Single piller, where w^thout any body vpon him, | Hee
 is taughte to goe in Coruetts, Deferme, aferme | w^{ch} is in a place, then to
 goe vpon his voltaes, ——— | Then to goe side ways, vpon his voltaes,
 & then | To goe backwards vpon his voltaes, w^{ch} is the | Moste Excellent
 Inuention. & y^e moste Effectuall | That Euer was Deuised to make him goe
 Juste vpon | His Ayre, to putt him vpon y^e hanches, & to make | Him
 perfectly vnderstand y^e hand, & y^e heele[s], ——— | And therefore marke
 itt well, for more a horse | Cannott bee taughte, xxxxxx|

For the Right Hand

Firste bringe y^e horse, saddled, & bridled, & putt | Him vnder y^e button &
 then lett a Groome take | the |

[f.29^v] The Inward Cauatzaine Rayne for y^e right hand | And Lape it aboute y^e
 single piller, & make itt | Very shorte, but where hee holdes it higher, | Then
 where tis tied, to y^e ringe of y^e Cauatzaine, | And Lett an other Groome
 hold y^e Long Rayne of | The Cauatzaine, on y^e other side, in his hand, wth
 | A poynson, In his other hand, to pricke him if | Hee should flinge oute
 his buttocke to much, | And one behinde him, wth y^e Chambrier to keepe
 Him from goinge backwards, & then Lett y^e ——— | Cauallerise Rayse

him De ferme a ferme, — a litle | Att firste, muste satisfye you, for Roome
was | Nott builte of a day, — thus tieing ^hhimshorte hee | Cannot rise high,
& therefore to finde his Ease | Hee goes vppon y^e hanches, xxxxxxxxx|

Tie him so still, & then make him goe vppon | Voltaes, wth y^e same helpes
only y^e man wth y^e | Chambrier muste helpe him wthin y^e turne, | Low
vppon his croupe, because his fore partes | Leades, & therefore tends to y^e
Center, & his ——— | Croupe flyes itt, xxxxxxxxx|

[f.30^r] Tie him wth y^e same rayne still, w^{ch} is y^e righte rayne, | And now make
him goe backwards, w^{ch} is to rayse | Him, & hee wth y^e poynson to pricke
him in y^e ——— | Spurring place, to putt in his croupe, so that | Now his
croupe Leades, & therefore tendes to | y^e Center, & his fore parts follows
& flyes y^e | Center, — xxxxxxxxx |

Tie, him wth y^e same rayne still, & now make him | Goe side ways In
Coruetts, & still on y^e right hand ——— | Butt Lett y^e piller bee on y^e
out ide of his heade, ——— | wth y^e same helpes still, — remember as yo^r
principall | Worke that y^e Inward rayne bee tied very shorte | To y^e piller,
for that Doth all y^e Worke & Is moste | Effectuall, xxxxxxxxx|

And y^e Cauallaritza, wth two Rodds In his hands to | Helpe him wth one
rodd vppon y^e breaste, to rayse | Him, & helpe him wth y^e other rodd vnder
his belly | For ther is no thing will putt him more of y^e hanches | Then that,
xxxxxxx|

[f.30^v] Now tie him wth y^e Lefte Cauatzaine rayne to y^e | Piller, bee sure it bee
very shorte for thatts y^e | Great Secrett & mistery of this busines, — & then
| worke him In all kindes, for y^e Lefte hand as you | Did for y^e righte hand,
both De ferme a ferme, on | His voltaes, forward on his voltaes, backward,
| And side wayes for y^e Lefte hand, xxxxxxxxx|

Thus much to worke horses in Coruetts | On both hands wthout any body
of him | And to make him sencible to y^e hand & y^e heele, | For thus hee
takes a good Apewie, vppon y^e bridle | The Cauatzaine raynes giues y^e bent
or Ply | And y^e poynson makes him obay y^e heele ——— |

Now that y^e horse is thus forward vpon his Ayre | Gett vpon him, y^e righte Cauatzaine rayne tied shorte, |

To make him goe De ferme, a ferme, hold yo^r hand steady | And raise him, — when you goe vpon voltaes helpe him | Gentlye wth y^e outward rayne, of y^e bridle, & yo^r Leggs | not helping, if wth Eyther gentlye wth y^e inward Legg, | To putt out his Croupe, for Else hee could not goe ——— | Forward, — y^e rayne still shorte when you goe vpon | His Ayre, [^]backwards then helpe him wth y^e Inward rayne of | y^e |

[f.31^r] The bridle, & yo^r outward Legg, bring in yo^r righte sholder, | And rather Looke a litle out of y^e turne, & pull | Him Circ^ulerly backe, Euerytime, to make him goe | Side wayes, on y^e righte ^{hand}, Lett y^e pillar bee on y^e out | Side of his head, & helpe him with the Inward | Rayne, & out ward Legg, xxxxxxxxxxx|

For y^e Lefte hand, y^e Lefte Cauatzaine rayne | Tied shorte, & helpe him Juste as you Did | For y^e righte hand, only Changing rayne & | Legg, for y^e Lefte hand, — To make him goe | De ferme, a ferme forward vpon his voltaes | Backward vpon his voltaes, & Side wayes | Vpon his Voltaes, all now for y^e Lefte hand |

The same method for Demy Ayres Groupadoes ——— | Balotadoes, & Capriolls y^e Inward Cauatzane rayne | Tied shorte to y^e *Pomell* ^{Pillar} itt putts him vpon y^e hand, | And giues Liberty for y^e Croupe, w^{ch} is naturall | For all Leapes, for how should hee leape, if his | Croupe bee subiected, — This method for working | Horses is y^e moste Excellent In y^e World for all | Maner of Ayres whatsoever, & therefore practice | Itt, and non Else, — xxxxxxxxxxx|

[f.31^v. uncanceled] To worke Horses vpon Ayres Loose | And firste for Coruetts, vpon voltaes |

[cancelled] Tie y^e Cauatzaine rayne my way, but lett y^e right | Rayne bee putt through y^e ringe on y^e Lefte side, | And so tied to y^e pomell, this putts vpp his head, & | So putt him on y^e hanches, & bringes In his Inward | Sholder, w^{ch} is righte, make him goe on his voltaes | on y^e righte hand, —

& to tie y^e lefte Cauatzaine | Rayne to y^e righte ringe, & to tie itt to y^e poñell | For y^e lefte hand, & helpe him wth y^e Inward rayne, | of y^e bridle still, xxxxxxxxx|

For Coruetts only with y^e rayns | of the bridle In voltaes. |

Coruetts is y^e same thinge, & therefore y^e same helpes | As for Terra, terra, only you muste stay him more | of y^e hand, Indeed to goe very Litle forward for ——— | Then hee goes more of y^e hanches, to helpe wth y^e | Inward rayne, & outward Legg, & y^e Inward Legg | A Litle to him, — butt not to strong, & that toe | A Litle out, & both y^e toes Doune, to bee weake | In y^e Hams, — & yo^r helpes Gentle, not so violente | As ^l^u Terra, terra, — to helpe him *Every time, wth y^e | Hand, — tis true, y^e horses fore Leggs are neerer ——— | To gether, & so wthin y^e Lines of his hinder Leggs ——— | being |*

[f.32^r] Being widder, — but itt is as true, that his hinder | Leggs are wthin y^e lines of his sholders, w^{ch} makes | Him vppon y^e hanches, — to Change vppon Coruetts | on y^e right hand, yo^r hand is on y^e Lefte side, to pull | The inward rayne, & yo^r out ward Legg, when you | Change, change yo^r hand to y^e righte side to pull y^e | Inward rayne for y^e Lefte hand, & yo^r contrary Legg, | you will, ——— |

[uncancelled:]

For Coruetts

[cancelled:] By a wall forward ye Lefte side of y^e horse to y^e wall, Helpe wth y^e rayne from y^e wall, for now hee leades | wth his fore parts, & his hinder partes followes ——— | And therefore Inlargd before, & straightend | behinde, & not helpe wth y^e Leggs att all, xxxxxxxxx|

Backward on y^e same side, w^{ch} is y^e Lefte side to | The wall, you muste helpe wth y^e rayne to y^e wall | Because now y^e horse Leades wth his croupe, & his | Foreparts followes, & therefore now muste bee | Straightend before & In largd behinde, w^{ch} those | Helpes doe, not helping wth y^e Leggs att all, ——— |

[f.32^v] Yo^r righte side to y^e wall for Coruetts, forward y^e | Rayne from y^e wall,
— backward on y^e same side | Helpe wth y^e rayne to y^e wall, — for y^e
same Resons | I told you before, xxxxxxxxx|

Side wayes on a righte Line, on w^{ch} hand soeuer | You goe, — helpe wth
y^e Inward rayne & outward | Legg, y^e Croupe a Litle before y^e sholders, &
bringe | In the Inward sholder, & outward Legg ——— |

To make the Cross In Coruetts, |

When y^e horse goes forward in Coruetts helpe wth | The right rayne, both
yo^r Leggs Equally a Litle to | Him, — when hee goes backward helpe him
wth the | lefte rayne, & not wth yo^r Leggs att all, — when hee | Goes side
wayes on y^e righte hand, helpe him wth y^e righte rayne, & contrary Legg,
— When hee goes | Side wayes on y^e Lefte hand, Lefte rayne & contrary |
Legg, — So heere is in Coruetts forward, Backward | And on both sides,
w^{ch} is the Cross, xxxxxxxxx|

[f.33^r. uncanceled] For the Sereband.

[cancelled] For y^e sereband helpe wth y^e outward rayne, & out= | ward sholder,
& not helpe wth y^e Leggs at all, ——— | This is ^a Coruett on y^e righte
hande, & ^{the} nexte Coruett | on y^e Lefte hand, Changing Euary Coruett,
Euary | Time from hand, to hand, & this is a right Sereban, |

Heere is all that can bee Done In Coruetts |

For your body you muste a Litle goe to that w^{ch} | Comes to you, yo^r toes
Doun, to bee weake Dounwards | And strong vppwards, In all Ayres, &
helpe Euary | Time with the hand, xxxxxxxxx|

To Dress Horses In Croupadoes, Balotadoes, & Capriolls, | There is no way
like my new way at y^e single piller, | For all Ayres, what soeuer, — butt
when you try | Him Loose, Eyther forward or vppon voltaes, you | Muste
alwayes helpe wth y^e outward Rayne, if vppon, | Circles, outward rayne,
& Inward Leggs a Litle, ——— | Sitt straight, & when y^e horse raynes his
Croupe | Putt, outt yo^r breaste, & yo^r sholders a Litle backe, | Butt so as
the beholders may not perceave itt, |

Iff you make horses from y^e single piller my way | Then thus, walke him forward, & then make him | Make one Leape, & presently rayse him high one | Pesate, & so by Litle & Litle, hee will leape perfectly |

[f.33^v] The helpes with the Rodd |

Is not so good for solders Horses, for they should | Goe only wth y^e hand, & y^e heele, for y^e sords muste | Bee in yo^r righte hand, & not y^e rodd, — Butt you may | Vse itt to shew itt on y^e contrary side still on | w^{ch} hee goes, or hold itt vpp wth a grace at Euery | Change, xxxxxxxxxx|

For Terra, terra, with the Rodd |

On y^e right hand hold vpp y^e rodd high, wth a Grace, | And giue him some times a blow on y^e sholders, if | There bee need, & some times a blow ouer yo^r sholder | Vppon y^e Croupe, if hee requier itt, — for Terra, terra, | On y^e Lefte hand, hold y^e rodd vpp high, or putt itt | To his flanke, wth a Grace, & hold it there, Duering | his Voltaes, or giue him a blow wth itt on y^e flanke | or on y^e sholder if hee requier itt, — y^e same helpes | wth y^e rodd, vppon Demy Voltaes, or Pasadoes, — | For y^e Piroyte hold it on y^e Contrary side still, |

For Coruetts with the rodd |

on y^e righte hand In voltaes, yo^r rodd some what shorte | And helpe him Cross y^e necke, wth a Grace sometimes ——— | Touching him, & Sometimes not, & a good blow now | & then Iff hee requier itt, ——— |

[f.34^r] On y^e Lefte hand In Coruetts, helpe him on y^e right | Sholder, wth a grace, and a Juste Time, xxxxxxxxxx|

An other helpe wth y^e rodd, In Coruetts, y^e rodd | A Litle Long, & to whiske, & shake itt forwards, & | Backwards, wth yo^r Arme vpp, butt not straighte | To bowe a Litle in y^e Elbow, — when you goe forward | The horses righte Side to y^e wall, ther is no helpe | wth y^e rodd more gracefull then to strike y^e wall | Perpetually wth the Rodd, xxxxxxxxxx|

To helpe with the Rodd | In all maner of Leapes | Thus ——— |

To whiske y^e rodd forward, & backward is A gracefull | Helpe, but it
forces \wedge^a horse a litle to forward vntill | Hee bee vsed to itt, xxxxxxxxx|
To helpe y^e horse wth y^e rodd, not ouer yo^r sholder, but | ouer y^e bente of
yo^r Arme, yo^r Arme from yo^r body, | And a Litle bowed, & so y^e poynte
of y^e rodd, will fall | In y^e midle of his Croupe, This is a gracefull helpe, |
Butt somewhate Dificulte to Doe, xxxxxxxxx|

Butt y^e beste Sureste helpe though not so gracefull, | Is to turne y^e rodd
in yo^r hand y^e poynte toward his | Croupe, & helpe him so Euery time, &
In time, one stroke | only |

[f.34^v] only, butt if hee rayse not his Croupe, Enough then | Helpe him De toute
tente, w^{ch} is two, or three | Strokes to gether In time, & this is y^e sureste
helpe |

Iff yo^r horse bee very lighte behinde w^{ch} few are — | Then helpe him only
before wth y^e rodd, & in time, ——— |

Iff you would make yo^r horse only Groupe wth his ——— | Hinder parts,
& not stricke outt, then helpe him on y^e | Midle of his croupe, if you would
haue him stricke | out, then helpe him wth yo^r rodd on y^e setting on of
his | Docke, — & if you would haue him putt both his ——— | Hinder
Leggs vnder his belly, then stricke him wth y^e | Rodd, a litle a boue y^e
Cambrills, so these three ——— | Seuerall helpes wth y^e rodd, makes yo^r
horse to | Groupe, to stricke oute, & to putt his hinder Leggs Vnder his
belly, xxxxxxxxx|

But there is no helpe wth y^e rodd, Like helpeing Him wth two rodde, on
to rayse him before, & y^e | other rodd to helpe him vnder his belly, w^{ch}
putts | Him so much vppon y^e hanches, as nothing is like itt | or neere
itt, vppon Coruetts, when hee is tied — | Shorte my new way att y^e single
Piller, xxxxxxxxx|

[f.35^r] A Discourse A boue the single piller, | The old way w^{ch} is moste false
for | Terra, terra, |

Now I will shew you y^e greate Error of him that Inuened [*sic.*] | The single

piller, firste, for Terra, terra — w^th y^e long | Rope or longe — Letting you
 see, that all slope lines, | workes not for Terra, terra, but only myne, w^ch is A
 | Slope line Cross his necke, — As for Exsample, y^e long | Rayne at y^e single
 piller, this long rayne or rope at one | End is tied to y^e Cauatzaine, & at y^e
 other End is fixed | To y^e piller, or held ther by a groome, — this is a slope
 line | From y^e horse to y^e piller, but this workes his sholders | Furyously,
 Indeed, but hath nothing to Doe w^th his | Hinder parts, att all, — as my
 slope Cross his necke | Hath, — nay this Long Rope workes his outward
 sholder, | And so straightens his foreparts, & inlarges his hinderparts —
 — w^ch is false, lattine In Terra, terra, his hinderparts muste | always be
 straightend & his foreparts InLargd, — & y^e Long | Rayne at y^e single
 piller, doth y^e contrary, & hath nothing | To doe w^th his hinder parts, — as
 you shall perceave by this, | His foreparts straightend, & his hinderparts are
 widd, if | His hinder parts bee widd, then his fore parts, — itt | Cannot
 bee a righte Terra, terra, — or if his croupe bee | out, — then they spurr
 In his croupe to make him righte, | w^ch is as wrong being In, as when it
 was out, for y^e | Same widdnes his Leggs are of, when they are out, y^e |
 Very same widdnes his hinder Leggs are of, when his | Croupe is put In, —
 & being In, now his hinder Legg w^thin y^e | Turne goes before his sholder,
 w^thin y^e turne, w^ch is | Abhominable false, that may, as much false as when
 | his |

[f.35^v] His croupe was out, & his outward hinder legg then widd | Then his
 outward fore legg, on y^e same side, when his croupe | His out, so that
 y^e long Rope at y^e single piller, Is an ——— | Ignorant thing, for Terra,
 terra, & moste false, because | Itt workes nothing Vppon y^e hinder parts,
 & straightens only his sholders, w^ch is Juste Contrary, to Terra, terra, And
 thus you see that rare Inuention is worth nothing ——— |

[The remaining bit of this section is squashed in small writing in margin &
 under last line & the rule; the order in the MS is confusing]

[cancelled]

{& beside[s] hee leades with his Inwarde for legg, & his outwarde hinder |
 legg followes, which Is moste false, & a trott vppon the action of a galope= |

=onlye continues | the side false | when his inward | hinder legg | sholde followe | his outwarde | false ——— | his In warde forr legg — this is the longe rayne that pulls In | sholder so such as make his outwarde hinder legg to followe}

[Fair Hand] To Putt A Horse Between the Pillers | The old Way is naughte, for these | Resons Following ——— |

Firste if y^e Raynes w^{ch} are tied to y^e two pillers | Bee straighte, hee goes vppon y^e Cauatzaine w^{ch} | Is his nose, & neyther vppon y^e barrs, or y^e Curbe, So that hee hath no Apewie at all, w^{ch} is the | Principall thing, & thats y^e reson that moste ——— | of their horses will goe between y^e pillers, & will | Nott goe from them, because they goe on y^e Cauatzaine | And not on y^e hand, & when they Come to bee Ridd | only wth y^e bitt, they know nothinge of itt, & so | Goes not ^{att} all, I say some, but I will slacke the | Cauatzaine raynes that hee shall goe only of y^e Bitt, | I Answere that then. hee may as well worke him ——— | From y^e Pillers, & better, for then y^e raynes of the | Cauatzaine are of no Effecte, ——— |

[f.36^r] Thus for Coruette, — then for Leaping ——— | Horses itt is worse, — for a Leapeing Horse ——— | Goes moste of the hand, & between y^e pillers, hee | Goes on the Cauatzaine, w^{ch} is the reson ^{that} so many | of their leaping horses, goes between the Pillers, | And will not goe from them, but ther is an- | other thing w^{ch} is Ill, — And that is all | Leaping Horses should haue their Croupes free, | And at Liberty, or Else how should they Leape | And tying a horse beetween the Pillers Doth | So much subiecte his Croupe, w^{ch} is against ——— | The nature of a Leape, *that* ^{Itt} is Impossible hee | should leape, wth that freedome, and if hee | Doe Leape, wth great payne, and Constraynd ——— | Therefore the two pillers is naughte for Ayres | Espetially for Leaping Horses, xxxxxxxxx|

Heere Is the world or mapp of Horseman= | shipe, Incircled wth seuerall Ilandes by, where | Ther is all maner, of maneges, Galloping and | Changing all maner of wayes, Eyther w^{thin} the | Circle, or w^{thout} itt, vppon Quarters for | Both hands, workeing his sholders of his | croup, |

[f.36^v] Walkeing, Trotting, Galloping, Serpeient, ——— | Runing, Terra, terra,
his Croupe out, his Croupe | In, Pasadoes, Demy voltas, Coruetts, on y^e
Voltaes, | Par Les Droyt, & Capriolls, his head to y^e wall, | Bias, oualls,
squars, & what nott, xxxxxxxxx|

[Rest of page taken up in fairly elaborate diagram]

[f.37^r; Cramped Hand] Ther Is one Article that you muste | remember which
Is this, thatt Itt Is | Impossible for anye Horse to obaye the | Heele thatt Is
nott Vppoñ the Hande. | & therefore bee shure to giue your Horse | a good
Apewie & make hiñ firme off | the Hande which Is the foundation | of all
this arte ——— |

Ther Is nothinge In the worlde thatt | disgrases a Horse more In his goinge |
theñ to whiske his Tayle vpp & downe | In all his Actions — To remedye Itt
| theye vse to tie Itt with a quinsell | which doth butt hinder hiñ for | the
time for Iff the quinsell Breake | hee will whiske Itt as Ill as Euer | hee did
— Therefore I will teach you | heer a Secrett thatt will Cuer thatt | disease
— which Is this — Cutt the | greate nerue, or leadinge sinewe | Cross thatt
Is Vnder his Tayle & hee | Shall neuer shake or whiske Itt | more & Itt shall
doe him no preiudice | In the worlde Eyther for his strength, | or turninge,
or anye thinge more | then thatt vice off shakinge his | tayle to bee Totalye
Cuerde. |

[f.37^v; Fair Hand] For Bitts:

{the Laste}

I shall giue you very shorte Lessons for Bitts | For where ther are Eyther
bookes: or liueing = | Horsemen, that thinkes them selues wise, & ——— |
Great masters by y^e Diuersety of bitts, both the | Aughters, & y^e Liueing
horsemen shew themselues | To knowing men, full of Ignorance, & Simple
people, | Thinkeing that a peece of Iron, In a horses mouth | Can bring
him knowledg, no more then a booke in | A boyes hand, can at firste make
him reade,. — or | A payre of spurrs planted on Ignorante Heeles ——— |
Can make one Ride well, — yett ther is a propriety | To fitt Euery horse,
according to y^e turne of his | necke, shorter or Longer, wider, or narrower,

| the mouth, y^e Liberty wider, or narrow, y^e Eye | Longer, or shorter, y^e Eye straighte or more bending, | the branches stronger or weaker, y^e Curbe Equall, | The Hookes according to y^e Juste measure of y^e bitt, ——— | The Curbe three good round Esses wth one ringe wher | Tis fastned, & two ringes or malions, where tis curbed | Hansomeley furnishte wth Bosses, not too bigg, richer | or poorer according as you please, not two Roes [*sic.*] of | Litle Cheanes, tied to y^e bitt, wthin his mouth, only one at y^e moste, — And this Rule Euer to haue, as | Litle Iron in yo^r horses mouth, as posible you can ——— | if, |

[f.38^r] Iff his Tong bee bigg, y^e Liberty muste bee y^e wider | if his tong bee litle, y^e liberty y^e Less, butt you muste | Take heed that y^e Apewie, or resting place of y^e bitt | Bee neuer made vppon y^e liberty, for it will Gaule | Him, butt y^e Apewie, muste bee made, on y^e true place | where it aughte to bee, w^{ch} is aboute ones Litle | Finger breath beyond y^e Liberty, on both sides of y^e bitt | And y^e bitt to bee ones finger breath a boue his Tushes, | The branches strong, or weake, is when y^e raynes are | slackte, those branches that Comes backe to his | Necke, moste are weake, those that goes forward | From his necke, are strong, & good reson, for you haue | The greater pull, — you muste measure wth a litle | String, or peece of a rideing rodd from y^e Eye of y^e bitt, | Straight Doune, & if y^e Cheekes, bee wthin that Line | They are still y^e weaker, if y^e Cheekes bee wthout that | Line, then they are strong, & y^e more they are wthout | That Line, they are y^e stronger, — you muste consider | An other thing, w^{ch} is this, that y^e Cheekes is Like | A Lauer²¹⁰ y^e str^Λonger it is, itt hath y^e more force, | And y^e shorter it is y^e Less force, for a boy wth a Long | Lauer, will Lifte vpp more then y^e Strongeste man, wth a short Lauer, — & so is a bitt, y^e Longer y^e Cheekes | are |

[f.38^v] Are they haue y^e more force, & y^e shorter they | Are y^e Less force, for that w^{ch} is y^e furthest | From y^e Center, hath y^e moste force for Lifting | or pulling, & that w^{ch} is neereste y^e Center, the | Leaste force, so very shorte Cheekes makes them | As strong as you will, Cannot haue that force that | Longer Cheekes haue, xxxxxxxxx|

²¹⁰ That is, 'lever'

Iff A horse hold vpp his head & out then they | Haue shorter branches,
 & stronger, to pull him | Doune, & In, wherein they are halfe righte, so if
 | A horse hold his head too lowe, & bring it In, too round | So that hee
 Armes himselfe againeste y^e bitt, w^{ch} is | To reste y^e branches vppon his
 breaste, so that you | Haue no pull or Comānd of him att All, because this
 | Vice is contrary to holding Vpp his head, & out, for | W^{ch} vice they had
 shorter Cheekes, & stronger to | Bring itt In, — So Armeing Againste y^e
 bitt, being y^e | Contrary vice, they thinke they muste haue y^e bitt | Made
 Contrary, — they muste haue a long one to putt | Itt vpp, — & sence a
 strong branch puld him Doune ——— | They muste haue a weake branch
 to putt vpp his head | wherein they are mightily Deceued, — for when
 ——— | A horse Armes himselfe a gaineste y^e bitt sertenly | long |

[f.39^r] Long branches will sooner come to his breaste then shorte | ones, And itt
 is as sertene, that a weake branch will | Come sooner to his breaste, then
 A strong branch, ——— | Therefore thay are so much Deceued, As for a
 horse | That Armes himselfe a gaineste y^e bitt, you muste haue | A shorte
 branch, that will not touch his breaste, & | A strong branch to keepe itt,
 yett further from his | Breaste, — The Hookes of y^e Curbe aughte to bee
 made | A litle longer, & so Juste as not to hurte or to offend | The sides
 of his Cheekes, & if y^e curbe doe not lie | In his righte place, two litle Iron
 Ringes fastned | Close to y^e topp of y^e hookes, to keepe them steady, &
 | Faste, is y^e beste remedy, *w^{ch} I haue used many ——— | Yeares, before*
I saw itt in monsieur De pluvinell, | All other Deuices in bitts, or Curbs,
 are Idle and Ignorante thinges, butt these that follow w^{ch} | Are the beste
 Bitts, xxxxxxxxx|

- 1: A Playne Canon with Branches A la Counetable, |
- 2: Or A Playne Scatch, wth Branches A la Connetable |
- 3: or a Canon a La Pignitall, w^{ch} is a gentle falling & | moueing vpp
 & doune, & so low as not to hurte y^e Roofe | of y^e horses mouth, — w^{ch} is
 beste sertenly for all horses | That haue tonges, desireing they should not
 bee preste, | Therefore I reco^mend that Liberty to you a boue all thinges, |
 In Bitts, y^e branches a La Counetable, |

[f.39^v] 4: or a scatch wth a Liberty a La Pigniotell, w^{ch} I like | Better then a Cañon, because it is gentler, for his ——— | Mouth, & fills ^Λitt not vpp so much, thrusting his Lipps ——— | Vpp, I would vse these all moste to all horses, wth | Branches alwayes A La Counetable, |

5: To Discharg A horses Lipps I would haue oliues, wth | The Liberty a La pigniotell, those oliues Coming ——— | Shorte a litle of y^e bitt, wth some Litle ringes ——— | Giues Liberty for his Lipps, & Discharges them ——— | The branches A la Counetable, xxxxxxxxxxx|

6: To Discharg A horses Lipps, I would haue mellons, wth | A Liberty, A la Pigniotell w^{ch} is very good to, and | Discharges his Lipps, y^e same way I told you before ——— | with oliues, y^e branches A la Counetable xxxxxxxxxxx|

Soe that all y^e bitts that Euer I would vse are butt six, y^e branches butt one kinde, — nor y^e Curbe butt | one kinde, — Butt Indeed I would neuer vse butt three kindes of bitts, |

1: W^{ch} is y^e Cañon with Liberty A la Pigniotell ——— |

2: *The Scatch with Liberty a la pigniotell* ——— |

[f.40^r] 3: And y^e oliues or mellons A la pigniotell, ——— | All y^e branches A la Counetable, ——— |

Butt Indeed I would haue butt two sortes of Bitts, |

1: W^{ch} is the *Scatch cañon* A la Pigniotell, |

2: And y^e oliues A la Pigniotell to Discharg his Lippe | Iff need bee, the branches Alwayes a la Counetable, |

Only to giue a horse An Apewie a Cañon or A | Scatch, without Liberty, xxxxxxxxxxx|

Thus you haue y^e truth of Bitts braught into a narrow | Compass, knowing ther is Litle In them, to bring A | Horse to vnderstanding, w^{ch} wee muste worke of, w^{ch} | Is his reson, — by y^e fauor of y^e Logitians, Distinction,

| For were they as good horsemen, as scollers they would Haue made an other Distinction, — well then itt is not | A Peece of Iron, can make a horse knowing, if itt | were a bitt maker, hee would bee y^e beste Horseman ——— | No itt is y^e Arte of good & a propriated Lessons, fitting | Euery horse according to his nature, Dispotition, and | strength, punishing, & wth good Lessons, rectefeing | His vices, & rewarding him, & preserueing him In his | Horse vertues, — not trusting ^{an} Ignorant pece | of Iron Calld a Bitt, for Ile make a perfect horse | wth |

[f.40^v] Wth a cautzaine w^{thout} a Bitt, better then any | Man shall wth his Bitt, w^{thout} a cautzaine, so | Highly is y^e Cauatzaine rightly vsed, to bee ——— | Esteemed, For I shewed a Barbe at Antwerpe | That went perfectly wth y^e Cauatzaine w^{thout} | A Bitt, as could bee, — w^{ch} was true Arte & not y^e Ignorance & folly of Bitts, — As y^e famous Pigniotell | att Naples, neuer vsed but simple Bitts, w^{ch} made | The Ignorant wonder how hee could Dress Horses | So perfectly wth no more sortes of Bitts, but hee | Told them it was their Ignorance, & his Arte, | And so Did that great master, In this Arte: ——— | Monsieur Des Pluinell Did y^e same, — for the Cauatzaine | Alwayes a playne one, & not to Shra^rpe, & to make itt | Gentler alwayes Line itt, wth Double Leather, at y^e | Leaste, for a horse to wrie his head, or sucke vpp | His Bitt, or putt his Tonge ouer y^e Bitt, Itt neuer | Hapens in my manege, or methood, for y^e Liberty ——— | A La Pigniotell, hinders his tonge for goeing ouer y^e | Bitt, & workeing wth y^e Cauatzaine, so truely ——— | Slacking y^e Bitt, those thinges neuer happens — or ——— | Euer putts out their tongues, *if hee doe & will not* | *Mend itt, cutt it off, thatt is wth A round* ——— | *Instrumente, that is firery Hott, forind [sic.] a Litle* | *Round, Like y^e End of his tonge y^e Instrument Sharp* | his |

[f.41^r] Tong Layd on A Litle bord, Cutt itt, & share ^{seer} itt thus Together, but truely if you worke according to the | Method of this booke you need non of these ——— | Extremeties, for y^e horse will fall into none of ——— | These vices, — for I alwayes Aduise gentlenes and ——— | Patience wth good Lessons, — & neuer to hurte or | offend y^e horse, if you can helpe itt, and neuer ——— | Ride or take more of him then, halfe what hee |

Can Doe, & so you will not only preserue, him, but | Hee will take pleasure
 In Euery thing hee Doth, | And hee will loue y^e manege, & loue you, —
 w^ch otherwise | Hee would bee tiered & hate you, & y^e manege, — when |
 you should make him take Delighte In you & y^e | Manege, by all y^e wayes
 posibly you can, — & ther Is | Non more then to take but Litle of him,
 at a time, | And bee Prodigall of yo^r rewardes, & kindenes to him, | And
 nigerdly of yo^r punishments, & neuer bee Angry | When you punish, —
 And thus much For Bitts, | And the Cauatzaine, ———xxxxxxxx|

[This is the end of the Fair Hand section.]

[f.41^r; Cramped hand, cancelled text]

One Article more, remember for a greate truth, | that ther Is no Horse can
 posiblye obaye the | heele, exsepte hee haue a good Apewie, bee verye |
 firme off his heade, & a good mouth, which | Is to bee firme off the hande,
 butt nott harde | butt a temperate Mouth, firme, & light. |

[f.41^v] Ther Is one thinge thatt Is the moste | Vncomleye, & the disgrasefulste
 thinge | A Horse cañ doe, & thatt Is to whiske | his Tayle Iñ all the actions
 thatt hee | makes, The remedye which Is coñon | they vse to tie his tayle
 with a | quinsell, — Itt doth remedye that vice | as *Itt* longe as Itt holdes,
 — Butt the | beste thinge Iñ the worlde Is to Cutt | the Greate Nerue
 Cross thatt Is Vnder his tayle & theñ hee shall neuer whiske | or shake Itt
 a geñ, & Itt will doe him | no hurte Iñ the worlde more theñ | when tis
 Cutt, eyther In his strength | or Turninge — & ther is no remedye | like
 this. ——— |

For a Horse to obaye the hande | & to obaye the heele, att one time.|

Itt Is Imposible for a Horse to obaye the | heele, Exsepte hee bee Vppoñ
 the Hande, | & to make hiñ obaye the hande, ther Is | nothinge better,
 theñ to worke, & Suple | his sholders by the former Lessons for Itt | putts
 hiñ Vppoñ the hande because Itt putts | hiñ vppoñ the sholders butt
 his croupe | Is loste so hee obayes litle or nothinge | of the heele Iñ those
 Lessons, workinge | the Sholders. ——— |

[f.42^r] Butt to putt a Horse vppoñ the hande & | to obaye the heele together, att the same | time, Thus you muste putt Iñ his croupe | & tye the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne my | waye to the poñell; or iff thatt putt hiñ | nott oñ the hande Enough; theñ tie the | Cauatzane Raynes to the Girthes, & the | other Ende tied to the poñell, Or if thatt | putt hiñ nott oñ the hande Enough, Then | tie both the Endes off the Cauatzane raynes | to the Girth, one ende goinge thorowe the | Ringe off the Cauatzane — Ande his Croupe | beinge nowe Iñ, press hiñ oñ the outeside | off the Turne, that hee maye learne oñ the oute side, which you maye Easeleye knowe | by his neck, when Itt leanes oñ the oute | Side, to make Itt so, you muste pull Vpp, | & Iñ his musle, to looke In to the Turne | & press the outwarde legg, harde Vppoñ | the Sturrops, stiff Iñ the Ham & longer | then the Inwarde legg, by a handfull | att the leaste, & the Inwarde legg, the | toe a litle oute, *the legg withoute the turne | a litle out*, the legg withoute the turne | a litle backwarder, theñ the Inwarde legg, the outwarde sholder lower, then the Inwarde sholder, a pretty dell, | turninge your heade to the Inwarde | Sholder your hande to staye his Sholders |

[f.42^v] Iff nott to putt them a litle oute all this | Is to leane oñ the oute side off the Turne, | to putt Iñ his outwarde Hanch; which | alwayes muste bee doñ, as longe as a Horses | Croupe Is Iñ, & iff the Horse leane oñ the | oute side, hee cañ neuer bringe Iñ his | outwarde sholder, to putt oute his croupe, butt bee alwayes oñ the Hanches,; you | muste alwayes holde your hande on the | Contrarye side, off his neck, & iff hee bee | nott oñ the hande Enough, you muste holde | your hande lower, Eueñ vppoñ his neck, | & forwarder iff neede bee to putt hiñ forwarder, butt alwayes your hande | oñ the oute side off the Turne, to pull | the Inwarde Rayne, & to oblige hiñ to | reste oñ his legges, oñ the oute side of the | turne for the former resons I gaue you : ——— | Thus the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne beinge | tied, & helpinge as I haue tolde you, putts | hiñ vppoñ the Hanches, & makes hiñ obaye | the hande & the heele att one time because | you worke onely with the Bridle, & the | Cauatzane beinge so tied, keepes hiñ to | thatt degree off the hande as hee aught | to bee, ——— |

[f.43^r] Remember when his Croupe Is In Itt Is | the petit Gallope, Large as you
Can; which | putts him on the hanches, nothing like Itt, | nor anye thinge
to make him obeye the | hande, & heele like Itt; His Croupe In | Vpon
a Walke or Paseger this waye Is | Exselent to, both to putt him on the
hanches, | & to make him obeye both the hande, & | the heele; together |
To make him goe | lowe, the hande lowe, to make him goe | hier, the hande
hier. ——— |

Howe to Ride onely with the Bridle | Raynes In your hande for Terra |
Terra, ——— |

When you leane on the oute side, harde | Vpon the Sturrope, *your outwarde*
| *Sholder doune, you muste putt your* | *bridle hande* your outwarde sholder
| doune you muste putt your Bridle hande | on the Contrarye side, off his
neck, lowe | Iff hee bee nott vpon the hande turninge | Vpp your litle finger
Equall In a line | to your Outwarde Sholder, & to putt | his Sholders still
frome the Turne | which will putt his outwarde hanch | In, this for the
Righte hande: ——— | you muste putt your hande on the lefte | Side of his
Neck:— For the lefte hande | Putt your bridle hande on the right side | off
his Neck. ——— |

[f.43^v] Turninge Vpp your litle finger, Indeed | all your hande on both Sides, to
your right | Sholder, puttinge his Sholders still frome | the Turne, to putt
In his outwarde Hanch | & your Bridle hande Lowe; — That Is to pull |
the Inwarde Rayne as much to his neck | as you Can by pullinge Itt on the
contrarye | Side, Cross his neck, This to putt him vpon | the hande, & to
make him goe lowe before, | the hande beinge lowe, & pressinge him | on
the oute Side putts him Vpon the | hanches. — Iff the Horse bee to harde
| Vpon the hande, the Cauatzane tied to | the pomell, nott to bringe him
In to lowe, | & your bridle hande hye to your outwarde | Sholder, still, &
Iff hee bringe nott In | his Inwarde Sholder Enough, Then | your hande hye
to your outwarde Sholder Still, This Is Exactlye the Truth. ——— |

Iff his Sholders coume nott In Enough, | Then your hande on the In side off
his | neck; Iff theye Coume In to faste, then | on the oute side off his Neck
——— |

The same helpes for Coruetts, & Demy | Ayrs. ——— | For the Piroyte the
outwarde Rayne | which Is your hande within the | Turne, & the outwarde
Legge. — The | Same for Pasadoes by a Wall, or otherwise | outwarde
Rayne, & outwarde Legge. |

[f.44^r] Remember one thing thatt fewe, or none | myndes, which Is a Principall
thinge | That Is a musicall time, Iñ Euerye thinge | you doe as for a Gallope
Thus |

[uncancelled: notes on staves, underneath is written:] Gallope Pater pater pater
patter | Ruñinge pater pater pater pater as faste as you can: |

[more notes on and under staves:]

[cancelled] Terra Terra Pa:Ta Pa Ta Coruetts Pa:Ta, Pa Ta Leapes PaTa, Pa
Ta. | quick frome the grounde, & to staye Vppon | the hande, All Ayrs
aught to bee so | & withoute this musick In your heade | you shall neuer
make anye Horse goe | Juste, butt Euerye Horse takes his | owne time,
which you muste followe |

Iff you Cañ nott dress a Horse by these | Rules, you are Iñ greate Danger |
nott to vnderstande Them, & you | will hardlye finde better off | your owne
——— |

[f.44^v; uncancelled] Exselente Names for Horses off Manege | Both Iñ Etalieñ,
& French. | Etalien Names for Horses |

Bella Donia — 1	Vrsulina — 22
Bell In Campo — 2	Nobilissimo — 23
Desperato — 3	Doltche — 24
Argentino — 4	Bona natura — 25
Dorato — 5	Bellisimo — 26
Gatto — 6	Bonissimo — 27
Gatino — 7	Miltes Flore — 28
Roundinella — 8	Almenara — 29
Feltche — 9	Nuntio — 30
Lampo — 10	Dragon — 31
Sauro Speranso — 11	Arogantillio — 32
Capitano — 12	Dimonde — 33
Lupo — 13	Arogante — 34
Mahaumilia — 14	Brauo — 35
Mala Testa — 15	Cauallo Imperiall — 36
Melencolia — 16	Emperator — 37
Genette — 17	Gra ^u disimo — 38
Coursier Napolitan — 18	Elustrisimo — 39
Rubican — 19	
Signiore — 20	
Dilitia — 21	

[f.45^r; uncanceled] French Names for Horses | Off Manege. ——— |

Fauorite — 1	Le Mechante — 26
Minion — 2	Le Mirilion — 27
Balott — 3	Ladmirable — 28
Galliarde — 4	Le Dilegent — 29
Bonite — 5	Le Paragon — 30
Perle — 6	Le Loyall — 31
Rousiñ — 7	Le Sensible — 32
Frison — 8	Le Ragee — 33
Sans Parellie — 9	Le Fouge — 34
Le Perfection — 10	Le Malitius — 35
Le Dilicate — 11	Lan Dormye — 36
Habell Hispanie — 12	Le Couptre Cur. — 37
Monsieur — 13	La mour — 38
Le Hobere — 14	La Maitres — 39
Le Petit Barbe — 15	Le Roye — 40
Le Grande Barbe — 16	Le Prince — 41
Le Turke — 17	Le Duke — 42
Le petit Button — 18	Lamperur — 43
Le Superbe — 19	Le Collonell — 44
Le Buffoñ — 20	Le Generall — 45
Le Mervellie — 21	Le Cardinal — 46
Le Miracle — 22	Le Pape — 47
Le Curtan — 23	Le Tempest — 48
Le Laroun — 25	Le Companion — 49
Le Comrade — 50	

[f.45^v uncanceled]

La Mie 51	Galliardon 75
Lanemie 52	Le Mouche 76
Le Philosophe 53	Le Troumpur 77
Le Vellie 54	Le Rencountre 78
Le Diable 55	Loisoye 79
Le Presedent 56	Le Mutton 80
Le Juse 57	Le Jantye 81
Le Cerebunde 58	Le Lion 82
Le Sollelie 59	Le Renarde 83
Le Capritiuse 60	Lelefante 84
Le Querelus 61	Le Pagase 85
Le Picur 62	Le Volante 86
Liuroine 63	Via Lactia 87
Le Fantas 64	Le Pigante 88
Le Teñis Ferme 65	Le Determine 89
Le Jetur 66	Le Grenoulie 90
Le Rude 67	Le Gallante 91
Le Villine 68	Le Cauulier 92
Le Cockin 69	Moun Roye 93
Le Poultron 70	Le Soldat 94
Le Pewre 71	Le Conqueror 95
Le Courage 72	Le Conselier 96
Le Desprise 73	Le Terible 97
Le Hardi 74	Le Batalie 98

Le Baute 99
Myne Heare 100
Le Toyle 101
Joue 102
Mars 103
Jupiter 104

For duch Horses
Le pisante 105
Myne Heare 106
Younker 107
Le Swiss 108
Fiisory [?] 109
Vrselina 110

[f.46^r uncanceled] Englishe Names For Horses | Proper for Huntunge & Ruñinge
| Horses. ——— |

Royster 1	Cobbe 28
Ruffin 2	Puppeye 29
Pegasus 3	Sauseye Jack 30
Mad Capp 4	Squerell 31
Prim-Rose 5	Cope Carle 32
Grass-Hopper 6	Bobb Tayle 33
Crikett 7	Criple 34
Siluer Sides 8	Counselor 35
Robin Red Breste 9	Spouter 36
Puddinge 10	Light foote 37
Blewe-Berye 11	Spanierd 38
Conquerer 12	Kill Deer 39
White Riben 13	Cutt Buttock 40
Shotteñ Heringe 14	Crope Eare 41
Willeye goe Loose 15	Playe fellowe 42
Straberries & Creame 16	Slouen 43
Rayne Bowe 17	Bones 44
Sweet Lippes 18	Spotts 45
Snowe-Bale 19	Trauelor 46
White foote 20	Spinke 47
White Mayne 21	Graye Riall 48
Button 22	Connie Skiñs 49
Pecocke 23	Hobler 50
White Rose 24	Tañer 51
Ratt 25	Dimonde 52
Cuttinge Dick 26	Willeye with the Lathe 53
White Sarke 27	Black-Back 54

[f.46^v uncanceled]

Dormouse 55
Glass Ith Arse 56
White Lipp 57

The Names off Mares

Munkeye 58	
Marye Golde 59	
Giñeye Jible 1	
Tripett 60	Giñeye with the wispe 2
Graye Boñie 62	Meggeye with the Lanterne 3
Crack Raynes 63	Bessye Bell 4
Weesell heade 64	Goldeye Loxe 5
Shrimpe 65	Baye Ladye 6
Velvett Heeles 66	Mopseye 7
Fier Brande 67	Gillioñ Thruste 8
Haue att All 68	Peggeye Brigg 9
Sweepe Stake 69	Dayntie 10
skins 70	
Peper Corne 71	
Dragoñ 72	
The Gapinge Geldinge 73	
Troute 74	
Black Squier 75	
Foxe 76	
Slouche 77	
Frogg 78	

[f.47^r uncanceled]

My opinion For Spurrs |

[cancelled] Your Spurrs aughte rather to bee longe | necte then Shorte necte,
because longe | necte Spurrs, the Mañ with theñ makes | less motions eyther
Iñ Corectinge or helpinge | his Horse, which a good Horse-Mañ shoulde |
alwayes doe, for hee thatt Is the quieteste — a Horse-Back, is the Greateste
Master, for | Ill Horse-Meñ, cañ nott Sitt still a Horse-back. ——— | :*
The Rowells sholde contayne sixe poyntes, for that hitts a Horse beaste fíue
poyntes | are to fewe — & the Rowells shoulde bee as | sharpe as posible

Cañ bee for Itt Is much better | to lett hiñ bleed freelye theñ with dull
 | Spurrs, to Rayse knobs, & bunches oñ his side | to make hiñ haue the
 farseye, Bledinge | cañ doe hiñ no hurte wheñ dull spurrs | maye,— besides
 ther Is nothings doth a Horse | so much good as to make hiñ smarte wheñ
 | yoy [*sic.*] Corecte hiñ, theñ ther is nothings like | Sharpe spurrs to bee
 vsed discretlye to make | a knowe theñ, feare theñ, & obaye | theñ, — For
 all Horses whatt soeuer, for | vntill they Suffer with obedience the Spurrs |
 theye are butt halfe Horses, & neuer drete. | *Iñ my Great Booke you will*
finde the | beste fation off Spurrs, — The Shambrier | Is to dull a thinge,
 & so are all whippes, hande | whippes & all-whippes off wier fetches | bloud,
 butt nott Iñ the Righte place as | Spurrs doth; a Bulls Pisle Is good for a |
 Colte before you weare Spurrs, butt | afterwarde Itt Is to dull, — a Smarte
 Rodd | Is much better theñ anye off theñ, butt the | Spurrs beyounde all.
 — *For a verye restie | Horse I deuised a payre off Spurrs with three | necks*
a peece, & three Rowells a Peece, which | hath greate Efecaseye. |

[f.47^v cancelled] The beste Sadles, & Sturrops. are made | att Paris, & ther you
 maye Bye Them. |

You Maye Tye the Cauatzane My waye | to the Poñell, for Terra, Terra,
 Iff you | press the Horse oñ the oute Side off | the Turne, thatt Is to bowe
 & leane off | his outwarde legges — & then tienge the | Cauatzane to the
 Poñell Is Exselente for | Terra, Terra — otherwise naught iff hee | bringe
 In his outwarde Sholder & preste | withiñ. — My Cauatzane thatt Is | Iñ
 my Booke Is the beste Cauatzane to | worke Horses Justlye for Terra Terra
 | or the Petit Galope his Croupe Iñ, because | Itt doth nott bringe Iñ his
 outwarde | Sholder butt onlye his musle & parte | off his neck, nexte his
 heade. ——— |

{2:} your Horse shoulde bee Girtt as | hard [ye] you Cañ, for the Etalieñ
 sayes hee | that Girde well, Rides well,— Butt a | Groome maye Girde
 well, & yett nott Ride | well, — Butt theye meane no mañ cañ | Ride well,
 that doth nott Girde well,—— | For howe Cañ hee Ride well when the |
 Sadle turnes Rounde — Horses off manege | Forses the Girthes much with
 violente | Ayrs, which añ Amblinge Horse doth | nott, — Butt this I muste

tell you you muste | neuer Girde your Horse vpp harde & | street butt Juste
before you ride hiṁ | for beinge harde Girte longe before | you Ride hiṁ, Iñ
the stable I haue knowne | theṁ Growe verye Sick. — why doe theye | nott
so when theye are Ridd saye you | Ile tell you whye because the violence |
Off the Exersise, makes theṁ putt |

[f.48^f cancelled] Oute theyr bodies, & so stretches the | Girthes, & makes theṁ
Easeir — Butt | I will tell you a Greate truth Iñ | Horses, thatt are vsd
to bee Girte harde | when The Groome Coumes to Girde theṁ | vpp, the
Horses will so stretch their | Bodies, & Bellies oute *as t* with holdinge |
their breath, as the Groumes haue much | a doe to Girde theṁ, & this
Is Crafteleye | doñ off theṁ, that theye maye haue | Ease after theye are
Girded, — & then | theye lett their Bodies faule agen | Ande yett sayes the
Lerned, Like to Horse | that hath no Vnderstandinge. — |

An other thinge I aṁ to aduertise | you off, & thatt Is to make the Nose-
bande | as strayte as posible you Cañ — because Itt | hinders hiṁ As theye
saye to make Sheers | with his mouth, or to Gape to disorder | the workinge
off the | Bitt or to bite att | your rodd when you helpe hiṁ or to | bite
at your feet — Butt the Nose bande | beinge verye street, makes the Bitt
| Lie Iñ his dewe place & worke orderlye | as Itt aughte both vppoñ the
Barrs & | the Curbe, & firmes, & settles his Heade | & I a ssure you ther Is
nothinge better then | this, for manye thinges. & therefore I | woulde haue
the Cauatzane as street | as you Coulede to,— For the same Resons | &
remember. that your Cauatzane bee | neuer sharpe butt alwayes lined with
| double leather att the leaste for feare | Off Hurtinge hiṁ — Though the
olde | Sayeing Is, a bloody Nose — makes a good Mouth, | butt I woulde
neyther Hurte Is Mouth, nor | his nose, nor anye thinge aboute hiṁ iff I |
Coulede helpe Itt,— & then I aṁ shure hee will | haue a better mouth, when
his nose Is | nott Hurte. — |

[f.48^v cancelled] {4:} Sakers, Docks, or trouse Ques, which Is | all one Is a
greate Grase for a leapinge | Horse, for Itt makes hiṁ a peer Plumper, | &
more together Racourseye & makes hiṁ | a peer to goe hier to, therefore I
woulde vse | Sakers for all kinde off Leapinge Horses | wether Croupadoes;

Balotadoes, or Capriolls, | butt theñ your Horses tayles muste bee—— |
tied Shorte \wedge^{VP} vppoñ the Saker. —— |

5: For Horses thatt goes En Soldat, | Terra, Terra, Iñ Coruetts or
Demy Ayrs | Ther Is nothings Hansomer, then to | see a Horse with a
good Tayle doune | withoute anye thinge no quinsell | nor anye thinge butt
Natturalye & | to see hiñ laye his Tayle oñ the Grounde | Is Grasefull &
shewes thatt hee goes vppoñ | the Hanches, which Is the perfection | off the
manege. ——|

{6:} To Bewtefyte their Mayns before great | Princes, or Persons off
Qualetye ther Is | nothings more Grasefull thetn to tie | their maynes with
seuerall Coullerde | Ribans, or all one Couller Iñ manye | seuerall wayes Iñ
plattinge their | maynes, or lettinge theñ bee loose. |

{7:} For Rich Sadles I neuer sawe anye | Horse goe so well with theñ as
with | Playne Leather Sadles, & Black Bridles, | the Lether Sadles Shoulde
bee playne | white Spanishe Lether sticht with | Sylke, with Siluer Nayles,
& a good | Black Leather Slap-Cover ouer \wedge^{ouer} Itt & | the Bridle softe
black leather & smale | by no meanes to greate to Girthes in | one to parte
att both Endes like two | Girthes, & a good Etalien Sursingle | which Is
worth both the Girthes | for Holdinge. —— |

[f.49^r cancelled] When a Horse doth nott obaye the Heele | hee Is coñonlye
nott vppoñ the Hande & to | putt hiñ vppoñ the hande you muste tie |
the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne to the poñell, | or to the Girthes & thatt
pulls doune his | heade, & putts hiñ vppoñ the hande & | then Gallope
hiñ duñ Piste & as hee Is | Gallopinge putt Iñ his croupe your outwarde
| legg a litle backwarder theñ ordinarye | & your hande lowe, & preste oñ
the oute | side as much as you cañ to pull the | Inwarde Rayne harde to
his Neck & | Press hiñ harde on his legges oñ the oute | side off the Turne
& all this vppoñ le | petitt Gallope Large & putt hiñ forwarde | alwayes,
— & doe nott Rayse his fore partes | to much for theñ hee will goe more |
vppoñ the hanches, & this waye will | make hiñ perfectlye obaye both the
| hande, & the Heele. —— |

To suple a Horses Sholders legg & | Rayne off a Side Is Exselente eyther
| Vppoñ a Trott or Gallope large or narowe | or his heade to the Piller,
—— |

Butt to putt his croupe *Iñ^{oute}* legg, & Rayne | Contrarye, presses his
Sholders, & nott | his Croupe, for thatts att libertye & | hier theñ his fore
partes beinge the | Larger Circle so Itt putts hiñ off off the | hanches, &
doth hiñ verye litle good | for obayenge, the heele, therefore for | my parte
I woulde neuer vse Itt, | Butt to putt his Croupe *Iñ* Is añ |

[f.49^v cancelled] Exselente Lessoñ for ther his Croupe | Is Subiected & his fore
partes att | Libertye & his fore partes nowe Is | hier theñ his hinder partes
& therefore | Vppoñ the hanches, butt you muste press | hiñ oñ the oute side
off the Turne | Theñ, Thus *Iñ* his length Is Exselente | to, Eyther vppoñ
Paseger or Terra | Terra, narowe or large or le petit | Gallope narowe or
large — & this Is | the beste lessoñ *Iñ* the worlde both | to putt hiñ vppoñ
the hande. & to | make hiñ obaye the heele & to putt | hiñ vppoñ the
Hanches, — to make | hiñ looke Into the Turne, & to bringe | *Iñ* his Inwarde
Sholder — To putt | his heade to the wall Is Exselente | both to make hiñ
obaye the hande | & the heele butt then you muste press | on the oute Side
off the Turne thatt | hee maye leane oñ thatt Side & theñ | hee Is oñ the
hanches as hee Sholde | bee, To goe Terra, Terra, his heade | to the wall Is
añ Exselente lessoñ. |

Marke these lessons followinge | for the moste Exselente Lessons *Iñ* | the
worlde. —— | Thatt Is to Gallope hiñ duñ Piste narowe | a turne or
towe & theñ when hee thinkes | nott off Itt, putt hiñ forwarde vppoñ a |
strayte line & theñ make añ other narowe | volta, duñ piste & then putt
hiñ forwarde | vppoñ a strayte line & make a thirde volta | duñ piste &
theñ putt hiñ forwarde | Vppon a strayte line & make a forth volta |

[f.50^f cancelled] Duñ piste & so Continewe this methode | as longe as you shall
thinke fitt, & ^{att} laste | lett hiñ make a large Circle thatt Contayns | them
all,— firste Exercise ^{him} thus Vppon a | Trott, & when you finde hiñ so
lighte as | hee begiñs to Gallope off hiñ selfe, theñ | Galope hiñ Vppoñ the
same Lessoñ & methode, | ther Is nothings suples a Horses Sholders | more

or setles hiṁ on the hande better, | makes hiṁ free to obaye the heele & Is
| Indeed good for Euerye thinge — Butt you | muste remember thatt the
Inwarde | Cauatzane Rayne bee then tied my waye | to the poṁell. — |

[uncancelled note accompanying a diagram] This Is the | trewe figure | both for
the | Right & Lefte | Hande. |

Trott Trott Trott Trott Gallope Gallope Gallope Gallope |

A Better Lesson | ther caṁ nott bee | for Itt makes a Horse | attende your
hande | & heele & to obaye them both — |

[f.50^v cancelled] This Lessoṁ Is as good as the other | & differs onlye thatt Iṁ
Euerye Circle | the Horse muste Goe lee petit Gallope | or Terra, Terra, his
Croupe Iṁ. & | then vppoṁ the strayte line a gen, the |

Cauatzane muste bee tied to the poṁell | as formerleye. |

[uncancelled notes accompanying a diagram] Terra Terra Gallope Terra
Terra Gallope Gallope le petit Gallope le petit Gallope Gallope

[cancelled] This Is aṁ Exselente Lessoṁ both to | putt a Horse Vppoṁ the hande
| & to putt hiṁ vppoṁ the Hanches | to obaye both hande & heele & to
bee | free nott to stick which Is a Spise off | Restinenes [*sic.*], — A Better
lessoṁ then Caṁ nott Bee ———|

[f.51^f uncancelled] Exselente obseruacione & moste trewe | what putts a Horse
moste off the | Hanches. — |

[cancelled] Ther Is no Horse Iṁ the worlde caṁ | goe Vppoṁ the Hanches, Exsepte
his | heade bee lowe thatt Is as hee standes | thatt his heade muste bee
lower theṁ | his Croupe, — | which Is to tie his heade | my waye to the
poṁell or to the Girthes. | Then when you stopp hiṁ you pull downe |
his heade, & that putts hiṁ vppoṁ the | Hanches when hee Is turnde Iṁ
the stable | his heade Is lower theṁ his hinder partes, & thatt putts hiṁ
vppoṁ the Hanches, | when hee goes downe a Hill his heade | Is lower theṁ
his hinder partes, & thatt | putts hiṁ vppoṁ the hanches, my waye | att
the Single Piller his heade Is pulde — downe, & that putts hiṁ vppoṁ the
hanches, |

Nowe for the Bitt the Branches a litle | Stronge, or the Curbe a litle shorte
 | makes the Branches stronge — Iff you | Holde the bridle hande hye & pull
 | Itt harde Vpp, to Eyther sholder as you | goe Terra, Terra, Itt straitens
 the Curbe | Extreamleye & slackes the Barrs which | pulls vpp his heade &
 putts hiṁ off off | the hanches. — | Butt iff you holde your | hande lowe
 Itt slackes the Curbe & straytens | or pulls harde vppoñ the Barrs which |
 pulls downe his heade & firmes hiṁ | beste oñ the hande, & ther fore makes
 | hiṁ Goe oñ the hanches. — |

His Croupe In for le petit Gallope | or Terra Terra, the In^{ward}cautzane
 Rayne | tied to the Poñell or the Girthes | & press hiṁ withoute the turne
 & | that hee maye leane off his legges | withoute the Turne, which you |

[f.51^v cancelled] maye knowe by his neck leaninge oñ | the oute Side this Terra,
 Terra, Is a kinde | off a litle halte Euerye Cadance which | Is right, the
 halte on the oute side, & | so the same for paseger a halte on the | oute
 side, This putts hiṁ oñ the hanches nothings more, Ande the waye to putt
 | hiṁ so Is thus your Bridle hande lowe | & to pull the Inward Rayne Cross
 his | neck, as much as you Cañ, & lean oñ | the outwarde Sturrope harde
 & the | legg close to hiṁ & the toe off the Inwarde | legg a litle oute &
 the outwarde sholder | downe, lookinge a litle Iñ to the Turne, | & this will
 putt hiṁ oñ the hanches | nothings more & oñ the hande to, | That which
 I Cale a Horse to bee | vppoñ the hande Is nott harde oñ the | hande, for
 thatt hee Cañ nott bee iff | hee bee vppoñ the Hanches, — nor his | heade
 vpp Is nott vppoñ the hande — | butt to feele hiṁ vppoñ the hande |
 firme, & lighte, — & thatt hee will | staye vppoñ the hande thatt Is the |
 busines for iff a Horse doth nott | staye vppoñ the hande Is | to bee lighte
 & firme & to staye | vppoñ the hande,— Ande this ^{is} the | quintesence
 off that busines — & — beleue Itt for a greate truth thatt | no Horse Cañ
 obaye the Heele, Exsepte | hee bee thus Vppoñ the Hande as | I haue Tolde
 you. — |

[f.52^f cancelled] For All Ayrs. |

For Coruetts ther Is no waye so good to | teach Itt Horses as frome the
 Pillers | thatt Is Iñ the hande & the heeles, firste | forwarde & afterwarde

vppoñ his Voltaes | towe or three Iñ a place & theñ forwarde | & so Conuerte
them by litle & litle att laste | to bee all Coruetts iff hee retayne his forses |
or to lighte off the hande, putt hiñ forwarde | still vppoñ his Ayre,. — |

For Demye Ayrs Itt Is the same waye Iñ | teachinge off them, — |

For all mañer off Leapes, eyther Capriolls | Balotadoes, or Croupadoes, the
Same waye | off Teachinge off them, & Itt Is more nesarye | to teach them
this waye for all Leapes | theñ Coruetts, butt alwayes att the finishinge |
off a Leape, you muste Rayse him hye a | Posate — & so Iñ Coruetts, or
Demye Ayrs | Ande therfore beleue mee ther Is no waye | for Ayrs, so good
as Iñ the hande & heeles | loose frome the Pillers, for so hee attendes | both
the hande & the heeles, & obayes | them both as a good Horse Shoulde |
doe, & *all* which Is to goe by the sense | off feelinge, thatt Is feelinge the
hande, & feelinge the heeles, & nott by Rote, which Is | by the sense off
seeinge, *or by* which all | Pillers are nor by the sense of heeringe | which
the voyce Is for those two laste | senses are naughte onlye the helpe off |
the Tonge puttinge Itt vpp to the rooffe | off the mouth & loosinge Itt a
geñ with | A Jerke which Is an Exselente helpe for | all Ayrs, & verye good
for Terra, Terra, | So Itt bee giueñ Iñ time which Is ackordinge | to the
time off the Horse — for Euerye Horse | hath a perticuler time, which | you
muste keepe & followe, & neyther make | hiñ goe slower or quicker, butt
followe the | Horses time Juste both with your hande | & heele,— onlye iff
the Horse Slakes frome | his owne time keepe hiñ to Itt. — |

[f.52^v uncanceled] For Coruetts Backwardes |

cancelled] The Horse aughte nott to goe to hye | before because hee leades with
his Croupe, | & to helpe hiñ Euerye time with the | hande backwarde butt
nott to hye, nor to | harde, & the Bridle hande Lowe, — |

For all Leapes what | Soeuer — |

The Bridle hande *lowe* ^{hye} to helpe Vppoñ | the *Barrs* ^{Curbe}, more theñ
vppoñ the *Curbe* barrs | for so hee will bee firmer oñ the hande, | x

{x & goe hier}

& so for Coruetts the Same, Demye Ayrs | butt not for Terra Terra, —
onlye the three lastte | Ayrs, you muste helpe with the Inwarde | Rayne
off the Bridle, because hee Is straytende | behinde, & Inlargde before Butt
for | all Leapes the outwarde Rayne because | hee Is straytende before, &
Inlargde | behinde, butt In̄ all these Ayrs the Bridle | hande *Lowe* ^{hye} nott
onlye to feele hiṁ more | off the *Barrs* ^{Curbe}, butt to slack the *Curbe* ^{barrs}
a | litle which holdinge the hande *lowe* ^{hye} | doth. — |

2: [section of 16 lines totally deleted by scribbling.]

[f.53^f uncanceled]

Observations.

[cancelled] The moste serteyne meanes to vnite a Horses | forses, to assure &
setle his heade, & his | hanches, to make hiṁ light off the hande | & to
make hiṁ Capable off all Justness, & | firmenss [*sic.*] In̄ all sortes of Ayrs
& Maneges | dependes off the perfection̄ off the Stopp, | butt firste hee
muste bee loosende, & Supled | Vppon̄ the Trott. — |

Goinge back Is a remedye to putt hiṁ Vppon | the hanches to acomodate
& a Juste his | hinder feet & setle hiṁ on̄ the hande | & to make hiṁ lighte
before, to stopp, | lightlye, & In̄ Juste proportion̄; — |

You muste neuer Gallope your Horse vntill | hee bee lighte vppon̄ this Trott.
& begins to | Gallope off hiṁ Selfe; — |

For the Exercise off the Trott, Is the Firste | & moste nesarye foundation,
to make | hiṁ lighte, & off Euerye Lesson, which | Cañ make the Horse
adroite & obediente | & on̄ which muste bee the foundation̄ | off all mañer,
off all sortes off maneges. |

The propertie off the Gallope Is to | giue hiṁ a good apewie & to setle |
his heade & iff hee haue to much fouge | or fier, le petit Gallope will apease |
hiṁ & giue him patience & iff hee playes | to much off the Back, Itt will take
| hiṁ off,— Butt all vppon̄ large Circles. | Itt tempers his speritts makes
hiṁ well winded — | & takes awaye his two violonte aprehentions &

diverts him from Eve | designs off Jades tricks, off restiuenes & double harte & to suple all his | members. |

The walke Is a principall thinge | I meane Paseger Vppoñ Circles to | dress Horses, for withoute Itt no Horse Can bee Justlye dreste. |

[f.53^v cancelled] When you putt a Horses Croupe to the | Piller, when hee goes on the lefte hande | & you pull the Righte Cauatzane Rayne | & helpe with your Right legg, that is | Rayne & legg both on the oute Side, pullinge | his Sholders so much oute off the Turne | as you putt his Croupe before his Sholders | & you bende the Horse for the Right | hande, though hee goes on the lefte | which Is a gaynste Nature; the bente | or Plye off this Bodye beinge agaynst | the Circle hee goes In — Butt beinge | preste on the oute side, This false action | Vppoñ a walke his Croupe In Is the | Action off an Amble, which Is both | off a Side, & remoues Euerye time | Butt this false action vppoñ Terra, Terra, | because hee Is preste on the oute Side | his Inwarde legges leades butt because | his Croupe Is before his sholders his | Inwarde hinder legg leades, & his |

[f.53^v cancelled] Inwarde fore legg followes butt | Circularlye to the Righte hande | though hee goes on the lefte hande | which Is such a Jumblinge lefte handed | motion, & action, as makes the Horse | redye to faule This I woulde neuer | wishe you to use butt vppoñ greate | Extremeties, beinge so verye false, butt you haue the right action off | his legges, In this false posture | The Same thinge Itt Is on the Righte | hande, ——— |

[f.54^f uncanceled] For the Cauatzane |

[cancelled] The Cauatzane was Inuented, for to staye | to Rayse & to make the Horse lighte to | teach him to turne to stopp, for to forme | his neck for to asure & a Juste his heade, | & his Croupe withoute offendinge his | mouth or the place off the Curbe & also | to suple & helpe his Sholders & his legges, | & feete before, — Therefore, I woulde use Itt to all Horses what soeuer, for | theye will goe much better with the | Bitt a lone hauinge his mouth preservde, | & so sensible as hee will bee atentive | to all motions off the Hande so that | ther Is nothinge for the Exercise off | the Manege

like \wedge^{itt} with a Cañon a La | Pignatell, & the Cauatzane together | Butt
then the Cauatzane muste bee | my waye & thatt doth so suple hiṁ | & so
righte as Itt makes all Horses | what soever. Iff you worke them | Vppon
their Trott, Gallope stoppinge | & goinge Back, with Paseger, & Raisinge
| them as you aughte & ackordinge | to the Rules off Arte, for this makes
| hiṁ subiecte to the sense off feelinge | which Is the sence wee aughte to
worke | withall, to feele the hande & to feele | the Heeles, which Is all &
nott to | the sence off sighte which Is the | Routiñ off the Pillers, or the
| Sence off noyse which Is the Routiñ | off Heringe, butt onlye the sence
| off feelinge which Is our Ende | & feelinge onlye off those two | places,
which Is the mouth & the | Sides — for seeinge Is all the Arte | when theye
teach Horses *oute* | tricks, & Camballs & though the | Ignorante admier
them yett those | persons Shall neuer Teach a Horse | to goe Well In the
manege by the | Sence of feelinge Ther are so | manye thinges In thatt
& with so | greate Arte witt & Judgmente & | greate Experience off the
seuerall dispotitions | off Horses, as Itt Is \wedge^{uott} Euerye Mans Case to bee a
| Horse—Mañ as to make a Dogg Dance or a Horse | The same waye, Butt
I am Contented to lett | the Ignorante talke & thinke what theye | will, for
I aṁ nott Consernde with their | follies. |

[f.54^v uncanceled] For the Cheane. |

[cancelled] For the Cheane that theye vsed hertofore | Insteade off the
Cauatzane, Itt was nott | Ill so that ther mighte bee three ringes | plaste
vppoñ Itt, as ther Is vppoñ a Cauatzane | & the raynes plaste vppoñ Itt
ackordinglye | as I Vse them, — & the Cheane tied as the | Cauatzane Is
— for the olde waye was | moste false as theye tied the Raynes | for theye
putt the Raynes Cross thorowe | towe Ringes Vnder his Jawe belowe | so
thatt when you pulde the Righte | Rayne you pulde his heade oñ the | lefte
side because Itt was the lefte | Rayne, — & so when you pullde the | lefte
Rayne, you pulde his head oñ | the Righte Side, because Itt was the | Righte
Rayne,— which Is abhominable | false. — butt iff Itt bee made to worke
| as the Cauatzane the Cheane Is nott Ill | so Itt bee lined with double
Leather | att Leaste — for by no meanes hurte | his Nose no more then his
mouth, | For nott lininge off their Cheanes | & Cauatzans hertofor In times

paste | off olde, beinge so Cruelye Sharpe did | breake the Gristles off the
Horses nose, | & putt the poore Creaturs, to such | Intolerable payne as
made them̄ | desperate & so moste off their Horses | did Continualye Ruī a
waye, ——— | Therefore alwayes Gentle Cauatzanes | & Cauatzanes rather
theñ Cheanes. |

The Musrole Is nott añ Ill thinge butt | veye good for moste Horses, —
yett | Iff a Horse bee trewlye wraughte | hee needes Itt nott. |

[f.55^r cancelled] This adition Is to \wedge^{bee} well studied which is the | Actions off
a Horses legges both In Gallopinge, | & In Terra, Terra — for withoute
knowinge | the trewe Actions off a Horses legges, Itt Is | Impossible for
anye Mañ to dress a Horse perfectlye, | butt by Chance. ——— | I tolde
you heertofore thatt a Gallope was | a leape forwarde as his forelegges
are | goinge doune before theye Coume to the | Grounde his hinder legges
remoues & thatt | legg which hee leades withall which | Is formoste the
hinder legg off the same | Side followes Itt, which forr legg soeuer | hee
leades, withall, & this Is a Trewe | Gallope forwarde or Vppoñ a straye
line | Butt theñ you muste Vnderstande though | Itt bee forwarde thatt
those legges that | hee leades withall are more preste theñ, | his other two
legges, & those that are | leaste preste | are att more libertye & | therefore are
sett doune vppon the Grounde | firste — as for Exsample a Horse leades
| with his righte fore legg, & his hinder | legg off the same side followes
then the | lefte fore legg beinge att libertye Is | sett doune firste & then
the righte legg, | Is thruste forwarde & leades & theñ | the lefte hinder legg
beinge att libertye | Is sett doune firste & then the Right | hinder legg, Is
sett forwarde & leades | & thus the Horse makes fowre perfecte | times, as
one, two, three & fowre with his | fowre legges thatt Is his outwarde fore |
legg makes the firste motioñ Couñinge | to the grounde firste his seconde
or Inwarde | fore legg, that Is preste & leades makes | the Seconde motion
& his lefte hinder | legg thatt Is nott preste makes the thirde | motioñ &
his righte hinder legg thatt | Is preste beinge thruste \wedge^{forwarde} makes the |
forth motioñ, & thus his legges Exactlye | goe, 1: 2: 3: 4. & alwayes those
legges | hee leades withall are moste preste | the others beinge att libertye
& this | Is Exactlye the truth off a Horse | when hee Gallopes forwarde. |

[f.55^v uncanceled] Nowe when a Horse Gallopes Vppoñ | Circles Thus. his
Croupe Iñ. |

[cancelled] Iff the Horse Goe oñ the Righte hande | the Inwarde Cauatzane
^^{raine} tied to the | Poñell, Iff his Croupe bee Iñ & thatt | hee Gallopes,
the Horse Is preste withiñ | the Turne then those legges withiñ | the turne
leades, & the outwarde | legges att libertye, & sett doune firste | as I tolde
you & the Horse leanes a | litle oñ the Inside & thus hee Gallopes | & makes
the motion, & time off one, two, | three fowre,— Butt marke this well |
his outwarde Hanch Is the busines | for the Horse beinge preste withiñ the
turne, hee Is narowed before & | Inlargde behinde which a Gallope | aughte
to bee butt theñ the Horse | Is more oñ the Sholders theñ oñ the | Hanches,
because his outwarde hanch | Is putt oute, beinge att libertye because | the
Horse Is preste withiñ the Turne | this Is a Trewe Gallope butt this Is nott
| a righte Terra Terra, for hee makes still | the action off 1: 2: 3: & 4: with
his | fowre legges, & off off the Hanches, Itt | Suples sholders Indeed, naye
| when one maye thinke to make hiñ goe Terra, Terra, thus hee maye bee
deseued | beinge butt a quick & a preste Galope, | & Vppoñ the Sholders,
because hee | Is narowe before & wide behinde :* | his outwarde hanch
beinge oute ——— | which Is still a righte Gallope :* butt | can nott bee
a right Terra Terra as you | shall see hereafter — Butt this righte Gallope
| Is righte for the Piroyte for the Piroyte Is | butt a Gallope Iñ his length
because hee | Is preste withiñ the turne & therefore | his outwarde Hanch,
a litle oute this | Gallope Is also good for Demy Voltaes vppoñ | Pasadoes,
because those Demy Voltaes are | butt halfe a piroyte. ——— |

The same for the lefte Hande. ——— |

{ x which Is a | right Gallope | xx I[f] bee narowe | before & | wide
behinde. |}

[f.56^f uncanceled] For Terra, Terra, Vppoñ his Voltaes | Thus. — |

[cancelled] The Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne beinge | tied ^^{to} the poñell for the
Righte Hande, nowe you | muste press the Horses outwarde | Hanch Iñ as
much as you Cañ to make | the Horse leane oñ the oute Side att | the

Turne, thatt his outwarde legges | maye bee preste & his Inwarde legges
 | free, his Inwarde legges are before | his outwarde legges & so faules to |
 the Grounde — Butt heer the Actioñ | off Terra, Terra, Is cleer contrarye
 frome | the Actioñ off a Gallope for a Gallope | Is 1: 2: 3: 4: His hanch
 beinge a litle oute, | & cañ not goe a Juste Terra Terra, — & | heer the
 Horses outwarde Hanch beinge | putt In̄ & preste withoute the Turne | hee
 Cañ goe Terra, Terra, butt nott Gallope, | & the time of Terra, Terra Is
 butt two | times, as, one, two, as Pa ta, the same motioñ | a Coruett Is
 butt faster, his fore legges | lightinge together, att one Time, & | his hinder
 legges lightinge together | the Seconde Time onlye his legges | within the
 Turne are a litle before | the others yett his fore legges lightes | together att
 a time & his hinder legges | lightes together ^{the seconde} att a time, Juste |
 a Coruett when̄ his forepartes goes | Vpp his hinder partes goes downe | &
 when his fore partes goes downe | his hinder partes goes vpp, a Coruett |
 Is a leape vpwarde & Terra, Terra, | a leape forward & preste & neer | the
 Grounde & this Is a righte Terra | Terra — so you see his outwarde hanche
 | Is all when tis preste In̄ for Terra, | Terra, *wh* because the Horse then̄ | Is
 preste oñ the oute side & when his | outwarde Hanch Is oute a litle then̄ |
 the Horse Is preste withiñ the | Turne & thatt Is for Gallopinge | This waye
 for Terra, Terra, Is Exselente | for demie voltaes frome the wall, for | those
 demye voltaes are butt Terra Terra, | as the demy voltaes In̄ Pasadoes Is
 butt | halfe a Piroyte beinge butt a Gallope In | his length. — |

[f.56^v cancelled] What Helpes you aughte to vse to make | a Horse Goe Terra,
 Terra, are these | whatt hande soeuer you goe oñ helpe | with the Inwarde
 Rayne your hande | on the oute side off the Turne, to pull | the Inwarde
 Rayne as harde to his | neck as you Cañ, & helpe with the outwarde | legg
 preste vppoñ the sturrope as harde | as you Cañ your Inwarde legg the |
 toe a litle oute & shorter then̄ the | outwarde legg a Handfull att leaste |
 your outwarde Sholder lower then̄ | your In̄warde Sholder, & looke a | litle
 In̄ to the Turne,— & this will | make hiñ Goe perfectlye Terra, Terra, :* |

These are so nesenarye thinges to | bee Vnder stode as I wishe you woulde
 | Studie Itt, for withoute Itt all Is | bechance. |

:* Because hee Is narowe behinde & | large before, so hee Is vppoñ the hanches, | beinge narrowed behinde & beinge | Inlargde before Imbrases the turne | better, & thus his hinder legg withiñ the turne cañ neuer goe before his | sholders. |

one thinge I muste aduertise you off | that when a Horse Gallopes Le petit Galope, or a hande Gallope as wee Cale Itt | theñ the Horses hinder legges strikes | *shorte* alwayes \wedge^{on} off his fore legges, ——— | Butt when a Horse Ruñs as faste as | hee Cañ toute Bride theñ the Horses | hinder legges strikes ouer & beyonde | his fore legges, $\wedge^{\text{verye much}}$ & this Is moste trewe. |

[f.57^r cancelled] Trewe obseruations. |

A Horse thatt retayns his forses, & paresus, | & towarder, Restiue Coruettis Is añ Ayre. thatt | will \wedge^{nott} agree well with hiñ; ——— |

But Horses off greate fier, & fouge thatt are | Impatiente, Are verye Improper for all Ayrs, | to as Coruettis, Demy Ayrs, & Leapes — Butt theye | are more proper to goe oñ the Grounde, for | furius Horses & Impatient, All Ayrs augments, their Coller, & depriues them off memorye | & obedience. ——— |

I woulde haue the firste lesson Iñ Coruettis | to bee made leasurlye, & hye before for thatt | longe time before hee bringes his fore legges | to the grounde doth giue hiñ meanes to asure | his hanches & to forme his heade, & to bende | his fore legges, & to diuerte hiñ frome | aprehentions, & vnquietnes. & to hinder | hiñ frome tramplinge, which is trepigne. | *By this action his tayle beinge loose, & false* | maye bee absurde & Itt Is trewe ther are verye | fewe Horses, that are well putt vppoñ the | Hanches & to bende Iñ the Cambrills | withoute goinge backwarde & thatt | doth [beate] Equalye & neatlye the Juste | measure off a good Ayre that hath his | Croupe, his tayle & his heade firme | on the Contrarye almoste all those which | doth manege lowe before & hye behinde | caris their fore legges tute, & stiff, & their | heades, Croupe & tayle verye Ill assurde. | Ande iff the Horse do diligentlye beate | his tome Iñ his firste lessons Itt Is a Signe | off his Coller, & Impatience Itt Is a Signe off | three thinges, That Is that his

forse will | nott Continewe longe In that Ayre In the | manege so Eagerlye
beaten that soone hee | will trample, & trepigne, Butt iff the | Horse Rier
[sic. meaning *reer*]. freelye & hye before withoute | hastnige, nor to bee to
much streatchte | oute ——— |

[f.57^v cancelled] Ande stiff, Itt will bee theñ veye Easeye | for the Horse-mañ
for to strayten him | & to giue him a Resolute measure to make | Exselente
Coruetts In perfection, ackordinge | to the forces, & lightnes off the Horse.
|

For Voltaes In Coruetts. |

Twoe or three de ferme a ferme & theñ | walke him, & theñ two, or three
ageñ | vntill the walke bee all Conuerted | In to Coruetts;— & iff hee putt
oute his | Croupe, putt Itt In, with your hande, & | heele & iff hee putt In
his Croupe to much, | putt Itt oute with your heele, & hande. |

For Capriolls, |

The Rules off Pesades & Coruetts, Releues | are proper to assure & lighten
the neck & | heade, off the Horse chargde before because | their principall
actions, Is made vppon | the Hanches, & the temperate apewye off | the
mouth, — Butt Capriolls doth nott | bringe those Comodeties, butt Juste
Contrarye. | For theye Coñonlye giue a Horse to much | apewye & makes
his mouth, & heade | Vnserteyne which hath weake sholders, | legges &
feet for Contrarye to Coruetts, | The Ende & desente, off the strongeste |
Action off a Leape which Is made In | yarking oute behinde Is Soudenlye |
sustayned by the fore partes off the | Horse — Then nesesarelye hee shoulde
| bee firme off *the* ^{his} heade — that hee shoulde | bee lighte off the Apewye
& off the sholders, | att Leaste Vppoñ Pesates & that hee hath | a good
Apewye off the hande & iff Itt | bee posible thatt hee shoulde bee Exemted
| frome all Coller & Impatiencye. |

[f.58^r cancelled] As also frome feare, or anye spise of Restiuenes, | before you
putt him to Capriolls: for | the Exercise off Leapes, bringes with Itt | manye
reations [sic.] which maye dispose | the Horse though hee weare peaceable |
& well Composed, for to bee In a litle time | Impatiente & to make manye,

lisentius | mutations Iff the Horse—mañ bee nott | verye wise & knowinge
—— | A Horse that hath nott a good apewye, | Is nott a fitt Horse for
leapes. —— | A Horse thatt retayns his forses, | Is fitt for a pase & a
leape. —— |

To rectefye Horses thatt are Debaushte, | & oute of scoole. |

The greateste Justness Iñ Voltaes, Consistes | moste Iñ a Horses hinder
feete —— | whensoever a Horse putts his Croupe | to much Iñ, Itt Is a
Comon Signe that | the Horse hath no strength or thatt | hee Is to tuclishe,
& sensible, apprehensiue | & feare-full,— Ande when hee putts his | Croupe
to much oute Is a Signe that hee | Is malitious vindicative & añ Enemy |
to the scoole off the manege. — To putt | hiñ vppoñ the hanches & make
hiñ | sensible, both to the hande & the Heele | ther is nothinge better then
his heade | to the wall or to walke hiñ his heade | to fowre wales or Else
this lessoñ | followinge, —— |

[diagram follows — no text]

[f.58^v cancelled] The Quarters are Exselente lessons | to firme a Horse Croupe
& putt | hiñ oñ the Hanches, as this | followinge. |

[diagram with these words:] This Is for both | the Right & | the Lefte Hande |

As also Demy Voltaes is Exselente | as this figure. |

[diagram] An ouall | Is good to reioyce & giue | libertye to a Horse | as this
figure. |

[diagram] Butt to make so much a doe, before one Coumes | to a whole Volta as
some greate masters haue | made, Confoundes a Horse more then a whole
| turne, att firste Can posiblye doe. —— |

[f.59^r cancelled] Iff a Horse goe forwarde to much | pull hiñ back, Iff hee goe
back putt hiñ | forwarde, Iff hee goe Side wayes oñ the | Righte hande, putt
hiñ side-wayes oñ | the lefte hande Iff hee goes side wayes | oñ the lefte
hande putt hiñ side-wayes | oñ the Righte hande; Iff hee putt oute | his
Croupe putt Itt Iñ — Iff hee putt Iñ | his Croupe, putt Itt oute Iff hee goes
oñ | the sholders, stopp hiñ & pull hiñ back, | Iff hee goes Iñ the hanches

Continewe | hiṁ so Iff hee rise when you woulde | nott haue hiṁ keepe hiṁ
doun All | this vppoñ a walke — For thus hee muste atende both your
hande & your | Heele & followes your will, & so muste | Off nesesitye obaye
you because thus hee | Is putt frome his will to yours & this | muste make
hiṁ a perfecte Horse | Itt Is a moste Exselente lessoñ, ——— |

Stoppinge Vppoñ a Trott or Gallope or Walke | putts hiṁ vppoñ the
Hanches & firmes | both heade, & Croupe the beste lessoñ | Iñ the worlde
— so goinge back Is good | for them both to. ——— |

To Rayse a Horse putts hiṁ vppoñ the hande, | & doth hiṁ good iff hee
goes Iñ anye Ayre, | to lighten hiṁ before butt Itt doth nott | putt hiṁ
Vppoñ the Hanches att All. |

Gallopinge duñ Piste putts hiṁ Vppoñ | the hande butt nott oñ the hanches
— because | his Croupe Is oute & oñ the sholders, | The Horses Croupe
Iñ Iff hee Gallope his | outwarde hanch Is a litle oute, & so Vppoñ | the
sholders beinge narrower before then | hee Is behinde & so Vppoñ the hande
| some Cales this a Terra, Terra, butt | Itt Is butt a preste Gallope. ——— |

[f.59^v cancelled] Butt to putt Iñ his outwarde Hanch | that narowes hiṁ behinde
& Inlarges | hiṁ before & thatt putts hiṁ oñ the | Hanches Indeed, therefore
marke Itt | well Itt Is the outwarde Hanch | Iñ or oute thatt putts hiṁ eyther
| on the hanches, or the Sholders, |

So his heade to the wall putts him | vppoñ the Hanches. — Ande Coruetts
| putts hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches. ——— |

For the outwarde Hanch, ——— |

Vppoñ Circles the outwarde Hanch Is all, | For iff the Horse Croupe bee putt
Iñ & | his outwarde hanch a litle oute hee Is | preste off his legges within
the Turne, | & so narrowde before & Large behinde | & therfore Vppoñ the
Sholders & off off | the Hanches — his outwarde hinder legg | beinge att
libertye makes hiṁ wide behinde | thus a Horse doth Gallope trewlye 1:2:3:
& 4: | butt cañ nott goe terra terra butt a Jumblinge | Gallope butt Itt Is
righte for le petit Gallope, | *howe* butt false for Terra, Terra — Howe | to
knowe the Horses posture for a Gallope | his Croupe Iñ, Is thus, when you

see by his | neck that hee leanes oñ the Iñ side & | to make hiñ so though
the Inwarde Cauatzane | Rayne bee tied to the Poñell Iff hee bee sett |
byas thus,

[2 circles, one in the other]

though you helpe with | the Inwarde Rayne, yett this posture | will press
hiñ within the Turne for | a Gallope,— thatt Is one waye, añ other | Is
thus helpe with the outwarde Rayne, | & that shall narowe hiñ before &
press | hiñ withiñ the Turne for a trewe Gallope | for all gallopes muste
bee narowe before | & large Behinde. |

[f.60^r uncanceled] For Terra, Terra | Vppoñ Circles |

[cancelled] For Terra, Terra you muste press the Horse | on the oute Side off the
Turne, thatt the Horse | maye leane oñ his outwarde leggs, beinge | preste
on his outwarde legges, thatt Is his | outwarde Hanch Is putt Iñ, & leaninge
| oñ thatt hinder legg, the Inwarde hinder | legg Coumes to Itt, & thatt
makes hiñ narowe | behinde, & therefore wide before, & beinge | narowe
behinde makes hiñ oñ the Hanches, | So thatt you see, all Is the outwarde
Hanch | for beinge preste withiñ the Turne leaninge | oñ his Inwarde hinder
legg, the Horses | outwarde hinder legg goes frome Itt which | makes hiñ
wide behinde & therefore narowe | before for his outwarde hinder legg |
goinge wide off nesetye his outwarde | fore legg, muste goe narowe —
whēñ | hee is preste oñ the oute Side off the Turne, | beinge preste oñ his
outwarde hinder | legg x

{ x his Inwarde hinder legg | }

coumes to Itt, & therefore narowe | beinde, & therefore off nesetye wide
| befor the Inwarde fore legg goinge | frome the outwarde fore legg,— for
whēñ | hee Is preste oñ the oute side off the Turne, | for Terra, Terra, beinge
preste oñ his outwarde | hinder legg, his Inwarde hinder legg | Coumes to
Itt, & att the same time his | Inwarde fore legg goes frome his outwarde |
fore legg, so narrowed behinde & large | before — Ande when the Horse Is
preste | on the Inside theñ his outwarde hinder | legg goes frome his Inwarde
hinder | legg, & att the same time, his outwarde | fore legg goes to his Iñ

warde fore legg | thus both off a side seuerall wayes | for when the Horses
Inwarde hinder | legg goes to his outwarde hinder legg, | then his Inwarde
fore legg goes frome | his outwarde fore legg, which Is Contrarye, | this
for Terra, Terra — The other waye | when the Horse is preste within the |
Turne preste on his Inwarde hinder | Legg, then his |

[f.60^v cancelled] Outwarde hinder legg goes frome his | Inwarde hinder legg, &
att the same | Time his outwarde fore legg goes to | his Inwarde fore legg,
which Is Contrarye | on the oute side as the other was | Contrarye on the
Inside — onely when | the Horse Is preste on the Inside, then | hee is wide
behinde, & narowe before, | & vpon the Sholders — & when the | Horse
Is preste withoute the Turne | then hee Is narowe behinde, & wide | before
& Vpon the Hanches ackordinge | to this figure [small diagram] howe to
make | A Horse goe Terra, Terra I haue | Shewde you before so ther needes
| no repetitions — butt This Is Exactlye | Trewed off both, preste within, &
preste withoute. ———|

Ther Is nothinge In the worlde | putts a Horse Soe much vpon the | Hanches
as Stoppinge, & [illeg. deleted] pressinge | the Horse on the oute Side off
the | Turne,— For pressinge on | the oute Side off the Turne & stoppinge |
Is as good for Coruetts, & Demye Ays, | as for Terra Terra — because Itt
| Settes them on the Hande & vpon | the Hanches, & more Can nott bee
| for those are good for Euerye thinge | thatt Can pretende to the Manege,
| or the warr or anye thinge Indeed | a Horse Can bee fitt for I meane | for
the Seruice of Princes, or | Caualliers, |

[f.61^f cancelled] Obseruations. |

Manye Horses, though theye Can doe | nothinge butt trot, yett when theye
| are preste In the manege, theye will | make a Shufflinge Amble, Naye they
| will perfectlye Amble,— which Is | the worste Action for the manege |
that possible Can bee — Ande therefore | to hinder them off that Action ther
| Is nothinge better then to pull In their | heads In to the Turne as much
as | possiblye you can, & to putt them Vpon | as narowe Circles as you
Can, & this | will hinder them, frome Amblinge | & to giue them the Spurrs
soundlye | when theye Amble & this will putt | them frome Amblinge,—

manye | Strange Horses will Amble when | they are preste In the Manege
| butt Commonlye Horses Amble oute | off weaknes, Eyther by Nature or |
that they are almoste tierde | As soone as Foles are foled, wee | see theye
all Amble att firste because | theye are so weake, & after theye | Coume to
a litle strength, then | theye Trott, ——|

To make a Horse sensible Itt Is the | Spurr to Spurr him soundlye when |
ther Is Ocation & Spurr him vntill | hee obaye you,— Butt afterwarde you
| muste forbear the, & see howe | hee obayes the, for alwayes to Spurr |
a Horse makes him dull thatt hee | will nott care for the, Butt you | muste
giue the Seldome, butt to the | purpose when you giue the, sharply | &
Sharpe Spurr,— for knowe thatt | Corections, are better then Helpes. |

[f.61^v uncanceled] For the Bridle Hande |

[cancelled] For a younge Horse or an Ignorant | Horse the Curbe muste bee slack
att | the firste & a good while vntill | you haue settled him on the Hande
| for the giuinge a Horse a good Apewie | & to settle him on the hande, Is
absolutlye | Vpon the Barrs, & nott Vpon the Curbe | after your horse
Is well Settled Vpon | the hande, then you maye strayten | the Curbe, &
make Itt shorter, butt | neuer so shorte butt before you drawe | the Raynes
that Itt maye bee a litle | Slack, for then when you drawe the | Raynes,
Itt will bee In his Righte place, | Iff you make the Curbe verye Shorte |
thatt makes the Branches Stronger | & then when you pull the Raynes | Itt
doth nott onlye offende the place, | off the Curbe, butt will Gale & | hurte
his Barrs Extreamlye, | Vntill theye Bleede violentlye | because the Curbe
beinge so shorte | makes the branches so strange | & thatts the Reson that
hurtes | him so off the Barrs,— Therefore | alwayes the Curbe as I haue
tolde | you before, A litle Slack Vntill you | pull the Raynes, & then Itt will
| lie In his Righte place:— Butt | when Itt the Curbe Is to slacke then | Itt
workes nott att all, & makes the | Branches so weake Couminge so to | his
neck, as hee can neyther haue | anye apewye vpon the Barrs nor | Vpon
the Curbe butt Is In a straitte | line frome the Eye to the Ende off | the
Branch & lies In a false place this | Is Caled Trebocato,— for the Branches

| shoulde alwayes lie bias, & slopinge | frome the Eye, to the Ende off the
Branch; ——— |

[f.62^r uncanceled] For the Posture off the Bridle hande. |

[cancelled] When you holde your hande a litle | before the Pomell, the lower
you holde | your hande, the more the bitt workes | On the Barrs, & Slakens,
the Curbe | & pulls hiṁ doune, because Itt workes | on the Barrs & thatt
makes hiṁ goe | beste for the Curbe offendes a Horse | moste. — Butt
when you woulde | worke on the Curbe then you muste | pull your hande
hier to one off your | sholders vppon Voltaes, the outwarde | Sholder Still
so when you pull | your hande hier then the Bitt | workes, on the Curbe
more then on | the Barrs, & putts his heade Vpp | hier, & putts hiṁ off off
the Hanches, |

[In right hand margin:] {for terra | terra butt | nott for | Coruetts. | }

for when your hande Is lowe then | the Bridle workinge more on the |
Barrs then off the Curbe which | pulls doune his heade & therefore | putts
hiṁ vppon the Hanches | Espetialye when the Horses | hinder partes are
preste & this | Is the Truth off the Bridle hande | & the greateste Secrett
& quintesence | off Itt — onlye remember that the Inwarde Rayne presses
| hiṁ on the oute side & the outwarde Rayne presses | hiṁ on the In side
——— |

Alwayes worke with the Cauatzane, | butt when you Ride before Princes
| Greate Ladies, or Lordes, & then | Ride onlye with the Bitt, — & you |
will finde your Horse much | more sensible, off the hande & much | firmer,
for your Ridinge hiṁ | alwayes before with the Cauatzane | because Itt
preserues his | mouth, & setles & firmes his heade. ——— |

[f.62^v uncanceled] More to Explayne the Bridle hande | Thus. ——— |

[cancelled] The Horses Neck Is betweene the two | Raynes off the Bridle, &
theye both | meet In your hande, when the Horse | Goes Vppon Voltaes Iff
you worke or | pull the Inwarde Rayne to the Turne | thatt Inwarde Rayne
presses the Horse | on the oute Side off the Turne thatt | Is Itt presses his

outwarde legges, Espetialye | his outwarde hinder legg, thatt Is Itt | putts
 Iñ his outwarde Hanch, & so | putts him vppoñ the Hanches. — | Iff you
 worke or pull the outwarde | Rayne off the Bridle thatt presses | the Horse
 oñ the Inside off the | Turne his outwarde Hanch beinge | att libertye hee
 Is preste more before | theñ behinde & so Is vppoñ the | Sholders, beinge
 narowe before & | wide behinde — as the Inwarde — Rayne, pressinge the
 Horse oñ the | outeside, makes hiñ wide before | & narowe behinde which
 putts hiñ | vppoñ the Hanches. ——— |

Howe the Posture off |
 ones heade, & what dependes |
 off itt.

For Terra, Terra, to sitt strayte as I tolde | you before with the helps as I
 haue | formerlye spoke off, onlye your Eyes | fixe Vppoñ his neck lookinge
 doune | which slackens the breste a litle so, | much though verye litle, as
 Itt moues | to the Horse thatt moues to you Vpwardes | butt ther Is añ
 other Comodetye Iñ Itt, | & thatt Is this, you maye putt your | hande oñ
 the contrarye Side much the | more for Itt, which Is pullinge the |

[f.63^r cancelled] Inwarde ^{Rayne} more which putts hiñ oñ the | oute Side &
 straytens hiñ behinde, | & so putts hiñ Vppoñ the Hanches, | which Is
 all our Business:— For — did you loke more Iñ to the Turne, | *your hande*
 your Bridle hande | will followe your heade & Bodye | & so the Inwarde
 Rayne will bee | slacte & haue no power off pressinge | the Horse oñ the oute
 Side & | therefore, & to thatt Ende, I woulde | haue you looke Juste doune
 vppoñ | his Neck because your hande maye | worke the more powerfullye |
 Vppoñ the Inwarde Rayne to press | hiñ & subiecte hiñ oñ the oute | Side
 off the Turne to putt Iñ his | Inwarde Hanch, thatt hee maye | leane oñ
 the oute Side & so to | bee perfectlye oñ the Hanches to | Goe a perfecte
 Terra, ^{Terra} which Is | butt one, two, the time off a Coruett | butt faster,
 & more preste, as | this time Pa Ta, & this is & are | the Reasons, whye
 you shoulde | looke doune vppoñ his Neck | & nott looke more Iñ to the
 Turne | theñ Thatt, ——— |

The same waye you muste looke | for Coruetts vppoñ his Voltaes, & so |
 Iñ demye Ayr, — for the same resons | to press hiñ oñ the oute Side, to
 putt hiñ vppoñ the Hanches ——— | Butt For all Leapes that Is añ other |
 Thinge for ther Eyther strayte forwarde | or Vppoñ voltaes, ther you helpe
 with the | outwarde Rayne off the Bridle & theñ your | breaste Naturalye
 goes oute, which aughte | to bee to keepe you strayte Iñ the Sadle, |

[f.63^v cancelled] because the Action Is violante & the | Bodye Insensiblye a litle
 Back, Itt Sholde | Goe butt nott to bee perceued by the | beholders,— so
 you see thatt helpinge | with the outwarde Rayne putts your | breaste oute
 & helpinge with the | Inwarde Rayne putts your breaste | In, Naturalye as
 theye Sholde doe | the Inwarde Rayne, the breaste Iñ | for Terra, Terra,
 Coruetts [^]& demye Ayr, | & the outwarde Rayne the breaste | oute, for all
 Leapes what soeuer, so for | the Piroyte or demye voltaes Vppoñ | Pasadoes,
 Ande these are greate truthes | & no Horse Cañ goe Juste, withoute | these
 trewe helpes, ——— |

For Paseger Vppoñ the Action | of a walke. |

For Paseger Vppoñ the Action off a walke | Is the onlye thinge to make
 Horses | perfett, & to dress them perfectlye | after theye are setled oñ the
 hande | by Trottinge, Galopinge, Stoppinge & | goinge Back — Butt, this
 paseger vppoñ | a walke, the Cauatzane My waye | wether the Inwarde
 Rayne bee wraught | Iñ your hande, or that you tie Itt to | the poñell, or
 that you worke with | the false Raynes My waye to worke | with the Inwarde
 Rayne Iñ your | hande or tied to the poñell ——— | that you worke with
 the Raynes | off the Bridle seperated Iñ both | your handes or the Raynes
 off the | Bridle onlye Iñ your lefte Hande, |

[f.64^r cancelled] which off these soeuer you worke withall | bee shure Still thatt
 the Inwarde Rayne | bee still pulde Close & harde to his Neck | by puttinge
 your hande as much as you | cañ to the Contrarye Side off his Neck | or
 Volta, & all this Is to press hiñ oñ | the oute Side off the Turne, which
 Is | to putt Iñ his outwarde Hanch, this | Vppoñ a walke his Croupe Iñ
 makes | hiñ alwayes goe forwarde makes | hiñ obaye the heele & putts hiñ
 vppoñ | the Hanches, hee will doe Itt the | better iff his musle bee turnde

vpp | a litle this pressinge oñ the oute side, | Is so Exselente for Paseger
 Vppon a | walke his Croupe Iñ & ther Is no | trewe Terra, Terra, butt
 this waye to | bee preste oñ the oute side off the Turne | & for Coruets
 Itt Is as Good, as also | for Demye Ayrs,— All where a Horse | Is to bee
 putt Vppoñ the Hanches. ——— | To putt hiñ vppoñ the Hande then hee
 | Is to bee preste withiñ the Turne as legg | & Rayne oñ the Inside off the
 Turne | legg & ^{bridle} Rayne on the oute Side his Croupe | Iñ presses hiñ
 within the Turne, | verye fitt for a Gallope because Itt narowes | hiñ before
 & Inlarges hiñ behinde, | which all Gallopes Sholde bee,— & this suples
 his Sholders butt putts | hiñ off off the Hanches, because his | outwarde
 Hanch goes oute a litle | Butt presinge hiñ withoute the Turne, | narowes
 hiñ behinde, because Itt | putts Iñ his outwarde Hanch, & so | putts hiñ
 before & alwayes remember for | a great Maxiñ, & Truth that Itt |

[f.64^v cancelled] Is alwayes the Inwarde Rayne to the | Turne, thatt presses the
 Horse oñ the | oute Side which putts hiñ vppoñ | the Hanches, & outwarde
 Rayne | alwayes presses the Inside & putts | the Horse vppoñ the Sholders,
 & so | Vppoñ the Hande, & off off the Hanches | Ande Remember Still thatt
 the Inwarde | Rayne putts hiñ oñ the oute side, & | the outwarde Rayne
 putts hiñ oñ | the Iñ side, & nowe you maye verye | well knowe howe to
 worke your | Horse for Iff hee bee nott vppoñ | the hande or suple before Iñ
 his | Sholders Theñ press the Horse oñ | the Iñside off the Turne. ——— |
 Ande Iff the Horse bee nott lighte | off the hande nor vppoñ the Hanches,
 | theñ press the Horse oñ the oute | Side off the Turne — Ande knowinge |
 all this howe Is Itt posible for a | man ^{butt} to dress perfectlye all mañer |
 of Horses, what soeuer, for withoute | this knoledge, Itt Is Imposible for |
 anye mañ to dress a Horse perfectlye | butt by Chance, but thatt Chance
 | will *ne* verye seldome Coume— I dare saye neuer, for Tis Imposible | A
 Blinde mañ maye Catch a Hare, | Butt añ Ignorante Mañ shall | neuer
 Dress a Horse,— Thats | serteyne — To Serue Ignorante Mens | turnes,
 that thinkes they knowe | & knowe nothings, Is añ Easeye | matter to
 Cooseñ theñ with a great | dell off Talke, which Coosens moste | parte off
 the worlde, Butt to knowinge | meñ Itt Is añ other Business. ——— |

[f.65^r uncanceled] Observations |

[cancelled] When you knowe perfectlye the motion | off the Horses legges,
 posture off his | Bodye, & the time hee makes both Iñ | Gallopinge duñ
 piste, & Gallopinge his | Croupe a litle In & Terra Terra | & what putts
 hiñ vppoñ the Sholders | & whatt putts hiñ vppoñ the Hanches, | Thatt Is
 when hee Is preste withiñ | the Turne & what operation that | hath — Ande
 when hee Is preste | withoute the Turne & what operation | that hath,—
 as to press hiñ withiñ | the Turne that putts hiñ vppoñ the | hande &
 Suples his Sholders,— | Ande when hee Is preste withoute | the turne howe
 that putts hiñ | Vppoñ the Hanches, & therefore lighte | off the hande — &
 withall makes | hiñ obaye the heele because hee cañ | nott gett frome Itt,
 butt muste Suffer | Itt & obaye Itt. — Therefore I saye | when you knowe all
 these thinges | perfectlye | how Is Itt posible butt | you muste dress Horses
 perfectlye | for no Horse Cañ make a falte butt | Itt Is Eyther before, or
 behinde eyther | Iñ the hande, or the heele. Vppoñ | the sholders or Vppoñ
 the Hanches | Ande whatt soeuer hee doth heer you | haue a remedye for
 hiñ, which Is moste Easeye Iñ a masters handes, | Butt sertenlye others
 cañ nott bee | so foolishe as to presume to doe them | For Artes are nott
 by Inspiration butt | by longe Studye & practise, — Butt | all this muste
 bee wraughte with | the Cauatzane my waye tied to | The Poñell, which
 Is |

[f.65^v cancelled] :* | The Most Exselente thinge thatt Cañ | bee for Itt makes
 hiñ looke Iñ to the | Turne, Suples his neck Iñ the Right | place Suples
 his Sholders assures | his Croupe, putts hiñ oñ the hanches | giues hiñ
 the right plye to bende & | the Circle thatt hee goes Iñ, putts hiñ | on
 the hands & giues hiñ a temperate | apewy iff hee bee to lighte off the
 hande | because Itt pulls him doune to thatt | degreee, & no further, Itt
 also makes | a Horse lighte off the hande thatt | Is to harde, & heaue oñ
 the hande | because Itt doth nott giue hiñ leaue | to putt his heade Lower,
 so thatt degree | thatt ^{his} heade Is pulde to Is the Juste | place for the
 temperate apewye | Ande so giues Itt all Horses what | soeuer wether lighte
 or harde oñ | the hande, & since to setle a Horse | oñ the hande & giue
 hiñ a temperate | a pewye Is the Grounde off all thinges | Iñ the Manege,
 then this waye | off the Cauatzane Is the moste | Exselente thinge Iñ the
 worlde, & therefore Vse Itt perpetuallye | to all your Horses, younge midle |

Agde olde Coltes, halfe dreste, readye | Horses, & what soeuer onlye when
| you Ride before greate persons, | & then Ride onlye with the Bridle, | &
the Horses will goe much the | better, for vsinge the Cauatzane | since Itt
preserues their mouthes | & makes them much lighter, | & Supler. — |

[f.66^r uncanceled] For the Piroyte. |

[cancelled] The Action off a Horse legges In the | piroyte, Is Juste the Actioñ
off a Gallope | In his length, which Is 1: 2: 3: 4: | Hee Is preste within the
Turne & so | his Croupe Is a litle oute, beinge preste | within the Turne
hee Is narowe before | & large behinde,— the lower hee goes | the Swifter
hee goes. — Nowe the helpes | to make him goe Is thus — you muste | sitt
strayte In the Sadle & looke a litle | In to the Turne your Bridle hande |
within the Turne turninge Vpp your | litle finger for the Righte hande butt
| you muste ^{nott} turne Itt too Extreamleye | for then you will putt ^{him}
to much vpon | the sholders, So as hee can goe no more | butt so as his
croupe maye bee kepte In | In some moderatioñ, which your | outwarde legg
Close to him muste doe, butt Itt can nott nor aughte nott | to bee kepte
In so, butt that his outwarde | Hanch muste goe a litle oute, or Else | Itt
Is nott a Gallope, — & so much Itt muste | goe oute for all your outwarde
legg | because you helpe with the outwarde | Rayne, which putts oute his
outwarde | Hanch, & Narowes him before — This | Is the trewe actioñ off
the Horses legges, | the Posture off his Bodye, & the trewe | helpes off the
Riders hande, Bodye | & legges,— The same helpes for the lefte hande
onlye changinge hande | legg & Bodye as for thatt hande | the truth Is you
muste *nott* helpe with your leggs *att all*. | outwarde |

- For Demy Voltaes Vppon | Pasadoes. |

Is the same thinge as the Piroyte In Euerye | thinge for Itt Is butt halfe
a Piroyte which | Is a Gallope In his length, & so the Horse-man | muste
vse the same helpes,— This differs frome a | Demy Volta Terra Terra, for
iff this demye volta weare nott halfe a Piroyte hee | Coude nott keepe the
line to the wall righte, | butt his Croupe woulde flye frome the | wall, & so
bee an Imperfecte demye volta | for a Pasadoe by a wall. — |

[f.66^v cancelled] For the seuerall Corections & | Helpes with the Spurrs. |

Firste the Corectioñ off the Spurrs beinge | a punishmente Coumes after
a falte Is | Comitted, eyther to putt Iñ his Buttock or Croupe | when hee
putts Itt oute, or Else to putt Itt | oute, when hee putts Itt to much Iñ,
thatt | hee woulde bee antier, with oñe spurr | this Is to bee doñ, & some
times with both | Spurrs,— or Else to Corecte hiñ with both | Spurrs when
hee Is restye & will nott goe | Forwarde,— or to setle hiñ oñ the hande |
when hee Jugles his heade then both | the Spurrs will doe hiñ good,— or
when | hee Is apprehensive & ombraieioes, the Spurrs | maye doe hiñ good,
or thatt hee offers to | byte or Strike then the Spurrs will | diuerte hiñ or
thatt hee Rises to hye | or Boltes, then to giue hiñ the Spurrs | when hee
Is faulging halfe waye downe | then the Spurrs will Cuer hiñ. | butt iff
you giue hiñ the Spurrs when | hee Is Risinge then Itt maye bringe hiñ |
ouer, iff hee will nott aduance which | Is to Rise before then a good stroke
with | both the Spurrs, will make hiñ Rise | Or thatt hee Is a dull Jade
then smartlye | to giue hiñ the Spurrs are good; or | thatt hee Is laseye &
slackes off his | Maneginge then to giue hiñ the Spurrs | quickens hiñ,—
& so the Spurrs are for | manye thinges as a Corectioñ, & therefore | you
muste giue them as Strongleye & | as sharpleye still as you can with all |
your strength & haue verye sharpe | Spurrs to [*sic.*] thatt hee maye feele
them to | the purpose, so thatt bloude maye followe | for other wise Itt Is
nott a Corectioñ | & strike the Horse alwayes some three | or fowre fingers,
behinde the Girthes | & some times towards the flankes | Iff Itt bee to putt
Iñ his Croupe — Ande | beleue Itt ther Is nothinge like the | Spurrs, for
what makes hiñ sensible | To the heele butt the Spurrs, therfor | Vse them,
for & Vse them vntill hee | obaye you for no Horse |

[f.67^f cancelled] Can bee a readye Horse, Vntill hee obayes | the Heele, butt
remember thatt you doe | nott dull hiñ with the Spurrs for then | hee will
nott care for them, no more then | a Stone or a Block, therefore you muste
| giue them Sharpleye when you giue | them, butt giue them butt Seldome
& | Vppon Juste ocation, — Exsepte hee malitiously | Rebels a gaynste
whatt you woulde | haue hiñ doe, & Then leaue nott Spurringe | off hiñ,
& soundlye vntill hee obayes | you, & when hee obayes you Iñ the leaste |

kinde lighte off & sende hiṁ to the | Stable & the nexte morninge trie hiṁ
 | agen, & iff hee obaye Iñ the leaste kinde | cherishe hiṁ & make much off
 hiṁ, | & forgiue hiṁ manye faltes the nexte | morninge thatt hee maye see
 you haue | merceye as well as Justice & thatt | you Cañ Rewarde as well
 as punishe, | Ande nowe you see Corections are | better theñ helps, & off
 what greate | Effecaseye the Spurrs timleye & | Discretlye giueñ Is for the
 Dressinge | of Horses, for ther Is butt the hande | & the Heeles, & then the
 Spurrs | Is halfe the business Iñ dressinge | Horses, onlye the hande hath
 the | prehention though ther are two | Spurrs & butt one Bridle hande |
 Yett Iff the Horse bee nott setlde vppoñ | the Hande you Cañ nott make
 hiṁ | Subiecte to the Heele why ther Is | butt one hande & two heeles
 the | Resoñ Is the Horse hath butt one | Mouth, & two Sides,— Butt the
 Corection | off the Spurrs Is so nesarye & Effectuall | as no Horse Cañ
 bee made a Readye | Horse withoute them, & therefore — Esteeme theñ
 hyleye nexte Setlinge | A Horse Vppoñ the Hande which | muste bee firste.
 Thus much | for the Corection off the Spurrs. |

[f.67^v cancelled] For the Spurrs as a Helpe. |

For the Spurrs as a Helpe, all helps | are to prevente faltes & to goe before
 | faltes, As Corections Coumes after faltes | to punishe hiṁ for offendinge so
 Helpes | to hinder the Horse thatt hee sholde | make no faltes,— Well theñ
 for the | Spurrs as a Helpe Itt Is thus, when | the Horse goes Terra Terra,
 your outwarde | legg Close to him, when hee slackes turne | your heele to
 him to pinch hiṁ with the | Spurr, which you maye Easeleye doe | Euen
 to Bloude, & no bodye perceues Itt, | Itt aughte to bee doñ so neatlye, &
 delectatlye. | & thus the Spurrs Is a neate & a moste | Exselente helpe, &
 the quintessence *for* off | all helps Iñ the manege & iff the Horse | Suffer &
 obaye this whilst you staye | hiṁ oñ the Hande you maye saye hee | Is añ
 Exselente Horse, this quickens | hiṁ & putts hiṁ forwarde,— Butt yett |
 lett mee tell you though this Is añ | Exselente helpe for Terra, Terra, yett |
 Itt Is nott so good a helpe for Terra, Terra, | as Itt Is for all Ayrs, eyther to
 pinch | hiṁ with both the Spurrs or butt | with one & the Resoñ Is because
 Itt | makes hiṁ Groupe more & putts hiṁ | together oñ his hinder partes
 theñ | putts hiṁ forwarde, & therefore more | proper for all mañer off Ayres,

theñ | for Terra, Terra though verye good | for both — Ande thus much for
— thatt Exselente helpe with the | Spurrs, Calde Pinchinge. |

[f.68^r uncanceled] An other Helpe with the Spurrs. |

[cancelled] Ther Is añ other Helpe with the Spurrs | I Cale Itt a helpe because
Itt Is nott so violente | as a Corectioñ, & ther fore a Helpe & — nott So
pressinge as pinchinge,— Butt between | Spurringe & pinchinge & thatt is
thus, | when the Horse Gallopes his Croupe Iñ | or Terra, Terra,— when
hee obayes nott | the legg Enough, beinge close to hiñ, or | verye neer Itt
theñ make the motioñ | with your legg as iff you did Spurr | hiñ & hitt hiñ
with your *leg* Spurr | butt a verye Gentle touch as cañ bee | & no more butt
to lett hiñ feele Itt | a litle,— & this Is the Gentleste off | all thinges with
the Spurrs, & this | makes hiñ obaye the Spurrs & putts | hiñ forwarde,
which Is Exselente | for Terra, Terra or le petit Gallope | his Croupe Iñ
& much better theñ | pinchinge for Itt putts hiñ forwarde | & makes hiñ
obaye the Spurr, att | the Same time,— butt Itt Is nott good | for Ayres,
for ther hee Shoulde Leape | Vpwardes, & goe forwarde butt verye | litle,
& therefore pinchinge Is beste | for Ayres, because Itt rayses his Croupe |
& therefore goes nott much forwarde | & thatt litle touch with the Spurr
like | Spurring good for Terra, Terra, & le | petit Gallope his Croupe Iñ,
because | Itt putts hiñ forwarde, & makes hiñ | obaye the Spurr. ——— |
[This section is repeated around f. 108.]

Iff your Horse Vnderstandes this | Corectioñ & ^{the} two seuerall helpes
with | the Spurrs, beinge made so sensible | to theñ,— you maye bee well a
shurde | hee will need none off theñ after a | while, butt bee so sensible as
hee will | goe freelye, & obaye you willinglye | onlye with the Calfe off your
legg, | for the Helpe off the thighes Is a ridiculous | Conseyte, for Indeed
ther Is no helpes | butt the Spurrs & the Calfe of the | Legges thatt the
Horse Cañ posiblye | feele,. — Ande thus much for the | Spurrs, & the Calfe
off the Legges. |

[f.68^v uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] I tolde you heertofore thatt ther was | nothings better to setle a

Horse oñ the | Hande & to putt hiñ vppoñ the Hanches, | then stoppinge
hiñ Vppoñ his trot, & | Gallope, with the Cauatzane My waye | tied to the
Poñell & Itt Is trewe ——— | butt Itt Is as trewe, thatt you muste stopp |
hiñ Vppoñ his walke duñ piste, onlye | vppoñ the Bitt, with manye stopps
so | to see & trye whatt you haue gayned | off hiñ by settlinge his heade,
& giuinge | hiñ a good apewye & makinge hiñ | firme vppoñ the hande
which this waye | stoppinge hiñ vppoñ the Bridle, will | nott onlye lett you
see, whatt you haue | wraughte, butt Itt will also setle hiñ | ackordinge to
your minde, both firme | off the hande & Juste Vppoñ the Hanches, | &
therefore forgett nott to vse Itt. |

To Rayse a Horse before In Pesades | Is Exselente for all Ayres, because |
you Rayse ^{hiñ} hye, & stayes hiñ vppoñ | the hande Itt makes hiñ lighte
before | which Is fitt for all Ayres, firmes | his Croupe — butt Itt putts a
Horse more | Vppoñ the Hande, theñ Itt putts hiñ | Vppoñ the Hanches.
——— |

After A Horses narowe, & strayte | lessons off Subiection — Itt Is Verye |
good to trot & Gallope hiñ Duñ Piste | to Reioyce hiñ — & sometimes to
doe | nothinge Else to giue hiñ libertye | & Joye Iñ the manege,— Espetialye
| Iñ Suñer Iñ the greate heates, for | narowe lessons, dulls, & wastes their
| Speritts more, & therefore | Shoulde bee Shunde then. |

[f.69^r cancelled] Obseruations. —

You muste bee verye Carefull to see thatt | nothinge thatt Is a boute your
Horse | Shoulde Hurte hiñ, as his Sadle, Bitt, | Cauatzane or anye thinge
Else, for I assure | you as longe as anye thinge hurtes hiñ | hee will neuer
goe well,. ——— |

Noe Horse Goes well Iñ a winde Itt | doth so whiske aboute & Iñ his Eares,
| & makes such a Noyse as deuirtes | hiñ frome the manege,— or anye newe
| helpe or anye newe thinge that theye | are nott acoustomde to, Horses are
so | sensible, & Ticle. — nor strangers to | Coume neare them. ——— |

Itt Is Imposible to dress Horses, butt | firste hee muste knowe, & acknoledge
| mee to bee his Master by obayenge mee, | Thatt Is hee muste feare mee,

& oute | off thatt feare to loue mee & so obaye | mee for Itt Is feare makes
Euerye | bodye obaye both mañ & beaste, & | therfore see thatt hee feares
you for | that Is for his owne sake hee obayes | you for Else hee Is punishte
for loue | Is nott so shure a Holde for ther | I depende vppoñ his will – butt
| when hee feares mee theñ hee dependes | vppoñ my will & thats a redye
Horse | for when I depende Vppon his thatts | a redye mañ, therefore loue
doth no | good, butt feare doth all,— Therfore | lett them feare you, which
Is the | grounde off Dressinge Horses. |

[f.69^v uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] When the Cauatzane Is tied my waye | to the Poñell, then you
muste knowe | thatt you worke all Vppoñ the Bitt | Ande Vppoñ trottinge
Gallopinge, & Stoppinge | The Curbe maye hurte hiñ, & so the barrs |
maye bee hurte, & therefore lett the Curbe | bee a litle loose; & slack. |

Well theñ for leapinge Horses, iff theye | bee nott so well vppoñ the hande
as you | wishe them Rayse hiñ hye & holde hiñ | ther as longe as you Cañ,
& thatt will | nott onlye firme hiñ vppoñ the hande | butt make hiñ lighte
before so thatt hee | will nott press to forwarde, nor Bolte. |

[uncanceled] Obseruation for the Hande |

[cancelled] Whatt soeuer Is furthest frome the | Center, workes hardeste & with
moste | violence — So thatt when your bridle | hande Is lowe, Itt workes
leaste because | Itt Is neereste the Center & when your Bridle hande Is
hye theñ Itt workes more | powerfullye because Itt Is furthest | frome the
Center,— Ande this is moste | Trewe, the hande lowe workes off the | Barrs,
& slackes the Curbe when you | holde the bridle hande hye thatt workes, |
& straytens the Curbe & Slackes the | Barrs,— so the hande lowe slackes
the | Curbe, & the hande Hye straytens, | the Curbe — so Itt Is hye & lowe
| makes the difference — The Curbe | a litle strayte makes hiñ goe | lighte
off the hande — & theñ the | Bridle hande lowe giues the Curbe | a litle
Ease — For trewlye I neuer | sawe anye Horse goe perfectlye | well, butt the
Curbe was a litle — Slack, & Easeye, thatt is no | Horse Is a redye Horse

vntill | hee bee oñ the Hanches, & no Horse | Cañ bee on the Hanches, butt
the | Curbe Is a litle slack, & Easeye. |

[f.70^r uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] For Gallopinge though Itt bee butt the :* | Petit Gallope which Is
a hande Gallope | Euerye stroke or Leape thatt hee goes | forwarde his
hinder legges strikes | ouer his fore legges,— & Iñ Ruñinge | strike ouer
his fore legges verye | much — leapinge forwarde vppoñ | his Ruñinge att
leaste twice his | length,. — so that \wedge^{itt} appears Itt Is a | leape, withoute
Contradiction̄. ——— |

[uncanceled] For Terra, Terra. |

[cancelled] Hee goes a time as I tolde you before & — thatt time Is butt 2 as
1:2: pa ta, & his | hinder legges are alwayes shorte off | his forr legges,
——— |

[uncanceled] For the Cauatzane, |

[cancelled] I woulde alwayes haue you vse my | Exterordinarye Cauatzane which
| Is the beste Cauatzane Iñ the worlde, | for Itt giues a Horse the right
plye | or bente off his heade, & neck withoute | bringing Iñ his outwarde
sholder, | which Is moste Exselente both for | Terra, Terra, demye Ayres,
& Coruets, | & as good for Paseger Vppoñ his | walke, so thatt you press
hiñ oñ | the oute Side off the Turne with | the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne
| tied to the Poñell, & then ther Is | nothings better theñ this Cauatzane
| I haue Inuented, for the operatiõ | off Itt Is moste Exselente, for manye
| Things. |

[f.70^v cancelled] For a Ruñinge Horse |

I will onlye speake off the follies | off the Jockeyes Iñ their absurde | &
Ignorante measuringe howe manye | foote their Horses Strike,— As | thus
theye measure fiue feete | when a Horse hath butt fowre | feet, theñ theye
talke off two | Spases when ther Is butt one | Spase;— Ande Indeed their |
Ignorance Confoundes them | The truth Is this when a Horse | Ruñs, Itt Is
forwards, & his hinder feete | lightes before the printe off | his forr feete, &

the Horse hauinge | butt fowre feet you muste nott | Reckoñ a foote more
theñ hee hath | which Is fūe feete, but onlye | Reckoñ, his fowre feete &
measure | frome his forr feete, to his hinder | feete, & frome his hinder feete
| to his forr feete, & thatts the | Juste measure, with one spase | & nott
two spaces — & though one | forr legg bee a litle before the | other, & so
one hinder legg a litle | before the other hinder legg, Itt | makes no greate
matter so you | measure as I haue tolde you, | for this Is the righte, & trewe
| measure to measure howe manye | foote a Horse Strikes, or leapes | & no
other waye Is trewe for the Jockeyes measure Is moste ridiculous | & false.
—— |

[f.71^r uncanceled] For the Truth & Curiosetye off |

[cancelled] The Hande Is Thus,— In presinge | The Horse on the oute Side off
the Turne. |

When you goe oñ the Righte Hande, | & pull the Iñwarde Rayne to | press
hiñ oñ the oute Side thatt | which presses him moste Is to | pull the Rayne
doure, & to pull | Itt downe wheñ hee goes oñ the | Right Hande, Is to putt
your hande | on the lefte side off his neck, | a good waye & turne vpp the
| Inside off your hande as much | as you cañ, so to pull Itt downe | & nott
vpp, which makes hiñ leane | all oñ the oute Side off the turne | which Is
Exselente for Terra, Terra, | & workes oñ the Barrs, more theñ | the Curbe,
which Is as itt sholde bee. |

Nowe for the lefte hande you muste | pull the Iñwarde Rayne as much |
as you cañ, to make hiñ leane | oñ the oute side off the Turne, | & thatt
Is Thus; —— | Nott to Turne | Vpp your hande, for thatt Slackes Itt, |
butt to pull Itt as much downe | & oñ as much oñ the Righte Side | off hiñ
neck as posiblye you Cañ | & this makes hiñ leane oñ the | oute side off
the Turne putts hiñ | on the Hanches, because Itt narowes | hiñ *before & l*
behinde & therefore | Inlarges hiñ before & Imbrase | the Turne the better,
& putts hiñ | oñ the barrs, & nott oñ the Curbe | which Is Exselente for all
these | seuerall Things. | This Is false. [This last line added in a different
ink] |

[f.71^v cancelled] Howe to worke with the | Handes to press the Horse | oñ the
Iñside off the Turne |

Wheñ you Goe oñ the Right Hande | Turne ^{Λ^{putt}} your hande oñ the Inside
| off his neck, Butt doe nott turne | Vpp your Hande butt pull Itt | downe,
to press the outwarde | Rayne as much as you Cañ & this | narowes hiñ
before & Inlarges | hiñ behinde, & Is fitt for Galopinge | & Suplinge off his
Sholders, |

Wheñ you goe oñ the lefte hande | putt your hande oñ the Inside | off his
neck,— & Turne vpp the | Inside off your hande *as much* | as much as you
Cañ & so pull | your hande doune, this straytens | his sholders, & Inlarges
his Croupe, | & Is fitt for Gallopinge the | Piroyte & demy Voltaes, Vppoñ
| Pasadoes & suples his Sholders | verye much, & putts hiñ vppoñ | the
Barrs, & nott Vppoñ the Curpe [*sic.*], | Ande Is moste Exselente | for all
these Thinges. | Butt remember the hande to bee Lowe. | This Is false.
[from 'Butt remember' in different ink] |

[f.72^f cancelled] To putt a Horse Vppoñ the | Hanches. |

: | A Horse Cañ neuer goe well vppoñ | the Hanches, butt his fore partes
muste | bee wraughte butt Iñ this mañer. | wheñ you stopp hiñ you pull
his | forr partes downe, ^{Λ[&] Iñ} when you pull | hiñ back you putt hiñ vppoñ
the hanches | because you pull his forr partes downe, & Iñ | Wheñ you putt
hiñ my waye to the | Single Piller Iñ Coruetts you putt hiñ | Vppoñ the
Hanches, because you pull | his forr partes downe. ^{& Iñ} | When you make
hiñ goe Terra, Terra | wheñ you worke the Inwarde Rayne | on which hande
soeuer hee goes so | you press hiñ oñ the oute Side,& putt | Iñ his Inwarde
Hanches, because | you pull his forr partes downe | With the Inwarde Rayne
off the | Bridle off Eyther hande. — — So my waye with the Cauatzane
| Tied to the Poñell, or Tied to the | Girthes, Iff hee bee preste oñ the |
Oute Side, & his outwarde Hanch | putt Iñ putts hiñ vppoñ the Hanches |
because the Cauatzane pulls downe | his heade; — & Iñ *so the martingale*
off | *our fatioñ putts hiñ vppoñ the Hanches,* | *because Itt pulls downe his*
heade ——— | butt iff you press oñ hiñ oñ the Inside | off the Turne though
you doe pull downe | his heade hee Is off off the Hanches | because his

outwarde Hanche goes | oute; & therefore putts hiṁ oñ the | Sholders. *the martingale Is | naught.* [this last deleted bit is in different ink] |

[f.72^v uncanceled] :* To putt a Horse Vppon the | Hanches. ——— |

[cancelled] You see theñ whatt soeuer pulls | a Horse heade doune $\wedge^{\&}$ Iñ putts hiṁ | Vppoñ the Hanches, or thatt Naturalye | hee putts his heade doune as for Exsample, | A Horse thatt goes Incaputiato, which | Is to Arme hiṁ selfe agaynste the Bitt | Is Easeleye putt Vppoñ the Hanches, | & beinge Vppoñ the Hanches hee Is | lighte off the hande. — To strike a Horse | oñ the knees with your Rodd when hee | Rises before pulls hiṁ doune, $\wedge^{\&}$ Iñ & therefore | putts hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches. ——— | Ther is no Horse thatt holdes vpp his | heade butt hee Is off off the Hanches | nor anye Horse thatt Riseth hye before | butt Is off off the Hanches. ——— | Nor no Horse In Terra, Terra, or *Coruettes* | Or *demy Ayres* when his heade Is | pulde doune $\wedge^{\&}$ Iñ butt hee goes oñ the | Hanches. The Resoñ Is this no Horse | Cañ goe oñ the Hanches, thatt doth | nott bowe Iñ the Cambrills or hinder | Haughes, — when soeuer a Horse | Riseth hye before hee Is stiff Iñ | the Cambrills off nesesitye & therefore | off off the Hanches nor no Horse | Holdeth vpp his heade verye Hye | butt Itt stiffens his Cambrills & | therefore off off the Hanches ——— | Nor no Horse Cañ goe lowe before | butt off nesesitye hee muste bende | Iñ the Cambrills eyther goinge doune | a Hill or turnde Iñ the stable | which makes his hinder partes | hier theñ his fore partes butt hee | muste bende Iñ the Cambrills & | therefore muste bee vppoñ the | Hanches ——— |

[f.73^r cancelled] [1st five lines scribbled out until illegible]

As | for Exsample a Horses forr legges are | made like our legges the knees outwarde, | Butt a Horses hinder legges are made | like our Armes Juste Contrarye — So | thatt when soeuer a Horse Is raysde | Hye before Itt stiffens hiṁ Iñ the Cambrills, | Ande when hee holdes vpp his heade | Itt stiffens hiṁ Iñ the Cambrills, — So | Contrarye when soeuer his heade Is | pulde doune off nesesitye hee muste bende | Iñ the Cambrills, for hee Cañ nott doe otherwise, x |

{ x iff hee bee | preste | otherwise | nott | }

I labor this poynte the more because | you Shall Clerlye See whatt putts
hiṁ | oñ the Hanches, & whatt putts hiṁ | off off the Hanches,— thatt so
you maye | Shuñ the one & take the other, which | Is to putt hiṁ oñ the
Hanches,— Because | thatt Is the Ende off all our labor & | the quintesence
off our Arte for | withoute a Horse bee vppoñ the | Hanches, hee cañ neuer
bee a Readye | Horse or lighte off the Hande | Butt ther Is no Rule butt
hath añ | Exseptione & thatt Is you maye pull | downe a Horses heade &
yett nott | to bee vppoñ the Hanches, & thatt | Is when you worke his
sholders | duñ piste, legg & Rayne oñ the Inside, | though his heade bee
pulde doune | hee Cañ nott bee off the Hanches because | you putt Itt oute
& press hiṁ oñ the | Iñside,— no more when his Croupe | Is Iñ, Iff hee ^{bee}
preste |

[f.73^v] Oñ the Inside, his Croupe Goes oute a | litle & therefore Cañ nott bee
vppoñ the Hanches, though his heade bee | pullde doune, because you putt
his | hanches oute, This Is Good to giue | hiṁ añ Apewie Vppoñ the Barrs |
& suple his Sholders butt Itt Cañ nott | putt hiṁ, Vp poñ thatt, which you
| putt a wayte thatt weare to greate | a Miracle, añ Imposebiletie — Butt
| pullinge doune his heade putts hiṁ | Vp poñ the Hanches att a Stopp &
| pullinge doune his heade ^{& In} when | you make hiṁ Goe back putts hiṁ
| Vppoñ the Hanches, & when you pull | downe his heade ^{& In} & Rayse
hiṁ Itt | putts hiṁ Vppoñ the Hanches, & | when you press hiṁ oñ the
oute side | off the Turne Iñ Terra, Terra, Itt | putts hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches
when | you pull downe his heade ^{& In} eyther | with the Cauatzane or the
Bridle, | Ande so pullinge doune his heade & Iñ | pressinge hiṁ oñ the oute
side off | the Turne putts hiṁ Vppoñ the | Hanches, *Eyther In Coruetts, or*
iñ Terra Terra | *Demye Ayr*s, or Vppoñ his walke | Iñ paseger, Ande this
I añ | shure Is Suffitiente to putt a | Horse vppoñ the Hanches, which | Is
the quintesence off the manege, |

{A shorte | Trott putts a | Horse Vppoñ | the Hanches |}

so a shorte | trott dun | piste, legg | & Rayne off | a side putts a | Horse
Vppon the | Hanches, beca= | use his Inw= | arde hinder | legg Is putt |

oute |

Itt Is when his heade Is doune $\wedge^{\&}$ In $\&$ | preste, thatt Is when you pull doune his | heade, thatt you press hi \bar{m} with the heeles | or legges otherwise nott for iff a Horse holde | doune his heade to drinke hee Is nott off | the hanches, for then hee bowes rather before | the \bar{n} behinde, so hee muste bee preste so | iff hee holde Vpp his heade Itt workes nothings | off the Hanches butt the Contrarye. |

[f.74^f uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] Olde Frederick Griso \bar{n} makes much a doe | aboute the falte Caled the Credensa, which | Is thatt hee will nott Turne, puttinge I \bar{n} his | Croupe to hinder his Turninge, which Is the | worste kinde off Restiuenes, beinge Vppo \bar{n} | Circles, & the moste dangerous & the hardeste | to be Cuerde,— So Cauallo Frenato, by Piero | Antonio, hath longe Chapters off Cuinge | this vice Caled Credenza, & all the reste | off the Etalia \bar{n} Aughters I \bar{n} Horse-manship | doth the Like. — Then La Browe, thatt | greate Phisopher [*sic.*] I \bar{n} Horse-manship, takes | Greate paynes aboute the Credenza, which | hee Cale Antier — So doth La Nowe I \bar{n} | his Booke off Etalien & Fransoges,— So | doth Pluinell, but Pluinell Is only | a methode att three Pillers & a Routi \bar{n} | because the Horses are dreste by Sichte | more the \bar{n} feelinge though hee pretendes | to Itt,— La Browe woulde haue a Horse | looke o \bar{n} the Inside off his Turne, butt | nott to bende his neck, hee giues you | greate warninge to take heed off that, |

Nowe My waye with the Cauatzane :* | tied to the Po \bar{m} ell, makes hi \bar{m} alwayes | looke o \bar{n} the I \bar{n} side off the Turne & | doth nott weake \bar{n} his Neck, for you | Ca \bar{n} nott supple a Horse Neck, & Sholders | to much,— The \bar{n} the Cauatzane beinge | tied to the po \bar{m} ell, the Inwarde | Cauatzane Rayne workinge with | the Inwarde legg, which Is legg | & Rayne off the I \bar{n} side Eyther | Vppo \bar{n} large Circles, Eyther Vppo \bar{n} | his walke Trott, or Gallope or narowe | Circles, Itt Is Imposible the Horse | Shoulde bee Antier, workinge hi \bar{m} | Thus, because you bringe I \bar{n} his Sholders | & putts oute his Croupe, |

[f.74^v uncanceled] :* Obseruations. |

[cancelled] Ande theñ Itt Is Imposible a Horse | Shoulde bee Antier — Agayne
the | Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne tied to the | Poñell my waye, though you
putt Iñ | his Croupe, iff you press $\wedge^{\text{hiñ}}$ oñ the Inside, | his Croupe muste
goe oute a litle | & his heade beinge pullde Iñ to the | Turne, & his Croupe
beinge a litle oute | Itt Is Imposible the Horse Shoulde | bee Entier for
Entier Is to putt Iñ | his Croupe to much & putt oute his sholders, | &
this waye I vse putts oute his Croupe | & pulls Iñ his Sholders, which Is
Juste | Contrarye to Entier, & therefore workinge | Horses My Waye, no *bo*
Horse Cañ bee | Antier — So thatt My waye with the | Cauatzane *Enters*
 \wedge^{hinders} anye Horse frome | beinge Entier settles hiñ oñ the hande | which
Is oñ the Barrs, & Eases the | Curbe & when you press the Horse | vppoñ
the oute Side thañ putts a Horse | Vppoñ the hanches — Thus you see |
howe Exselente the Cauatzane Mye | Waye tied to the Poñell Is for all |
Thinges,— Ande therefore Vse Itt | & no other waye For sertenlye | ther Is
nothinge like Itt for the | perfecte dressinge off Horses | & Iñ makinge a
readye Horse, | For ther was neuer anye Inuentioñ | like Itt, for Setlinge a
Horses | heade, to giue $\wedge^{\text{hiñ}}$ a good Apewie to Suple | his Sholders, & to
putt hiñ Vppoñ | the Hanches,— Ande to hinder hiñ | frome faulinge Iñ
to vises, & for | the Cueringe all vises & therefore | vse nothinge Else for
the dressinge | off all mañer off Horses, off whatt | Natioñ, Age, Humor, or
Condition | what-Soeuer. |

[f.75^r cancelled] Off the seuerall Aughters thatt | hath writteñ off Horse-
Manship, | both Italiens, & French. |

- This Noble Arte was firste beguñ & | Inuented Iñ Italeye, & all the French
| & other Nations, wente thether to Lerne | & the Seate off Horse-Manship
was att | Naples,— Ande the firste that Euer writt | off Itt was Frederick
Grisoñ añ Napolitañ | Ande trewlye hee writt like a Horse-Mañ, | & a
greate Master Iñ the Arte for those | times, & two Etaliens thatt weare his |
scollers, Henrye the 8th sente for In to | Englande, & off one off theñ Came
all our | Alexsanders, & their Scollers fillde the | kingdome with Horse-
meñ S^r Philipp | Sidneye braughte añ Etalieñ Rider one | Signior Romano

— to teach his Nephewe | William Lorde Herberte afterwarde | Earle off
 Pembroke — & the same S^r. Philipp | Sidneye braughte ouer afterwarde
 añ | other Etalieñ Rider Calde Signior | Prospero,— & The olde Earle off
 Lester | sente for añ Exselente Rider oute | off Italey Calde Signior Claudio
 | Courte whoe writt a Booke off Horse- | manship & Coted by seuerall
 Etalien | writers, butt I thinke his booke Is verye | much off Itt stoleñ oute
 off Grison ——— | Laurentius Russius Is añ other Aughter, | none off the
 beste with horrible Bitts | Theñ ther Is Cesare Fiesca hath writt | a Booke
 much oute off Grisoñ to wher | hee medles with musike — Ther Is | añ
 other Booke off Horse-Manship | Calde Gloria dell Cauallo, *looke* ^{longe}
 discourses, | & much oute off Grisoñ — Ther is añ | other Etalieñ Booke off
 Horse-manship | Calde Cauallo, Frenato, de Piero Antonio, | a Napolitan,
 much Stolleñ oute off | Grisoñ butt his Booke Consistes moste | off Bitts to
 litle purpose though seemes | to bee Greate Curioseties. ——— | Butt the
 moste famous | Mañ, |

[f.75^v] Thatt Euer was Iñ Italey was a | Napolitañ att Naples, caled Signior
 | Pigniatell, butt hee neuer Writt | Butt Monsieur La Browe Ridd vnder
 | hiñ fue yeares, & Monsieur de Pluinell | 2: yeares, & Monsieur St.
 Antoyne manye | yeares, the libertye which Is the beste | for Bitts, att this
 daye wee cale a La: | Pigniatell,— These 3: Frenchmen thatt | Ridd Signior
 Pigniatell | fillde France with Horse-meñ | which before weare filde with |
 Etaliens,— Monsieur La Browe I beleue | was the firste thatt Euer writt Iñ
 | the French Language Iñ Horse-Manship | & the firste French Mañ thatt
 Euer | writt Iñ thatt Arte,— His Booke Is | very Tedijs, manye wordes
 for litle | matter, Ande absolutlye his firste | Booke Is also stoleñ oute off
 Grison, & | his seconde Booke frome Signior Pigniatells | Lessons, butt La
 Browe to seeme wiser | theñ hee was, & to make Vpp a Booke | deuides a
 Sircle In to so manye partes | to bringe a Horse to a whole Circle, | as Itt
 Confoundes a Horse more & | harder for hiñ theñ to worke hiñ | Vppoñ a
 whole Circle att firste | Ande for La Browes thirde Booke | off Bitts, ther Is
 no greate matter | Iñ Itt — Theñ for Pluinell no | doubtte butt hee was a
 good Horse-Mañ | butt his Inuentioñ off the 3: Pillers | wher his bookes Is
 butt añ absolute | methode off those three Pillers Is añ | absolute Routiñ &
 hath spoyled more | Horses theñ Euer anye thinge | did, for Horses are nott

made to | the hande & heele att all with them̄ | nor will nott goe frome the
usuall | place wher they are Ridden, nor | well ther neyther. — Butt |

[f.76^r] My Booke Is stoleñ oute off no Booke nor | anye mans Practise butt my
owne & Is | as Newe, as Itt Is Trewe & iff anye mañ | doe nott like Itt
hee Is Iñ greate danger | nott to Vnderstande Itt, for ther Is | no waye for
Dressinge Horses like Itt. | & Iff Itt bee not good I añ shure Itt | Is the
beste thatt hath been writt | yett what will bee writt thatt | I knowe nott.
— I muste tell you | for the Etalieñ writers theye are | Tedijs, & write more
off markes, & | Coullers, & temperatur, & Elementes | & moones & Starrs,
& windes, & filosofocallye, | & breedinge then̄ the Arte off Ridinge | onlye
to make Vpp a Booke since theye | wanted Horse-Manshipp. — Ther | was
one Signore Haniball an Napolitañ thatt Came Iñ to Englande & serude
| the Lorde Walden. — Monsieur | St. Antoyne a French-Mañ was | a
verye good Horse-Mañ, & sente | ouer by H: the 4:th off France to | teach
Prince Henerye one Monsieur | La: Coste was his page Ridd Exselente |
well, Espetialye Leapinge Horses | Monsieur Bouklier Ridd vnder him̄ | to
an Exselente Horse-Mañ & oñe | Monsieur Fouteneye which was | eyther
his Nephewe, or his Naturall | Soñ for hee Gaue him̄ all when̄ | hee dide,
this Fouteneye was a | verye good Horse-Mañ to butt none | off these Euer
Writt,— These | French-meñ thatt weare good Horse-Meñ, | Fauorde their
Natioñ so much as | theye fillde the kingdome ^{off} Englande with | verye Ill
French Riders, which | liued like Princes, by the newe | fangle & Ignorance
off our | Englishe Nobiletie, |

[f.76^v] Ande Gentreye | Thatt likes nothings butt Strangers | so theye Cañ talke
& playe the | Mounte-bankes Itt Is Suffitiente to | Treatte them̄ like Princes,
though | moste off those French Riders | weare farr worse then̄ any off | our
Countrye Riders, thatt backs | Coltes, or anye off our Dauye Amblers. |

Obsoruations. | Ther are manye Horses, whensoeuer | theye are preste theye
will putt vpp | their headdes; Itt maye bee to Shuñ the | presure off beinge
putt vppoñ the hanches, | for holdinge vpp their heades putts | them̄ off
off the Hanches, — To remedye | this tie the Cauatzane My Waye to | the
poñell for thatt pulls doune his | heade & therefore muste putt him̄ | oñ

the Hanches butt to hinder thatt | the Horse will striue to putt vpp | his
 heade as much as hee Cañ, to shuñ | the presure off the Hanches,— Ande |
 when hee sees hee cañ nott hinder Itt | thatt waye,— findinge the Inwarde
 | Cauatzane Rayne pulls his heade | & forses Itt so much Into the Turne
 | Hee findes the dore Is open oñ | the oute side & so takes his adua=
 ntage to putt oute his Croupe to | hinder the presure off the hanches | & Is
 resolute rather then to ^{bee} putt | Vppoñ the Hanches still to continewe |
 his Croupe oute & to suffer the | worste you can doe with your | outwarde
 Spurr, which hee |

[f.77^r] Is resolute nott to obaye Spurr as longe | & Cruellye as you Cañ, butt
 yett for all | his Resolution, hee will Grone & growe | Restye, & nott sturr
 for a greate while | butt Coñonlye att ^{the} laste hee will obaye | though
 the bloudye duel bee longe | Firste,— Butt iff hee shold, or woulde | nott
 obaye — I shoulde wishe you rather | to Take this followinge Course which
 | Is to take the Cauatzane, & martingall | wee vse & thatt will pull doune
 his | heade to whatt degree you will & | because the martingale Is Iñ the
 midle | off his breaste the dore Is open no | wher ther & because I woulde
 |

[Right hand margin:] {The | martingale | Is naughte. |}

nott haue hiñ forste with the | Cauatzane to pull Iñ his neck to | much to
 giue him thatt aduantage | to putt oute his Croupe, ther-fore | I woulde
 haue you helpe hiñ | onlye with the Bridle. & this sertenlye | will pull
 doune his heade & therefore | Easeleye putt hiñ Vppoñ the Hanches, when
 hee Cañ nott take so much | aduantage off you with the Bridle, | as with
 the Cauatzane — Ande | this Is the onlye waye to Cuer thatt | vise off
 puttinge oute his Croupe | to disobaye the heele thatt hee | might nott bee
 putt Vppoñ the Hanches. |

The Martengall Is the beste Mar=
 tengall Iñ the worlde because | Itt Is
 tied to the Cauatzane & So | neuer offenes, & hurtes a |

[Right hand margin] {The marting- | ale Is naught |}

Horses mouth as all the reste | off the martengalls doe. for all | those are
Eyther tied to the Trench | or Else to the Arches off the Bitt | so thatt
theye muste needs offende, | & hurte a Horses mouth. |

[f.77^v] Obseruations. |

Wheñ soeuer a Horse goes to much oñ | the Back, & fetches disorderde
leapes | ther Is no waye better to hinder hiñ | theñ to holde hiñ well, &
faste oñ the | hande for a slack hande giues hiñ | libertye to leape wheñ a
stiffer hande | hinders hiñ frome leapinge ——— | wheñ a Horse vses to goe
lowe Iñ coruets | & thatt by much reste, & manye holedayes | or butt litle
Ridinge the Horse goes to | much oñ the Back,— Ther Is nothinge takes
| hiñ off more theñ to putt Iñ his Croupe | his outwarde Hanch for thatt
subiects | his hinder partes so much, as hee Is hinderde | & tied vpp frome
Groupinge, or goinge | vppoñ the Back. — Butt before you | Coume to
thatt, Itt weare verye good | To Trott, & Gallope hiñ so longe vppoñ |
large Circles duñ Piste vntill you | finde thatt you haue totalye abated | his
Chine, & takeñ hiñ off off the | Back,— Ande then putt Iñ his outwarde |
Hanch to subiecte his Croupe a geñ | thatt hee maye Goe oñ the Hanches,
| & nott to goe oñ the Back,. ——— |

For ther Is nothinge Iñ the Worlde | putts a Horse more Vppoñ the Hanches
then to press hiñ oñ the oute side | off the Turne thatt hee maye leane |
oñ the Oute Side thatt Is to leane off | his outwarde legges, Espetialye off |
his outwarde hinder legg,— which Is | doñ by the Inwarde Rayne cross his
| Neck,— To pull hiñ oñ the oute Side,. ——— |

[f.78^r Off the Imperfections off a Horses | Mouth,— :* |

All our olde writers, Iñ Horse—manshipp | The greate Masters, Iñ thatt
profession. | as well olde as Moderne, are mighteeye | Troubled, &
Consernde, a boutte the vises | & Imperfections, a boutte a Horse mouth,
| As for Exsample wheñ a Horse pulls | & Suckes vpp his Tonge,— the
Seconde | when hee putts his Tonge ouer the | Bitt, the Thirde wheñ hee
doubles Itt | a boutte the Bitt,. — Ande the fourth | Is when hee hanges his
tonge oute off | his mouth Eyther forwarde or off one | Side off his Mouth,—

For all & Euerye | one off these vises, our Greate Docters | Iñ Horse-manship
hath takeñ a greate | Dell off paynes, with manye Curius | deuises & manye
Inuentions with Bitts, | to Cuer Euerye vise & takes greate | paynes, &
much labor a boutte Itt, so | much as their seuerall writings aboute | these
peticuler vises off the mouth | woulde make a Greate Volume, or Booke, |
when the truth Is moste off their Bitts, | to remedye, & their Phisick, the
greater disease, | & bringes more Inconueniencyes with | Itt, then the vises
theye goe a boutte to | Cuer;— The Truth Is Iñ shorte I wishe | A Horse to
haue none off these faltes | butt putt the Case hee hath,— as puttinge | oute
his Tonge, or puttinge his tonge | ouer the Bitt, or Suckinge or drawinge |
off his Tonge vpp or dublinge off Itt | all these I wishe weare nott butt iff |
theye bee, the Horse Is nott preiudiste | att all bye them, for hee will haue
| as good añ Apewye with them as | withoute them, & as firme & | steadye
off his Heade. |

[f.78^v] An as sensible off the Barrs, & the Curbe | as Iff those vises weare nott,
for the Bitt restes, & workes still vppoñ his | Barrs, & the *w.* Curbe workes
Iñ his | dewe place wher Itt aughte Iñ | Spighte off his Tonge lett Itt bee
wher | Itt will, or nott bee — For when a | Horses tonge Is Cutt off doth
that hinder | the Bitt for workinge oñ the Barrs, | or the Curbe for workinge
Iñ his | dewe place nott att all, naye I haue | knowne a Horses tonge pulde
oute | quite by the Rootes, & yett hee wente | as well as Euer hee did Iñ
his life | so thatt Is nothings for the Bitt still | workes Vppoñ the Barrs
& the Curbe wher | Itt aughte — so thatt a Horse with a Tong | & putt
Itt wher hee will, or a Horse withoute | a Tonge Is no hinderence, for a
Horse hauinge | a Good Apewie or to bee well settled oñ the | Hande no
Hinderance Iñ the worlde | So that nowe you see, whatt vayne Curiosities
| to no purpose, *or* our greate masters hath | troubled them selues a boutte
& pusled | manye off their Readers,— & tormented | the poore Horses to
Boote,— To no Ende | In the worlde. ——— |

Nowe, lett mee speake a litle off the Credenza | which Is Entier or to holde
his heade | off one Side — whatt sharpe Cauatzanes | theye make like
bodkins to tormente | the Horse oñ thatt Side hee bendes, or oñ | the
Contrarye Side —, whatt prickes like | needles oñ the oute Side off the

Bitt, & | Iñ the seuerall places off the Curbe | with strange Ingins & deuises
withiñ | his mouth with the Bitt, & Bitts to | haue such strange tormentinge
mouthes | & off one side Cruell, & oñ the other Side | Gentle & such strange
tormentinge | Vpsetts to Gaule the Roofe off his mouth, | & all this to no
Eende butt to tormente |

[f.79^r] The poore Horses & make theñ worse,— when | the trewe Arte Is a
playne Cañon, Scatch or | Melons, a la Pigniatell with Branches | a La
Counetable, & an Easeye well Lined | Cauatzane tied to the Poñell my
waye | & then your Horse Shall bee well settled | oñ the Hande,— & neuer
haue the Credenza, | or bee Entier or turne his heade more | off one side
theñ añ other, iff you Ride | ackordinge to the Arte off my Booke for | Itt Is
nott Bitts thatt Dresses & makes | Horses, butt the trewe Arte off Ridinge,
— which Is Iñ my Booke. ——— |

[uncancelled] Nowe for Restiueness off | All kindes. :* |

[cancelled] Whatt Prickinge hiñ with nayles off his | Croupe, tienge his tayle
with a or stones | with a longe Corde & pullinge *oñ* thatt | or Hedghogges,
or Whelpes, or Catts tied | to a longe pole to Scratch hiñ betweeñ | the
legges,— or strawe att the Ende off | Longe poles sett oñ fier to burne
his Croupe, | or Squirtes with water to Squirte | betweene his legges,— or
Sande Bagges | with prickes or bootes stuffte with

[Right hand margin] { x & to rayse | whole towne | with staaues | & poles
to | Beate hiñ. |

Strawe with Sharpe Spurrs continuaye | to prick hiñ. — [^]* & fortye such
foolishe | Deuises, which sauors onlye off Ignorance, | & wante off Arte —
For trewe Arte | with trienge all Gentle meanes firste & iff | that will nott
doe, theñ youse your Spurrs | & Sharpe ons, & paye hiñ soundlye, & thatt
| will reduce hiñ att laste, lett hiñ bee | neuer so Restye. ——— |

[f.79^v] :* For Ruñ a waye Horses. |

Gentle Bitts, Gentle Cauatzanes, ^{the} Curbe Slack. & Ride | hiñ withoute
Spurrs, for a Run a waye | Horse needes no Spurrs, & doe nothings butt

| walke hiṁ Vppoñ large Circles & a lighte | hande both off the Bridle & Cauatzane | & staye hiṁ by litle & litle, & giue the | hande offteñ, & giue hiṁ Grass & anoynte | his Bitt with honye & Salte & by litle | & litle youle Gayne hiṁ, — Iff this doe | no good Putt hiṁ to the Single piller | with the longe Rayne, For ther hee cañ | Ruñ but Rounde, & thatt will reduse hiṁ | or Iñ a House wher hee cañ nott Ruñ farr, | & stopp hiṁ a gaynste one off the walls | & this will Reduce hiṁ better theñ | all their deuices for manye Meñ to | stande att the stopp with Cudgells to | beate hiṁ, or straws att the Ende off | Psta Longe poles fierde to thruste Iñ | his face, or Squirtes or Squirte water | Iñ his fase,— or longe stringes tied to | his Tayle or stones,— or to make hiṁ | leape desperate leapes downe a Hill | Iñ to some Pitt or to leape Iñ to the | water, or wheñ hee Ruñs to forse | hiṁ to Ruñ Vntill hee bee oute off | Breath, with Continuall Spurringe | & beatinge hiṁ with a Cudgell Vppoñ | the heade Vntill hee bee oute of breath, | To breake his winde, or to Ruñ hiṁ | a gainste a Pale, or a Tree, all these | are as foolishe wayes, as dangerous | both for the mañ & Horse,— & therefore | Vse the firste lessons, & preseptts I gaue | you, which Iñ a litle time will | sertenlye reduse hiṁ, withoute anye | danger Eyther to you or the Horse. | & therefore vse theñ, & no other. |

[f.80^r] The diference off helpinge with the Bridle | Hande In Terra, Terra, & Coruetts. |

For Terra. Terra the hande lowe & oñ the oute | Side *to pull downe your hande a litle*, to pull | the Inwarde Rayne Cross his neck, for Itt is | the Inwarde Raye pulde so thatt putts the | Horse on his legges oñ the oute side off the turne, | so much as to make hiṁ leane on the oute side | off the turne,— The hande lowe putts a Horse | Vppon the Barrs, & so pulls hiṁ downe & beinge | preste oñ the oute Side putts hiṁ vppoñ the | Hanches, the hande lowe keepes the Horse lowe | before which Is proper for Terra Terra, nott | onlye to bee neer the Grounde, butt because, | Terra, Terra, Is a leape or stride forwarde | for the Horse cañ neuer goe hier theñ the | plasinge off your hande hye or lowe & to | thatt degree still the Horse Cañ rise, & no | Hier, so thatt the hande lowe Is Proper | for Terra, Terra, for the Resons I haue | giueñ you; ——— |

[uncancelled] For Coruetts, |

[cancelled] Itt Is a leape Vppwarde & to goe forwarde | verye litle, & as the Horse Is faulinge | hee remoues his hinder partes & Is then̄ | all Iñ the Ayre, which Is a leape,— All | Ayrs muste bee quick frome the Grounde | & to stayer vppon̄ the hanche this Is a Principall, | & maxim̄,— well then̄ vppon̄ thatt grounde | your hande muste nott bee lowe, for thatt | pulls hiñ doune, & workes oñ the barrs to | pull hiñ doune & then̄ hee cañ nott stayer | Vppon̄ the hande, which Is Improper for Ayrs | butt Exselente for Terra, Terra, because thatt | Ayre Is quick — butt wee muste finde a waye | to make a Horse stayer vppon̄ the hande | & to goe a longe time, Iñ stayenge vppon̄ the | hande, & quick frome the Grounde, Then̄ | thus, since the Horse cañ Rise still to the | highte off your hande you muste holde | your bridle hande hier which will make | hiñ goe hyer, & ther holde hiñ or Stayer | him to ^{make} a longe time, for |

[f.80^v] For thatt Horse thatt goes hier muste needes | goe a longer Time, then̄ hee thatt goes Lowe | therefore your hande hye to Rayse hiñ & to | Sustayne hiñ ther — Iñ Coruetts, hee muste | *nott* bee preste to ^{as} much on the oute side off | the turne because Hee ^{muste} goes *Euen with his | hinder legges* ^{vppon} the hanches *which* ^{as} Terra Terra doth *nott* | neyther muste hee bee preste oñ the Inside | like a Gallope because *hee goes Euen with | his hinder legges* that putts him off off the hanches besides iff hee weare | preste oñ the Inside off the turne the Horse | woulde putt oute his Croupe & bee oñ the | sholders,— Therefore you muste *wh* holde | your hande hye, thatt the Horse maye goe | hye to goe a longe & leasurlye time, & pull | the Inwarde Rayne, *th butt nott so* ^{as} much cross | his neck as In Terra Terra, *butt onlye a litle* | which Is to press hiñ *a litle* oñ the oute | Side, & putt your outwarde legg Gentlye | to hiñ, keepinge hiñ vpp with your Inwarde | legg, & to goe forwarde verye lite & your | hande Rather withiñ the Poñell then̄ | forwarder,— Ande remember thatt your | hande hye workes Vppon̄ the Curbe, which | holdes hiñ vpp which Is fitt for all Ayres, | Ande hears the diference off the hande | between Terra, Terra, & Coruetts,— | The hande lowe pulls a Horse doune & | workes oñ the Barrs, which Is proper | to Setle his heade, giue hiñ a good apewye, | both vppon his Trott & Gallope as

also In | Paseger Vppoñ his walke vppoñ his | Gallope duñ piste or vppoñ
 his Gallope | his Croupe a litle In, The hande lowe | for all these thinges
 are Exselente because | Itt workes oñ the barrs, & pulls hiñ doune, | Butt
 for Coruets, & Demye Ayr, & all | Leapes the hande hye which workes
 | oñ the Curbe, & holdes hiñ vpp to | giue hiñ a longe Time,— *Et press
 hiñ | on the oute side thatt Is to leane off his outwarde | legge, which you
 maye knowe by his neck leaninge | all oñ the oute side. — |*

[f.81^r] All Gallopes wether his Croupe bee In or | oute, muste bee narowe before
 & large | behinde,— so muste all leapes, as also the | piroyte, which Is doñ
 with your outwarde | Rayne, or the Inwarde Rayne, & the Inwarde | Legg
 both off a Side. — Butt for Terra, | Terra, Itt muste bee narowe behinde &
 | large befor, & therefore the Inwarde | Rayne, & outwarde legg, the hande
 lowe | so In Coruets & Demye Ayr the Inwarde | Rayne, ^Λnott helpe with
 the legges att all *Et outwarde legg*, butt the hande | Hye, for the resons I Gaue
 you before | for though his forr legges are narower, | theñ his hinder legges,
 yett his hinder | legges Is withiñ the lines off his Sholders | thatt Is narower
 theñ his Sholders are | & therefore Vppoñ the Hanches, & therefore | the
 Inwarde Rayne & outwarde legg | to Subiecte his Hanches. — |

An Anser to those *foolishe* ^{Impertinente} questions [*sic.*] | thatt followes. :* |

Thatt all thinges In the Manege Is nothings butt | tricks, & dancinge &
 Gambolls & off no vse Firste | by his leaue thatt sayes so ^Λhee is very much
 deseued *Itt Is false* for a Horse | thatt Is well settled Vppoñ the hande &
 firme | & obediente to the hande & heeles Gallopes the | feelde & changes
 as offten & Juste as you will | eyther withoute the Circle or withiñ the Circle
 | Serpeiare, terra, terra, the Piroyte or what you will | & all this is Vppoñ
 the Grounde & Euerye thinge | & partice off Itt vsefull, & so vsefull as a
 good | Horse—mañ vppoñ such a Horse woulde haue | to much aduantage In
 Contience off hiñ thatt | talkes agaynste Itt, Eyther In a Single Combatt,
 | or In the warrs, — for a redye Horse will ruñ | stopp, turne, goe back,
 & iff hee rise hee knowes | how to Couñe doune a gayne & Is so well oñ
 | the hande as you Cañ nott pull hiñ ouer with | both your handes, & so

obediente as I will ruñ | hiñ oñ fier, water, or forge & hee shall obaye | mee,
& all this Is to bee doñ no wher butt | Iñ the manege. |

hf.81^v] Butt whatt makes these Gentle-Meñ speake | agaynste Itt, the firste
Resoñ Is because they | are Ignorante & doe nott knowe Itt & so | speakes
foolishlye, as the wiseste maen Iñ | the worlde muste doe, when they will
| Speake off anye thinge thatt theye are Igno= | rante off, & thinkes twitle
twatle will | Carie Itt,— Butt the mayne Resoñ Is this, theye | finde theye
cañ nott Ride well, naye Indeed | nott att all a Horse off Manege, & theye
woulde | bee the fineste meñ Iñ the worlde for all | thinges though they will
take paynes for | nothings,— & because forsooth theye cañ | nott doote
therfore Itt Is worth nothings | & off no vse because theye Cañ nott ^{ride}
which | muste bee by Inspiratiōn for theye will | take payns for nothings
— Butt iff euerye | thinge weare naughte thatt theye *Could* Cañ | nott
doe ther woulde bee verye fewe thinges | good Iñ the worlde — Butt the
nexte thinge | Itt Is a disgrace for a Gentle-mañ to doe any | thinge well,
whatt to bee a Rider — How | manye kinges, & Princes thatt thinkes them
| selues Gaste with beinge good Horse-meñ, :* |

The Duke of Memoranceye, Counstable | off France, & the firste Gentle-
Mañ off | Christendome, (was the beste Horse-Mañ | Iñ the worlde :* &
hee thaughte Itt a Grace) | to hiñ,— & the Prince of Conde his Grande |
Childe by the Princes his mother añ Exselente | Horse Mañ, & thinkes Itt
no Disgrace to | hiñ, & moste off the Prinses Iñ France | hyelye Esteeme Itt,
& are good Horse-Meñ, | Naye the Kinge of France highlye estemes | Itt, &
a good Horse-Mañ — Naye Iñ France | theye Esteeme no mañ thatt Is nott
a good | Horse-mañ,— *The Kinge off Englande añ | Exselente Horse-mañ,*
vnderstandes | Itt as hyeeye Estemes Itt — The Duke | off Yorke & Duke
of Gloster good Horse-men |

{ & thinke itt | on of | }

the Nobleste & vsefulleste qualetye | for Princes,— Naye the Greate kinge
| off Spayne doth nott onlye loue itt & | vnderstande Itt, butt Is absolutlye
the | beste Horse-mañ Iñ all Spayne therfore | I desier these Jeringe Jentle-
Meñ to bee | more fiercefull, & to thinke Itt no disgrace |

[f.82^r] To them to bee Horse-Meñ, Butt still the olde | busines will stick with
 them, which Is theye | cañ not doe Itt & there Itt is *nott* [^]naught a verye |
 good & sensles Resoñ,— Hee thatt will *nott* take | paynes for anye thinge
 shall neuer doe | anye thinge well,— For Artes, Sienses, | & good qualeties,
 are *nott* gott by Inspiratiõ, | butt by greate Labor Studye, & practise | &
 theñ these Gentle-Meñ will none I thanke you, | Itt Is trewe good qualeties
 are *nott* so Easeleye | Lernte as Drinkinge & Hooringe & Raylinge, | &
 hauinge fine clothes & fethers—— | Butt lett vse see nowe howe these
 meñ are | a Horse-Back, & what their Horses doe | vnder them. — Firste
 this Cauallier sitts as | farr Back Iñ the Sadle as hee cañ, his legges | stretcht
 as farr forwarde before them sholders | off the Horse with his toes oute that
 hee maye — Spurr hiñ Iñ the Sholders, & stoopes Iñ the | Back, & this
 theye cale a comleye seate, *nott* | knoinge howe to holde the bridle, Iñ his
 | hande, nor anye Gess att anye helpes att all | & a peers a Horse-back
 as iff hee weare three | quarters foxtte, so rediculous a Seate, Theñ | hee
 sendes to a Sadler, or a Bitt-Maker | to bitt his Horse, & theñ all is well,—
 Nowe | beinge mounted thus as I tell you, nowe | you shall see his Redye
 Horse off vse & his | Horse-manship,— when hee woulde turne | hiñ oñ
 the Righte hande the Horse doth | turne oñ the lefte hande & when hee
 | woulde turne oñ the lefte hande the | Horse doth turne on the Righte
 hande when | hee woulde stopp hiñ — the Horse Ruñs a waye | wheñ hee
 woulde putt hiñ forwarde the | Horse Ruñs backwarde when hee woulde |
 pull hiñ back the Horse Rises & Coumes | ouer with hiñ & ther the good
 Horse-Mañ | lies, & muste sende for a Surion or a bone | setter iff hee bee
nott kilde,— naye his Horse | shall neither Coume neer Druñ Trumpett, |
 or Coullers Pistoll or Sorde butt to fetch fortye Vegaries to Indanger hiñ
 & his | Horse, & this [^]is the Exselente Horse-Mañ & | the Redye Horse of
 Vse,— Howe Is Itt posible | to bee otherwise, wheñ the Horse Is Ignorante
 | & so *nott* obediente to Eyther hande or heele, |

[f.82^v] Ande the Horse-Mañ as Ignorante,— Therefore | ther Is nothinge to make
 a shure Horse | butt the Manege,— Naye no Horse thatt | weares a Bitt
 Geldinge or Nagg, butt woulde | haue wraughte Iñ the manege to firme |
 off the hande, both for readines, & saftye | weare Itt for a BB: Judge, or
 Ladye, for | withoute settlinge off the hande theye are | verye Vnusefull

& dangerous — I wonder | howe meñ are so presumtius, to thinke theye | Cañ Ride as Horse-Meñ, because theye cañ Ride | forwarde frome Barnett to Londoñ, which | Euerye bodye Cañ doe naye woemen I haue | seen to Ride a Stride as well as theye, theye | thinke nott so off anye arte or trade Else, | butt Iñ Horse-Manship theye are all masters | butt itt doth nott proue so when theye Ride | Theñ I thinke I haue proued Suffitientlye | their Error & Ignorance, & as fullye Proued | thatt ther Is no Vsefull Horse butt those | thatt are made Iñ the manege,— The | nexte Is butt whatt vse are Coruetts, & other Ayres | I will tell you those Ayres setles a Horse veye | well vppoñ the hande, makes hiñ lighte before | & putts hiñ vppoñ the Hanches which are all | vsefull for a soldiers Horse, & makes hiñ stopp | vppoñ the Hanches, which Is very vsefull for a | mañ Iñ Armes, for did the Horse stopp Vppoñ | the Sholders hee woulde giue his rider beinge | Armde such Shocks, as woulde make his bones | Ake though hee weare sounde — naye a leapinge | horse thatt Ayre firmes hiñ oñ the hande which | Is good for a Soldiers Horse, — I butt sayes a Gallante | when I shoulde haue vse off hiñ Iñ the feilde | theñ hee will bee playenge tricks thatt Gallante | Is deseaued, for theye are seuerall helpes to | make Horses goe Iñ Ayres, & to make Horses | goe vppoñ the Grounde & good Horse-Meñ | hath much a doe to make them goe Iñ Ayres | with their beste helpes, so that Iff you lett | them alone, theye will nott trouble you besides | two or three dayes march, will make them | thatt theye will nott goe Iñ Ayrs, iff you woulde | haue them & so nowe you see thatt ther Is no | Horse what soeuer Cañ bee a good & an vsefull | Horse Iñ anye kinde with a Bitt butt whatt | Is wraughte Iñ the manege,— For anye | kinde off use,— Ande therfore |

{they are | much the | redier to goe | on the Grounde. | }

[f.83^r] I aduise you for your saftye & Vse, to Ride all | Horses Iñ the manege,— Ande this Is the greateste | truth Iñ the worlde therfor Can bee no Horse | Else safe & vsefull,— Ande thus much for | truth off vse,— naye no Horse cañ goe so well | Iñ a Snaffle, exsepte hee bee formerlye Ridd | with A Bitt,— Nowe for pleasure & state, | whatt Prince or Monarke lookes more Princleye | & more In throned, then when hee Is vppoñ a | Bewtiful Horse, with Rich footclothes or Rich | Sadles with wauinge plumes, when hee

makes | his Enterye thorowe greate Citeys, ther to Amase | the People with
 pleasure & delight,— or att | greate marigges off Princes, to Ruñ att the |
 Ringe, or Tilde or Courses att the feilde whatt | more Glorius or Mañlye —
 Ande to see Horses | to goe Iñ all seuerall Ayres, nothinge Cañ | bee more
 Comleye, manlye or Pleasinge to | see so Exselente a creature with so much
 | Speritt & strength, to bee so obediente to his | Rider as hauinge no will
 butt his as iff | they had butt one Bodye & ^{one} mynde like a | Sentaure,—
 whatt setts off a kinge more | theñ to bee off a Bewtiful Horse att the |
 Heade off his Armeye,— *For* Then thus | much ffor Pleasure,— so Nowe Itt
 Is proued | trewlye, thatt ther Is nothinge off more | Vse theñ a Horse off
 Manege, nor nothinge | off more state manlines, or pleasure besides | the
 Nobleste, Itt Is the helfuleste Exsersise | Iñ the worlde — Butt what vse Is
 ther | off Huntinge, Haukinge, Boulinge, Shootinge | Cockinge, Cardes &
 Dise & manye such thinges | no vse att all, butt meerlye pleasurs,— Butt |
 a Horse off Manege, both vse & Pleasure | Butt iff ther was nothinge butt
 whatt was | vsefull, strictlye Exsaminde, wee muste haue | nothinge butt
 holloe Trees for our Houses, | figg Briches for our Clothes, Ackrons for |
 our meate, & water for our Drinke for sertenlye | moste thinges Else are
 butt Superfluetes & | Curioseties,— I finde falte with no mans | delightes,
 onlye to vindicate with truth | my owne delighte, Since I haue been so |
 preste to Itt with foolishe & Ignorante discourses | So I leaue Euerye one
 to his owne wayes & his | owne delightes — desieringe they will doe the
 | like by mee, which I shall take for a greate fauor, | butt Iff Itt chanes
 theye woulde nott bee so Gratius | & Juste to mee, Itt woulde greeue mee
 so Extreamleye | as Iñ my Contience I sholde sleepe neuer | The Worse. |

[f.83^v uncanceled] The healthfullnes off the Exersise off the | Manege Is proude
 by longe life off all those | thatt haue vsed Itt, Eyther Etaliens, French | or
 English. ——— |

Etalien Riders

Frederick Grison -80-	Forestier -70-
The towē Etalien	Furio -70-
Riders that came	Dell Campe -60-
to H the 8 neer a peece -80-	Du Swayn -75-
Signior Romano full -80-	Doreuall -60-
Clodio Corte aboute - 70	Laseure -90-
Signior Prospero - 70-	Ande manye hunderds 24
Signior Haniball -68-	off French Riders
Pigniotell -78-	both In France
Horatio Pintas - 80-	Englande & Germanye
Signior Pietro -76-	off these Yeares
Sinior Frenchese, aboue - 80 -	—————
Sinior Frencisco att lions -76-	Englishe Riders
Signior Rustico -80-	—————
Signior Otaviano -76-	[illeg] Roberte Alexsander, -90-
Signior vulerio -74-	his brother Andrewe. -90-
Paulo -70-	His Brother Sinsun -80-
Signior Philipps -70-	His Brother William -80-
Signior Lorensino -70-	Henry Alesander. -100-
Signior Lorenzo -70-	His Brother Sigismonde -100-
Signior Camillo -70-	H:Alexanders Sons
Ande manye att Naples,	aboue -60-
Rome, Florence, & other	Olde Huñinges -90-
Citeies In Italey liues	Olde Vnderwood -90-
To the same yeares,-	Litlewood a -100-
& so Italiens in France	Tom̄ Storye -70-

His Soñ -80-
 Payne -70-
 Harlowe -90-
 Baskett -70-
 The Lo. Admiralls Rider -90-
 The Lo. Northes Rider -70-
 M^r Cenock off waveke neer -100-
 his Soñ -90-
 his Soñ In lawe
 Browne neer a -100-

{ Francisco | att Bruxells -90- | Arnolfiende -70- | Signior Mazin -60- |
 Signior Chipione | John Babbista -80- | Signior Piero | Antonio -80- |
 Cesere Fiaske -80 | Laurentius Russius 70 | 26 }

Bebeleye -70-	Dalamoore neere a -100-
Belluile <i>mi</i> aboute -90-	Rodes -60-
Potrincourte -70	Waterhouse -70-
Le Rock -70-	Will Armorer -70-
Du Poye -70-	Sr Thomas Gorge -80-
Va ⁿ tlett -80-	The Earle of Exseter -80-
Meñon -70	The Earle of Du Vewe -70
Newcastle -64-	Captin Mazin -52-
Manton -70-	The E. off Rutlandes Rider -70-
	Ande manye more
	Englishe Riders so
	greate men as good Riders
	thatt I Cañ nott remember -80-
	Butt Iñ all ther Is
	off these yeares — [deleted illeg.]

— |

[f.84^r Obseruations |

[cancelled] Whensoeuer a Horse Is apte to bringe | In his forr partes, his
sholders, then hee | Is In the State off beinge a Redye Horse & | to goe
well,- for theñ you haue nothinge | to doe butt to stayer his forr partes with
| the Inwarde Rayne off the Bridle & hee | will goe moste Juste eyther
Terra ^{terra} the | Piroyte, pasadoes or Coruetts,— for iff hee | bee stiff In
the sholders, to helpe with the | outwarde Rayne will nott make hiñ goe |
Juste for anye off these wayes, Butt to | Gallope Itt Is trewe butt nott so
well as | the Inwarde Rayne,— & Euerye change | Vppoñ Gallopinge, Muste
bee parte off | a Terra, Terra, & thatt Is the inwarde | Rayne — Therefore
nowe you see whatt | añ Exselente thinge Itt Is to Suple a | Horses Sholders
— & thatt Suplinge | muste bee with the Inwarde Rayne | off the Cauatzane
tied to the Poñell | which hath the greateste operation | & Efficasye In the
worlde for dressinge | Horses perfectlye In the Manege ——— |

For Bitts ——— |

Ackordinge to the shape off the Horse as | I tolde you before, butt for the
Cheekes | theye muste neuer bee to longe a Spañ | or litle a boue, for so
make the Cheekes | as Stronge as you will theye cañ neuer | bee to stronge
because theye are shorte | Butt oñ the other side to bee to shorte | Cañ
neuer fitt anye Horse neyther will | hee Euer goe well with them, besides
| The vncomlines off Itt so you see the | Golden Meane Is the beste In
all thinges | neyther ouer, nor Shorte nor wide | & thatt hitts the marke
always. |

[f.84^v uncanceled] Obseruations For Coruetts |

[cancelled] Ther Is no Horse Cañ goe well In | Coruetts, vntill hee press a litle
vppoñ | the hande, for so hee will goe forwarde, | & theñ hee Is Vppoñ the
hande, & | suffers Itt which muste helpe hiñ | Euerye time In Coruetts —
A Horse | maye haue a good Apewy Vppoñ | Terra, Terra, & yett nott press
vppoñ | the hande In Coruetts,— Fearfull | & timerous Horses are loth to
press | Vppoñ the hande In Coruetts, & so | are weake Horses ^{In} Coruetts,
— The onlye waye | to helpe Itt, Is to giue hiñ both Spurrs | to putt hiñ
forwarde, & so to feele | hiñ Vppoñ the Hande & for beinge | fearfull the
Spurrs will putt | hiñ off off Itt,— & thus discritlye | you muste still giue

hiṁ the spurrs | Vntill you haue mended his falte | which Is to feele hiṁ
oñ the hande, | & theñ the hee Is Cuerde. ——— |

For Pasadoes by a wall | Vppoñ le petit Gallope, or | Toute Bride. ——— |

Vppoñ le petit Gallope you muste staye | hiṁ vppoñ the hande, before hee
makes | his demye volta, & then helpe hiṁ with | the outwarde Rayne off
the Bridle | which Is the Rayne to the wall more | or less ackordinge as his
sholders Coume | Iñ, more or less, why you helpe hiṁ | with the outwarde
Rayne, the Resoñ | thatt as hee turnes his sholders his | Croupe goes to the
wall, & so makes his | demy volta frome his croupe & keepes | his line to
the wall, & so leaues no | space betwen his Croupe & the wall | which Is an
Ilfauorde Sighte, besides | the falsnes off Itt, when you turne | your hande
to helpe with the outwarde | Rayne, |

[f.85^r] you muste helpe with the legg of the | same Side, thatt Is iff you turne
on the | Righte hande then you helpe with the | lefte Rayne, & att the
same time you | muste helpe with the lefte legg, — | & alwayes putt your
Horse heade a | little frome the wall, to keepe his Croupe | to the wall
thatt hee maye keepe the | line,— Ande iff need requier hasten hiṁ | a litle
before you staye hiṁ, which | putts hiṁ Vppoñ the hanches to prepare |
hiṁ better for his demy volta,— Ande | thus much for Pasadoes vppoñ le
petit | Gallope. the same for the lefte hande. |

For to Ruñ hiṁ Toute Bride | Vppon Pasadoes Thus. |

The firste waye Is thus, to slack your | hande a litle & press your legges to
| hiṁ, & to butt Euen feele ^{him} vppoñ the hande | before hee makes his
demy volta & so | press hiṁ to make hiṁ Ruñ a geñ | & doe the like on
the lefte hande, you | muste alwayes helpe with the outwarde | Rayne off
the Bridle to putt his heade | frome the wall thatt his Croupe maye | goe
to the wall to keepe the line & | alwayes helpe with the outwarde | legg to
the Turne. ——— |

An other waye Iñ Pasadoes: | Toute Bride, Is Thus |

Slack your hande a litle, & press hiṁ | with your legges to make hiṁ Ruñ |

with all his forse, & then staye hiṁ | by litle & litle, to make two or three
 | falcadoes, before hee makes his demy | volta, which will putt hiṁ vppoñ
 the | Hanches, & so prepare hiṁ better for | his demy Volta, & hath much
 more | Grase then the other waye the outwarde | Rayne, & outwarde legg
 & bee shure to | putt his heade frome the wall still, thatt | so his croupe
 maye Goe to the wall | for Else Itt woulde bee a verye Ilfauorde | Sighte,
 besides the falsnes off Itt Iñ | loosinge the line to the wall. |

[f.85^v] The false waye off makinge Pasadoes | To the wall, Thus. | Itt Is verye
 false when Iñ Pasadoes the | Horse heade goes to the wall, because theñ
 | his croupe goes frome Itt & So makes the | demy Volta, frome the wall,
 & leaues | Such a space between his croupe & the wall | as Itt Is a verye
 Ilfauorde Sighte, this Is | one waye off falsness: Iñ Pasadoes.— | An other
 false waye Is thatt though the | Horse Gallopes Euen with the wall iff | you
 helpe hiṁ with the Inwarde Rayne | thatt putts the Horses heade to the
 wall | & so Consequentlye his Croupe frome the | wall, & so makes his demy
 Volta frome | the wall & leaues as greate a space between | his croupe &
 the wall, as the other did, & | So Is Equalye false,— Therefore you see the
 Horse heade muste bee a litle frome the | wall, Vpp on his Pasade to keepe
 his Croupe | to the wall— & when you make the Demy | Volte the outwarde
 Rayne to Continewe | his Croupe still to the wall & so his sholders | are
 freer to Coume a boutte, this Is good & | the trewe waye for Pasados &
 the Piroite. | because Itt is butt the action off a Gallope | Butt the Rayne
 withiñ the turne & the outwarde legg, Puttinge the Horses Croupe | frome
 the turne fixes the Horses Croupe | more, & keepes Itt Iñ, which Is fitt for
 | demy voltas frome the wall because | ther Is no wall to make thatt falte
 by | besides these demy Voltas frome the wall | are Terra, Terra, which Is
 añ other Action | & añ other time, & therefore muste bee | helpte with the
 Inwarde Rayne & outwarde | legg, & to putt his sholders frome the | turne,
 to keepe Iñ his Croupe, to staye his | sholders, & press his Croupe,— wher
 the | demy voltaes Vppoñ Pasados Is to press | his for partes & his croupe
 att libertye | & Vppoñ demye voltas Terra, Terra | his Croupe Is preste
 & his forr partes | att libertye, & In Terra Terra Vppoñ | demy voltas the
 Horse Is narowe behinde | & large before, & demy voltas Vppoñ | Pasados,
 or the Piroyte the Horse Is narowe | before & large behinde so those meñ |

Are mighteeye deseude thatt thinkes | both these are a like & so vses the
| same helpes I a^m shure theⁿ theye | muste make one off the^m false. |

[f.86^r uncanceled] Obseruations for the helpes off the | maⁿ stronger, or weaker.
|

[cancelled] Stronge helpes astonishes a weake | Horse, makes a restye more
restye & | makes a dull Horse duller, makes | a furius Horse madd, &
makes a stronge | Horse goe to much vppon the Back, & | Counter times,
——— |

So thatt all Horses shoulde haue gentle | helpes & Easeye, thatt Is to sitt
Easeye | a Horse-back, nott weake,— Butt as the | french phrase Is to bee
fort a Chevall, | Is the worste thinge thatt caⁿ bee | for a good Horse-
maⁿ,— because the | Horse so shall neuer take pleasure | vnder you, butt
Sigh & grone & | alwayes Euerye thinge that hee | doth a gaynste his mynde
— wher | Iff a Maⁿ Sitt Easeye, a Horse-back | the Horse doth so reioyce
Iⁿ Itt, as | hee takes pleasure Iⁿ Euerye thinge | thatt hee doth, & loues
you,— wher | with the stronge helpes hee takes | pleasure Iⁿ nothinge thatt
hee doth | & hates you — therefore Easeye helpes, | for the Resons I haue
giuen you. ——— | Itt Is nott weake a Horse-Back, butt | firme, & verye
Easeye, which none | butt a verye Greate Master Iⁿ our | Arte Caⁿ putt Iⁿ
Execution ——— |

Ther Is one thinge thatt people are | verye much deseude Iⁿ, & thatt Is
this | Iff a Horse throwe hi^m they laff att hi^m | for beinge no Horse-maⁿ,
— sainge hees | a fine Horse-maⁿ Indeed, when I sweare | I knewe a Horse
throwe hi^m,— Theye muste | knowe, thatt good Hors-meⁿ are throwne |
sooner theⁿ Ill Horse-meⁿ, for good | Horse-meⁿ litle thinkes off sittinge
| & so maye bee surprised, their thaughtes | beinge all *surprised* howe to
make their | Horses goe well, & neuer doubtts | throwinge. |

[f.86^v] When aⁿ Ill Horse-maⁿ thinkes off | nothinge butt Sittinge for feare hee |
shoulde bee throwne, & neuer thinkes | howe to make his Horse goe well, for
| hee knowes nott howe to doe Itt butt | holdes by the mayne & the Po^mell |
& his heade att the Horses heade redye | to beate oute his teeth, & his legges

holdinge | by the flanke, & so diformde a Horse-back, | as iff hee weare a
 strange Africañ | Monster — & the Horse so disorderde | as Itt Is the moste
 nausius sighte to | see him sitt thatt cañ bee, & the moste displeasinge |
 to the beholders & much better for the | Spectaters to see hiñ faule, & so
 for his | reputation, though nott for the Hurte | off the faule,- so thatt you
 see anye — Groome or Tinker maye sitt, & yett | no Horse-mañ, thatt Is
 a greater ^{business} theñ | onlye Sittinge, — For a Jack a Napes | att Paris
 Gardē, *th* when hee Is bayted | with muselde Mastiues, the Gentle | mañ
 sitts verye shure, butt nott so | Comleye, & Iñ my Contience no Exselente
 | Horse—Mañ,— Sittinge Is butt one | thinge Iñ Horse-Manship, & ther |
 are thousande of thinges Iñ the | Arte,— So iff a good Horse—Mañ bee |
 throwne by Chance, hath hee loste | all his horse-manship because hee |
 was once throwne,— Ande Is añ | Ignorante Fellowe Inspierde presentlye |
 with Horse—manship because hee | cañ Ifauordlye clinke^{ge}e, to the | Horse
 & holde one, No Sittinge Is | butt one thinge Iñ Horse—manship, | wher ther
 are manye manye | more, Butt yett I muste tell you I | neuer knewe a good
 Horse—mañ throwne | Iñ my life, butt I haue knowne manye | presuñtius
 Ignorante fellowes | throwne,— butt iff a good Horse—mañ | by chanse bee
 throwne hee doth nott | loose all his Horse—manship with | thatt faule iff hee
 bee nott kilde, so | añ Ignorante mañ iff hee sitt Is nott | presentlye Inspirde
 with Horse—manship | For Sittinge Is butt one thinge wher | Horse—manship
 Is manye thinges & | therfor people are pleased to mistake | thinges verye
 much. |

[f.87^r] For the Horse-mans Seate & helpes | Iñ all Ayres, Terra Terra, &
 Gallopinge | & Changinge. Thus, ——— |

Firste to sitt st^rayte as I tolde you Iñ the Horse—mans seate, then when
 you Gallope the Inwarde | Rayne, & Inwarde legg, iff his sholders coume
 | nott Enough Iñ theñ helpe hiñ with the outwarde | Rayne,— when you
 change eyther withiñ the | Circle, or withoute Itt, Itt muste bee a peece off
 | Terra, Terra, Still, & thatt muste bee the outwarde —

[Right hand margin] {Itt is the | outwarde | Rayne | }

legg & Inwarde Rayne, & so hasteñ him to the stopp, | & stopp hiñ & so
Rayse hiñ twice or thrise att | the stopp,. the hande lowe & the Inwarde
sholder downe. |

For le petit Gallope his Croupe Iñ the Inwarde | Raynes outwarde legg,
butt the Horse croupe | muste nott bee putt Iñ so much, & iff his | sholders
Coume nott Iñ Enough helpe with | the outwarde Rayne, the hande lowe
& the outwarde | sholder downe. |

For Terra Terra, helpe with the Inwarde | Rayne & outwarde legg, & press
the Horse all | oñ the oute side thatt you maye see hiñ | leane oñ thatt side
which you maye see by | his neck,— the hande lowe & the outwarde sholder
downe ——— |

For the Piroyte the outwarde Rayne, & | outwarde legg, butt iff his sholder
Coume | Iñ to much theñ the Inwarde Rayne, & outwarde | legg, In all these
the bridle hande lowe. |

For Coruetts the Bridle hande hye & helpe | with the Inwarde Rayne &
outwarde | legg,— & press the Horse oñ the oute side. | your outwarde
sholder downe, & helpe hiñ | with the hande Euerye time your toes downe
| to bende Iñ the hañs. to ^{illeg} weake frome the knees | downewarde, &
stronge frome the knees vpwarde, |

[Right hand margin] { nott helpinge | with the | Legges. |

For all Leapes whatsoever the outwarde Rayne | & the legges Eueñ butt the
toes downe to bee | w^eake frome the knees dounwarde, & stronge | frome
the knees vpwardes,— vppoñ Circles, the | outwarde Rayne, & iff neede
Requier the Inwarde | legg, to giue his croupe libertye. These are the | trewe
& exacte helps the Horse shoulde haue | Iñ all these seuerall motions,—
& whye all these | seuerall helps, & the Resons off theñ, I haue | giueñ
you moste perticulerlye heertofore | Iñ this veye Booke So ther needes no
repetitions | off theñ. — For pasadoes, the outwarde Rayne, & outwarde
legg, to keepe his heade | frome the wall, the perticuler Resons for | thatt
I haue also giueñ you heer tofore so | I need nott trouble you ageñ with
theñ onlye | the trewe helps I repeate thatt theye ^{maye} bee | better fixe

Iñ your memorye, because no Horse | cañ goe well withoute them,— for all
other wayes | are moste false ther Cañ bee butt one truth, | & this Is Itt,
& therefore studye Itt, & practise Itt. |

[f.87^v uncanceled] For the Horse-mans Seate. |

[cancelled] To Sitt strayte Vppoñ his Twiste, so the Horse— | Mans seate frome
the heade to the foote muste | bee deuided Iñ to three partes, two moueable
| the thirde Imouable — thatt Is his bodye | to the waste mouable & frome
his knees to | his foote mouable,— butt frome his waste to | his knees
Imouable thatt Is ^{his} thyghes. ——— | butt for his bodye thatt Is mouable
Itt muste | bee so litle as the beholders muste hardlye | perceue Itt — &
from his knees to his foote which | Is mouable Itt muste bee so litle, &
secretlye | doñ as the beholders muste nott perseaeue | Itt, — as thus when
you Gallope large duñ piste, | the Inwarde legg a litle to hiñ, which none
| Cañ perceue,— when the Horse goes Terra, | Terra, The outwarde legg
close to the Horse | the heele doune which the beholders Cañ nott | perceue,
so vppoñ Coruetts vppoñ his voltas | the outwarde legg a litle to hiñ &
the toes | doune, which the beholders cañ nott perceue |

{ x no | helps | with the | legges att | all | }

naye you maye pinch hiñ till bloud coumes | with your Spurrs, & no bodye
perceue Itt, | Thus you haue the trewe seate & the trewe | helps off the
Bodye, & better Cañ nott bee | Ande for all Leapes the toes doune &
iff neede | bee the legg closer to hiñ oñ the Inside which no bodye | cañ
perceue. ——— |

[uncanceled] For Pasadoes añ other waye |

[cancelled] I tolde you before for pasadoes, thatt you muste | keepe his heade
frome the wall thatt his Croupe | maye goe to Itt to keepe the line to the
wall, & | to putt his croupe more to Itt when you make | the demye volta,
thatt you muste turne your | hande to helpe with the outwarde Rayne | &
the outwarde legg, butt iff his Sholders coume | nott Iñ Enough then you
muste helpe with | the legg withiñ the Turne which will | fetch his sholders
a boutte Roundlye weare | theye as stiff as a bulls neck or Sholders | butt iff

his Sholders bee Suple theñ the | outwarde Rayne, & outwarde legg, both
| off a side which Is still to the wall, & | to helpe with the hande more
or less as | ocation shall serue thatt Is iff his Sholders | coume Iñ to faste
staye hiñ Vppoñ the | hande & iff theye Come nott Iñ Enough | theñ turne
your hande more off the Inside | off his neck & iff hee goe as you woulde
haue | hiñ helpe verye litle with the Hande | the hande a litle hier theñ
the poñell, | & a litle forwarde. |

[f.88^r uncanceled] The truth off the Manege as followes. |

[cancelled] To begiñ a younge, or Ignorante Horse, the Curbe a litle | Slack, the
hande lowe, to giue hiñ añ apewye Vppoñ the | Barrs, for this pulls hiñ
downe, & the firste & trewe apewy | to setle a Horse Vppoñ the Hande
Is the Barrs, & you muste | neuer slack your hande all firste, butt gayne
Vppoñ hiñ | still to setle his heade wher you woulde haue Itt, & whenñ | his
heade Is setled, & firme off the Barrs, theñ make the | Curbe shorter, thatt
the Horse maye feele both the Barrs | & the Curbe & theñ hee Is a readye
Horse,— Butt remember | Itt Is the Cauatzane thatt setles hiñ oñ the
Hande & firmes | hiñ beste withoute offence to his mouth, & espetialye
my | waye, whenñ you tie the Inwarde Rayne to the poñell | for thatt
giues the Horse the right apewye for Iff Hee | bee to lighte off the hande,
with holdinge his heade to | hye, tienge the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne to
the Poñell | bringes his heade doune to the Righte place off the trewe
| apewye,— & iff the Horse bee to harde off the hande with | holdinge
doune his heade, & pressinge vppoñ the Bitt | The Cauatzane my waye the
Inwarde Rayne tied to | the Poñell holdes hiñ Iñ the Righte place off the |
trewe & righte apewye thatt hee cañ nott bee harde oñ | the hande, so you
see the Exselenceye off the Cauatzane | my waye tied to the Poñell thatt
Itt giues a Horse | añ Apewye thatt hath none & to lighte off the hande | &
takes a waye to much a pewye & those thatt are to | harde off the hande,
because Itt Is the righte place off | the righte a pewye, so thatt a Horse
thatt Is to lighte | off the hande Itt bringes hiñ doune to the righte apewye
| & a Horse thatt hath to much with duckinge doune | his heade, Itt pulles
hiñ vpp to the righte apewye so | Itt setles all Horses, & makes themñ firme
off the hande | lett themñ bee whatt theye will besides the benefitt | off

Suplinge their sholders, which Is a greate matter | makinge them̄ looke Iñ
to the Turne, to bee bente to | the Circle theye alwayes goe Iñ, & so all
their legges | to goe righte, as theye shoulde doe — Iñ all thinges | Vppon̄
Circles wether large or narowe duñ Piste, | large or narowe, their Croupes
Iñ eyther Vppon le | petit Gallope or Terra, Terra, or demy voltaes, or the
| Piroyte — & Iñ all Ayres whatt soeuer, eyther Coruetts | demye Ayres,
Croupadoes Balotadoes, or Capriolls, or what soeuer, Tendes to a Circle
— So Exselente as the Cauatzane my waye tied to the Poñell & Indeed |
no Horse cañ bee well & perfectlye made withoute | Itt beinge miraculous
Iñ his effectes, & operations for | all thinges Iñ the manege & Espetialye
for setlinge | a Horse vppon̄ the Hande & makinge his heade | firme &
giuinge hiñ a temperate a pewye which | is the grounde of all thinges Iñ
the manege for | withoute Itt no Horse cañ bee drete perfectlye | or Eeuer
[sic.] doe anye thinge well | Iñ the Manege ——— |

[f.88^v] I tolde you Ridinge a younge Horse att firste | the Curbe shoulde bee
slack, Itt Is nott onlye to | worke hiñ off the Barrs firste butt nott to pull
| hiñ downe to lowe att the firste butt after hee is | firmde off the Barrs,
theñ make the Curbe shorter | Butt Remember the Inwarde Cauatzane
Rayne my | waye tied to the poñell Is the quintesence off | all thinges In
the manege, & doe nott forgett thatt |

[uncancelled] For Bitts ——— |

[cancelled] The less Iron you putt Iñ anye Horse mouth the better, | the beste
bitts a Cañon a la Pignotell, the Branches | a la Counetable, the a pewye
a litle beyonde the | libertie, the libertie nott to hye, — the Eye off the
| Bitt Eeuen [sic.] with the line thatt goes doune to the | Ende off the
Bitt & nott Backwarde frome thatt | line as moste makes them̄, nor the
Eye to lowe | nor to Hie, butt rather hye then lowe & strayte, | for off
thatt dependes the workinge off the | Curbe absolutlye, & the Barrs;—
The Curbe hookes | proportionablye to their Juste measure, the Curbe |
three rounde Esses with litle Ringes Iñ the Endes | nott to longe nor to
shorte, butt for the moste parte | the Bitt makers makes them̄ to longe,
butt the | Horse-mañ cañ Easelye rectefie ^{l^{tt}} for tis his | Judgmente thatt

cañ rectefye thatt beste,— For | the Cheekes they shoulde neuer bee longe
to | Shorte is as Ill butt rather shorte theñ longe | litle more theñ a Spañ
Is a good length, ——— | the beste Cheekes are a La Counetable & theñ |
you muste measure frome the Sholder straye | forwarde butt the line frome
the Eye dounwarde | shewes wether the Cheekes bee Stronge or no for | iff
theye press forwarde beyonde the line, theñ | theye are stronge, & iff theye
goe backwarde | behinde the line theñ theye are weake ——— | Butt this Is
serteyne iff the cheekes bee butt a | Spañ longe or therabouts you cañnott
make | the cheekes to stronge for the shortnes, takes much a waye off the
strength — Iff you make the | Curbe veye shorte, you thruste forwarde the
| Cheekes. & so makes theñ veye Stronge, which | pulls doune the Horses
heade,— Thus for | The Bitt. |

[f.89^r uncanceled] Howe the Bitt workes | Thus |

[cancelled] The hande lowe workes more oñ the Barrs then oñ the | Curbe, the
hande hye workes more oñ the Curbe theñ | oñ the Barrs, though itt workes
oñ both yett more still | off one theñ off an other, as the hande Is eyther
helde | hye or lowe, |

For Terra, Terra, |

I pull my hande doune oñ the contrarye Side off his neck | to putt the
Horse to leane oñ the oute Side off his turne, | the hande lowe, & Constante
without giuinge hiñ a | time, & theñ when the Horse rises before the Curbe
& | barrs are both slack, & when the Horse faules to the | Groun theñ theye
are both harder which giues the | Horse añ Apewye to Rise ageñ. beinge a
leap forwarde |

For Coruetts |

Beinge a leape Vpwardes, I keepe my hande oñ the oute Side | off his neck,
firme, & a litle hier, which workes oñ the | Curbe more, & giuinge the Horse
no time, as the Horse | Rises, the Curbe, & barrs are slacte, & as hee faules
| doune theye are harder, & so giues the Horse añ | Apewye to rise a geñ.
the same helpes for a demy | Ayre,— Butt these helpes for all mañer | off
Leapes will nott bee for leapinge Horses | muste bee helpte Euerye time

with the hande, | nott onlye to Rayse them, butt to sustayne them & holde
them vpp In the Ayre as longe as you | Cañ.,|

[uncancelled] For Coruetts, & demye Ayres |

[cancelled] I Coṃonlye helpe hiṃ with my hande Thus, ——— | when hee Rises
I helpe hiṃ with my hande a litle | harder to holde hiṃ vpp, & keepe hiṃ a
litle In the | Ayre, & when the Horse faules doune I slack my | hande a litle
— so this helpe Is Contrarye to the | firste for when hee Rises, then the
Curbe, & barrs | are preste, & when hee faules theye are slack, | butt whatt
doth Rayse hiṃ then marye my hande, | as soone as Euer hee Coumes to
the Groune I ——— | rayse hiṃ a geṃ like the boundinge off a teṃis | Ball.
— Both these wayes are good Butt I like | this laste beste — Butt Vppoṃ
Voltaes helpe | with your hande which off these wayes | you will, *Itt Is
nothinge Exsepte you putt In | his outwarde Hanch with your outwarde |
legg, to make hiṃ leane oṃ the outeside for otherwise | the Horse will neuer
bee Vppoṃ the Hanches | nott helpinge with your legges att all. | To make the
Curbe shorter then ordinarelye you Ride | will make hiṃ goe lighter, &
better oṃ the Hande, because | itt makes, the Cheekes stronger, butt this
butt before | Princes, & greate Persons |*

{ Ande then the Curbe slacker | as ordinarye Itt was before. | }

[f.89^v cancelled] For Pasadoes aṃ other waye which Is | verye Good & thatt Is
thus. with your | Bridle in your lefte Hande. ——— |

Itt Is the Inwarde Rayne, & outwarde legg, | butt thus oṃ the Righte hande
you muste | pull your hande on the Contrarye Side butt | so as to pull In
his sholders to the Turne | which putts his croupe to the wall, as itt shoulde
| doe your hande to pull hiṃ so, muste bee strayte | puttinge vpp your litle
finger, butt nott turninge | vpp the palme off your hande

{ the knuckles | lookinge towa= | rdes the Turne | }

*this straytens | his fore partes & giues libertye to his hinder | partes Juste
as the Rayne oṃ the oute side off | the Turne doth, your Contrarye legg
which Is | your legg to the wall,— Nowe for the lefte | hande, Thus you*

muste pult your hande oñ the oute side off the turne butt bende Iñ the |
 wriste frome you your knuckles to looke | towardses the Turne, which will
 bringe Iñ | his Sholders, & putt his Croupe to the wall | *Straytē & press*
his fore partes & giue his | Croupe libertye as much as the outwarde | Rayne
& workes the same Effectes, so you | See this waye workes Equalye with the
 | *outwarde Rayne & this aduantage to boote | Itt makes the Horse looke In*
 to the Turne | which the other waye doth nott | & heer hee Is straytende
 behinde & Inlargde before | Like Terre a Terre. ——— |

The same waye for Pasadoes butt the | Raynes seperated Iñ both your
 handes. ——— |

For pasadoes, the Inwarde Rayne & outwarde legg, | The Bridle Raynes
 seperated Iñ both your handes | Thus, when you Goe oñ the Righte hande,
 putt your | hande oñ the oute side off the Horses neck & bende | your
 wriste outwarde to Looke towardses the Turne, | which will \wedge^{inlarge} *press*
 his sholders, & *give* \wedge^{press} his croupe | *libertye* which Is righte for pasadoes
 because Itt | putts his Croupe to the wall, you muste helpe with | the
 outwarde legg, the legg to the wall & bringe | Iñ your lefte Sholder.— For
 the lefte hande the | Raynes beinge seperated Iñ both your handes you |
 muste \wedge^{putt} your hande oñ the oute Side off his neck | turninge your wriste
 outwarde thatt Itt maye looke | towardses the Turne, *this* with the Contrarye
 | legg, which Is the legg to the wall this *presses* inlarges | his fore partes, &
letts \wedge^{presses} his Croupe *att libertye*, & | therefore Is \wedge^{as} proper for Demye
 voltaes vppoñ Pasadoes & so for the *Piroyte*, because theye are both butt
 the | *Action* off a Gallope iñ the Horses length as the outwarde | Rayne,
 because Itt keepes his head from the wall, & so his Croupe | to the wall to
 keepe the line for Itt is the *action* | off Terra, a Terre. ——— |

[f.90^r uncanceled] Ande the Same helpe Is good for Le petit Gallope the Croupe
 | In, because In all these Itt Is the *Action* off a Gallope & | the Horse
 Is *preste* oñ the Inside,— The Inwarde Rayne | thus & the legg oñ the
contrarye side, workes as powerfully as the outwarde Rayne doth

[cancelled] & this aduantage the Inwarde | Rayne hath thatt Itt makes the
 Horse looke In to the turne | which the outwarde Rayne doth nott,— The

Same | helpe with the Bridle Raynes Iñ your lefte hande or Else seperated
Iñ both your handes, helpinge as | I haue shewde you, Is good & the trewe
waye for | A Horse thatt Gallopes duñ Piste large or narowe | with the legg
withiñ the Turne. ——— |

[uncancelled] For trewe Obseruations, |

[cancelled] | The Cauatzane my waye tied to the poñell Is the trewe place | for
to giue a Horse the righte apewye for iff hee bee to lighte | off the hande
Itt pulls hiñ doune to that right apewye — & | iff hee bee to harde off
the hande. Itt pulls hiñ vpp to thatt | righte apewye, so the Cauatzane
my waye tied to the poñell | Is the onlye thinge In the worlde to settle
a Horse heade & | to make hiñ firme, & steadye, & giue hiñ the righte
apewye | which Is neyther to harde, nor to softe — Besides, Itt Suples |
his sholders that hee cañ neuer bee Antier, & makes him | looke In to the
Turne, which makes his legges & bodye | goe righte — you muste remember
thatt the Curbe bee a | litle slack att the firste to giue the Horse his firste
| a pewye vppoñ the Barrs for thatt settles hiñ oñ the | hande & worke
afterwarde Vppoñ the curbe, Indeed | Vppoñ both, by makinge the Curbe
a litle shorter. ——— |

His firste lessons vppoñ a Trott, vppoñ large Circles | the Iñwarde legg, &
Rayne both off the Inside to putt | oute his Croupe which suples his sholders,
& theñ | Gallope him vppoñ large Circles, legg & Rayne oñ the | Iñside &
theñ Gallope hiñ as narowe as you Cañ, legg | & rayne oñ the Inside duñ
piste or rather his Croupe | oute, & all this Is to suple his sholders,— as also
to | walke hiñ Iñ his length the same waye which Is | to suple his sholders,—
as also his heade to the Piller, | *the* The righte Cauatzane Rayne tied to the
Poñell | & goe on the lefte hande & thatt suples his sholders | extremlye
for the righte hande — & so the lefte | Cauatzane Rayne tied to the Poñell
& goe oñ the Righte | Hande his heade to the Piller suples his sholders |
Extreamleye for the lefte hande — Ande thus to | suple a Horses sholders
which Is the principall thinge | & so a Horse shall neuer bee antier. ——— |

To Suple a Horses Croupe & Sholders | Together — Thus. ——— |

To walke his heade to the wall makes hiṁ obaye the heele, | & putts hiṁ vppoñ the hanches, so his Croupe Iñ vppoñ | Voltaes Vppoñ his walke putts hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches | & makes hiṁ obaye the Heele — so vppoñ demye Voltaes | his croupe Iñ Vppoñ his walke makes hiṁ Vppoñ the hanches | & to obaye the heele,— All this makes hiṁ obaye the | heele & putts hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches |

[f.90^v] Iff his outwarde Hanch bee putt Iñ, thatt the Horse | leanes oñ the oute side — so Terra, Terra, *Coruetts* | or demye *Ayrs* Vppoñ Voltaes, Iff his outwarde | Hanche bee putt Iñ theñ hee Is oñ the Hanches | & obayes the Heele, the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne | Still tied to the Poñell — Thatt Is hee Is still | Oñ the Hanches iff hee bee preste oñ the oute side | off the Turne thatt Is preste oñ his outwarde legges | then hee Is oñ the Hanches, & obayes the Heele |

Butt iff the Horse bee preste oñ the Iñside off the | Turne, his Croupe Iñ, his outwarde Hanch Is a | litle oute, & then his sholders Is preste more then | his Croupe vppoñ a walke In Circles, & so le petit | Gallope his Croupe Iñ or Else tis nott a Gallope | for hee Cañ nott Gallope butt hee muste bee preste | oñ the Inside.— This suples his sholders though his | Croupe bee Iñ,— butt iff the Horse bee preste oñ the oute | Side, theñ hee Is putt vppoñ the hanches, & his forr | partes wide, & his hinder partes narowe, which | makes hiṁ oñ the Hanches, because his hinder partes | are within the lines off his fore partes, butt yett | his sholders are supled withiñ the Turne because | the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne Is tied to the poñell, | the outwarde Hanch Is the business. which putts | hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches & narowes hiṁ behinde | for though his Croupe bee Iñ iff his outwarde hanch | bee a little oute then hee Is vppoñ the sholders | & his fore partes are narrowed, & his hinder partes | are wide & so his fore partes withiñ the lines | of his *fore* ^{hinder} -partes.— & Vppoñ the sholders & his | sholders supled because the Inwarde Cauatzane | Rayne Is tied to the Poñell,— & remember, thatt a | Horse Is neuer well wraughte with the Cauatzane | Vntill a Horses Sholders are so suple thatt the | Coume Iñ off them selues, & theñ you haue nothinge | to doe butt to staye his sholders with the Inwarde | Rayne off the Bridle & the Horse will goe perfectlye | Heer you muste Vnderstande thatt the

Inwarde | Rayne off the Bridle putts the Horse oñ the oute | Side off the Turne, & the outwarde Rayne off | the Bridle, putts the Horse oñ the Inside off | the turne,— thatt is the Inwarde Rayne presses | hiñ oñ the oute side, thatt is oñ his outwarde legges | to the Turne & the outwarde Rayne oñ the Bridle | presses the Horses legges oñ the Inside off the | Turne,— The Inwarde Rayne off the Bridle presses — hiñ oñ the oute side, narowes hiñ behinde & putts | hiñ oñ the Hanches & Inlarges hiñ before to Imbrase | the Turne the better, & therefore Is fitt for Terra | Terra, because Itt Is añ Ayre, & butt two times as one | two, pa, Ta, a leape forward & preste lowe vppoñ | the grounde, & his hinder legges, alwayes shorte off | his fore legges, so the Inward Rayne Is good for Coruetts | & demye Ayres Vppoñ Voltaes [.]. *Subiecte his hinder partes*, for though his fore legges Is | withiñ the lines off his hinder |

[f.91^r] Legges, yett his hinder legges Is withiñ the lines off his sholders | *which Subiectes his hinder partes*, & makes hiñ Vppoñ | the Hanches.— The outwarde Rayne, wether | the Horse Gallope Vppoñ large circles duñ Piste or narowe | duñ Piste or his Croupe Iñ, his outwarde Hanch Is a litle | oute & so vppoñ the sholders, & narowe before & large | behinde which Is proper for a Gallope for all Gallopes | aughte to bee so wether duñ Piste or his Croupe Iñ, | for a Gallope Is añ other Actioñ, theñ Terra, Terra or | Coruetts,— for though a Gallope Is a leape forward yett | the Horse makes fowre seuerall times, & actions with | his fowre seuerall Legges as 1:2:3:4: & allwayes those | Legges thatt leades, are moste preste, & therefore those | thatt are att moste libertye are sett first to the Grounde | butt thus Iff *the righte legg leade the hinder legg off the } same side followes, then these* that leade are moste preste, | then the lefte fore legg being att libertye Is firste sett | downe, thatts 1 & then the righte fore legg thatts 2: & | then the lefte hinder legg being att libertye Is sett | downe thatts 3: & theñ the righte hinder legg, thatts preste, | & leades, thatts 4: Ande so iff the other legges leades | this Is a trewe Gallope, & the outwarde Rayne Is proper | for this because Itt narowes hiñ before, & makes hiñ | wide behinde which aughte to bee Iñ a Gallope so the | outwarde Rayne Iñ the Piroyte because Itt Is butt a Gallope | Iñ his length & so demy Voltaes Vppoñ Pasadoes, because | Itt Is butt a Gallope Iñ his length — which Is straytende | before

& In largede behinde which the outwarde Rayne | doth — So the outwarde Rayne for all leapes Croupadoes, | Balotadoes, & Capriolls, because they are all strayttende | before & In largde behinde which the outwarde Rayne | doth — Butt I muste tell you I Cañ helpe with the Inwarde | Rayne to bringe Iñ his Sholders thatt Is to strayten hiñ | as much before & Inlarged behinde as the outwarde | Rayne doth — Butt Itt Is so harde to putt Itt Iñ writinge | as I will pass Itt ouer though Veye Easeye In Actioñ | Remember the Grounde off all Is to settle a Horse Vppoñ | the Hande, for iff a Horse bee nott Vppoñ the Hande | hee shall neuer obaye the Heele for whatt haue you | to holde hiñ whilst hee obayes Itt, iff a Horse bee | well vppoñ the Hande hee will doe anye thinge thatt | his forses will permitt & iff hee bee nott vppoñ the | Hande hee neyther will nor Cañ doe anye thinge. | The nexte Is the Horse muste knowe I añ his master | & ther Is no Corection like sharpe spurrs after hee | Is settled off the hande to pinch hiñ with the Spurrs | Is añ Exselente helpe, & so a litle touch with the | Spurr to putt hiñ forwarde,— an Easeye & lighte | hande So Itt bee firme Is the beste for so hee will goe | Vppoñ the Hanches because hee hath nott much to reste | oñ for a Harde hande makes hiñ leane Vppoñ the | Bitt, & so goe vppoñ the sholders,— To sitt easeye & Easeye | helpe Is the beste for all horses, for so theye goe | with pleasure when theye are nott forste,— & Easeye | Bitts, & Easeye [*sic.*] Cauatzanes neyther to hurte theyr | mouthes, place off the Curbe or theyr nose for howe | shoulde theye goe pleasantlye when theye | Are Hurte. ——— |

[f.91^v] Ande thus you see still Itt Is the Hande & the | Heeles, thatt Is the Ende off our labor, & the | perfection off the manege.— Tis Trewe Euerye | Bodye talkes off itt,— Butt Itt Is as Trewe thatt | no Bodye doth Itt,— & with thatt truth I | will Ende This Discourse. ——— |

For Coruetts. |

The Bridle hande thus, — firme, & as the Horse rises | slack your hande, & as the Horse faules helpe hiñ, & still as hee Rises, slack the hande & as hee faules helpe | hiñ, — which will take hiñ Juste as hee Coumes to the | Grounde. |

Añ Other waye for Coruetts. — The Bridle hande Thus, Helpe hiñ with your hande | as you Rayse hiñ & slack Itt as hee goes doune, this Is | Juste Contrarye to the former helpes, butt as good Euerye | Jott — Butt I añ shure this helpe Is beste for all | Leapes for ther hee muste bee helpde as hee Rises | & stayde ther Vppoñ the hande, or Else hee will | neuer Leape, nor Cañ leape, well. ——— |

To putt a Horse Vppoñ the Hanches | & to putt hiñ Vppoñ the hande together. | ——— These two seeme Contrarye att one time, butt they are nott, | Then thus, when you walke, or trott hiñ duñ Piste giue hiñ | a good stopp, to putt hiñ oñ the hanches, & theñ Rayse hiñ a Pesate | verye hye, & holde hiñ ther & thatt putts hiñ Vppoñ the hande | butt as you rayse hiñ helpe hiñ with the Inwarde legg which | putts his Inwarde hinder legg to his outwarde hinder legg, | which makes hiñ bende Iñ the Cambrills, & so putts hiñ vppoñ | the hanches,— so Walke his Croupe Iñ & giue hiñ stopps, which | putts hiñ vppoñ the hanches & Rayse hiñ att the same time verye | hye & holde hiñ ther & thatt putts hiñ vppoñ the hande, & | then helpinge att the same time with your Inwarde legg | putts his Inwarde hinder legg, to his outwarde hinder legg, | which putts him vppoñ the hanches. This [*sic.*] hee Is both putt Vppoñ | the hande & putt vppoñ the hanches,— This you muste Vnderstande | Is butt Vppoñ stoppings, & vppoñ Pesates, eyther duñ Piste or his | Croupe Iñ — butt nott for Coruetts, because his Croupe Is oute |

{ not helpe | with the | legges att | all Iñ | Coruetts. | }

for Iñ Coruetts *you muste press his oute side, his outwarde | hinder legg, to make hiñ leane oñ the oute side* Butt | these former lessons, are the beste Iñ the worlde to putt hiñ | Vppoñ the Hanches, & to putt hiñ vppoñ the hande. ——— | Remember thatt when Itt Is safe the tienge the Inwarde Cauatzane | Rayne to the Poñell, as shorte as you Cañ, for you Cañ nott tie Itt | to shorte Is the beste thinge Iñ the worlde eyther duñ | piste to putt hiñ Vppoñ the hande, or Else his Croupe Iñ so | you press hiñ oñ the oute side to putt hiñ Vppoñ the | Hanches,— when you haue wraughte hiñ suffitientlye | with the Cauatzane theñ slack Itt totalye & walke hiñ

| Vppoñ the hande large duñ piste, to giue hiñ Ease, & to | Reioyce Hiñ.
—— |

An Exselente obseruation. |

Ther are some Horses thatt this laste lessoñ will | neyther putt hiñ Vppoñ
the Hanches, nor putt | hiñ Vppoñ the hande, & the resoñ Is because the |
Horse will holde Vpp his heade so hye as hee cañ | nott bee Vppon the hande
& Iff hee bee nott Vppon | the hande hee cañ nott obaye the heele, nor bee
vppoñ | the hanches,— The Cauatzane tied to the Poñell | or tied to the
Girthes, will nott doe Itt, because | hee findes his libertye still off one Side.—
| Therefore ther Is no waye to cuer hiñ, butt the | martingale off my fatioñ,
which Is the beste | Martingale Iñ the worlde because Itt offendes | nott a
horse mouth, beinge tied to the Arches | off the Bitt, for this martingale
Is tied to the | Cauatzane,— This Martingale doth Cuer thatt | vice off
holdinge Vpp his heade, for you maye | pull Itt doune to whatt degree you
will.— | & when his heade Is doune Itt settles hiñ oñ | the hande, moste
off the Barrs, because his heade | Is pulde doune, & therefore the Curbe Is
a litle | Slack, & beinge Vppon the hande hee muste | obaye the heele &
obayenge both the hande & | the heele hee muste bee Vppoñ the Hanches,
| & hee muste off nesetie bee Vppoñ the hanches, | because his heade Is
pulde doune, for theñ the | Horse Cañ nott chuse butt bende Extreamleye |
Iñ the Cambrills, & theñ beinge preste hee | muste off nesetie bee vppon
the Hanches | & the more vppoñ the Hanches, because hee | Cañ neuer
putt doune his heade, butt hee | muste bowe Iñ the Cambrills, because
his hinder | legges are made like our Armes, & thatts the | Resoñ his heade
beinge lowe thatt hee muste bende | Iñ the Cambrills,— For ther Is no Horse
thatt | holdes Vpp his heade, butt hee muste bee stiff Iñ | the Cambrills,—
so holdinge doune his heade | makes hiñ bowe Iñ the Cambrills, & this
Martingale | then Is moste Exselente, for a Horse thatt holdes | Vpp his
heade to disobaye both the hande & the | Heeles,— Butt I woulde neuer
haue Itt vsed butt | Vppoñ this Extremetye,— For my former wayes | Is
beste, & this waye neuer to bee vsed butt when | the other waye will nott
doe, which Is verye | Seldome, —— |

[f.92^v uncanceled] Obseruations, |

[cancelled] When you doe ride hiṁ with this fationde | Martingale, you maye
putt the Raynes to | the Cauatzane, tied my waye, & helpe hiṁ | with the
Inwarde Rayne off the Cauatzane | butt Gentlye att the firste, for pressinge
the | Horse two wayes att one time will offende | hiṁ so much as to playe the
Jade, therefore | att the firste I woulde onlye haue you vse | the bitt, & affter
hee Is a litle vsed to the | Martingale, Theñ vse the Iñwarde Cauatzane |
Rayne Gentlye, & so more, & more as you shall | finde ocatioñ, & after the
Horse Is a litle | aquaynted with the Cauatzane Rayne | on the Iñside off
the Turne. theñ you maye | tie the the Inwarde Rayne off the Cauatzane
| to the poñell, butt Gentle & a litle slack | att the firste nott to force
hiṁ to much | & by litle & litle, you maye tie Itt as harde | or to whatt
degree you please, & affter the | Horse hath gott a Coustome & habitt off
the | Martingale to bringe doune his heade to | the righte place, & supld
with the | Cauatzane Raynes,— you maye take off | both, & Ride hiṁ
onlye with the Bitt | & the Horse will goe Exactlye & moste | perfectlye.
—— |

The Martingale, & Cauatzane Raynes | this waye Is Exselente for Coruets,
& | Denye Ayres, because Itt pulls doune his heade & therefore settles hiṁ
oñ the hande | & so off nesesitye putts hiṁ vppoñ the hanches |

The Martingale & Cauatzane this waye | Is good also for all Leapes because
Itt pulls | doune his heade to setle hiṁ oñ the hande | & all Leapes are
made vppon the Hande, | Tis trewe thall [*sic.*] Leapinge Horses shoulde
| haue their Croupes free & nott Vppoñ the Hanches, no more theye are
constraynde | when theye leape & this martingale Is Exselente | because
Itt makes him steadye off the heade & | firmes hiṁ oñ the hande which Is
all In all for | leapinge Horses, for all leapes are made | vppoñ the Hande,
—— |

[f.93^f] Obseruations. |

This Martingale & Cauatzane Raynes Is good | for trottinge, Gallopinge,
Ruñinge, Pasager, | Terra, Terra, demie voltaes, Terra, Terra, | The Piroyte,

& Pasadoes, & whatt nott, Indeed | for Euerye thinge, for whatt Cañ bee
more | desierde Iñ the Manege, then to giue a Horse a good apewie, firme on
the Hande & settled | on his heade steadelye which Is the foundation | off
all thinges Iñ the manege, — & thatt beinge | performde, makes hiñ obaye
the heele & putts | hiñ vppoñ the hanches, & thatt Is all Iñ the | Manege,
for those three beinge performde | ther Is nott anye thinge butt the Horse
will | doe Itt, whatt soeuer Itt Is, Eyter [*sic.*] Vppoñ the | Grounde, or Iñ
Ayres, forwarde backwarde, | on Eyther Side, vppon Circles, & Changinge
| vppoñ Circles, or anye thinge you Cañ Imagiñ | to haue hiñ doe, ——— |

Butt yett I muste tell you I woulde neuer Vse this | Martingale butt vppon
Greate Extremeties neyther | doe you need, for sertenlye the Cauatzane
tied to the | Poñell my waye, will neuer fayle dressinge anye | Horse whatt
soeuer, off all Dispotitions, & Ages, | Virtues, or Visés,— & iff I Coulede nott
make or dress | a Horse Iñ the Manege withoute a Martingale | sertenlye
I woulde quitt the Manege & neuer | Ride more Exsepte a Huntinge, or
Haukinge | or Jurnienge, wher I shoulde meet with my | Peers & haue a
good Companye,— Butt since I Cañ | dress Horses withoute a Martingale,
I will | nott quitt the Manege for the other Exercises | though I haue fewer
to keepe me Companye | In thatt Nobleste of Pleasures, & delightfull |
Exersise. ——— |

Horses are apter to Gallope, or Ruñ then Trott, therefore | Trottinge Is the
foundatiõ off all thinges Iñ the | manege — with stoppinge which Is the
Grounde of all | Trottinge, & stoppinge which Horses are apte to neyther |
& therefore muste bee practisde Iñ both — Goinge back, | Is an Exselente
thinge & agaynste a Horses mynde & | therfore muste bee practised —
Trottinge, stoppinge & goinge | back, & so aduansinge after hee cañ doe all
these | or Else howe shall hee bee Vppoñ the | Hanches firme off |

[f.93^v] The hande, & theⁿ obediente to the heele, which theñ | Is moste Easeye
when hee Is firme oñ the hande | for before Itt Is Imposible to make hiñ
obaye the | Heele, for you haue nothings to staye hiñ whilst | you make
hiñ sensible to the heele butt the hande | firme & steadye, hee Cañ neuer
obaye the Heele. |

To suple a Horse sholders, to make hiñ | looke Iñ to the Turne Is the Greate
busines Iñ | the manege, & All In all Vppoñ the poynte | & to doe thatt
Is the Cauatzane tied to the | Poñell my waye which Is the Elixir for |
Dressinge all Horses whatt soeuer. ——— |

[uncancelled] For Terra Terra, |

The Cauatzane tied shorte to the Poñell, & then | helpe with the Inwarde
Rayne off the Bridle | your hande oñ the oute Side off the Turne to bringe
| vpp his nose a litle, & press vppoñ the outwarde | Sturrope, the Inwarde
legg a litle forwarder | & slacker, & your outwarde sholder, doune & | looke
directlye Vppoñ his neck which neck off | the Horse muste leane outwarde
— & all this Is | to putt the Horse oñ the oute side off the Turne | & thatt
Is to leane off his outwarde legges Espetialye | on his outwarde Hinder legg,
for then his Inwarde | Forr legg goes frome his outwarde forr legg, so thatt
| hee Is narowe behinde & wide before which narowe | behinde makes hiñ
Vppoñ the Hanches, because his | hinder legges are withiñ the lines off his
forr legges | So thatt halfe his sholder, goes before his Inwarde | hinder legg,
so thatt hee Cañ neuer bee Antier, | & this makes hiñ Imbrase the Turne
the better, because | thatt his Inwarde hinder legg cañ neuer goe before |
his Inwarde forr legg,— leaninge all on the oute | side off the Turne makes
the Horse goe as iff hee | made a litle halte which Is righte,— Terra, Terra,
| The time off Itt Is nott like a Gallope for the Time | off a Gallope Is 1:2;3;
& 4: wher the time off | Terra, Terra, Is butt 1:2: & his hinder legges are
| alwayes shorte off his forr legges, the time off a | coruett, butt lower, &
more Preste ——— |

Nowe for to Ride him Terra, Terra | onlye with the Raynes off the Bridle,
Thus. |

[f.94^f] All your Helpes as I haue tolde you formerlye | onlye your Bridle hande
a litle lowe, & oñ the oute | side off the Turne iff oñ the Righte hande
your Bridle | hande oñ the lefte side off the Horses neck, Turninge | Vpp
your hande or knuckles, & so pullinge your hande | doune which pulls
the Inwarde Rayne off the Bridle | which Inwarde Rayne putts the Horse
alwayes | oñ the oute side off the Turne & pullinge so & your | hande lowe.

putts the Horse Vppon̄ the barrs which | makes hiṁ firme off the hande
 which makes hiṁ | goe lower, & so after to goe Vppon the Hanches | when
 hee Is preste.— Howe to holde your | Bridle hande when̄ the Horse Goes
 oñ the lefte hande | Thus, — you muste putt your hande oñ the oute side
 | off the turne which ^{is} nowe oñ the Righte hande butt | you muste nott
 nowe turne Vpp, the Inside off your | hande att all, Butt pull Itt *directlye*
downe strayte | & harde to pull the Inwarde Rayne, which Inwarde | Rayne
 putts the Horse to leane on his legges oñ the | oute side off the Turne for
 the Resons I tolde you | formerlye, & all your helpes oñ this hande muste |
 bee as one the other hande onlye changinge hande | legg, & sholder.— Butt
 the Horse goinge | Terra, Terra, this doth nott goe a directe Circle | his
 outwarde Hanch beinge so putt Iñ, & leaninge | Vppon̄ Itt butt Itt Is better
 then iff hee wente a Circle, | more Vppon the Hanches, more Grasefull, &
 more | Shure & the figure thatt hee Goes Is This. ——— |

[diagram in midle of page with writing around it:]

That Is hee Goes side wayes, | onlye gaynes the ^{also} quarter off Circle att
 Euerye | Corner, & this Is the moste | Exacte, & perfecte Terra Terra |
 Thatt posible Cañ bee both to goe | on the hanches Easeye Grasefull, | &
 shure & light Vppon̄ the hande, | & fewe naye none Eyther knowes | The
 helpes thatt belonges to Itt & | whatt operation̄ theye haue nor | no Gess
 att the figure att all thatt | hee Goes Iñ Butt thinkes Itt | Is a perfecte
 Sircle wher in |

[back to full lines under diagram]

theye are verye much deseued For Itt Is Impossible for | anye Horse to Goe Iñ
 a perfecte Circle & keepe his | Croupe Iñ as hee shoulde *de doe* Vppon̄ Terra
 Terra | Iñ voltaes, & therefore this Is the perfecte figure for | Terra, Terra,
 & demy Voltaes, butt the Demye Voltaes are | Gaynde Iñ two Corners as
 Thus,— butt this Is frome the wall, for | In pasadoes by a wall the demy
 voltaes | are halfe a Piroyte & helpete with the | outwarde Rayne to strayteñ
 | his sholders & giue liberty | for his Croupe. |

[in midle of litle diagram at side of page]

Ther is | no center | Iñ these | figures. |

[f.94^v uncanceled] For Coruetts, Thus. |

The Horse goes heer Vppoñ Coruetts a perfecte | Circle because his hinder legges goes Equalye | with his forr legges, byas In Circle, & because | hee Is Bias, therefore his Croupe Is remoued frome | the Center & therefore goes forwarde & vppon the | Hanches & Easeye,— for weare his croupe all | kepte Iñ hee woulde goe backwarde & did hee | goe Vppon squares as Terra, Terra, hee muste goe | Side-ways Vppoñ Squares & theñ to gayne | the halfe quarter off the other sqar woulde | bee to large, for Coruetts, Therefore the righte | waye for Coruetts Vppoñ Voltaes, Is bias vppoñ | Circles, for the resons I tolde you before the | helps the Inwar [*sic.*] Rayne, & the outwarde legg, | the toes doune to \wedge^{bee} weake In the hañs, to helpe | Gentlye the outwarde sholder a litle doune | & looke vppoñ his neck, The righte figure for | Coruetts, Is heer followinge. ——— |

[diagram, no notes]

Iff you woulde make your Horse Goe | The petit Gallope his Croupe Iñ, hee muste putt | oute his outwarde Hanch a litle or Else hee | cañ nott Gallope, the Inwarde Rayne, & outwarde | legg, or Else the Inwarde Rayne to pull Iñ his | Inwarde *outwarde* sholder the knuckles to looke In to the | turne on Eyther hande,— or Else helpe with the | *outwarde Rayne, Eyther off which will bringe | Iñ his outwarde Sholder, which narowes hiñ | before & Inlarges hiñ behinde which Is proper | for a Gallope & to bringe his sholders more aboute | Iff you pull doune your Inwarde sholder Itt will fasilitate the Horses sholders the more | & so off nesetye giue libertye to his outwarde | Hanch, though you helpe with your outwarde legg, ——— |*

[f.95^r cancelled] For Bitts this obseruation, |

[cancelled] The Bitt Proper for the Horse & as litle Iroñ as you | cañ In his mouth, a Cañon, Scatch, or olliues a La, Pigniatell, with Branches a la Conetable — Butt this | remember, the cheekes rather shorte theñ longe a | Spañ or a litle more — & remember thatt iff the cheekes | bee shorte you cañ neuer make them to stronge, | for thatt which Is furthest frome the Center | Is allwayes the strongeste, & then off nesetye | longe Cheekes beinge

made stronge are stronger | theñ shorte ones,— because longe cheekes are furthest | frome the Center, so you Cañ hardlye make shorte | Cheekes to stronge because theye are neerer the Center,— & this lett mee tell you besides I woulde | haue the cheekes stronge, to pull doune his heade | thatt hee maye bee the better Vppoñ the hande | & then hee will obaye the heele, & bee much more | oñ the Hanches, which two thinges are principall | poyntes Iñ the manege,— Butt sayes some take | heed off a Horse thatt goes Incaputiato, tis trewe | I woulde nott haue a Horse doe so, butt I haue | had manye Horse thatt haue gone Incaputiato | which Is to Arme hiñ selfe agaynste the Bitt | & yett *wh* wente as lighte off the hande as | a fether, & as sensible to the hande Iñ all kindes | the Reson was the Horses weare vppoñ the hanches | & theñ theye muste bee lighte off the Hande | & thatt which made them vppon the Hanches | was the workinge them with the Cauatzane | my waye tied to the poñell which did so suple | theñ so firme theñ oñ the Hande, & putt | theñ so much Vppoñ the Hanches as made | theñ so lighte, & sensible to the hande, though | theye did Arme theñ selues agaynste the Bitt, | & no doubtte butt theye woulde haue gone | perfectlye with the Cauatzane withoute | the Bitt, So Exselente Is the Cauatzane my | waye & tied to the Poñell, for the Dressinge | off all Horses what soeuer, with anye vise Iñ | mouth, heade, neck, sholders or Croupe halfe off | Itt att leaste, & makes all his bodye & legges | goe righte which no other waye doth & therefore | Esteme the Cauatzane my waye a boue all | thinges Iñ the Manege, as the moste Exselente | thinge Iñ the worlde for all mañer off Horses, | & Itt Is So Rare as Itt Cañ nott bee praysed | to much. ——— |

[f.95^v uncanceled] Obseruations |

[canceled] For Gallopinge & changinge Eñ Soldat, calde Gallopinge | The feilde maye bee forste, so maye Terra, Terra, | So maye stoppinge, & Goinge Back, so maye | Pesatoes, so maye walkinge vppon Paseger which | Is Incaualare, Vppoñ Voltaes,— so *pa* maye | Pasadoes iff the Horse bee patiente, otherwise Itt | Is dificulte, So the Piroyte maye bee forste, | Coruetts, & Demye Ayres iff the Horses haue | neuer so litle Inclination to theñ maye bee forste | Itt Is beste neuer to forse a Horse iff you Cañ

chuse, | Butt I neuer yett sawe anye Horse off whatt | dispotiōn soeuer hee
weare off, butt hee woulde rebell some-times, & theñ hee muste bee forste
| Ande Remember, thatt the mañ muste lett the | Horse knowe, thatt hee
Is his master, & to stande | Iñ awe, & feare off hiñ & so obaye him, for
| feare doth all the thinges Iñ this worlde | both with mañ & beaste, for
loue depends | Vppoñ his will, butt feare hee dependes Vppon | my will,
so feare Is the shure holde therefore | lett your Horse feare you, & hee will
love | you for his owne Sake, therefore lett hiñ | feare you which Is the shure
Holde, & the | Righte waye to dress Horses perfectlye, | & no other waye,|

Butt remember thatt Iñ all Leapes you muste | neuer forse anye Horse
for thatt Ayre Is | doone all oute off Gayetye off Speritt, liuelines | Joye
Loue, & all Contentmente, therefore remember | neuer to beate a leapinge
Horse nor forse | hiñ Iñ anye kinde butt vse all the Gentlenes, | & patience
with hiñ Iñ the worlde for | did you forse hiñ, you woulde make hiñ |
Restie, or Starke mad & therefore neuer | forse or Beate a leapinge Horse. &
Ride hiñ | Gentlye, & butt a litle att a time, to keepe | hiñ Iñ strength, &
luste & Iñ Joletye & | plesante, for iff you take to much off hiñ | hee will
nott Leape, when his Courage Is | abated & Tierde — In France theye vse
to | prick hiñ with poynsons, & Godes, & Chambriers | with prickes at the
Ende off theñ which Spoyles | their Horses, For All Leapinge Horses theye
| Leape by nature more theñ Arte. & therefore | neuer forse theñ. |

[f.96^r] For a Restie Horse, |

A Restie Horse Is when hee will nott goe forwarde, | The waye Is theñ to
pull hiñ backwarde, & Then | hee will goe forwarde, Itt seldome fayles, butt
| Iff Itt doe fayle, theñ Vse your Spurrs, & to the | purpose, & though hee
rebells a greate while, the | beste argumente you cañ vse to hiñ, iff theye bee
| giuen sharpleye, & soundlye, & Continued Vntill | hee doth yelde, which
sertenlye hee will doe att | laste, for this Remedye neuer fayles. ——— |

For a Ruñawaye Horse. ——— |

For a Ruñawaye Horse I tolde you before, thatt | you muste haue a Gentle
Bitt, the Curbe Slack, | a Gentle Cauatzan, thatt nothings maye hurte his |

mouth or his nose, for sertenlye sharpe Cauatzanes | & Cruell Bitts, harde
 Curbde made Horses Ruñawaye | makinge them desperate, — you muste
 also haue a | Gentle hande to offende hiñ no waye, & walke hiñ | firste
 withoute stoppinge but stayenge off hiñ | by litle, & litle, & then Trott
 hiñ & frome his | Trott to his walke & so by litle & litle staye hiñ | &
 alwayes make much off hiñ when hee obayes you, | & frome his trott you
 muste Gentlye Gallope hiñ, | & frome his Gallope to a Trott, & frome his
 Trott to | a walke, & frome his walke by litle & litle | staye hiñ, & alwayes
 a Gentle hande,— This Is to | preuente hiñ frome Ruñinge a waye, |

Butt putt the Case hee doth Ruñ awaye whatt Is to bee | duñ then, whye
 Thus the more you pull the Cauatzane | hee will Ruñ the faster to opose
 you, & the more you | pull the Bridle, & strayteñ the Curbe Hurtinge | hiñ
 the more you pull, the more hee will pull & | ruñ the faster,— for pullinge
 doth no more good | then iff you pulde att a wall,— Then iff you haue |
 feilde Roome, when hee begiñs to Ruñ giue him | the Spurrs Continualye
 sharplye & soundlye & | slack the Bridle, & Spurr hiñ vntill hee begiñs | to
 slack off hiñ selfe & to bee Contented to staye | & as offteñ as hee begiñs to
 Ruñ Vse the same waye, | & att laste I dare Vndertake hee will bee Cuerde,
 | for this Is the beste waye In the worlde for a | Ruñawaye Horse, Butt iff
 you haue nott Roome | Butt |

[f.96^v] Circumscribed In to a narower Place, then lett | hiñ Ruñ Circularlye,
 Vntill hee Is wearye | with a Slack hande,— butt iff you haue nott | Roome
 the beste Is to putt hiñ to the Single | Piller with a good Stronge Rope, both
 which | will holde hiñ, & ther hee cañ Runn butt | Circularlye & Rounde,
 & giue hiñ the Spurrs | soundlye, Vntill hee bee wearye & Contented | To
 staye, & this att laste no doubtt butt will | Cuer hiñ. ——— |

For Ayres. |

To giue A Horse añ Ayre, ther Is no doubte off | Itt att all, butt Itt Is beste
 to giue Itt hiñ frome | the Pillers Loose — For betwixte the Pillers | Is a
 Rootinge & by Rote because hee doth Itt by | the Eye besides hee Goes
 Vppoñ the Cauatzane | & so the Horse hath no Apewye butt vppoñ | his
 Nose, & nott off his mouth, Eyther vppoñ | the Barrs, or oñ the Curbe,—

I saye these butt | I will slack the Raynes off the Cauatzane so | slack as hee shall onlye Goe vpon the *Curbe* | Bitt, barrs, & Curbe, whye theñ the Raynes doth | no good, nor the Pillers you had as good Ride | hiñ withoute & a great dell better, Theñ | the Greate Masters saye, thatt the founda= | tion off all Ayres, Is de ferme, as ferme | which Is to goe In a Place, whye doe theye | saye so, because off their Pillers, for ther | the Horse muste goe In a place Indeed | because hee Cañ nott goe forwarde, Butt | the Truth Is de ferme a ferme, Is no foundation | off Ayres att all, nor no Vse off Itt to helpe a | Horse In them, for iff I giue hiñ añ Ayre | loose frome the Pillers, ther hee trewlye | obayes my hande, & has a righte apewye | both vpon the Barrs, & Vpon the Curbe, | & theñ I Cañ eyther putt hiñ forwarde | or staye hiñ Vpon the hande as I liste, to | make hiñ take In Equall time In his Ayre, | & thus hee perfectlye obayes both the Hande | & the heeles.— Ande I will Vndertake to make | a Horse goe Juster & more perfectlye. & teach | hiñ better & more In one week theñ theye shall | doe In two monthes att the Pillers, & hee shall | nott goe loose when thatt Is doñ, for when |

[f.97^r] Hee goes butt 8: or 10: forwarde Juste which hee | will soone doe, Itt Is butt Conuertinge thatt | strayghte line In to a Circle perfectlye because hee perfectlye obayes both the Hande & the | Heele, & this Is so greate a Truth. as I wishe | you neuer to vse anye other waye In Ayres | Theñ This.— whatt soeuer you will doe, I am | shure I will neuer vse anye other. ——— |

Bee nott discouragde iff your Horse doe opose | you, for Itt shewes strength Speritt, & stomacke | & a Horse hauinge all those can nott chuse | butt bee made a Readye Horse, iff hee ^{bee} vnder the | discipline off añ Vnderstandinge hande & knowinge | heeles,— when a Horse thatt doth nott Rebell | shewes weaknes, & fayntnes off Speritt, & no | Courage & wher Nature Is so much wantinge | Itt Is harde for Arte to supplie Itt,— Butt trewlye | I neuer knewe anye Horse In my life, butt | before hee weare perfectlye drete, butt hee woulde | Rebell, & Extreameleye to, & a greate while before | Hee woulde goe freelye, butt a litle still agaynste | his will vntill hee bee perfectlye drete, for | sertenlye ther Is no Horse butt will strike att | the firste &

In the dressinge to haue his owne | will, theñ to obaye your will,— nor no
Horse | loues Subiectiõ, nor anye thinge Else thatt | Euer I sawe, no nott
mañ vntill ther Is no | remedye, & theñ theye obaye & the Coustome off |
obediẽce makes theñ Readye Horses, Butt | theye will striue all the wayes
posiblye theye | Cañ to bee free & nott subiected, butt wheñ | theye see Itt
will nott bee, then theye yelde | & nott before, so theye deserue no thanks
for | their obediẽce,— Naye no mañ In the worlde | the wiseste, iff hee
weare putt In to the forme | off a Horse, with his supream vnderstandinge
| Couldẽ posiblye find oute more subtile wayes | to opose a mañ theñ a Horse
will, naye nott | neer so manye I dare saye,— Then I Conclude the | Horse
muste knowe you are his master, thatt Is | hee muste feare you & theñ hee
will loue you | for his owne Sake, for when hee feares you hee | dependes
Vppoñ your will & thatts a redye Horse butt | wheñ the grunde Is loue
then you depende Vppoñ | his will, & thatts a redye mañ, feare Is the shure
holde, | for feare doth all thinges In this worlde, loue | litle, & therefore lett
your Horse feare you.

[f.97^v uncanceled] Obseruations. For Suplinge a Horses | neck & Sholders |

[canceled] No horse cañ goe well or bee a Readye Horse, | Vntill hee bee Suplde
oñ the Sholders, | which Indeed Is moste In the neck, & nott | onlye to looke
Into the Turne, butt Itt makes | all his leggs goe righte as theye Shoulde
doe | The Suplinge his neck & his Sholders Is the | Inwarde Cauatzane
Rayne tied to the Poñell | somwhatt strayte, & then Gallope hiñ large |
his Croupe oute Inwarde Bridle Rayne, & | Inwarde legg, & thatt suples his
neck & sholders, | so Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne tied harde to the | poñell,
Inwarde Bridle Rayne & Inwarde | legg, to trot or Gallope hiñ his Croupe
oute narowe | In his length iff Itt Couldẽ bee, & this suples | his neck &
Sholders Extreamlye,— so the | Inwarde Cauatzane Rayn legg & Rayne
oñ the | Inside, In his length vppoñ his walke, suples | his neck & sholders
verye much,— so the | Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne tied harde to | the poñell
Inwarde Rayne & Inwarde legg | his heade to the Piller butt to goe oñ the
| Contrarye Side thatt hee Is tied, for iff you | tie the Righte Cauatzane
Rayne to the Poñell | you muste Goe oñ the leftẽ hande, butt though |
you goe oñ the leftẽ hande the Horses neck & | Sholder Is suplde for the

Righte hande, | & when the lefte Cauatzane Rayne Is tied | to the Poñell
 though you goe oñ the right | hande the Horses neck & sholders Is supled
 | for the lefte hande, this Is añ Exselente | Lessoñ the Horse heade to the
 Piller to | Suple his neck, & sholders, Thus you haue | all these Exselente
 wayes to suple a Horses | neck, & Sholders, & neuer rayse hiñ or putt |
 hiñ to anye thinge Else Vntill hee ^{bee} perfectlye | suplide off his neck &
 sholders firste Vppoñ | his trot & when hee Is so lighte as to Gallope | off
 hiñ selfe & then Gallope hiñ & nott | before, you muste stopp hiñ vppoñ
 his trot | & make hiñ Goe back this waye to, for the | Trott thus, & the
 stoppinge Vppoñ a Trott | thus Is the foundation off all thinges In the |
 manege & then Gallopinge off hiñ giues hiñ | a good apewye, the Inwarde
 Cauatzane Rayne | tied to the poñell Is the quintesence off all | thinges for
 dressinge Horses In the manege | & thus much for suplinge a Horses neck |
 & Sholders. |

[f.98^r] For Suplinge a Horses neck, Sholders & Croupe | Together, to make hiñ
 obaye both the hande | & the heele. ——— |

Tie the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne harde to the | poñell oñ which hande
 soeuer you goe In voltaes | & putt his Croupe In, & worke the Inwarde
 Rayne | & outwarde legg, Vppon paseger which Is a walke, | Thus hee Is
 putt Vppoñ the Hanches, & obayes the | Heele as well as the hande, hee Is
 vppoñ the hanches | because his Croupe Is In the narrower Circle, & moste
 | preste, & subiected & his forr partes att libertye | & moste wraughte, hee
 Is Vppoñ the hande because | you gide hiñ with nothings butt the Bridle
 | because the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne Is tied to | the Poñell & giues the
 bente & plie & giues hiñ | a righte apewye, because hee cañ nott bee to
 lighte | off the hande for the Cauatzane Rayne beinge tied | to the poñell,
 pulls hiñ doune to the Righte place | & hee cañ nott bee to harde oñ the
 Hande because | the Cauatzane Rayne beinge tied to the Poñell | keepes
 hiñ In the righte place thatt hee Cañ nott | press lower, Iff the Horse bringe
 nott his sholders | In enough, you muste worke them In with your | bridle
 hande eyther Inwarde Rayne or outwarde | Rayne, & iff hee obaye nott the
 Croupe ^{heele} so well you | muste staye his sholders & press his Croupe, | his
 Croupe In In his length thus thatt Is the | Rayne to the Poñell, Is Exselente

both to make | hiṁ obaye the hande & the Heele, & so his | heade to the wall,— The Rayne tied to the Poñell duñ Piste & Rayse hiṁ vppoñ his walke, | or Else his Croupe Iñ & rayse hiṁ vppoñ his | paseger, In pesates Is Exselente to putt hiṁ | vppoñ the Hanches & to make hiṁ lighte off | the hande; — The same waye you maye Vse for | all Ayres, & for Terra, Terra, the Rayne tied | to the Poñell, harder or slacker, as you finde | ocatioñ, Ande therefore remember still thatt | the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne tied to the | Poñell my waye Is the quintesence off the | manege to dress all mañer off Horses Iñ | all kindes moste perfectlye as theye aughte | to bee dreste, which Is perfectlye to obaye the | Hande, & the Heele, & then hee will goe howe | you please & wher you please — Neuer | worke his croupe oute, legg & Rayne Contrarye for | Itt putts hiṁ vppoñ the sholders. |

[f.98^v] Trewe obseruations, Vppon Circles both | for Coruetts, & Terra, Terra, as also le | petit Gallope his Croupe Iñ, butt firste | for Coruetts & Demye Ayres. ———|

For Coruetts vppoñ Circles, you muste putt | the Horse Bias, slope wise, thatt Is his Croupe | muste flye or bee remoude frome the center | or Piller with his fore-partes towards the | Center Bias, thatt hee maye nott leane off eyther | hande to much, the Inwarde Rayne to helpe | Euerye time off his Cadanse when hee faules | Vppoñ the Grounde, & to soutenes, & sustayne | hiṁ ther a while, *Et your outwarde legg | a litle to hiṁ, Et the Inwarde legg less to | hiṁ, butt a litle to make hiṁ goe forwarde | Euerye time, & then your outwarde sholder | a litle doune, & all this Is to keepe him Bias | In thatt posture I formerlye tolde you, | & thus hee will goe Vppoñ the Hanches | & perfectlye well, for did his Croupe goe | more oute hee woulde bee off off the Hanches, | & did his Croupe goe more Iñ hee woulde | goe backwarde & rather for the other | hande, then thatt which hee goes oñ & so | Constraynde, as Itt woulde putt hiṁ off | off the Hanches to, you muste looke Juste | betweene his Eares, & your toes doune thatt | you maye bee weake frome the knees dounw= | arde, & stronge frome the knees Vpwarde | & sitt as Easeye as you cañ withoute Constrainte, | Nott weake butt Easeye, & nott stronge butt | faste a Horse-Back, Thus the Horse goes a | perfecte*

Circle aboute the Center or Piller | Butt Bias as I shewde you marke this |
whatt Circle hee make, In Coruets. ——— |

{ & nott helpe | with the | legges att all. | }

For A Demye Ayre Itt Is the same In all kindes, | both helps with the
hande, & legges onely a | longer Time, & the hier hee Goes the longer time
| hee muste haue, & his bodye the same waye | bias vppoñ Circles, onely
iff hee goes hier then | his Croupe muste haue a litle the more libertye | &
thatts all the difference,— so thatt hee makes | a perfecte Circle a boute
the Center or Piller | Bias, marke Thatt.— his heade to the Center & | his
Croupe flies Itt, & hee getts the grounde as hee goes forwarde as hee faules
to the grounde & | both these are leapes Vppwarde his fore partes | The
larger Circle, & his hinder partes | The narrower. ——— |

[f.99^r uncanceled] For all Leapes Vppoñ Circles, |

[cancelled] The outwarde Rayne, & Inwarde legg a litle | because hee Is
straytende before, & Inlargde behinde, | as the Coruette Is the Inwarde
Rayne & *outwarde* | *legg* because the horse ther Is straytende behinde | &
Inlargde before,— when hee leapes hee throwes ——— | oute his Croupe
because off these helps, for iff his ——— | Croupe had nott libertye howe
Coude hee Leape, ——— | the mañ muste sitt vpp righte his breste oute,
| & when the Horse leapes his bodye a litle | back butt so as the beholders
cañ nott perseaeue | Itt, & to Soutenes, or sustayne the Horse to make |
hiñ hange In the Ayre, the Toes doune to bee | weake, frome the knees
dounwarde, & to bee | Stronge frome the knees Vpwarde — the Horse |
makes 4: perfecte Circles, a boute the Piller, | or Center his fore partes the
less Circles, & his hinder partes the Greater Circles. |

[uncanceled] For le petit Galope Vppon Circles, |

[cancelled] The Inwarde Rayne & outwarde | Legg butt the helps Gentle, this
Is a Gallope, & | therfore the time Is 1: 2: 3: & 4: *his Croupe a | litle oute*
thatt Is his outwarde Hanch a litle | oute, & preste withiñ the Turne, & his
Inwarde | legges to the Circle leades, & Is a leape forwarde | *narowe before*
& *In largde behinde*, hee makes | fowre perfecte Circles, a boute the Piller

Eeuen & then his heade muste | bee directlye agaynste the Center & kepte
so neyther | To bee off one side or other. |

[f.100^r uncanceled] For Paseger Vppoñ Circles. | His Croupe Iñ. |

[cancelled] Iff his sholders bee nott suple worke them | which Is his outwarde
Hanch a litle oute, | which flies the Center — Butt iff hee | doe nott obaye
the Heele, then worke hiñ | Vppoñ the Square Lesson, Vppoñ his walke | &
thatt will make hiñ obaye the heele | perfectlye,— These laste Lessons are
the | quintesense off our Arte, off Horse-manshipp, | & therfore studie Itt
well, & Esteme Itt | Highleye. ——— |

[uncanceled] For Terra, Terra, |

[cancelled] Ther Is no perfecte Terra, Terra, butt the square Iñ | the laste leafe,
to keepe his Croupe Iñ, that Is to keepe | his outwarde Hanch Iñ & to make
hiñ goe perfectlye | Vppon the Hanches, — & heer ther Is neyther Circle
nor | Center,— For Vppoñ a Circle the piller oñ the Inside | off his Croupe
as Itt aughte to bee his outwarde hanch | muste goe a litle oute & flies the
Center, & Is properlye | a litle Gallope quick & preste, rather theñ a righte
| Terra, Terra, so thatt ther Is no righte Terra, Terra, vppoñ | a Circle nor
Cañ bee, butt onlye Vppon a Square to keepe | his Croupe Iñ, thatt Is his
outwarde hinder legg, | or Hanch. ——— |

Naye to goe Terra, Terra, Iñ his length, ther Is no | righte Terra, Terra,
Iñ his length butt Vppon a | Square to keepe Iñ his outwarde hanch as Itt
shoulde bee | ackordinge to this figure followinge. ——— |

That this Is posetiuele trewe putt the Horse | Heade to three walls, & you
shall see playnlye | att Euerye Corner hee gaynes the other line off | the
Square by halfe a quarter off a Turne, | Vppoñ his Terra Terra, keepinge
his heade still to | the wall which no Creature butt muste Confess when |
hee sees Itt so playnlye, — & so Iñ his length Terra Terra, | In a corner
wher two walls meet, for two walls you | shall see Itt as playnlye & Iñ the
Corner wher hee | Gaynes the Seconde wall, hauinge butt two walls | for one
Corner as hee had three walls for two Corners, | butt theñ you muste press
the Horse that hee maye | leane all oñ the oute side the Inwarde Cauatzane

Rayne | tied to the poñell, & helpe with the Inwarde Rayne off | the bridle
as much as you can to leane on the oute side & to | staye his sholders your
outwarde sholder beinge putt | doune & helpe with your outwarde legg,
which Is the | beste Terra, Terra, In the worlde. |

[f.100^v uncanceled] : When a Horse Castes vpp his heade Euerye | time hee
goes In Coruetts, or beates vppon the hande. |

[cancelled] When a Horse Castes Vpp his heade Euerye | time off his Coruett,
& beates vppon the hande | The resoñ Is because hee Is nott Vppon the
hanches | & to make him so you muste tie the Cauatzane | my waye to
the poñell harde, which will putt | him Vppon the hande by pullinge him
doune | & then trottinge & stoppinge off him will putt | him Vppon the
Hanches, & pullinge back will | putt him vppon the Hanches, & workinge
him | his heade to the wall will putt him vppon the | Hanches, & make him
obaye the heele, & walkinge | his heade to three walls, will putt him vppon
| the Hanches,— & Raysinge him his croupe In | Vppon Pesates, will putt
him Vppon the hanches | & firme his heade, & so will Coruetts butt all |
this muste bee doñ still with the Inwarde | Rayne off the Cauatzane tied
to the Poñell | harde,& this will absolutlye Cuer him off | Castinge Vpp
his heade. ——— |

[uncanceled] For Coruetts. |

[cancelled] I haue tolde you before thatt the Horse muste | bee bias, his heade
towardses the Center, hee muste | neyther leane on the oute side, nor on
the Inside, | butt goe Euen, for a Coruett Is an other Actioñ | then Terra,
Terra, for Itt Is a leape Vpwardes | your seate on your twiste your toes
doune to | bende In the hañs, to bee weake frome the | knees dounwarde,
his stronge frame the knees | Vpwarde, *the outwarde legg a litle close to*
| *him, gentlye & the Inwarde legg a litle butt | nott so much, to press the*
outwarde sturrope | a litle more then the Inwarde sturrope & | to looke a
litle Into the Turne, — Butt your | Bridle hande Is the misterye, which Is
thus | on the right hande you mustte putt your bridle | hande on the lefte
side off his neck & helpe | him Euerye time turninge your hande butt |
verye litle pullinge Vpp your litle finger, | & puttinge your Elbowe doune,

& your hande | lookinge towardes his neck, & helpe hiṁ | Euerye time thus,
& soutenes thus, which | Is to sustayne & holde hiṁ Iñ the Ayre a |

[f.101^r] Litle while, for all Ayres muste bee quick frome | The Grounde, & to
staye vppon the hande — The helpinge | with your hande thus, Is to pull
the Inwarde | Rayne to holde hiṁ Vpp, thatt hee shoulde nott | leane, butt
thatt Is nott all, for the pullinge | off the Rayne thus bringes, Iñ his Inwarde
| Sholder & keepes back his Iñwarde hinder | legg, & *your outwarde legg*
keeps Iñ his outwarde hinder legg, so hee Is thus oñ | the hanches & his
Inwarde sholder goes | before his Iñwarde hinder legg, & thus | hee goes
bias as hee shoulde doe & alwayes | to goe forwarde as iff hee did nott
turne | for beinge kepte bias, makes hiṁ goe vppoñ a Circle, & Euerye
time hee rises hee standes | In a place, or tendes a litle to the center with
| his Croupe, & when hee faules, hee getts the | grounde for the Circle &
then his croupe | flies the Center a litle, This is the righte | Coruett, & the
righte helps for Coruetts | & though his forr legges are neerer together |
then his hinder legges, yett his hinder legges | Is withiñ the lines off his
sholders which | makes hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches — Nowe | for his Goinge
on the lefte hande Iñ Coruetts, | The Bridle hande thus, your bridle hande
| muste bee oñ the Righte Side off his neck, | your hande lookinge towardes
his neck & to | turne the wriste a litle, Euerye time & all the | helps as
I tolde you before, onlye changinge | hande legg & bodye, & all the same
Resons | for this hande, as was for the other hande. |

To Teach a Horse Iñ Coruetts | att firste, ——— | you muste Tye the
Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne | harde & helpe with the Inwarde Rayne off |
the Bridle iff forwarde, & so vppoñ Circles | & bee shure to Rayse hiṁ hye
before, & helpe | with your Inwarde legg att the firste to | keepe oute his
Croupe, thatt hee shall nott bee | Antier, for Coṁonlye Horses, putts Iñ
their | Croupes to much, some times theye putt Itt | oute to much butt
thatts no hurte butt a litle | off off the Hanches, the beste Is iff you coulde
| make him goe duñ piste butt his croupe oute Is | better then Iñ for manye
resons att firste. |

[f.101^v] A Gayne for Coruetts. |

You muste Vnderstande thatt Pesates | Is to Rayse a Horse Hye, which Is
nott | Coruets, because a Pesate, Is made In a | place, & goes nott forwarde
butt rather | like Raysinge hiṁ att a stopp, — Butt rayse | hiṁ as hye as a
Pesate, or as hye almoste | as you Cañ, iff hee goe forwarde with | Itt, Itt Is
moste Exselente & moste Grase= | full Coruett thatt Cañ bee Iñ the worlde
| & the treweste, because then hee stayes | Vppoñ the hande & obayes Itt as
hee | Shoulde doe,— The reste are false & | trepignie, which Is Tramplinge.,
|

For the Bridle Hande | In seuerall thinges. |

For Terra, Terra, the Inwarde Rayne off the | Bridle to pull your hande
doune oñ the Contrarye | Side off his neck,. The Resons I haue amplye |
tolde you before. ——— |

The same helpe for a demye Voltaes frome | the wall. ——— |

For Coruets, & demye Ayr the Inwarde Rayne | off the Bridle your hande
oñ the Contrarye | Side off his neck your knuckles towardes his | neck, The
Resons whye I haue tolde you | Suffitientlye before. ——— |

For the Piroyte you muste helpe with | the outwarde Rayne so Iñ Pasadoes,
| The Resons whye I haue shewde you | before. ——— |

For all Leapes whatt soeuer, Eyther | Forwarde or Vppoñ Circles, you muste
| helpe with the outwarde Rayne the | Resons whye I haue shewde you before
| for goinge back, Iñ Coruets the outwarde | Rayne whye I haue tolde you
before ——— | for le petit Gallope His Croupe Iñ the Inwarde | Rayne
pulde Vpp towardes your Sholder | All these seuerall helpe with the bridle
| hande for these seuerall Ayres. |

[f.102^r] For Gallopinge the Iñwarde Rayne & Inwarde | *outwarde* Legg, whye I
haue tolde you before, ——— |

Ther Is no Horse Cañ bee made | A Redye Horse vntill his sholders bee |
Extreamlye suple — & therefore alwayes | you muste begiñ theare, — & make
sensiple [*sic.*] | to the Heele, Iñ those lessons for suplinge — his sholders,
— Butt you muste perfecte | his obedience to the Heele afterwarde | bye

his Croupe In & his heade to the wall, | Suplde Vppoñ his walke trot & Gallope | Stopinge & Goinge Back & Raisinge hiñ | In Pesates. — No Horse Cañ bee | pfectlye dreste, butt hee muste firste | feare you, & theñ hee will obaye you for | his owne, sake, & thatt feare muste bee by | punishmente when hee offendes, nott other= | wise— & theñ thatt obedience Is braughte [sic.] | Into Coustome, & thers your Readye Horse, | & this Is a shurer waye theñ loue for | thus hee dependes Vppoñ you,— thatts a | Readye Horse, the Punishmente Is the | Spurrs, & soundlye when ther Is ocation | which ther Is sometimes with all Horses, | For Euerye Creature will striue to bee | oute off Subiection iff theye Cañ, & when | theye Cañ nott theñ theye will obaye, | & so a Horse & nott till theñ, All | other Corections butt the Spurrs are | Redickulous, — Rewarde hiñ when | hee doth well & punishe hiñ when hee | doth Ill, ——— |

[uncancelled] For the bodye |

[cancelled] To sitt straye In the Sadle as cañ bee, & to looke | alwayes directlye between his Eares, the | outwarde legg preste harde vppoñ the sturrope, | & the Inwarde legg slacker,— sittinge thus | straye you are broder theñ the Horse, & so | Equall for both handes & so you muste Continewe | your selfe still, onlye whatt hande so Euer you Goe | off the poyse to bee on the oute side thatt sholder | doune to press hiñ on the oute side with the | Inwarde Rayne Exsepte duñ piste & theñ hee muste | bee preste on the Inside & thatt sholder | Doune. ——— |

[f.102^v uncancelled] For the seuerall wayes off | the Bridle Hande. |

[cancelled] 1: Firste pullinge the Inwarde Rayne off the | Bridle your hande on the Contrarye side to | *pull Itt doune*, putts the Horse on the oute Side | off the turne & presses his outwarde hinder | legg & putts Itt In which Is proper for Terra, | Terra, butt theñ this muste bee Vppoñ a Square, | & nott Vppon a Circle. ——— |

2: A Gayne to pull the Inwarde Rayne Vpp | towardes your Contrarye sholder doth | nott press the Horse on his outwarde partes, | onlye putts back his Inwarde hinder legg, | & your outwarde legg putts In his other

| hinder legg, so thatt the Inwarde Rayne | keepes hiñ vpp, & giues his
sholders a litle | Liberty, & the Horse Goes bias Terra, Terra, | a litle thus
his fore partes leadinge | & his Croupe a litle *oute* | because a circle. |

3: A Gayne to pull the Inwarde Rayne | your hande oñ the Contrarye Side
off | his neck & so helpinge hiñ putts back his | Inwarde hinder legg, butt
doth nott | medle with the outwarde legges att all | & giues libertye for his
Inwarde sholder | more then the Seconde waye, & goes bias | verye much, &
his Croupe a litle oute | which muste bee Vppoñ all Circles this | Is rather a
preste Gallope then Terra, | Terra, because his Croupe Is a litle oute | This
Is Exselente for Coruetts because | thatt Is añ other Action & muste Goe
| Bias, & So Circularye & these two laste | are good for the Pettit Gallope
because | the Horse Is preste oñ the Inside, & therfore a Gallope. ——— |

{ puttinge your | knuckle | towardes | his neck off | Eyther hande | }

4: A Gayne to helpe with the outwarde | Rayne off the Bridle, putts oute
his outwarde | hinder legg, narowes hiñ before & Inlarges | hiñ behinde &
therfore fitt for a Gallope | the Piroyte, or demye voltaes Vppoñ Pasadoes,
| & all Leapes because all those aughte to bee | narowe before & Inlargde
behinde theyr | fore partes straytende & Inlargde behinde, | thatt belonges
to the outwarde Rayne off | the Bridle, Butt for Terra, Terra |

[f.103^r] Demy Voltaes, Terra, Terra, Coruetts & Demye | Ayres, Itt Is the
Inwarde Rayne off the Bridle | because thatt doth narowe ^hhiñ behinde &
Inlarge | hiñ before, so you muste take one off the three | firste thatt I haue
shewed you, with the | Inwarde Rayne proper for those seuerall thinges |
thatt I haue writt off, the Inwarde Rayne Is | Exselente to forse le petit
Gallope his Croupe Iñ. | This Is Exactlye the Truth. ——— |

[uncancelled] Iñ Coruetts |

[cancelled] To serue & helpe hiñ verye much with the hande | & iff hee goe nott
forwarde Enough the legges close | to hiñ,— so hee will bee both withiñ the
hande | & the heeles, Iff hee bee nott suple Enough theñ | tie the Inwarde
Cauatzane Rayne to the Poñell | & all this vppoñ a strayte line by a wall,
butt | when the Righte Cauatzane Rayne Is tied then | his lefte Side muste

bee to the wall & when | The lefte Cauatzane Rayne Is tied then his righte side muste bee to the wall, for otherwise | the plie off his neck woulde bee false for | one Is for the Righte hande & the other Is | for the lefte hande, though hee goes straye | by a wall, — This doth nott onlye suple his | Sholders butt firmes him on the hande thatt | hee can ^{nott} Juggle his heade, or beate vpon the | hande butt to bee firme & steadye off the | hande,— affter hee goes perfectlye forwarde | hee will Easeleye goe Vpon Circles, for | Itt is butt Conuertinge that straye line | Into a Circle, & hee will goe perfectlye & | soone. ——— |

[uncancelled] For Terra, Terra, |

[cancelled] The Righte Terra, Terra, I haue tolde you before | Is a square & nott a Circle yett iff hee goes a | Circle, eyther the pullinge the Inwarde Cauatzane | Rayne, or the Inwarde Rayne off the Bridle, Itt | muste bee still on the Contrarye Side your hande | with your knuckles towardes his neck so | iff the Inwarde Rayne off the Cauatzane bee tied | to the Poñell, then you worke with the bridle | Raynes, then you muste pull the Inwarde Rayne, your hande on the contrarye side your knuckles | towardes his neck with the Contrarye legg, Thus the | Horse goes bias. *Is rather a preste Gallope then a | Trewe Terra Terra, preste on the Inside his Inwarde | Sholder Coume In because off the Inwarde Rayne, | Is goes much before his Croupe. |*

[f.103^v uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] When the Inwarde Rayne off the Cauatzane | Is tied my waye to the Poñell, Espetialye | the Cauatzane my way which Is In my printed | Booke, though you pull Itt neuer so harde Itt | doth touch or worke off his sholders his Croupe | In verye litle, butt altogether off his heade | & neck; which Is the Exselencye off Itt | For manye Resons which I haue shewde | you before. ——— |

Ande after ther Is no danger In tienge | the Cauatzane my waye to the Poñell, | the shorter, & harder you tie Itt the | better Euen so shorte as to bringe his | heade to his verye sholder within the | Turne, & Itt will make

hiṁ goe Exactlye | well — though all the firste with this hee will disobaye
the heele to all Extremeties | in playenge the Jade, butt you muste paye
| hiṁ with the Spurr oñ thatt side Vntill | hee obaye you which hee will
doe att | Laste, though hee will trie allwayes firste | howe to opose you the
blowe & Sigh & grone | & snuff, & Sobb like a stuborne boye | butt when
ther Is no Remedye theñ | hee will obaye you & this Is the waye | & none
Else to subiecte hiṁ & to feare | you for after thatt Batle hee will | haue
no more. ——— |

To tie Itt as shorte as you Cañ to the poñell | & make hiṁ goe Terra Terra
his heade to | three walls iff Itt weare fowre walls Itt | weare the better
this Is a Square & att | Euerye Angle halfe a quarter off a turne, | thus hee
keepe Iñ his Croupe, which Is | his his outwarde hanch which you muste
bee | shure to putt Iñ with your outwarde legg & | Spurr iff ther bee neede,
& with the Inwarde | Rayne off the bridle puttinge your bridle | hande on
the contrarye side as much as you | Cañ Indeed to pull the Rayne doune
oñ the | Contrarye side, which you putt Iñ his outwarde | hanch more theñ
the Spurr, butt both | together will putt Iñ his outwarde | Hanch Infaloblye
[sic.], thatt Is hee |

[f.104^r] muste leane oñ the Contrarye Side thatt Is you | muste see his neck leane
oñ thatt side though | his neck bee pulde on the Inside, — This lesson the |
Horses heade to three walls wraughte Iñ this | mañer Is the moste Exselente
Lessoñ Iñ the worlde for all mañer off Horses, off all dispotitions, | for the
tienge hiṁ so shorte with the Inwarde | Cauatzane Rayne to the poñell
giues hiṁ a | trewe a pewye thatt hee Cañ nott bee harde off | the hande
besides the wall putts hiṁ oñ the | Hanches & beinge oñ the Hanches hee
muste | bee lighte off the hande, — & the tienge the | Inwarde Cauatzane
Rayne so harde to the | Poñell giues hiṁ so trewe añ apewye as hee | Cañ
nott bee to lighte off the hande butt firme | & theñ the wall which Is a
Square Is as good | For a Horse thatt Is to lighte off the Hande for | the
Cauatzane firmes hiṁ & giues hiṁ a temperate | apewye, & the wall putts
hiṁ oñ the Hanches | & so tienge the Cauatzane Rayne harde & the wall Is
good for all Horses whattsoeuer | The Cauatzane tied thus makes a Horse
thatt | Is harde off the hande temperate, because hee | can nott duck doune

his heade to press Vppoñ the | bitt to bee harde off the hande, — Ande
 tienge | the Rayne thus helps a Horse thatt Is to | lighte off the hande
 because Itt keeps hiñ | frome puttinge his heade vpp, & so I conclude
 | for thatt busines thatt Is the Righte place | for the temperate apewye
 neyther ouer nor | shorte, to hye nor to lowe, butt the absolute Juste |
 measure for the trewe apewye, — Butt ther Is | añ other Exselenseye Iñ
 Itt, thatt the Inwarde | Rayne off the Cauatzane keeps back the Horses
 | hinder legg withiñ the Turne & medles | nott with his outwarde hinder
 legg att all | & so the hinder legg withiñ the turne cañ | neuer goe before
 his sholders which Is rare, | because Itt Is the Inwarde Rayne, & makes his
 Inwarde sholder free suples his neck | giues hiñ the right Plye, lookes In to
 the | turne, & doth Euerye thinge Itt shoulde to | make a Readye Horse, Iñ
 deede the outwarde | Rayne off the bridle putts oute his outwarde | hinder
 legg because Itt narowes hiñ before | butt the Inwarde Rayne Cauatzane
 or bridle | Inlarges hiñ before & straytens hiñ behinde | This Is moste
 Exselente for all | Thinges. ——— |

[f.104^v uncanceled] Obseruations |

[cancelled] Ther are manye Resons, whye wee worke a Horse | so much to putt
 hiñ oñ the hanches which | I haue shewde you before, — Butt ther Is one
 | more & thatt Is this, — A Horses Croupe or | Hanches beares nothings
 butt his Tayle which | Is veye lighte, butt his sholders, hath his | neck
 & heade to beare more, & therefore wee | putt hiñ vppoñ the Hanches to
 poyse hiñ | & to releue his sholders, & to make hiñ | Lighte off the Hande.
 ——— |

When the Cauatzane Is tied shorte to the | Poñell & the Horse heade to
 the wall to | goe Terra, Terra, the wall theñ serues for | nothings, butt to
 bee a Rule thatt hee maye | Justlye goe bias, because the Horse Is putt |
 all vppoñ the Cauatzane; — Butt iff the | Horse goe onlye Vppoñ the Bitt,
 & his | heade to the wall, then the wall serues | veye much for iff hee bee
 harde oñ the | Hande theñ the wall putts hiñ Vppoñ | the Hanches & giues
 hiñ a temperate | apewye, & iff the Horse bee lighte off the | hande then
 the wall putts hiñ Vppoñ | the Hanches, & Vppoñ the hande to giue | hiñ

a temperate apewye, for his heade | to the wall putts hiñ almoste as much
| together as a stopp, & a stopp putts hiñ | Vppoñ the hande & vppoñ
the hanches | Both, & so doth the wall, & Is a moste | Exselente Lesson.
—— |

When the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne | Is tied harde & shorte to the Poñell |
that the horse heade Is pulde to his | Sholder, theñ you cañ nott putt Iñ his
| outwarde Hanch to much, because | the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne keepes
| back the Horses hinder legg withiñ | the Turne so much as Itt cañ neuer
goe | before his sholders, & workes nott att | all off his outwarde hinder
legg, so your | outwarde legg muste putt Iñ his outwarde | legg as much as
you cañ, & the beste waye | To putt Iñ Is vppoñ a Square. —— |

[f.105^r uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] When a Horse goes Incaputiato, which Is to Arme | hiñ selfe a
gaynste the Bitt, theye saye the Horse | Is harde off the Hande, because the
^^{branches} cheekes restes | Vppon his breste, wheriñ theye are verye much
| deseued.— For firste ther Is no Horse cañ bee | putt so much Vppoñ
the Hanches, as when his | head Is doune, for when his heade Is Vpp hee
Is | Extended & therefore off off the hanches, & when his head Is doune
hee Is putt together, | & therefore maye the better bee putt Vppoñ the
| Hanches.— & when the Horse Is Vppoñ the | Hanches, hee muste bee
lighte off the hande, | & when hee Is lighte off the hande His heade | doune,
hee muste haue a good apewie, & when | hee Is thus hee cañ nott Arme
agaynste the | Bitt, so theñ thatt doth hiñ no Harme nor | Is no falte, butt
a virtewe thatt bringes | so manye Conuenienceyes with Itt, besides | for a
Soldiers Horse, hee his stronger to meete | the Enemye att a Shock with his
forheade | theñ with his nose, & will nott so Easeleye | bee distemperde,
— Therefore the olde Exseption | Is verye Ignorantlye made, when Indeed |
theye neyther vnderstande whatt theye | saye, nor whatt theye doe, & Iñ
a worde | theye Vtterlye mistake the whole busines. |

A Horses Bodye Is wider theñ his fowre | legges oñ both sides, & the Sadle
Is wider theñ | his Bodye, & the Horse-mans legges are wider | then the
sadle, so thatt these three degrees beinge | wider theñ the Horses legges,

the Horse-mans | legges beinge the wideste though hee putt them | neuer so close to the Horse muste needes bee the | wideste, & so off nesesitye then the Horses legges | muste needes bee withiñ the lines off the Horsemans | legges, the Horse beinge narowe Iñ length, the | Horse-mañ Is braughte, & the lines off the Horsemans | sholders beyonde the lines off the Horse oñ | both sides which makes the poyse oñ which side | hee will Eyther withiñ or withoute & to | narowe hiñ Eyther before or behinde, & so | to Inlarge hiñ Eyther before or behinde | Att his pleasure, with the helpe off the | Bridle as the Inwarde Rayne pullde doune | on the Contrarye side with the outwarde | legg narowes hiñ behinde | Ande. ——— |

[f.105^v cancelled] Inlarges hiñ before because Itt putts hiñ oñ | the outside thatt Is on his legges on the oute | Side which Is proper for Terra Terra vppon a | Square — The Inwarde your hande oñ the | oute side your knuckles to the Horse neck | brings Iñ his Inwarde Sholder & makes | hiñ goe bias his croupe a litle oute & makes | his goe firme oñ both his hinder legges, thoug | his forr legges are narrower then his hinder | legges, yett his hinder legges Is withiñ the | lines off his sholders which makes hiñ vppoñ | the hanches, the Inwarde Rayne beinge | wraughte & *outwarde legg*, & this Is fitt | for Coruets, & demye Aysr Vppoñ voltaes. | The Inwarde Rayne, & *Inwarde legg narowes | hiñ before & Inlarges hiñ behinde & Is fitt | for a Gallope.* — The outwarde Rayne | narowes hiñ before, & Inlarges hiñ behinde | & therefore fitt for the Piroyte, & Demye voltaes | vppoñ Pasadoes, — As also for all Leapes, | because Itt narowes hiñ before & Inlarges | hiñ behinde. |

The trewe waye & methode to teach | a younge, or Ignorante Horse att firste | This Is the quintesence, & abstracte off Horsemanship |

The bitt well fitted to hiñ & the Curbe | & so the branches proper for hiñ as I | haue tolde you before,— the Cauatzane after | my mañer tied Eyther to the Girthes or | the poñell as you see ocatioñ, & then trott | hiñ large Circles his coupe rather oute | then Iñ thatt Is directlye oute *olde* holdinge | your bridle hande Vppoñ his neck forme | withoute mouinge off Itt or giuinge anye | libertie, which putts hiñ vppoñ the barrs | & giues hiñ a

good Apewie, & helpe with | the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne, & Inwarde |
legg which suples his sholders, which Is | the mayne busines, your hande off
the | Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne lowe to his neck | rather oñ the other side
off his neck turninge | vpp the palme off your hande & bringinge | In your
outwarde sholder a litle this | Is to bende his neck Extreame lye which | Is the
busines, to set hiñ righte Euerye | wher both bodye & Legges. ——— |

[f.106^r cancelled] For the lefte hande the same helpes onlye puttinge | your
bridle hande Iñ to the righte hande, so changinge | hande & legg, — Ande
bee shure thatt you neuer | Gallope hiñ Vntill hee ^{Λ^{g^{oe}}} perfecte Iñ his trotte,
& thatt | hee stoppes perfectlye vppoñ his stopp, & more to | suple hiñ vpp
both off the Sholders & to bende | his neck, walke hiñ his croupe oute, legg
& Cauatzane | Rayne oñ the Iñside, on both handes, & to goe back & | to
haue a good apewye, & use no other lessoñ theñ | this vntill you finde hiñ
Extreame suple both | off his sholders & neck, & all this vppon a Trotte & |
a walke as I haue tolde you,— for no horse butt | walkes Gallopes & Ruñs
easier theñ to trotte & | therefore you muste worke hiñ vppoñ his Trotte, |
for hee thatt will Gallope his Horse before hee | Cañ stopp well Vppoñ his
Trotte, & Ruñ hiñ before | hee cañ stopp well vppoñ his Gallope shall |
vtterlye spoyle hiñ puttinge the Carte before the | Horse, makinge hiñ to
speake lattiñ before hee | knowes his letters,— The Trotte, & to stopp well |
& to goe back Is the foundation off all Ayres, | both to setle hiñ vppoñ the
Hanches hande | & to putt hiñ Vppoñ the Hanches, & bee | shure thatt
you neuer aduance hiñ which Is | to rayse hiñ before, for thatt will vterlye
| Spoyle hiñ & make hiñ Restie. ——— |

When you haue a longe time vsed thus to worke | hiñ which Is three or
fowre monthes, & thatt | you finde hiñ verye Suple both off his sholders |
& to bende his neck Easeleye, & thatt hee begiñs | to Gallope off hiñ selfe,
theñ Galope hiñ Vppoñ | large Circles, the same waye & with the same |
helpes as you did worke hiñ Vppoñ his trotte & | so to stopp hiñ & worke
hiñ oñ both handes | Thus, & when you finde hiñ verye Suple both | Iñ
his trotte, walke, Gallope, stoppinge Vppoñ both | perfectlye, & firme oñ
the hande theñ you maye | aduance hiñ butt frome the Pillers, & when |
hee Is perfecte Iñ those, with the Inwarde | Cauatzane Rayne tied to the

Pomell — Theñ | you maye proseede to añ other lessoñ which | Is to obaye
the Heele, Legg & Rayne Contrarye | butt you muste firste giue hiñ that
lessoñ | with his heade to the wall, & when hee obayes | you perfectlye Iñ
thatt then walke hiñ his | Croupe Iñ legg & rayne Contrarye, a litle large |
& when hee obayes you Iñ thatt then walke | hiñ Iñ his length his croupe
Añd legg & rayne | Contrarye. ——— |

[f.106^v cancelled] Ande when you finde his perfecte obedience | to you both to
your hande & heele, Vppoñ his | Walke then you maye make hiñ Goe le
| petit Gallope his Croupe Iñ, & doe nott press hiñ | to much — To bee
firme off the hande Is the | foundation off all thinges, for withoute thatt
| hee can doe nothinge & with thatt hee maye | doe Euerye thinge thatt
his forses will permitt | hiñ to doe, for hee neuer cañ obaye the heele | or
anye thinge Else iff hee bee nott firme | oñ the hande,— Nowe for Terra,
Terra, | The petit Gallope doth teach Itt hiñ,— tis onlye | pressinge him
oñ the oute Side bye pullinge the | Inwarde Rayne, & outwarde legg, &
nott to | goe a Circle butt a Square as I formerlye | tolde you, & with
the same helpes, & thatts a perfett Terra Terra, narowe behinde & | large
before, — To change Vppoñ Itt or demye | voltaes Is butt to bringe Iñ his
sholders a | litle more to firme his Croupe, & hee will | change perfectlye,
— For Passadoes,— | Ther the Horse muste bee narowe before & Inlargde
| behinde & therefore you muste helpe with the | outwarde Rayne, & the
outwarde legg, the Piroite | Is the same helpes, the outwarde Rayne onlye
& iff | neede bee the outwarde legg & Iñ his length, | because then hee
aughte to bee narowe before & | Inlargde behinde, *for* & the horse to bee
preste | oñ his legges withiñ the Turne, for the Piroyte | Is butt a Gallope
Iñ his length. ——— |

[uncancelled] For Coruetts. |

[cancelled] The Horse muste goe bias, Vppoñ Circles his | forr partes before,
& helpe with the Inwarde | Rayne & outwarde legg butt Gentlye & the
Toes doune to bee weake frome the knees | downwarde, butt though you
helpe with the | Inwarde Rayne your hande oñ the outeside | your knuckles

muste alwayes bee towardes | his neck,— The same for demie Ayres butt
his | Croupe nott so subiected as Iñ Coruetts.— |

[Uncanc] For all Leapes |

[cancelled] Eyther forwarder or vpon Circles the outwarde | Rayne, & Iff ther
bee ocaſion the Inwarde | legg to strayten hiñ before & to Inlarge | him
behinde, & to giue his Croupe libertye to | playe or Else hee Coude nott
Leape. ——— |

[f.107^r] I tolde you before ther was nothinge like trottinge | & stoppinge Vpon
large Circles for Itt bendes his | neck suples his Sholders, settles hiñ Vpon
the hande, | & putts hiñ vpon the Hanches & Is the Grounde | of all
Ayres,— when hee comes to Gallope, to | worke hiñ the same waye, &
remember thatt all | Gallopes muste bee straytende before, & large behinde
| & preste withiñ the Turne. |

Ther Is nothinge firmes a Horse | better & putts hiñ Vpon the Hanches,
then Posates | which Is to rayse hie before & to stayer hiñ vpon | the
hande, which prepares hiñ for all Ayres | what soeuer, & for Coruetts
moste Exselente for | you can nott Rayse hiñ to hie iff hee goe forwarder |
with Itt & then thatts a Coruett, Iff hee stayer | Iñ a place, then thatts a
Posate. ——— |

[uncancelled] Ther *th* Is nothinge |

[cancelled] Better to haue a Horse obayer the hande & the | Heele then Inwarde
Rayne, & outwarde legg | Iñ his length; — Iff you walke hiñ his heade |
to the wall, & you finde thatt hee obayer your | hande, & your heele; — &
so In all thinges | wheriñ you worke hiñ, iff you finde hee goes | by Rote
change handes still, vntill that you | finde that hee perfectlye obayer both
your | hande & your heele, & then hee Is a perfecte | Dreſte Horse. |

Itt Is feare thatt makes all thinges Iñ this worlde | & therefore lett your Horse
feare you, & thatt Is onely | the Spurrs, Corections are better then helps,
& ther | Is no Corections butt the Spurrs,— for the bulls pisle, rodd | all
mañer off whippes, & so the Chambrier are | naughte for theye doe nott

giue the helpes In the | Righte place, therefore tis the Spurrs,— besides |
ther Is no Corectioñ with the Cauatzane or the | Bridle, Itt spoyles a Horse
mouth & disordes hiñ, | So still tis the Spurrs. ——— |

For tienge the Cauatzane Rayne to the Poñell on | the Girthes Is the beste
thinge In the worlde for | Iff Itt bee to Suple his sholders, & his neck, Large
or | narowe Itt doth the worke, — Iff his croupe In Itt | doth nott onlye
Suple his Sholders, & neck, butt | keepes back his Inwarde hinder legg, which
makes | halfe his sholders goe before his Croupe & your | outwarde hinder
legg putts In his outwarde hinder | legg & so makes hiñ narowe behinde,
& large before | which Is righte for Terra Terra, so ther Is nothinge | better
for all thinges In the worlde then tienge | the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne to
the poñell | or Girthes, so Exselente Itt Is. |

[f.107^v uncanceled] For the Hande for Terra Terra, |

[cancelled] You muste for the lefte hande, putt your | hande as much as you
Cañ on the righte side | nott turninge vpp your Hande *butt pullinge* | *Itt*
douune to pull the Inwarde Rayne as much | as you Cañ to putt the Horse
on the oute side off | the Turne, thatt Is oñ his outwarde legges & | & to
looke In with his musle, & to goe lowe | your hande lowe & pulde doune,
leninge | veye much oñ the outwarde sturrope stiff In | the hañe & the
heel doune, & the Inwarde | legg weake butt to keepe the sturrope oñ your
| foote, & the toe doune & to goe a Square & nott | a Circle, katchinge the
nexte line att Euerye | halfe quarter, & looke directlye betwixte his Eares |
& sitt straye as neer the poñell as you Cañ | & your bodye to bende a litle
to goe alonge | with the Horse, — For the Righte hande | your bridle hande
oñ the lefte side oñ the | Horses neck as much as you Cañ, & turne Vpp |
the Inwarde parte off your hande as much | as you Cañ *to pull doune your*
hande to pull | the Inwarde Rayne to make hiñ goe Sidewayes | which Is
a Square & all the reste off the helpes | as before, & this Is a righte Terra,
Terra, & | the Righte helpes ——— |

An other waye for Terra, Terra, | The hande hyer nowe, & for the Righte |
Hande your Bridle hande oñ the Contrarye | side your knuckles tendinge to
his neck | & so pullinge Itt Vpp, withoute turning Vpp | the palme off your

hande butt strayte vpp to | pull the Inwarde Rayne your outwarde | legg stiff Iñ the hañe & the heele doune & | close to the Horse, your Inwarde legg your | toe putt a litle oute, lookinge to your | Inwarde sholder,— for the lefte hande | your Bridle hande oñ the Contrarye side | off his neck your knuckles poyntinge to his | neck & pullinge Itt Vpp to pull the Inwarde | Rayne your outwarde legg stiff Iñ the hañe | the heele doune & close to hiñ & to press | harde vppoñ the sturrope & the Inwarde legg | the toe oute a litle & looke to the Inwarde | Sholder, This Is a good waye butt Itt Is nott so | perfecte a Terra, Terra, as the other beinge | rather a preste Gallope. butt Itt Is better then | the other. ——— |

[f.108^r cancelled] For the Spurrs, which Is the onlye thinge | Nexte setlinge hiñ oñ the hande, the Corections I saye | are better theñ helpes, Corections Coumes affter faltes | to make hiñ take heede thatt hee Err no more, helpes | with the Spurres goes before faltes, to keepe hiñ frome | Errors, Corections, with the Spurres Is to giue Itt hiñ | Sondlye as harde as you cañ, eyther with one Spurr, | or both ackordinge to ocatioñ,— oñ helpe with the | Spurrs, Is pince, which maye serue both for Terra, | Terra, & Ayres, butt Itt Is more proper for Ayres | because Itt Rayseth his Croupe more theñ Itt putts | hiñ. forwarde, — butt for Terra Terra to offer to | Spurr hiñ & to spurr hiñ, butt the Gentleste | touch thatt Cañ bee, & this the better, & añ Exselente | helpe for Terra Terra, butt nott for Ayres, because | Itt putts hiñ forwarde, butt doth nott rayse hiñ | The Spurrs for Corections, & helpes ther Is | nothings like theñ, for Itt firmes & setles a | Horse heade, giues hiñ a good Apewye putts | hiñ vppoñ the Hanches, makes hiñ so quick & | sensible to the Heele makes hiñ feare you & | so obayes you, thatt hee will goe perfectlye | with the Calfe off the legg, hee Is so frayde off | the Spurr, butt iff ^{hee} obaye nott the Calfe off the | legg, & vnderstande nott the Spurr whatt | Remedye haue you, to bee stiff Iñ the hañ, & the | Heele doune bringes the Calfe off the legg to | the Horse, — & Is añ Exselente helpe, — Butt | the Spurrs Is the quitesence [*sic.*] off all, for the | Horse Is Iñ such feare & obedience to theñ | as Itt makes a mañ sitt att Greate Ease | onlye sittinge Still, & nott helpinge hiñ att | all onlye puttinge hiñ Iñ the waye for hee | thatt sitts quieteste & stilleste Is the beste | Horse-mañ, & Gentle helpes, & sittinge Gentlye | & Easeleye,

— for stronge helpes makes a | restie Horse more Restye astonishes a weake
| Horse, makes a stronge Horse goe to much oñ | the Back & Sholders & to
goe a Counter Time, | makes a furius Horse madd, so a Gentle | & Easeye
Seate Is for all Horses, & makes them take pleasure Vnder you, Ther Is
nothinge | for helpes butt the Calues off the legges & | the Spurrs for the
helpes with the thyghes | Is a Ridiculous thinge for the Horse cañ nott |
feelee Itt ther Is so much sadle betweene you | & hiñ, — Butt you muste
bee a greate master to | knowe howe & when to aplye the Spurrs for | Iff
you giue them oute off time, Eyther Corections or | Helpes you vtterlye
Spoyle hiñ & marr hiñ for | Euer,

[f.108^v uncanceled] For Sittinge a Leapinge | Horse, |

Your Bodye strayte towardes the poñell, | your thyes & knees Close to the
Sadle as | Iff you weare glude to Itt, your toes doune, | to bee weake frome
the knees dounwarde, | & your Bridle hande a litle longer then | ordinarye
& Euerye time you Rayse hiñ | putt your hande a litle forwarde to keepe
| hiñ Vpp, & att helpe with the outwarde | Rayne, & Euerye time you
Rayse hiñ helpe | hiñ with the Rodd behinde Iff ther bee | ocation, — &
Euerye time hee Rises I saye | att the same time hee rises putt your breaste
| oute, & your Sholders a litle Back, butt | Skarsleye to bee perseued bye
the beholders | I saye putt oute your breaste & your sholders | a litle back
as soone as hee Rises for his | Croupe Coumes quick affter, & iff you begiñ
| nott to putt oute your breaste & your | sholders back, when hee Rises Itt
will | bee to late when his Croupe Rises, for | so hee mighte Indanger to
throwe you, | & this Is the Resoñ off Itt, & wherfore | Itt Is doñ. ——— |

I had forgott to tell you, thatt when a | Horse will nott Coume downe with
| his heade to haue añ Apewye thatt | then you muste tie the Cauatzane |
Rayne to the Girthes, & the other Ende | In your hande & holde Itt lowe
to | your knee to pull hiñ downe, & your | Bridle hande vppoñ his Neck
firme | & steadye, & this Is the trewe waye to | putt hiñ vppoñ the hande
& to giue | hiñ a good Apewye,. ——— |

Le petit Gallope dun Piste giues a | Horse añ a pewye, butt nothinge giues
a | Horse an Apewye like the Cauatzane | my waye, tied to the Poñell or

the Girthes | lett hiṁ bee harde, or lighte off the Hande | because Itt Is Iñ
the Righte place for the | righte apewye for hee cañ neyther duck | doune
his heade to bee harde off the hande | nor to throwe vpp his heade to bee
lighte | off the hande so Exselente Itt Is. |

[f.109^r uncanceled] For Terra, Terra, |

[cancelled] The hande for the Righte hande, on the lefte side | off his neck,
the hande a litle hye & withiñ the | Poñell the knuckles towardes his neck,
which bringes | your otwarde [*sic.*] sholder a litle Iñ, this pulls the | Inwarde
Rayne off thatt fatioñ thatt off nesesitye | bringes Iñ his Inwarde sholder,
& Consequentye | putts back his Inwarde hinder legg, & your outwarde |
legg putts Iñ the Horses outwarde ^{hinder} legg, so off | nesesitye the Horse
muste bee narowe behinde | & large before, beinge narowe *before* behinde
hee | Is nesesitye to bee vppon the Hanches & beinge | large thus before
his Inwarde sholder off | nesesitye Muste bee before his Inwarde hinder |
legg, thus hee goes Easelye bias, & forwarde, | & Imbrases the turne the
better, & bee assurde | thatt this Is a maxiṁ thatt you Cañ neuer worke |
the Inwarde Rayne butt the Horse muste bee | wide before, butt this Is the
beste waye the | knuckles towardes his neck still, — The bodye | strayte
towardes the Poñell, lookinge Vppon his | neck or a litle withiñ Itt, the
outwarde legg | stiff vppon the sturrope wayenge vppon Itt, stiff Iñ | the
haṁ the heele doune, to make Itt longer theñ | the other legg a prettye
deale the outwarde sholder | a litle doune to waye Itt the more vppon the |
outwarde sturrope, the Inwarde legg slacker to | keepe butt the sturrope oñ
with the toe a litle | doune & oute, & sitt Easelye & doe nott press the |
Horse to much thatt Is to hasteñ hiṁ to much, | which Is to make hiṁ goe
to quick & to faste | Butt lett hiṁ take his time Easelye & Gentlye | off
hiṁ selfe to giue hiṁ selfe his owne naturall | time onlye putt hiṁ Iñ the
waye butt iff hee slackes | off his owne time theñ you muste quicken hiṁ |
For the lefte hande the bridle a litle hye to | your Bodye withiñ the poñell
oñ the righte side | off his neck the knuckles towardes his neck to | pull the
Inwarde Rayne for all the reste off the | helpes as you did oñ the righte
hande, onlye changinge hande legg & bodye & assure you selfe | this Is a
moste Exselente waye for Terra, Terra | & demye voltaes Terra Terra frome

the wall | & I beleue nott much a miss for demy voltaes vppoñ | Pasadoes,
because Itt putts his Croupe to the wall | & bringes Iñ his Inwarde Sholder,
which subiects his | Croupe, & Inlarges his sholders & so more vppon the
hanches | then the outwarde Rayne thatt narowes, & subiects | his sholders
& Inlarges his croupe ther | Is no waye butt this for Coruetts & Demy |
Ays vppoñ voltaes with the | Bridle . ——— |

[f.109^v uncanceled] For Bitts, |

[cancelled] Onlye this I muste tell you, thatt ther Is no Bit | Iff Itt bee warne
Euerye daye, butt Itt will weare | nott onlye Iñ the mouth & libertye, the
holes to wide | the Curbe [^]& hookes displaste, the branches turnde | false,
so as iff nott hurte the horse Itt will disorder | hiñ so off nesesitye Euerye
yeare you muste haue | a newe bitt for hiñ, butt made Juste as the olde |
one was when Itt was newe. This Infaleblye | Is trewe. ——— |

[uncanceled] For Sadles. |

[cancelled] Iff theye bee well made, & good Sadles att the | firste, sturope —
Leathers, Girthes, & sursingle | & also the sturropes iff theye bee off Good
Iroñ | Theye will verye well Laste you two or | three yeares,— butt as anye
thinge decayes or | Breakes you muste haue newe or mended | att leaste iff
itt cañ bee — Bitts will breake | some=times iff theye bee off Ill Iroñ &
theñ you | muste haue newe & Corecte your Sadler & | Bitt maker, with
reprehentions att Leaste, | Iff nott with the Cudgell & goinge to others | for
Itt Is a moste dangerous thinge for Bitts, | Girthes, Sursingles, & Sadles to
breake as | much as your life Is worth, & therfore bee | verye Carefull Iñ
all those thinges. ——— |

[uncanceled] Ther Is nothinge better for a Horse |

[cancelled] Thatt will nott obaye the Heele after you haue | soundlye spurde
hiñ one daye then to vse Gentlenes | with hiñ & iff you Spur hiñ theñ
to giue hiñ | butt a litle touch, or rather nott & trot hiñ vppoñ | Large
Circles duñ Piste & then make hiñ goe a | demye volta, his Croupe Iñ,
& so frome hande to hande | & this will both make hiñ obaye both the
hande | & the Heele, — walke hiñ vppoñ Circles his croupe | Iñ, & to goe

bias, vppoñ Circles & iff his Sholders | Coume nott Iñ turne your hande
to worke the | outwarde Rayne & thatt will bringe Iñ his sholders ——— |
stopinge & Raysinge off hiñ will putt hiñ vppoñ | the Hanches, & when
hee Is vppoñ the hanches | hee muste obaye the Heele, off neseteye for hee
| Cañ nott gett frome Itt — For no Horse disobayes | the Heele, butt hee Is
vppoñ the Sholders & | nott well oñ the Hande Neyther. This Is Exselente
| & Trewe beleue Itt. ——— |

[f.110^f uncanceled] To make Haire Black. |

Take one ounce off Refined Siluer, & desolue Itt In two | ounces off the
beste Aqua-fortis, — when you will vse | Itt, mixe Itt with sixe times as
much, with the Lyes | off Beane stalkes ashes — & so Combe your haire
three | morninges with Itt.— Theye saye this will dye | the haire & strike
Itt quite thorowe — when Horses are | Graye aboute the Heade then you
maye vse this. ——— |

To Dye Horses maynes & Tayles | Thatt are Whyte yallowe. |

You muste firste oynte all his neck, & Heade | with Hogges Greace, & all
his Buttockes & hinder | legges,— Ande you muste haue good thicke Gloues,
| Ande then take a Sponge att the Ende off a litle | stick, & putt Itt In to
Aqua-Fortis & wett all his | mayne & tayle with Itt butt Gentlye, nott to
much | for feare off burninge Itt off & then walke hiñ or | lett hiñ stande
Iñ the Hott Suñ 3: or 4 : howers, | or so longe Vntill you see all the hayre
turnde | yallowe this Iñ the heate off Suñer Iñ the Suñ, | will turne his
mayne & Tayle to a verye fine & | perfecte strawe Couller & the more you
walke Itt | the clerer & finer Itt will bee, because the hayre | Is died &
struck quite thorowe, — Iff you woulde | doe Itt Iñ winter then you muste
haue hott Irons | one after añ other well heated, to holde neer | the mayne
& tayle to turne Itt yallowe, butt | thatt yallowe Is a deeper Couller, ^{then}
thatt which | the Suñ Turnes & nott neer so pleasante nor so | good,— The
reson whye you anoynte the Horse | with Hoges Grease & your Gloues oñ, Is
because | Aqua-fortis Is so Damnable a Coroden Poyseñ, as | Itt will fatch
off Skiñ & Fleshe & All, wher Itt | lightes, & therefore you muste take heed
off your | Eyes, therefore Itt weare good to haue somethinge befor your face

& Spectacles off Glass before your | Eyes & the Horses Tayle tide doune
thatt hee | maye nott fiske Itt. ——— |

[f.110^v still all uncanc] The Admirable waye off Dienge maynes & Tayles | off
Horses, off Divers Coullers withoute boylinge | the hayre. ——— |

To die whyte Hayre a light watchett, a Darke | watchett, & a Blewe Color.
——— |

Imprimis; Take Chamberly & heate Itt oñ the fier, | withoute boylinge, &
putt therin some Indico powderde | to a Gallande off Chamberly, putt one
ounce off Indico | att the leaste, & Couer Itt vpp verye warme, & so lett
| Itt stande for the space off 12: howers, then putt the | hayre you desier
to die, Into the sayde Liquor which | muste bee verye warme & worke the
hayre theriñ | with your fingers & Itt will presentlye bee a light | watchett,
& Iñ halfe añ hower a Blew, Butt iff you | woulde haue the haire a Deepe
Blewe, you muste | worke the hayre 2: or 3: seuerall times & you shall |
haue your Desier. ——— |

To die haire a Greene Colour, lighter, or Darker, | as you please, firste Dye
your Hayre, ——— | & when Itt Is Dried, ouer some Coles, ——— | Putt
Itt Iñ the aboue sayde blewe liquor, & vse Itt | Iñ the same mañer Iñ Euerye
respecte as Is aboue | sayde In the Dienge off Blewe, & Itt will bee a Greene
| lighter or darker as you thinke Good,— note thatt | this Green will nott
stayne as all other Greenes will |

To Allome your Haire before you Die Itt off Certayne | Colours followinge,—
Take one Gallonde off water, | & sett Itt Vppoñ the fier, & putt ther to
one quarter | off a pounce off Allome & boyle Itt theriñ, & when | Itt hath
- boyled a litle, putt your hayre In to Itt, & | worke Itt with your fingers, Iñ
the sayde water, | as hott as you Cañ Indure your hande Iñ Itt, by | the
space off halfe añ hower, & theñ Itt will bee | fitt to take these Colowrs
followinge. ——— |

To die Hayre yellowe withoute Aqua-fortis, | Boyle Green weede Iñ the
Strongeste Lie you cañ | make off Ashes vntill you [sic.] — Is boyled | oute
off the same, — you muste putt so much Greene | weede In to the Lie,

so that th [*sic.*] Lye maye butt. — | Ande after the hayre Is Allomde as
afore—sayde | you muste worke Itt In the same Lye or yallowe | Liquor with
your fingers as hott as you Cañ Indure | Itt, Vntill Itt Cometh Vnto the
yallowe you desier | The longer you worke Itt, the Deeper yallowe | will Itt
bee. ——— |

[f.111^r still all uncanceled] To Dye Hæare a Green Couller, withoute Aqua-
fortis | Differinge frome the fore—sayde Green, es [*sic.*]. ——— |

Firste Dye your Heare Blewe, or watchett as aforesayde, | ackordinge to
the lightnes, or Darknes off the Greenes | thatt you desier to Dye & iff you
woulde haue Itt a | light Greene, then Allome firste as aforesayde | after
this worke Itt with your fingers, In the | Aforesayde Lie, wheriñ the Greene
weede was | boyled, after the same mañer, you Dye your yallowe | & Itt will
bee a Green Couller Light, or Darke as you | please, & if you worke Itt In
the Blewe Collower, | agayne Itt will bee a Darke Greene,. ——— |

To Dye a Tawny Collower. ——— |

The Stronger the Better & sett Itt | keepe Itt hott oñ the fier a good | nott
boyle Itt theñ putt Itt In you Hayre, which | as a fore—sayde, & worke Itt
In the same | Liquor with your fingers the space off halfe añ hower, or as
longe as you Cañ Conuenientlye, the | longer the better, theñ washe the
Heare cleane In | fayre water, & Itt will bee off a Tawny— Colower, | note
that this Is a verye fure [*sic.*] Collower. |

To Dye Heare off a Redd Collower. |

Take a Pounce off Brassill att the leaste, & Boyle | Itt with a Gallonde off
water, & theñ putt Itt In to | a Vessell & couer Itt Vpp verye warme, & so
lett Itt | worke the space off 12: howers, then heate Itt | agaiñ & putt In your
heare, which muste firste bee | Died Tawnye, with madder as afore—sayde,
& | worke Itt with your fingers as longe as you cañ | convenientlye, the
longer, the Deeper Redd will | Itt bee, Espetialye iff you worke Itt seuerall
times. |

To Dye Heare, off a light Blushe Collower. |

Firste worke you Heare In Allome water, as | afore-sayde theñ worke Itt In
the sayde Brasill | water, & Itt will bee a lighte Blushe Collower. |

To Dye Orenge Tawnye. |

Firste dye your Heare yallowe with Aqua-Fortis or | otherwise, & theñ
worke Itt In the Brasill water, | vntill Itt Coumeth to a perfecte orange
Tawneye. |

[f.111^v] To Dye a darke Blewe more In vse theñ | before Is Expresde. ——— |

[Take fowre ounces off Nuttgalls, & beare theñ | to powder, & boyle Itt
well In a Gallonde off | Water, & while Itt Is Hott, putt your Haire | Into
Itt, & worke Itt there in as longe as you | can conuenientlye, & take Itt oute
& washe Itt | In water theñ take 4: ounces off Green Copperes, | & putt Itt
In a Gallande off water, & putt therin | the Heare & worke Itt therin, as
longe as | Conuenientlye you Cañ, then washe Itt In | fayre water. ——— |

To Turne anye Collour thatt Is | Dyde to a yallowe. ——— |

This muste bee doñ with Aqua-fortis | after the same mañer, you Dye
Heare | yallowe, by weatinge so much off the Heare | as you woulde haue
died yallowe, & drye | Itt ouer a pañ off Coler, Note thatt this will | Alter
the Collower off anye Collowrde Heare | thatt Is Naturall though Black.
——— |

The fewe rules, & seuerall Groundes off this | writt, beinge putt Into
practise, will worke | Such Experience In you, thatt you maye | finde oute,
varietye off Coullers more theñ I | haue doñ, As for Black though I made
leaste | doubte off Itt, I finde Itt moste dificulte | Therefore I omitt Itt. |

The Paper I had was so torne, & olde as Itt | was Imposible for mee to
write Itt perfectlye | therefore a Skillfull Dier muste bee aduised | withall for
whatt Is wantinge yett ther Is | Enough to satisfye anye bodye though hee
weare | neuer so Curius. I baughte the receytes off a | fellowe longe Agoe
& Gaue Itt my farier, & hee | kepte Itt so Ill as makes this so Imperfecte |
Nowe,— Butt hee did Dye one off my Horses | mayne & Tayle off all seuerall
Collowers verye | fineleye, butt as I rember [*sic.*] theye did nott laste | verye

longe, Itt semes the hayre was nott died | Thorowe for one Cañ nott boyle
a Horse mayne | & Tayle,— butt Aqua-Fortis dies Itt quite | thorowe, butt
Itt semes onlye a yallowe butt | Iff other Coullers woulde Suffer Aqua-Fortis
| Itt woulde doe the like, Butt, Itt semes by this |

[f.112^r] mañ thatt Itt makes all Coullers yallowe, & then thatt | Cañ nott bee,—
I haue beeñ this 40: yeares to gett | Resites for dienge Horses maynes, &
Tayles off | all Collowres, because theye saye Iñ Turkeye theye | doe so,—
butt I beleue Itt Is butt as this Is & no | otherwise,— Itt Is a verye fine
thinge when | a kinge makes his Entreye In to Greate Cities | or Shewes
hiñ selfe to his People a Horse-back | To *horse* haue his Horse mayne &
Tayle Dyed | off seuerall Coullers, which Amases all the | People Exsepte
Diers, thinkinge ther Is some | Hier misterye Iñ Itt. ——— |

[cancelled] Obseruations to the purpose for Ridinge | & workinge off Horses, |

To tie the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne to the Poñell harde shorte no doubtte
off Itt, butt Itt putts back his | Inwarde ^{hinder} *outwarde* legg, & your
outwarde legg putts Iñ his outwarde hinder legg which makes hiñ | narowe
behinde, & large before Iff you pull the | Inwarde rayne off the bridle the
raynes beinge | seperated Iñ both handes *on* your hande for the | Inwarde
Rayne to bee oñ the oute side off his neck, | your knuckles bendinge towardes
his neck oñ | which hande soeuer you goe off, for this putts his | fore partes
bias or oblike which makes his Inwarde | fore legg to leade because Itt Is
much longer then | the other & In larges hiñ before & narowes hiñ behinde,
| so that halfe his sholders goes alwayes before his | Inwarde hinder legg,
which makes hiñ goe righte | & Easeye your outwarde sholder muste alwayes
| Coume Iñ a litle — & iff hee turnes vpp his musle | Itt putts hiñ oñ the
oute side off the turne which putts hiñ | also Vppoñ the Hanches,— butt iff
you putt his sholders or | fore partes to much oñ the contrarye hande thatt
Is false | because then his croupe Goes before ^{his fore} partes therefore thatt
| you muste shuñ.— when you Ride with the Bridle | alone, then you muste
pull the Inwarde Rayne to the | turne alwayes as for the righte hande your
hande oñ the | the [*sic.*] Contrarye side, your knuckles alwayes towardes his
neck, & so | oñ the lefte hande to pull the Inwarde Rayne, your hande oñ

the | Contrarye side off his neck the knuckles towards his neck. & this |
workes the same effectes as iff the Raynes weare seperated & | Is the righte
waye for Terre a Terra, & thus beinge narrowe behinde | & large before his
hinder legges are withiñ the lines off his fore | legges, & withiñ the lines off
Nature which makes hiñ oñ the | Hanches ^x this for demye voltaes Terre a
Terre to, and so for Coruetts & |

{ x | to Imbrace | the turne | the better | }

Demye Ayres.— remember thatt the Inwarde Rayne putts the Horse | on
his legges oñ the oute side off the Turne, & the outwarde Rayne | putts the
Horse oñ the Inside off the turne, that Is eyther to leane | off his legges oñ
the Inside, or oñ the oute side off the Turne. añ other | Waye for Terre
a terre, Is to make hiñ goe a Square, onlye makinge off a | quarter off a
turne att Euerye corner to take the other line & so att Euerye | corner, his
croupe Iñ the helps your outwarde legg, & Inwarde Rayne the | Inwarde
Rayne *pulde doune belowe his neck* his Croupe Is more Iñ this waye | then
the other butt hee doth nott goe so Easeleye because the firste Is Bias, &
| this Is sideways butt theye are both good,— the outwarde Rayne Is for
| Gallopinge, demye voltaes vppoñ Pasadoes the Piroyte & for all leapes
| eyther forwarde or vppon Circles, because the horse | aughte vppoñ all
these to bee narrowe before | & large behinde. ——— |

[f.112^v uncanceled] Iff a Horse hath been Ill fierde, so that the | Heare doth nott
Couer the Burninge take Lampe | Black, which Is the black thatt stickes
oñ the | topp off the Lampe, with a litle Hogges Greace | or anye Greace,
& laye Itt oñ the bare place & | Itt will neuer bee seen, — & as Itt goes
off you muste | renewe Itt,— butt I woulde neuer doe Itt butt agaynste |
some greate Persons are to see the Horse Goe. ——— |

[cancelled] For A Horse thatt Is Impatiente | & furius. ——— |

Walkinge will doe hiñ litle good, butt ther | Is nothinge better to temper
hiñ Iñ the worlde, | Then Trottinge off hiñ & Galopinge off hiñ a | Gentle
litle Galope Easeleye withoute pressinge | off hiñ att All, & thatt will
absolutlye Cuer hiñ | off his fouge, — All Ayres makes hiñ butt more

| Impatiente, & madd,— well temperde Horses, | thatt are patiente are
fitteste for Ayres,. ——— | & Impattaiente Horses to Goe oñ the Grounde
& | Terre a Terre, Butt Impatiente Horses neuer goe | well Iñ Pasadoes. for
those thatt goe well Iñ | Pasadoes muste haue a greate, dell off Temper,
| & Indeed no furius Horse Cañ goe sertenlye well | anye waye, for their
Impatiencye spoyles their | memorye & so desier to haue doñ their worke |
as theye will nott staye for your will, to obaye | you butt theye woulde haue
theire owne will | thatt you shoulde obaye theñ, & therefore you | muste
varye their lessons continuelye thatt | theye maye attende your hande &
heele & nott to | Goe by Coustome & by Rote, for then their memorye |
will bee to good knowinge so well one lessoñ | after añ other as you your
selfe, which makes | theñ as Impatiente as Impatiencye makes | theñ
wante memorye. Therefore change & | varietye off Lessons alwayes which
will make | theñ attende both the hande & the heele & | nothings like Itt
— butt Iñ all lessons whatt | Soeuer you worke a Horse you muste alwayes
| worke hiñ to bee withiñ the hande & the | Heele, & vppoñ the hanches,
for thatt Is the | Ende off all our Labor & no Horse Cañ bee a | Readye
Horse thatt doth nott obaye those three | ——— |

[f.113^f uncanceled] For to putt a Horse Vppoñ the Hanches |

[cancelled] A shorte trot putt hiñ vppoñ the Hanches, stoppinge putts |
hiñ vppoñ the hanches, Goinge back putt hiñ Vppoñ the |— hanches,
moderatlye raysinge off hiñ putt hiñ vppoñ the | Hanches,— his croupe
Iñ putt hiñ vppoñ the hanches, the | Inwarde Rayne his musle Vpp putt
hiñ Vppoñ the Hanches | because Itt putt hiñ oñ the oute side off the
Turne, Le petit | Gallope his Croupe Iñ with the Inwarde Rayne putt hiñ |
Vppoñ the 4hanches, his croupe Iñ putt hiñ vppon the hanches | because
hee Is preste more Iñ the narrower Circle then Iñ | the Large Circle,—
Stoppinge downe a Hill putt hiñ | Vppoñ the Hanches, so coruettinge
whē hee Is turnde Iñ | the stable because Itt Is hyer behinde theñ before
putt hiñ | vppoñ the Hanches, so his heade to the wall putt hiñ |—
Vppoñ the Hanches, so Iñ the corner wher to walls meet | putt hiñ vppoñ
the Hanches so Iñ his length his Croupe | Iñ putt hiñ vppoñ the Hanches,
so side ways his | heade to three walls or fowre walls vppoñ a walke | putt

hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches, so his heade to three | walls terra a terre putts hiṁ
 Vppoñ the Hanches | So his hinder legges to bee withiñ the lines off his |
 Fore legges putts hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches, — so a lighte | hande putts hiṁ
 vppoñ the Hanches, for hauinge | nothings to reste oñ befor makes ^{him}
 truste to his | hinder partes & reste oñ theṁ which Is oñ the Hanches, |
 A shorte trot duñ piste, to putt his Inwarde hinder | legg to his outwarde
 hinder legg, putts hiṁ verye | much oñ the Hanches, — My waye att the
 Single | Piller tied shorte with the Cauatzane s Putte hiṁ | verye much oñ
 the hanches,— his heade to bee rather | lowe theñ hye putts hiṁ oñ the
 Hanches to Goe | oblike putts hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches the Cawkins | on
 both sides the Hinder Shooes putts hiṁ vppoñ | the Hanches, because hee
 Is hyer behinde theñ before | as iff hee wente downe a Hill & thatt putts
 hiṁ | Vppon the Hanches, — All our Arte Is butt to putt a | Horse vppoñ
 the Hanches, for theñ hee muste obaye | the Heele & bee lighte oñ the
 Hande, & doe anye | thinge thatt his forses will permitt hiṁ to doe | ther
 Is greate reson to putt a Horse Vppoñ the Hanches | for Itt Is the Ende off
 all our worke Iñ the manege | for his Hanches hath nothings to beare butt
 his | Tayle & his sholders hath his heade & his Neck, so | to Counterpoyse
 thatt wayghte wee putt hiṁ Vppoñ the | Hanches, & affter settlinge hiṁ oñ
 the Hande Itt | Is our All. — All thatt putts a Horse vppoñ the Hanches
 | Is before & nott behinde, before thatt Is the Cauatzane, & | the bridle,
 to staye hiṁ oñ the hande whilste your legges ' putts hiṁ forwarde, &
 thatt putts hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches | his heade louse putts hiṁ vppoñ the
 Hanches as iff hee wente | downe a hill, because hee Is lower before theñ
 behinde. | your knuckles towards his neck the bridle oñ the contrarye side
 putts hiṁ | Vpon the hanches because Itt putts his Inwarde hinder legg
 oute & narowes | him behinde, so his heade to the wall vppon a walke or
 his croupe Iñ Vpon | Circles large or Iñ his length his croupe Iñ or terre
 a terre | his halfe sholder before his Inwarde hinde legg | putts hiṁ vppoñ
 the hanches so all is his inwarde legg to bee kepte back |

[f.113^v uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[canceled] When the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne Is tied to the | poñell as Strayte
 as can bee, iff theñ you putt his heade | frome the Turne, theñ his croupe

muste goe before his | heade, which Is Horiblye false, & Constraynde & |
 makes Horses alwayes playe the Jades, because | Itt Is so greate a forse, &
 Constraynde & so much | agaynste Nature, which Is false to Extremetye, |
 for all arte Is butt to followe nature, & to sett | her In order, — Therefore
 lett the Inwarde Cauatzane | Rayne bee tied neuer so strayte, Iff you pull
 the | Inwarde Rayne off the Bridle your hande oñ the | Contrarye Side
 off his neck, the Raynes seperated | Iñ both your handes the knuckles of
 thatt hande | thatt you alwayes pull the Inwarde Rayne to | bee towards
 his neck, the Horse shall alwayes | goe right, & trewe, & Easeye for Itt Is
 ackordinge | to nature, halfe his sholder goinge before his | Inwarde hinder
 legg, which keepes hiñ strayte, | his hinder legges beinge withiñ the lines
 off | his fore legges which Is withiñ the lines off | Nature, & thus hee Is
 vverye much vppoñ the hanches, | & Iff his sholders doe nott Coume Iñ
 Enough you | maye helpe with your outwarde Rayne which | Is Iñ your
 other hande, butt still keepe the Inwarde | Rayne stiff as I tolde you your
 outwarde sholder | Couminge Iñ, pressinge hiñ with your outwarde | legg,
 your Inwarde legg the toe a litle oute | & thus the Horse Goes oblike, &
 Bias, & vverye | Easeye, & vverye lowe vppoñ the Hanches,— | & with thatt
 forse, & furye as iff hee did | Eate the Grounde — & ther Is no waye like |
 this; — howe you shoulde holde the Bridle * |

{* | onlye In | your | lefte hande |—

& worke the Inwarde Rayne I tolde you before, | the 3: Chapters before
 This waye Is for Coruetts | to, & demye Ayres, vppoñ Voltaes strayte you
 | muste nott bende your knuckles so much, | Iff you cañ practise this as Itt
 Is sett doune | which Is vverye Easeye, theñ ther Is no Horse | butt will goe
 Rareleye with you, ——— |

[f.114^r uncanceled] For Coruetts, vpon Voltaes |

[cancelled] Your Bridle hande still oñ the oute side off his neck, | to pull the
 Inwarde rayne your knuckles alwayes | towards his neck, to make hiñ
 oblike, & to goe bias | thatt Is his Iñwarde sholder before his Inwarde |
 hinder legg, which makes hiñ to goe vprighte & | strayte as a horse shoulde
 goe, & helpe hiñ Euerye | time off his Cadance firmelye with your hande, |

to staye hiṁ with your hande Iñ the Ayre, & | quick frome the Grounde, & your outwarde legg | a litle close to hiṁ with the toes doune, to bee | weake frome the knees dounwarde, & stiffer | frome the knees vpwarde yett nott so stiff frome | the waste vpwarde, butt thatt you shoulde bende | a litle to hiṁ as hee rises, alwayes goinge to thatt | which Coumes to you, which Is Contrarye to the | Horse, for when the Horse rises before you muste | bende a litle to hiṁ & when the Horse rises | behinde you muste putt your Bodye back to hiṁ | or Else you Coulede nott Sitt, butt this motion muste | bee so Curiously doñ, & so Insensible to the standers | bye as Itt muste nott bee perceued,— I had forgott | to tell you thatt the Inwarde toe to the Turne | shoulde bee a litle oute, & nott so neere the Horse as | the outwarde legg,— & remember thatt you muste | neuer helpe the Horse with the Calues off your | legges Euerye time off the olde fatioñ which theye | vse still Iñ Italey Calde Auto dell Gambo, nor | to putt your legg, back to the flanke as theye vse | when they change a Horse Vppoñ his Gallope Itt | Is more refined by my methode for you muste | neuer vse other helps then I haue tolde you, | for hee thatt fitts the quieteste a Horse—back | Is the beste Horse Mañ, you muste looke a litle | Iñ to the Turne, your bodye a litle oblike which | holdinge your hande as I haue tolde you will | make Itt, your outwarde sholder couñinge a | litle Iñ, These are perfecte helps for Coruetts | Vppoñ Voltaes, & no other Is good. ——— |

For a Demye Ayre |

The same helps as for Coruetts Iñ Euerye | thinge, onlye the time to bee a litle longer | because the Horse goes Hier. - ——— |

[f.114^v uncanceled] For Leapinge Horses. |

[cancelled] Nott helpe with the legges att all your toes | doune to bee weake frome the knees doun== | warde, or Else hee woulde bolte, or leape | to forwarde as iff hee leapte ouer a hedge, | & Euerye time the Horse leapes As soone | as hee rises before putt your bodye a litle | back, for Else Itt will bee to late when hee | Rises behinde your breaste oute, — & your | knees & thighes so close & firme to the sadle, | as iff theye weare glude or nayled to Itt, | Nowe for your hande Itt Is cleer otherwise | then for Terre a Terre

Coruetts or Demy Ayres, | for Iñ all those you putt your hande oñ the |
 oute side off his neck to pull the Inwarde | Rayne, to Inlarge hiñ before, &
 make hiñ | narowe behinde,— Ande Iñ all Leapes | you muste \wedge^{putt} your
 hande a litle on the | Inside off the Turne, to pull the outwarde | Rayne
 to strayteñ hiñ before & giue hiñ | Libertye behinde or Else hee Coulede
 nott | Leape, this nott onlye Vppoñ Turnes, butt | strayte forwarde to butt
 theñ your | hande a litle less oñ the Inside & marke | one thinge thatt all
 Ayres muste bee | quick frome the Grounde & to staye hiñ | vppoñ the
 Hande as iff hee did hange | Iñ the Ayre a whyle,— & therefore you | muste
 helpe hiñ with a firme hande, | & staye hiñ as longe as posiblye you | Cañ
 Iñ the Ayre, your bridle hande nott | to shorte $\wedge^{\&}$ putt your hande a litle
 forwarde | Euerye Time, Ande thus the Horse will | goe moste admirablye
 with you Iff you | helpe \wedge^{him} behind with your Rodd, *he* helpe | hiñ att
 the same time hee Rises, eyther | with one stroke or more, In Juste time
 | the Rodd turned Vnder your hande | Is the shureste Helpe, though nott
 the | Grasefuleste. ——— |

f.115^r cancelled] The Curiosoteye off the Bridel or Bitt, & | whatt putts hiñ
 moste off the Hanches; ——— |

Firste you muste knowe, thatt a Horses fore legges, | are made like our
 legges, & a Horses hinder legges | are made like our Armes, then Itt Is his
 hinder | legges, thatt muste bee putt vppoñ the hanches, & to | bowe Iñ
 the Cambrills, — Theñ thus whatt soeuer | pulls doune the Horse heade
 beinge preste makes | hiñ bowe Iñ the Cambrills, & whatt soeuer putts
 | Vpp a Horse heade makes hiñ stiff Iñ the Cambrills | theñ wee muste
 pull doune a Horse heade, with | the Cauatzane, or the Bitt or both, —
 butt wee will | take off the Bitt firste,— then your branches muste | bee
 stronge which pulls doune his heade, the | Curbe Iñ the righte place,— butt
 iff you keepe your | hande lowe vppoñ his neck, theñ Itt slackes the Curbe
 & workes moste off the barrs, butt nott | much off eyther, & thatt Is beste
 firste to setle a | Horse vppoñ the hande butt iff you holde your | hande
 hier, & pull Vpp the bridle theñ you | pull doune the Horses heade moste
 because theñ | you worke more vppoñ the Curbe theñ vppoñ | the barrs, &
 therefore you pull doune his heade | for the Curbe pulls doune his heade, the

shorter | the Curbe Is the stronger the branches are & therefore | both pulls
dounne his heade moste & thatt which | pulls dounne his heade moste putts
hiṁ moste | off the Hanches, for to Ease hiṁ selfe off the Curbe | hee goes
oñ the Hanches, thatt Itt mighte bee | slacker nott to hurte hiṁ for hee
findinge his | owne Ease makes hiṁ goe oñ the Hanches. ——— | This Is
moste trewe,— Butt withall you muste | Consider, that ther Is a *difference*
a mediocretye | betwixte staringe, & starke blinde, to haue | the Curbe so
slack as the bitt Is off no vse or forse, | or, Else the Curbe so straye as
Itt gaules *off* | both the place off the Curbe & his barrs & so stiff | as the
cheekes Cañ neuer Coume In to his trewe restinge | place beinge thruste so
much forwarde so neyther | off those Extreames Cañ the horse goe att all
withall | so virtewe Consistes Iñ the midle betweē those | two vses butt I
woulde rather haue you leane to | the Indiferente shorte Curbe & stronge
branches | for thre resons I haue formerlye tolde you, because | Itt pulls
dounne his heade & therefore putts hiṁ | Vppoñ the Hanches, & the more to
finde his Ease | Iñ the Curbe by goinge on the Hanches. |

[f.115^v cancelled] What Is beste for Coruetts & what Is | beste for Terre a Terra
[*sic.*], with the bridle hande, |

Itt is trewe thatt which pulls downe his heade | moste putts hiṁ moste off
the Hanches therefore | the branches stronge, & the Curbe a litle streyte
| so thatt ^{itt} lies Iñ his dewe place, butt I tolde you | before, thatt the
holdinge off your bridle hande | hye or lowe workes seuerall Effectes hye or
lowe, | for hye workes vppoñ the Curbe, & lowe workes | vppoñ the barrs.—
hye workinge vppoñ the Curbe, | Is fitt for all Ayres, for thatt putts hiṁ
vppoñ | the hanches for Itt pulls hiṁ downe, butt theñ | you muste rayse
hiṁ hye & holde hiṁ ther as | longe as you Cañ, this Is a longe time &
therefore | Itt Is proper for all Ayres, & the rule Is trewe | thus,— Butt nowe
for Terre a Terre, thatt Is an | other busines, for ther hee Is nott to bee
raysed | hye, butt to goe lowe & preste & quicker, though | hee goe a slowe
time, for Terre a Terre, & therefore | for thatt Ayre you muste haue your
hande | lowe to press hiṁ oñ the barrs more theñ off | the Curbe thatt the
Curbe maye bee Eased to | be slacker, — heer Is the difference,— Nowe I
will | teach you howe you shoulde holde your bridle | hande for Coruetts or

Demye Ayres, your bridle | hande oñ the oute Side off his neck, a litle hier
 | then the poñell, your knuckles towardes his neck, | & helpe hiñ with the
 bridle Euerye time off | his Cadance somewhat harde & holde hiñ as longe |
 as you Cañ Iñ the Ayre *your outwarde legg to | bee a litle Close to hiñ, the*
Inwarde legge a litle | further off, butt the toes off both legges doune | *his*
Croupe will nott bee putt Iñ to much, Iff your | knuckles bee still towardes
his neck for thatt | keepes hiñ oblike & bias his Inwarde Sholder | allwayes
 before his Inwarde hinder legg, | which Is righte as Itt shoulde bee & thus
 Itt | workes Vppoñ the Curbe pulls hiñ doune, & so | putts hiñ vppoñ the
 Hanches, which Is fitt & | proper for all Ayres, — Butt nowe for Terre a |
 Terre thatt muste Goe lowe & preste ther you | muste haue your hande lowe
 to worke oñ | the barrs, more theñ off the Curbe, to giue hiñ | libertye to
 goe forwarde so lowe as your bridle | hande to bee as lowe as his neck butt
 still oñ | the contrarye side off his neck, which you goe | off, & the knuckles
 still towardes his neck | to make hiñ oblike & bias, to make his Inwarde |
 sholder & thatt Inwarde fore legge alwayes |

[f.116^r cancelled] Before his Inwarde hinder legg, & so hee Goes Vnconstrainde
 | & righte as hee shoulde goe,— & thus hee hath Ease | off his mouth,
 beinge verye litle preste oñ the Curbe, | & nott much oñ the barrs, butt
 onlye to bee firme | oñ the hande for In Terre a Terre you shoulde butt |
 Eueñ feele the bitt, & no more, butt a litle to staye | hiñ, which no waye
 doth like your hande lowe | & oñ the Contrarye side to the Turne alwayes,
 | your knuckles towardes his neck, to make hiñ | oblike & bias, for the
 resons I tolde you before, | & nowe you see playnlye, the differente wayes
 off | helpinge with the hande Iñ Coruetts, & Iñ Terre | a Terre, the one
 hye Iñ Coruetts, & lowe Iñ Terre | a Terre, & the resons whye & wherfore
 Itt muste | bee so, which Is so much truth, as nothinge | Can bee more.
 ——— |

For the Cauatzane Is añ other busines, for | thatt Is onlye on the Horses
 nose, & nott off his | barrs, & besides hath no Curbe, & therefore thatt Is
 | Contrarye to the workinge off the bitt, for when | you putt your hande
 lowe with the bitt thatt | giues him Ease & doth nott pull doune his heade,
 | butt when you holde the Cauatzane Rayne | lowe Itt doth pull doune his

heade, — & when | you holde your hande a litle hier, & helpe | hiṁ harde
 with the bitt you doe pull downe | his heade, butt when you doe pull vpp
 the | Cauatzane Rayne then you pull vpp the Horses | heade,— so you see
 greate difference In the workinge | with the Cauatzane, & workinge with
 the | bitt, for Itt Is juste Contrarye the one to the | other, — when a Horse
 coumes Iñ with his sholders | to much Iñ Terre a Terra ther Is no waye
 better then your | hande Lowe, for then hee cañ nott coume Iñ with his |
 shoulders so much, your outwarde legg close to hiṁ, & doe | nott hasteñ
 hiṁ to much, & your hande a litle, butt | veye litle forwarde Euerye time,
 the knuckles oñ | which hande so euer hee goes alwayes towards his | neck,
 & though thatt putts Iñ his Inwarde sholder | & makes hiṁ oblike yett Itt
 doth nott pull Iñ his | outwarde sholder, for Itt Is that sholder makes | hiṁ
 to Coume In to much with his fore partes | & nott his Inwarde sholder, for
 that makes hiṁ | oblike to goe bias, which Is righte as Itt shoulde | bee, you
 can nott press his Croupe to much Iff hee | bee oblike, for iff his Iñwarde
 sholder bee before | his Inwarde hinder legg his croupe cañ nott bee | putt
 In to much. which your knuckles towards | his neck will alwayes make hiṁ
 oblike & goe | right as hee shoulde doe. ——— |

[f.116^v uncanceled] For Terre a Terra, |

[cancelled] The pullinge the Inwarde Rayne the knuckles | towards his neck,
 on which hande soeuer hee | goes, your hande to bee oñ the oute side off
 his neck | & lowe, your outwarde legg close to hiṁ & harder | oñ thatt
 sturrope then off the other, your outwarde | sholder to Coume a litle Iñ, &
 to looke towards | your Inwarde sholder, & to sitt as much to the | poñell
 as you Cañ your legges strayte downe, | your outwarde legg stiff Iñ the hañ
 to bringe | the Calfe off thatt legg to hiṁ, — The resoñ off | pullinge the
 Inwarde Rayne thus Is to bringe | Iñ his Inwarde sholder, & to putt back
 his | Inwarde hinder legg, thatt his Inwarde | sholder maye goe before his
 Inwarde hinder | legg, & your outwarde legg putts his outwarde | hinder
 legg to his Inwarde hinder legges Is | within the lines off his fore legges
 which | putts hiṁ vppoñ the hanches, & beinge oblike | & goinge bias you
 Cañ nott putt Iñ his Croupe | to much, & thus the Horses Inwarde legges |
 leades, & his other legges followes which | Is moste Exactlye righte, & thus

you goe | alonge with the Horse — as the Horse Is parte | off the Circle
 hee goes In, so are you parte off the | Circle off the Horse, & thus hee goes
 like a bente | bowe his Inwarde sholder firste & before his | Inwarde hinder
 legg which Is righte & you | muste nott hasteñ hiñ to much vnless hee |
 requier Itt, butt to goe his owne time, & Indeed | all Horses goes beste
 when they goe withiñ | their strength, & winde which pressinge them |
 to much putts them off off both which makes | them breake their time, &
 flutter Extreame lye | rather then goe righte — These obseruations | Iff you
 can putt them In practise which Is | moste Easeye to mee because Itt Is
 naturall, | for all the reste Is agaynste nature or false, | So iff you Can Ride
 thus the Horse will goe | moste perfectlye Terre a Terre & moste | Exactlye
 Trewe as iff hee weare In a | Frame & with greate pleasure, & delighte |
 because Itt Is so Easeye for hiñ to doe,— | beinge no wrangling, or force
 to hiñ | att all, Therefore obserue Itt well, & you | will reape the benefitt off
 greate contentmente | to you In Itt, beinge the absolute truth & all other
 wayes moste eronius, Ignorante, | foolishe, & false,— I doe nott thinke | Itt
 butt I knowe Itt to bee so, hauinge Considerde | Itt & studied Itt to the
 purpose. ——— |

[f.117^r uncanceled] Obseruations |

[Canceled] Iff a Horse will nott Trott righte, butt wrangle In his goinge |
 between a false trott, & a false Gallope, then tie the Inwarde | Rayne
 off the Cauatzane verye strayte to the poñell, & putt | oute his Croupe
 verye much, vppoñ large Circles, & so | afterwardes vppoñ narowe Circle,
 & iff hee still doth | Jumble & falseñ his legges, giue hiñ the Spurr withiñ
 | the Turne or both Spurrs Soundlye, & good stoppes & this | Infaliblye
 will make hiñ Trott righte, — & goe Juste vppoñ | his trott as hee shoulde
 doe. ——— |

when you Gallope & Change a Horse Euerye change | muste bee like a demye
 Volta Vppoñ Pasadoes, thatt Is | you muste helpe with the outwarde Rayne
 to make | hiñ narowe before & large behinde, to strayteñ his | fore partes,
 & to giue libertie to his Croupe thatt Is you | muste turne your hande a
 litle oñ the Inside off his | neck, oñ which hande soeuer you goe, & your

legg oñ the | oute side off the Turne, & so In serpeiante for a Gallope |
 aughte alwayes to bee narowe before, & large behinde | & the Changinge
 thus with the outwarde Rayne continues | the same motioñ which makes
 no Jumblinge alteration, | so itt Is fitt for all changes Vppoñ a Gallope for
 demye | voltaes, vppoñ Pasadoes, so for the Piroyte, & all | Leapes, still the
 outwarde Rayne, because hee aughte | Iñ all these to bee narowe before, &
 large behinde to | giue more Libertie to his Croupe, — Butt for Terre a |
 Terre, demye voltaes, vppoñ Terre a Terre, Coruetts & | Demye Ayres, Itt Is
 the Inwarde Rayne, & outwarde | legg, to narowe hiñ behinde, & to Inlarge
 hiñ before | for the manye manye Resons I haue giueñ you hertofore, | Butt
 note one thinge as you Gallope large helpe | with the Inwarde Rayne, &
 Inwarde legg, which | Rayne & legg ^{of a side} narowes hiñ as much before,
 as the | outwarde Rayne & keepes ^{him} beste oute to goe Juste his | Circle
 butt when you coume to change hiñ then | these helps Cañ nott bee for
 his Croupe would bee | loste therfore vppoñ Euerye change oñ nesetye |
 you muste helpe with the outwarde Rayne, & | outwarde legg, for legg &
 Rayne off a Side, Is | Imposible to make hiñ Change Juste because his |
 Croupe so. woulde bee totalye loste. ——— |

Observations ——— |

I tolde you thatt the hande Hye pulde doune the Horse because | Itt
 wroughte vppoñ the Curbe & therfore was proper for Ayres | & thatt the
 hande lowe did Ease the Curbe & wraughte more | vppoñ the barrs &
 therfore proper for Terre a Terre when you | helpe vppoñ the Curbe, you
 muste pull the bridle harde, to pull doune | his heade thatt Itt maye worke
 more vppoñ the Curbe & when you | worke more vppoñ the Barrs your
 hande nott onlye lowe, butt slacker | thatt the Curbe maye yett bee more
 Eased, & to helpe oñ the Barrs, | butt iff hee goe to hye still for Terre a
 Terre, then Curbe hiñ slacker | bye a linke then Iñ Coruetts, or all Ayres
 so the | Curbe lie Iñ his righte place. |

[f.117^v uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] More to Explayne the puttinge your selfe & the Horse | oblike Is
 thus, when you ^{are} strayte In the Sadle, your | cleftte behinde partes the

midle off the sadle, | well then you & the Horse are Vprighte & Eueñ | together, when you begiñ to make hiñ goe vppoñ | Voltaes Terre a Terre as for the Righte hande then | your bridle hande oñ the oute side off his neck | which Is the lefte side, your knuckles towardes | his neck your outwarde sholder Couminge Iñ a litle, | thatt putts you oblike, makes you leane oñ the | outwarde sturrope remoues your nock behinde oñ | the lefte side *on* a litle frome the midle off the | sadle your buttons a litle on the righte side off | the Poñell, as iff itt weare within the Horses | neck & this doth nott onlye make you oblike, | butt also the Horse to which narowes hiñ | behinde & Inlarges hiñ before — for the lefte | hande your nock a litle oñ the righte side off the | midle off the sadle which putts you harde | vppoñ the righte sturrope your outwarde sholder | Couminge a litle Iñ your Buttons oñ the lefte | side off the poñell, as iff your buttons weare oñ | the Inside off the Horses neck, your Bridle hande | on the oute side off his neck which Is the righte | Side, your knuckles towardes his neck & *this* | your outwarde legg close to hiñ lookinge a | litle towardes your Inwarde sholder, & this | doth nott onlye make you oblike butt the Horse | also, & ^{iu} Euerye thinge as hee aughte to bee Iñ all | those thinges as I haue writt formerlye to you, | Ande Iñ Coruetts & demye Ayres the same | helpes, onlye to helpe harder with the hande | & staye ^{vp} Iñ the Ayre as longe as you Cañ — | the outwarde sholder muste not coume Iñ Itt is rather putt forwarde | & the Inwarde Sholder putt back, which Is oblike. ——— |

Butt you muste note thatt for Coruetts & demye | Ayres when your Bodye Is putt oblike thus, thatt | your outwarde legg mustte [*sic.*] nott bee to close for manye | Horses will nott Indure Itt, for itt will make them | breake their time, & goe to faste & Impatientlye | & manye times when they feele the legg so close | to them they thinke they shoulde goe Terre a Terre, | & So Extreamlye disorder them, Therefore when | you haue putt your selfe & the Horse oblike as | I haue formerlye tolde you, that posture off | obliknes, putts you harder oñ the outwarde | Sturrope, then oñ the Inwarde, & thatt Is helpe |

[f.118^f] Enough Iñ Coruetts, & the legges nott att all to touch | hiñ & sitt as quietlye, & as Easeleye off hiñ as you | Cañ, iff hee putt his croupe to much

oute then your | outwarde legg a litle to hiṁ, — iff hee putt his Croupe | to much Iñ, theñ your Inwarde legg a litle to hiṁ | Otherwise doe nott helpe hiṁ with your legges att | all, & your toes doune, to bee as weake frome the | knees dounwarde as you Cañ & helpe hiṁ Euerye | time off his Cadance with your Bridle hande pretye | harde butt Iñ good time, & staye hiṁ Iñ the Ayre | as longe as you cañ, & quick frome the Grounde | & these are the righte helpes for Coruetts, for the | Legg harde to hiṁ Is a helpe fitter for Terre a Terre, | theñ Coruetts. ——— |

[uncancelled] *Butt for Coruetts, For Terre a Terre.* |

[cancelled] The Inwarde Rayne oñ which hande soever you goe the hande | oñ the Contrarye side the knuckles, towardes his neck makes | hiṁ oblike, putts Iñ his Inwarde sholder, & back his Inwarde | hinder legg, which Is the busines for your outwarde legg | putts Iñ his outwarde hinder legg, which narowes hiṁ | behinde & Iñ larges hiṁ before, which putts hiṁ vppoñ | the Hanches, & halfe his sholders goes befor his Inwarde | hinder legg, which makes hiṁ goe forwarde & Easeye, | because Terre a Terre Is a leape forwarde & preste & theñ | the Inwarde Rayne thus presses hiṁ on his legges oñ the | oute side off the Turne, which putts hiṁ Vppoñ the hanches | & the more iff his musle or nose be turnde vpp withiñ the | Turne which this waye doth suffitientlye beinge prestte | oñ the oute side hee Is att libertye with his legges withiñ | the Turne & halfe off his sholder goinge before his legg | withiñ the Turne makes hiṁ goe forwarde & Imbrase | the Turne the better, & his hinder legg withiñ the | Turne beinge putt back, makes Itt more att liberty to | followe butt withiñ his fore legg, & to thruste ^{itt} vnder | his bellye & before his outwarde hinder legg a good deale, | *as hee* which makes hiṁ verye much oñ the Hanches, | his Inwarde fore legg, beinge before his outwarde | fore legg verye much which makes hiṁ Imbrase the | Turne much better, — & besides beinge oblike doth nott | bringe Iñ his outwarde sholder butt putts Itt forwarde, | & all these benefitts off truth, for Terre a Terra, coumes by | your bodye beinge oblike, your hande oñ the Contrarye | side your knuckles towardes his neck oñ which hande | soeuer hee goes,— The Inwarde Rayne thus putts back his | Inwarde hinder legg which Is the busines, for Itt | narowes hiṁ behinde & so vppoñ the

hanches, thrustinge | Itt forwarde when̄ hee goes,— so puttinge his Inwarde
 | hinder legg, Is the quintesence off Terre a Terre, & so for | demye voltaes,
 Terre a Terre. — The same waye for paseger | his Croupe Iñ putts hiṁ
 vppoñ the Hanches, his halfe sholder | still befor his Inwarde hinder legg,
 Puttinge back his Inwarde | hinder legg, his Croupe Iñ, Iñ his length doth
 the same, so his | heade to the wall puttinge back his Inwarde hinder legg, |
 oñ which hanch soeuer hee Goes oñ doth the same, which putts | hiṁ vppoñ
 the hanches naturalye & Easeleye because his hinder | legges Is narowe, &
 halfe his sholder goes before his | Inwarde hinder legg, the same will serue
 |

[f.118^v cancelled] Also for demye voltaes vppoñ Pasadoes bye a wall, | So the
 Inwarde ^{hinder} legg, beinge putt back thus, Is the | Greate busines the
 mañ oblike makes the Horse | oblike, & the knuckles off your hande on the
 contrarye | Side turnde towardses his neck doth the greateste | parte off the
 worke to make hiṁ oblike, with the | former Rules I haue tolde you — dun
 piste vppon a | walke or a trotte the Inwarde legg beinge putt back with
 your | Inwarde legg with the Inwarde rayne putts hiṁ vppon | The hanches.
 ——— |

[uncancelled] Nowe for Coruetts, ——— |

[cancelled] I tolde you thatt Terre a Terre, was a leape forwarde | & preste &
 lowe, & therefore the helps I tolde you | formerlye was fitt for Itt, Butt for
 a Coruett Is añ | other busines, for thatt Is a leape Vppwarde & therefore |
 ther Muste bee other helps, thatt Is the bridle hande | muste nott bee so
 much oñ the contrarye side off his | neck, the knuckles towardses his neck for
 thatt putts | his Inwarde hinder legg to much oute & makes hiṁ | thruste
 Itt to much before his outwarde hinder legg | which Is for Terre a Terre,
 butt nott for Coruetts because | Iñ Coruetts hee shoulde rather bringe his
 outwarde | hinder legg before his Inwarde hinder legg, or att | leaste Eueñ,
 therefore your bridle hande aughte to | bee butt a litle oñ the other side off
 his neck, or poñell, | because his Inwarde hinder legg, shoulde nott goe |
 before his outwarde hinder legg, & helpe hiṁ with | your knuckles towardses
 his neck to make hiṁ a little | oblike, thatt hee maye goe bias, the Inwarde

rayne to | keepe hiṁ Vpp,— & nott helpe with your outwarde | legg, for
 thatt will putt his Inwarde hinder legg | to much before his outwarde hinder
 legg which Is | false for Coruetts, though righte for Terre a Terre & | will
 make the horse beleue hee muste goe Terre a | Terre, wherīn hee hath resoñ
 to thinke so well | then you see howe you shoulde helpe with the hande | &
 the Resons for Itt — nowe for your legges you muste | nott helpe att all,
 for marke the Horse howe hee | goes betweene the Pillers when nobodye Is
 off | hiṁ or att the Single Piller my waye when nobodye | Is off hiṁ, then
 ther Is no helpe with legges att all, | & yett howe Juste the Horse goes,
 therfor when you | are off hiṁ you muste nott helpe with your legges | att
 all for iff you helpe with your outwarde legg | Itt putts his Croupe to much
 Iñ, & makes hiṁ thinke | you woulde haue hiṁ goe Terre a Terre, & iff you
 | helpe with the Inwarde legg, Itt putts his Croupe | too much oute so as
 hee cañ nott goe therfor the beste | helpe with your legges, Is to haue no
 helpe with your | legges att all, butt to keepe his croupe free to followe | his
 fore partes bias, which your bridle hande the | knuckles towardes his neck
 makes hiṁ, — iff hee | requier anye helpe with your legges, Itt muste bee |
 both your legges Eueñ, thatt Is to putt them a litle | to his sides Eueñ the
 toes doune,— butt the beste nott | to helpe with your legges att all, the
 hande to helpe | Euerye time off his Cadance & litle harder then |

[f.119^r cancelled] Terre a Terre, & holde hiṁ as longe Iñ the Ayre as | you Cañ
 & quick frome the Grounde, your bodye a | litle bendinge to hiṁ Euerye
 time hee rises, butt so | litle as nobodye maye Perceue Itt, the Horse to
 goe | bias, & as longe a time as you Cañ the Inwarde | Rayne holdes hiṁ
 Vpp,— & this Is Exactlye the | truth for Coruetts. ——— |

This you muste note thatt the Bridle hande the | beste place for Itt Is a litle
 a boue the poñell, | & a litle forwarder, Exsepte greate nesesitye otherwise
 | vrges. ——— |

Heer you haue all the trewe helpes both for Terre a Terre, | Coruetts, &
 Demye Ayres with the helpe off the | Inwarde Raynes The Mans bodye, &
 the Horses | Bodye oblike the mañ Goinge Naturalye, & Easeleye | alonge
 with the Horse, the poyse more or less | oñ the oute Side. ——— |

Nowe trewe obseruations, with the | Helpe off the outwarde Rayne, & for |
Whatt thatt helpe Is moste proper. |

Nowe the outwarde Rayne oñ the Bridle your | hande oñ the Inside off the
Horses neck oñ | which hande soeuer the Horse Goes, Is Juste | Contrarye
to the Inwarde Rayne, & so the Effectes | off Itt, for the outwarde Rayne
narowes the | Horse before & Inlarges hiñ behinde, besides your | buttockes
are remoued more oñ the contrarye side | which hee goes, oñ & your hande
oñ the same side | & your outwarde Sholder Coumes Iñ verye much, | which
narowes you before & putts oute your | Buttocks, & makes you bende your
Bodye, so thatt | you see the Actioñ you make the Horse makes | the same
motioñ, & Iñ this actioñ your poyse Is | oñ the Iñside though you helpe
with your | outwarde legg, ^{itt} cañ nott bee otherwise for the | posture off
your Bodye will haue Itt so & muste | bee so, — & the chefeste thinge thatt
makes Itt so | Is your hande which Is oñ the Inside of his | neck,— This
helpe off the outwarde Rayne Is good | for demye voltaes vppoñ Pasadoes,
the Piroyte, | all Leapes, as Groupadoes, Balotadoes, Capriolls, eyther |
strayte forwarde or vppoñ voltaes, because | all these naturalye are narowe
before & large | behinde, & the outwarde Rayne doth narowe | hiñ before,
& makes hiñ large behinde & so | followinge nature muste needes bee the
beste | helpe for all those Ayres that aughte to bee narowe | before & large
behinde besides no leape cañ well | bee made otherwise for Else his croupe
hath no rome | to rise or to playe. The Inwarde Rayne Inlarges | hiñ before
& narowes hiñ behinde & |

[f.125^r cancelled] Naye your bodye oblike, turninge your heade vpp | withiñ
the Turne, makes you Convexe withiñ | the Turne & Concaue withoute the
Turne, so you | see the same posture you are Iñ, the Horse followes | you
Juste Iñ the same posture, therefore you see | of whatt Greate Efecaseye
the Horse—Mans Seate | Is off, & off so Greate Consequence as Vppoñ the
| poynte Itt Is the All;— Nowe for Coruetts thatts | añother busines for
though your bodye muste bee | oblike, yett nott so much as Iñ Terre a
Terre, nor | your bridle hande nott so much oñ the Contrarye | Side off his
neck, because you muste nott pull the | Inwarde Rayne so verye much for
feare the | Horse Shoulde thinke hee sholde goe Terre a | Terre, besides you

muste nott helpe with your | legges att all because the Horse muste goe
Eueñ | with his legges, & preste oñ neyther Side, so to | keepe his hinder
partes free withoute Constraynte, | & att libertye,— onlye the poyse a litle
oñ the oute | Side,— & your legges weake frome the knees dounwarde |
thatt Is your toes doune to Vnbrase your nerues, | & the bente or plye off
the Horse, onlye a litle | with your hande as I taughte you ofteñ before. |

one thinge I had forgott & thatt Is when | the Horse Is preste oñ the Inside
off the Turne | his heade Is apte to turne, withoute the volta, | because Itt Is
Naturall;— Ande when the Horse | *head* Is preste withoute the Turne, then
the | Horse heade lookes withiñ the turne which Is | So Naturall as Indeed
Itt Is Imposible to bee | otherwise.— I saye with the Bridle onlye | for the
Cauatzane tied shorte will keepe | his heade withiñ the turne, wether hee
will | or no. |

Butt when soeuer the Horses Inwarde ^{hinder} legg goes | before his fore partes,
or Inwarde fore legg, thatt Is | thatt *his thatt* his Croupe or hinder partes
goes before | his fore partes then his heade lookes oute off the turne | the
resoñ Is because hee Is preste on the Inside, & tie | the Cauatzane Rayne
neuer so strayte Itt muste bee | false *f* & cañ bee no otherwise, iff his Croupe
be before his | sholder, because hee Is preste on the Inside still, therefore |
the greate secrett In Ridinge Is to keepe back his | Inwarde hinder legg, or
att leaste to keepe Itt withiñ | the line off his fore legg which makes his
Inwarde fore | legg & sholder to goe before his Inwarde hinder legg, so |
his hinder legges beinge within the lines off his fore legges | makes hiñ goe
juste, & frelye, & vppon the Hanches, & | This Is a greate truth, & the
onlye trewe waye. |

[f.125^v uncanceled] Trewe obseruations. |

[cancelled] So for paseier Vppon Circles though Itt bee the action | off a Trott,
iff you pull the Inwarde Rayne your | knuckles towardes his neck, your hande
oñ the oute | Side off the turne, your bodye oblike & the Horse | Bias, to
keepe his Inwarde ^{hinder} legg oute & to holde | vpp his mosell, thatt hee
maye bee preste oñ the | oute side off the turne, which you maye knowe |
by his neck leaninge a litle oñ the oute side I | saye thus the Horse will bee

wide before & | narowe behinde, Euerye time off his paseger, | which Is oñ
the Hanches,— butt iff his Croupe | bee more Iñ, or that you helpe with
the outwarde | Rayne, then the Horse Is narowe & wide Euerye | Seconde
time, thatt Is Euerye Seconde time vppoñ | the sholders, & Euery Seconde
time vppoñ the | Hanches,— Though the Inwarde Cauatzane | Rayne bee
tied neuer so strayte to the poñell | Iff you helpe with the outwarde Rayne
or | putt Iñ his Croupe to much,— Ande lett the | Cauatzane Rayne withiñ
the turne bee tied | neuer so shorte to the Poñell, Iff the Horse bee | bias,
& your Bodye oblike, hee will bee vppoñ | the Hanches iff you keepe his
Inwarde ^{hinder} legg | oute, & your knuckles to his neck your hande | oñ
the Contrarye Side off the Turne,— Ande | the same Is for both wayes his
heade to the | wall,— thatt is to keepe hiñ Bias, & thus | much for paseger
whatt Is wronge, & whatt Is | Righte,— his sholder before his Inwarde legg
| Is righte, & his Inwarde

[Uvcancelled] Trewe obseruations.

[cancelled] Itt Is trewe thatt Eyther vppoñ Paseger, or Terre a, | Terre Vppoñ
Circles, his Iñwarde Sholder to goe | before his Inwarde hinder legg, his
bodye Bias | though verye litle onlye to bee before his hinder | partes,—
butt theñ you muste keepe hiñ vppoñ the | Hanches, thatt Is you muste
Gentlye staye hiñ | Vppoñ the hande & press hiñ oñ the oute side to |
keepe hiñ Still vppoñ the Hanches, or otherwise | hee will bee Extreamlye
vppoñ the Sholders, | your bodye oblike, & so the Horses will bee | your
hande oñ the oute side off the Turne your | knuckles towards his neck, oñ
which hande | soeuer hee Goes, for thatt opens & Inlarges hiñ | before, &
narowes hiñ behinde & to pull the | Inwarde Rayne thatt preses hiñ oñ |

- [f.126^r] The oute Side; — lookinge Iñ to the turne giues his | Sholders more
libertye,— The truth Is thatt pullinge | the Inwarde Rayne as I haue
formerlye shewde you | pulls back the Horses Inwarde fore legg, & so putts
| back his Iñwarde hinder legg, butt theye haue | seuerall operations, for
pullinge back the Horses | Inwarde fore legg, makes ^{him} wide before &
oblike | pullinge Itt frome his outwarde fore legg puttinge | his outwarde
sholder forwarde, nott Iñ as his | Iñwarde Sholder goes back, & makes his

Inwarde | fore legg longer theñ his outwarde fore-legg, | because Itt Is pulde the way off the Circle thatt | hee goes oñ to Imbrase the turne the better, for his | outwarde fore-legg does butt followe Itt! — | Nowe the pullinge back off his fore legg, I tolde | you pullde back also his hinder legg, butt thatt | theye had seuerall operations, for pullinge his | Inwarde fore legg, ^{back} Itt pulls Itt frome his outwarde | fore legg, & makes hiñ wide before, — Butt pullinge | back the Horses Inwarde hinder legg putts Itt to | his outwarde hinder legg, which makes hiñ | narowe behinde & therefore vppoñ the Hanches, | this Is the treweste thinge Iñ the worlde | thus hee Is att libertye withiñ the Turne, & | his Inwarde legges leades, Ande hee restes vppoñ his | outwarde legges, & theye followe, & shorte off his | Inwarde legges, & this an Easeye & trewe Terre a | Terra,. ——— |

you muste vnderstande, thatt as longe as the | Horses hinder legges are withiñ the lines off his | forr legges thatt the Horses Croupe Is Iñ & vppoñ | the Hanches, & ther Is no trewe waye for Terre a | Terre like this so Easeye, so trewe, & with such forse | & so naturall, & so pleasante to the Horse & so | for le petit Gallope Itt ^{is} as trewe & this vppoñ | Circles — for Terre a Terre Vppoñ Squares forses | a Horse to much nott onlye thatt hee cañ nott goe | frelye butt Indanger to haue his croupe goe before | his heade — Ande therefore alwayes lett the | Horse goe Bias vppoñ Circles, which Is Easeye & | Trewe so thatt his two hinder legges bee withiñ | the lines off his forr legges. ——— |

You muste Remember thatt though all the | precepts off this Booke bee good, yett all those laste | Rules thatt are markte with the floure, Is | the quintesence off our Arte. |

[f.126^v uncanceled] A Trewe obseruation-for the | Piroyte. |

[cancelled] The Piroyte the Horses two forr legges are Vpp, & | his outwarde hinder legg att a time, & his bodye | Coumes to his legges & hee restes Vppoñ his Inwarde | hinder legg, & bente withiñ the turne, thatt Is | the poyse Is oñ the Iñ side, conuexe withoute the | Turne, & concaue withiñ the turne, & as his | outwarde hinder legg, Coumes to his Inwarde hinder | legg, as his three legges are faulinge before theye | touch the Grounde,

his Inwarde hinder legg thatt | hee restes oñ remoues, so theñ they are all
Vpp frome | the Grounde att one time, though so shorte a time as | Itt is
nott perseued,— since His Inwarde hinder legg | remoues rounde Iñ the
place, & his outwarde hinder | legg coumes to his Inwarde hinder legg & Is
sett | doune, theñ his Inwarde hinder legg goes circularly | wide, to keepe
the grounde butt verye litle wide | almoste In a place,— & the reson off
all this Is | workinge with the outwarde Rayne, which | presses hiñ on the
Inside thatt hee cañ nott goe | forwarde & so Itt putts oute his Hanch a
litle | & therefore Is moste proper for the piroyte, | & so for demye voltas
vppoñ Pasadoes, because Itt | Is butt halfe a Piroyte, & Is Iñ a mañer In a
place | a litle ouall. & this ^{is} the truth off the Actions | off a Horses legges
Iñ the Piroyte & the reson off Itt. | this Is a leape rounde. |

[uncancelled] For Terre a Terre. |

[cancelled] For Terre a Terre, iff you helpe the Horse with the | outwarde Rayne,
then you putt oute his Hanch which | shoulde bee kepte Iñ, & though hee
leades with his | Inwarde forr legg, yett his outwarde hinder legg, | muste
followe Itt which Is cross & false, the action | off a Trott beinge Cross
onlye hee doth nott change | Euerye time butt continues the same legges
cross still, | & cañ nott goe forwarde, butt coumes Iñ & robes the | turne
nott keepinge his Grounde,— Ande all this | coumes off helpinge withe
the outwarde Rayne | which narowes hiñ before, & Inlarges hiñ behinde
| which Is false, & preste withiñ the turne which | Is false,— The righte
waye Is thus the Inwarde | Rayne thatt presses hiñ oñ his outwarde hinder
| legg which bowes Extreamlye Iñ the Cambrills | & so oñ the Hanches,
& his Inwarde hinder legg | att liberty to followe withiñ the line off his |
Inwarde forr legg, & his Inwarde hinder legg, | thruste forwarde vnder his
bellye, as Itt doth nott | bowe so much, butt beinge putt forwarde makes |
hiñ oñ the hanches butt nott so much as his outwarde | hinder legg thatt
bowes so much, Inlargde before |

[f.127^r] Ande straytende behinde because hee Is narowe | behinde & therefore
vppoñ the Hanches, preste | withoute the turne & att liberty withiñ the
turne, | Concaue withoute, & conuex withiñ the turne | & all this Coumes

off the Inwarde Rayne helpinge | with thatt & the reste off the Helpes thatt
I | tolde you for Terre, a Terre so ofteñ so thatt I neede | nott repeate them̄
the *m* Horse muste Goe bias Vppoñ | his Circle, this Is a leape forwarde,
butt two times |

[uncancelled] For Coruetts: |

[cancelled] Thatt a thirde Actioñ, a leape Vpwarde & two times | a Coruett
muste nott bee preste, eyther withoute the | Turne or withiñ the Turne,
butt to goe Eueñ with | his hinder legges as hee faules with his hinder |
legges hee bowes verye much Iñ the Cambrills, because | those are no sooner
doune, *butt hee* butt his forr partes | are vpp, so hee restes on them̄ & with
more Ease | when hee bendes Iñ the Cambrills & therefore hee | bendes
off them̄ — Juste as a mañ thatt leapes hee | bendes Iñ the Hañs, butt
a Horses hinder legges | are made like our Armes, & therefore hee bends |
more off them̄,— to make hiñ goe Euen you muste | nott helpe with your
legges att all, heer the | Horses bodye goes forwarde & his hinder legges |
followes, the Inwarde Rayne keepes hiñ vpp, | butt Itt muste bee butt a
verye litle on the oute | side, & your bodye a litle oblike for the Resons I |
haue giuen you heertofore, the Hier hee goes | the more hee goes vppoñ the
Hanches iff hee | goes forwarde & the more his hinder legges | goes vnder
his bellye the more hee bendes Iñ | the Cambrills, & so the more off the
Hanches. |

A Gallope. |

Is a Leape forwarde makinge fowre | distincte times, with his fowre seuerall
| legges as I haue formerlye shewde you, |

-[f.127^v uncanceled] For Coruetts. |

-.[cancelled] you muste helpe hiñ hye with the hande butt | nott so hye butt thatt
hee maye goe forwarde with | his Coruett, the helpinge hiñ hie straynes
the | Curbe & to haue Ease off the Curbe hee goes vppoñ | the Hanches,
Euen when you pull hiñ att | firste & then when hee faules hee hath more
| Ease, & beinge a leape vpwarde as soone as his | hinder legges Coumes
to the Grounde hee bowes | Iñ the Cambrills which Is Vppoñ the Hanches

| & the less hee goes forward hee Is the more | off the Hanches,— Ande
this Is the truth & | the Righte waye for Coruetts. ——— |

[uncancelled] Trewe obseruations. |

[cancelled] Your Sturope leathers alwayes Euen, for your lefte, | Sturope to bee
longer then your righte, I see no resoñ | for Itt, Exsepte your lefte legg
weare longer then your righte, butt Iff theye bee Eueñ you will sitt Eueñ |
Iñ your Sadle as you aughte, & otherwise you will nott | Three thinges are
requisite to make a perfecte Horse mañ | firste to knowe, howe, & when to
helpe your Horse, | Secondlye, howe, & when to corecte hiñ; Ande thirdlye
| howe & when to cherishe hiñ, & to make much of hiñ. | you maye helpe
your Horse seauen mañer off wayes | thatt Is to saye, with your voyce, with
your Tonge, with | your Rodd, with the Bridle, & with the Calues off |
your legges, with your Sturrope, & with your Spurrs | so you maye Corecte
hiñ seauen mañer off wayes which | are with the same thinges, — Butt
you cañ cherishe or | Coye hiñ butt two mañer off wayes, eyther with your
| Voyce In speakinge Gentlye to hiñ, & flateringe off | hiñ, or strokinge
hiñ, or clapinge hiñ with your | hande, or with the nether Ende off your
Rodd,— | Ande though the helpes & Corections In the doinge | seeme all
one, yett are theye diuers, hauinge respecte | vnto the time,— for the one
goeth before Error, & | the other coumeth after,— for you helpe your Horse
| to the Intente hee shoulde nott Err: Butt you | Corecte hiñ for thatt hee
hath alreadye Errde, | Ande sertenlye Corections are better then helpes |
for Corections will make hiñ take heed off | doinge the like agene, butt the
Instruments | wherwith you Corecte, or helpe, are all one. |

[f.128^r uncancelled] To what Ende such helpes, & Corections serue, |

[cancelled] The voyce Is that, which anye Horse feareth moste, & Is | nedfull
Iñ all disorders. ——— |

The Rodd serueth to Corecte the disorderinge off his heade | & to driue
shrewde Toyes oute off his mynde, ——— |

The Bridle Corecteth both heade, neck, & mouth, & maketh | hiñ to Leane
well, & doth Emboldeñ hiñ, & mañ hiñ, ——— |

The Calves off the legges, & likewise the Sturopes doe order | as well the hinder partes, as fore partes off the Horse. ——— |

The Spurrs, doe nott onely make hiṁ steadye, & Juste | butt also subiecte & quick, to vnderstande his Riders | mynde.— Trottinge In Circles doth aiuste hiṁ | nothinge more. |

[uncancelled] For the Bridle |

[cancelled] you caṁ haue no Steadye hande vppoṁ your Horse anye | time, together, wherbye your Horse shall neuer rune | well, nor yett haue a steadye heade iff you carie nott your | Bridle hande Lowe,— For whoe woulde haue his | Horse to beare his heade steadelye & to Leane well | lett hiṁ beare his hande rather lowe, then hye, so shall | hee bee able to keepe Itt alwayes att one staye which | Is one off the cheefeste poyntes off Horse-manship, |

[uncancelled] The order of teachinge a Horse. |

[cancelled] Iff a Horse bee taughte vnorderlye, hee shall neuer bee | perfecte Iṁ anye thinge.— As for Exsample, Iff you | doe as manye for lack off skill woulde vse to Gallope | your Horse, before hee caṁ stopp well Iṁ his trot: or to | ruṁ hiṁ, before hee caṁ stopp well Iṁ his Gallope, or to | manege hiṁ with a swifte Gallope before hee caṁ stopp, | aduance, & turne readelye oṁ both handes, you shall marr | hiṁ for Euer, & therefore take heed that you dewlye | followe this order heer followinge. ——— |

Firste you muste take greate care that your Horse | trot well, which Is one off the cheefeste poyntes off all, | because Itt Is harder by nature for a Colte to trot well, | then to goe Softlye, to Ruṁ, or to Gallope, ——— |

Secondlye you muste teach hiṁ to bee lighte att Stopp, | thirdlye to aduance before *th* forthlye to turr [*sic.*] | readelye oṁ both handes,— to manege well to pass a | swifte Careere, & iff hee bee apte you maye teach hiṁ | all maṁer of Ayres;— frome the begiṁinge to the | Ende you muste see thatt hee Reane well, & beare his | heade steadelye, which Is the foundation off all the reste, |

The trot & walkinge off hiṁ are the beste lessons, | lett hiṁ bee Emptie
when you Ride hiṁ, Ride hiṁ nott | aboue twice or thrice a weeke & neuer
take to much | off hiṁ, butt leaue hiṁ well pleased & quiett nott Iñ | fouge.
—— |

[f.128^v] Trottinge & stoppinge Is the foundation off all thinges | goinge back,
settles hiṁ oñ the hande, putts hiṁ vppoñ | the hanches, & therfore makes
hiṁ lighte off the | hande,— posates, which Is raysinge hiṁ before, withoute
| thatt no Horse cañ goe well,— butt you muste nott | rayse hiṁ before
hee can stopp well vppoñ his trot | turne readelye oñ both handes, & so
to Gallope & | stopp well vppoñ his Gallope both vppoñ large Circles | &
narowe Circles,— & his sholders to bee Extreame | Suple, & then putt his
Croupe Iñ, & paseger hiṁ to make | hiṁ sensible to the heele, & so his
heade to the wall, | to make hiṁ vnderstande the heele, & when hee | Cañ
goe le petit Galope his croupe Iñ theñ rayse hiṁ | & aduance hiṁ & nott
before,— for iff you doe Itt | before you will make hiṁ restie,— for theñ
hee will | alwayes rise to shuñ goinge forwarde,— when | you worke hiṁ
to the heele, you muste giue hiṁ | the Spurrs soundlye to make hiṁ goe
forwarde |

{ & trie by | offeringe | to Spur hiṁ | wether hee | will obaye | you or no. |
& iff hee | obaye you | lighte off |

& giuinge them till hee obayes you, & when hee | doth obaye you make
much off hiṁ, & leaue | punishinge off hiṁ & theñ rewarde hiṁ, & | sende
hiṁ to the stable, to playe,— Ther Is no | makinge anye Horse withoute the
Cauatzane | my waye, for thatt setles hiṁ vppon the hande | Iff hee bee to
lighte off the hande Itt giues hiṁ | añ Apewye, because Itt pulls hiṁ downe
to thatt | degree, thatt hee can nott holde vpp his heade, & | Iff hee bee to
harde off the hande, Itt pulls hiṁ | vpp thatt hee cañ nott putt doune his
heade to | bee to harde oñ the hande, so tienge the Inwarde | Cauatzane
Rayne to the poñell my waye Is the | Juste place for the trewe apewye, to
setle hiṁ | oñ the hande, Itt suples his sholders Extreamleye | Putts back
his Inwarde hinder legg, brings | Iñ his outwarde Sholder, or brings In his
| Inwarde Sholder, eyther vppoñ Paseger, his | Croupe Iñ, or Galopinge duñ

Piste or le Petit | Galope his Croupe Iñ, or Terre a Terre or demye | voltas
 Terre a Terre, — or coruetts vppoñ a | strayte line or Vppoñ voltaes, & so
 Iñ all Ayres, | So thatt the Cauatzanes Inwarde Rayne my | waye tied to the
 Poñell doth Euerye thinge | Iñ the manege, & Indeed withoute Itt ther cañ
 | bee nothinge well doñ Iñ the manege, & therefore | Esteme the Cauatzane
 thus as the moste Exselente | thinge thatt cañ bee to worke horses to make
 them | Suple both to hande & heele, & therefore alwayes | vse Itt, Iñ Euerye
 Thinge. |

[f.129^r] The treweste obseruations Iñ the worlde all these are to | bee añ adition
 to the Seconde Edition off my Booke. ——— |

Vppon a Trott legg & rayne on the Inside off the turne | Vppon large Circles
 putts oute his Croupe, & putts his | Inwarde hinder legg ^{oute} which Is the
 business *h* — the | Trott Is the foundation, & neuer to Gallope hiñ vntill
 | hee bee So lighte vppoñ his trott, as to offer to Gallope off | hiñ selfe,—
 to stopp hiñ vppoñ his trott Is the foundation | off all Ayres, for the stopp
 firmes hiñ vppoñ the hande | & putts hiñ vppoñ the hanches, those towe
 Exselente | thinges att one time, ——— | *

{ * & to stop | hiñ vppon a | walke, & so | vppon a Gallop | & vse Itt still
 | vntill you | haue firme | hiñ vppoñ | the hande | & putt hiñ | vppoñ the
 | Hanches, | }

& Sholde hee offer to putt oute | his croupe, to disobaye the heele, stopp
 hiñ often, & | good stronge stoppes, that hee maye rise a litle | with them,
 & this will Cuer hiñ, for no Horse | putts oute his croupe butt hee Is
 oñ the Sholders | & when hee Is putt Vppoñ the hanches by frequente |
 stopes hee Is Cuerde for no Horse cañ putt oute | his Croupe iff hee ^{bee}
 oñ the Hanches so much is stoppinge | to be valewde aboue all thinges, &
 for all thinges | that Consernes the manege.— Legg & rayne oñ the | Inside
 when you Galope hiñ, that putts his Inwarde | hinder legg oute which Is
 the busines, his hinder | legges cañ nott bee verye wide yett wider then
 his | fore partes Iñ his Gallope,— this reduses hiñ with | Ease withoute
 spurringe, you muste remember | alwayes *wayes* when you stopp to pull the
 Inwarde | Rayne to putt his Inwarde hinder legg oute thatt | Is to putt his

two hinder legges together as close | as you Cañ,— for no Horse cañ bee
 vppoñ the hanches | vntill his hinder legges bee close, & the closer theye |
 are the more hee Is Vppon the Hanches & bowes | In the Cambrills,— by
 a wall strayte forwarde | itt Is alwayes the rayne & legg, frome the wall |
 thatt putts them together when you stopp him | his hinder legges which side
 soeuer Is to the | wall, *bu* butt iff you bee Iñ añ open Campanie | strayte
 forwarde you maye chuse which legg | & rayne off a Side you will, so his
 hinder legges | bee still putt together att the stopp, — & this | Is the trewe
 waye & none Else. ——— |

The puttinge oute his Inwarde hinder legg, with | the Inwarde Rayne, &
 Inwarde legg makes him | Galope righte, thatt Is his Inwarde legges to
 leade | you muste press oñ the Inwarde sturrope the Inwarde | Sholder a
 litle doune, butt the outwarde Sholder | putt a litle forwarde nott Iñ, this
 nott onlye vppoñ | large Circles, butt narowe Circles duñ Piste Iñ | his
 length, thus his Inwarde \wedge^{hinder} legg still putt oute | which Is the busines,-
 Nowe to helpe with | the outwarde Rayne, which Is \wedge^{good} *false* eyther |
 vppoñ large Circles, or narowe Circles duñ Piste, | & whye Itt Is *wronge*
 the resoñ Is this. ——— |

[f.129^v uncanceled] when you helpe with the outwarde Rayne thatt | narowes
 him before & makes him wide behinde | butt thus;— itt bringes Iñ his
 outwarde sholder | & so narowes him before, & therefore Itt makes him |
 wide behinde * |

{* which | Is proper | or a Gallop |}

butt thus, Itt makes him reste off | his Inwarde hinder legg,

[cancelled] & thatt rather to Coume | Iñ & his outwarde hinder legg Is Vpp
 & wide | frome his Iñwarde hinder legg, & so is off \wedge^{off} the | Hanches, &
 the outwarde hinder legg followes | the Inwarde forr legg, which is Crose &
 abhominable | false, & all by helpinge with the outwarde Rayne, | therefore
 the Inwarde Rayne & Inwarde *Rayne* |

{ legg }

is righte, & vse thatt & no other eyther large or | narowe Circles, duñ Piste,
so you see the Inwarde |

{hinder}

legg to bee kepte oute thus Is the busines; ——— | this suples his sholders,
& a Justs his hanches. ——— |

An other moste Exselente lessoñ, both | to suple his sholders, & to putt
him | Vppoñ the Hanches, & thatt Is this Lesson, |

Pull the Cauason Rayne on the righte hande & | the legg oñ the same Side,
butt goe oñ the lefte | hande, as iff his heade weare to the Piller, though |
you goe oñ the lefte hande hee Is Suplde for the | Right Hande & his ^{hinder}
legg withiñ the Turne Is kepte | close still ^{^to} his outwarde hinder legg.. which
Is the busines, & his outwarde | hinder legg goes wide which Is no matter
for | thatts Easeleye helpete afterwarde, this Is nott | onlye an Exselente
thinge to Suple a Horses | Sholders, butt iff you rayse hiñ In Pesates as hee
| Goes bias thus, Itt putts hiñ Extreamleye Vppoñ | the Hanches, because
your Inwarde legg putts | his Inwarde hinder legg to his outwarde hinder
legg, & thatt putts him vppoñ the Hanches, Itt Is | the Inwarde hinder
legg Still putt to his | outwarde hinder legg thatt putts hiñ vpoñ | the
Hanches because Itt narowes hiñ behinde, | butt the truth Is Itt putts oute
his Inwarde | hinder legg which Is for the Righte hande, | Ande for the other
goinge wide Itt Is no | matter,— for the other hande, you muste | pull the
lefte Cauatzane Rayne, & your | lefte legg & Rayne off a Side & though |
the Horse goes oñ the Righte hande yett | hee is Suplede for the lefte hande
& | the same benefitt coumes oñ this hande as | off the other In all thinges
as I tolde you | before,— Itt Is the moste Exselente lessoñ In | the worlde
to both to Suple a Horses Sholders | & to putt hiñ oñ the Hanches att one
time | & the Inwarde hinder legg Is the busines. |

[f.130^r uncanceled] The Horse heade to the Piller, legg | & Rayne Contrarye. |

[cancelled] Is the worste lessoñ In the worlde, for Itt presses & | putts hiñ
vppoñ the Sholders, & so Consequentlye | off off the Hanches,— butt ther
Is a worse thinge | then thatt In Itt, which Is Itt makes his Inwarde hinder

| legg goe before his sholders, which makes hi \bar{m} wide | behinde, & so off off
the Hanches,— & his Inwarde hinder | legg goinge before his sholders, hee
maye take such a | Coustome off Itt as hee maye doe so, when hee doth |
paseger his Croupe I \bar{n} or Terre a Terra which Is | abhominablye false, &
therefore this lesso \bar{n} I woulde | neuer Vse. ——— |

For to Paseger a Horse his Croupe I \bar{n} | Eyther a litle large, or I \bar{n} his length. |

When you Paseger a Horse his Croupe I \bar{n} , eyther | with the Cauatzane,
or the raynes seperated, or the | Raynes I \bar{n} your lefte hande, still on the
contrarye | Side off his neck thatt hee goes off, your knuckles | towardes his
neck,— see thatt you pull vpp his nose a | litle withi \bar{n} the turne to putt
 \wedge^{oute} *back* his Inwarde | hinder legg, your bodye oblike, the Horse to bee
| bias, which Is, his Inwarde fore legg to bee *within* | before his Inwarde
hinder legg, & your outwarde | legg putts I \bar{n} his outwarde hinder legg, so
| both his Hinder legges are neer together which | Is o \bar{n} the Hanches, —
& this Is the trewe paseger, | so the Inwarde hinder legg Is the busines.
——— |

The Horses heade to the wall. | Thus. |

When the Horses heade Is to the wall, legg & | Rayne Contrarye, sittinge
oblike, putt \wedge^{oute} *back* his | Inwarde *le* hinder legg with the Inwarde rayne |
& lett the Horse goe bias, so both his *In* hinder | Legges are together which
Is o \bar{n} the Hanches, so iff | you Rayse hi \bar{m} as hee goes bias, by the wall,
when | you Rayse hi \bar{m} to make Posates, putt your legg | withi \bar{n} the turne
a litle to hi \bar{m} , which putts | his hinder legges together, & so *off* \wedge^{vppon} the
Hanches, | so when you Rayse hi \bar{m} vppo \bar{n} Circles vppon his | paseger, In
posates, alwayes putt your Inwarde | legg a litle to hi \bar{m} to keepe \wedge^{oute} *back*
his Inwarde | hinder legg,— so the keepinge off his Inwarde | hinder legg
 \wedge^{oute} *back* doth all, putts the hinder legges | together which putts hi \bar{m} o \bar{n}
the Hanches & | makes hi \bar{m} bowe I \bar{n} the Cambrills — the Inwarde | hinder
legg Is all.— the less steps hee takes the | more hee Is *off* on the Hanches.
——— |

[f.130^v uncanceled] To putt a Horse vppoñ the Hanches | Vppoñ his trotto duñ
Piste |

[cancelled] The Inwarde Rayne, & Inwarde legg moderatlye | to putt ^Λoute back
his Inwarde hinder legg to narowe | hiñ behinde, vppoñ a shorte trotto to
goe as litle | grounde as hee cañ which putts hiñ more vppoñ | the Hanches,
— & his hinder legges beinge made | like our Armes, puttinge his Inwarde
hinder | legg oute thus, putts his hinder legges together, | & makes hiñ
bowe more oñ the Hanches, | so Itt Is still his Inwarde hinder legg to bee |
kepte back still thatt doth the busines. ——— |

What is false workinge off Horses | eyther his heade to the wall, or Vppoñ
| Circles Vppon paseger. |

When soeuer hee Is butt strayte his croupe Iñ | his Inwarde hinder legg
goes before his Inwarde | forr legg or sholder & so wide behinde & narowe
before | & off off the Hanches,— & when his Inwarde hanch | or ^Λhinder legg
Is much before his Inwarde fore legg or | Sholder then hee Is much wider
behinde & so much | more off off the Hanches, which is Horiblye false, | & so
the like falshood His heade to the wall | wraughte off this fatioñ,— Indeed
as false as | iff his heade weare to the Piller, legg & rayne | Contrarye, &
his Inwarde hinder legg goes | as much befor his Inwarde sholder, or legg |
before within the turne, ——— |

[uncanceled] What Is false workinge off a Horse | Terre a Terre. ——— |

[cancelled] When a Horse Croupe Is Iñ, iff hee goe strayte | His Inwarde hinder
legg, goes befor his Inwarde |

{ forr }

legg or sholder, which Is false, butt when his | Croupe Is putt more before
his Sholder then | Itt Is much more false because hee Is so wide | behinde, &
narowe before, preste oñ the Inside | & att libertye withoute; leades with his
| Inwarde hinder legg, & his fore partes followe, | & goes backwarde, wher
hee shoulde Goe forwarde & Constraynde & att no libertye, & restiueleye |

& lookes oute off the Turne, iff you haue nothings | butt the Bridle & muste
doe so off nesesitye, & | so this Is abhominably false to all Extremetye |

[f.131^r uncanceled] The trewe & right waye for Terre a Terre. |

[cancelled] To goe Vppoñ a Square for Terre a Terre is good butt nott | the
beste waye, for Itt constraynes a Horse to much so | thatt hee cañ nott goe
with thatt fredum̄ thatt hee | shoulde & Is Iñ greate danger for his Inwarde
^^{hinder} legg to | goe before his Sholder & theñ Itt woulde bee verye | false,
therfore the trewe, Easeye, & beste waye Is this | thatt followes,. — The
Cauatzane my waye, or | the Raynes seperated In both handes, or the bridle
| onlye Iñ your lefte hande, pull the Inwarde Rayne | stil Cross his neck,
your hande alwayes oñ the oute | side off his neck, your knuckles towardes
his neck, | sitt oblike, thatt is your outwarde Sholder a litle | forwarder nott
Iñ, & so the Inwarde sholder goes | back leane on the outwarde sturope
more then oñ the | Inwarde, your legg withoute close to the Horse, the |
Inwarde legg a litle forwarder butt verye litle | & your nock a litle oñ the
oute side off the midle off | the sadle, & then your Buttons will bee a litle
oñ the Iñside off the turne & your poyse oñ the oute | side butt not to
much,— lookinge towardes your | Iñwarde sholder on which hande soeuer
you Goe, | sittinge towardes the Poñell as much as you cañ, | & Sittinge
strayte & firme butt nott to Stiff,— | This Is you trewe posture, & your
Horse will bee | Iñ the same posture for hee will followe you | butt you
muste see thatt your Horse bee Bias. | The pulling the Inwarde Rayne
thus, putts oute his Inwarde | hinder legg, & your outwarde legg putts Iñ
his outwarde | hinder legg, so thatt his two hinder legges are neer together
| & withiñ the lines off nature, which Is his two hinder legges | are withiñ
the lines off his two forr legges, & thus hee | Is narowe behinde which Is
vppoñ the hanches, & wide | before, to Imbrase the turne the better,—
more to Explayne | Itt pullinge the Inwarde Rayne as I tolde you, pulls
| back ^^{or} ^{oute} his forr legg, thatt Itt Is Itt pulls his Inwarde | fore legg
frome his outwarde forr legg, which widens | hiñ before, & Itt putts oute
his Inwarde hinder legg | which straytens hiñ behinde, & so putts hiñ
oñ the | Hanches,— the Inwarde Rayne presses hiñ on the oute | side off
the turne, Espetialye on his outwarde hinder | legg which makes hiñ bowe

verye much oñ thatt | Cambrill, which makes hiñ oñ the hanches, & his |
Inwarde hinder legg Is thrust forward Vnder | his bellye & withiñ the line
off his Inwarde forr | legg which makes hiñ more off the Hanches, | thus
his fore partes leades, & his hinder partes | followes, preste withoute the
turne, & att libertye | withiñ the turne,— pullinge the Inwarde Rayne | so,
pulls his Inwarde forr legg Circularye back | which muste needes make Itt
longer theñ his outwarde | forr legg vppon a Sircle, & beinge preste oñ his
outwarde | hinder legg, his Inwarde hinder legg muste needes bee | before
itt & att Libertye, so the Horse makes fowre Juste |

[f.131^v uncanceled]i In terra a Terre, the Horse Is concaue on the oute side &
conuex oñ the In side, |

{because | hee Is | preste | oñ the | oute side | & so Is | the Man. |}

[cancelled] Circles with his fowre legges about the Piller | or Center, his Inwarde
forr legg the greateste | Circle. his outwarde forr legg the Seconde Circle,
| his inwarde hinder legg, the thirde Circle. | & his outwarde hinder legg,
the leaste & forth, | Circle. This Is for demye voltaes vppoñ Terre a | Terre
to,— so you see the mayne busines *his* is the | Horses Inwarde hinder legg
to bee kepte oute | & for his outwarde hinder legg iff Itt bee butt | an Inch
or less withiñ his outwarde forr legg Itt | Is Enough & his Croupe Is nott
oute butt In Enough, | the Horse to goe bias, makes hiñ yett narrower |
behinde & so more oñ the Hanches,— This Is | Exactlye the truth off Terre
a Terre — ^{hee hath} 3: legges In | the Ayre, his two forr legges, & his Inwarde
hinder legg, when | hee rises, & when hee makes that litle leape forward
all |

[uncanceled] his 4: legges are In | the Ayre. |

Whatt Is the false waye for | Terre a Terre. ——— |

[cancelled] When you woulde make your Horse goe | Terre a Terre,— Iff you
woulde helpe with the | outwarde Rayne, & outwarde legg Itt Is ridiculous,
| for you putt oute his croupe with the outwarde | Rayne, & you woulde
putt Itt *oute* In with your | outwarde legg, which Is Imposible to putt his
| croupe In & oute att one time,— butt ther Is añ | other thinge worse,

which Is helpinge with | the outwarde Rayne, presses hiṁ oñ the Inside |
off the turne, & hee leanes off his Inwarde hinder | legg & putts oute his
outwarde hinder legg, naye | worse yett, leaninge off his Inwarde hinder |
legg his outwarde hinder legg Is Vpp & so readye | to followe his Inwarde
forr legg, thatt leades | so his legges are cross like a trot, onlye hee doth
| nott change euerye time, butt continewes them̄ | still, which Is moste
Extreamleye false, for hee | sholde leade with the Inwarde forr legg, & the
| hinder legg off the same Side, shoulde followe | Itt, & nott Cross, the
outwarde Rayne narowes | hiṁ before, & Inlarges hiṁ behinde which Is |
Juste contrarye to Terre a Terre,— for Iñ Terre a | Terre hee shoulde bee
Inlargde before & narowe | behinde,— & all these falshoodes coumes by
helpinge | with the outwarde Rayne,— so false Is the | outwarde Rayne, for
Terre a Terre. ——— |

* For the Cauatzane. | my waye. |

To giue litle Jerkes with Itt nowe & then̄ makes a | Horse looke Iñ to the
Turne, & then Slack itt ageñ | Butt iff the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne bee
tied | neuer so strayte to the Poñell or the Girthes | iff the Horse bee Bias,
thatts oblike & you sitt obliklye | thatt Is *g* the Horses Inwar [*sic.*] Sholder
or forr legg goes |

[f.132^F] before his Inwarde hinder legg, hee will goe verye | Juste though his
heade weare pullde to his Inwarde | Sholder, with the Cauatzane tied neuer
so strayte | to the Poñell iff you helpe, with your Bridle hande | on the
oute side off his neck, your knuckles towards | his neck, you & the Horse
to bee oblike, which Is | bias,— which keepes ^{oute} *back* his Inwarde hinder
| Legg which Is all Iñ all for the manege;- ——— |

[uncancelled] The trewe waye for Coruetts, |

[cancelled] The Seate Juste as Iñ Terre a Terre, butt nott so stiff, nor | so oblike,
the bridle hande oñ the oute side off his | neck, or turne, the knuckles
towards his neck, oñ | which hande soeuer hee goes, *

{* butt | the hande | butt a | litle on | the oute | side off | his neck |}

& the hande two or three | fingers about the pomell, & a litle forwarde, & helpe | Euerye time off his Cadance, or Coruett, & In good time, | ackordinge to the Horses time, for Euerye Horse, | takes his owne time, quick from the Grounde & to | Staye In the Ayre Vppoñ the hande,— your Bodye | alwayes to goe ^{to} thatt which coumes to you,— thatt Is | to bende a litle to hiñ as hee rises, butt so Insensiblye | as the beholders cañ nott perceue Itt, to Sitt as forwarde | to the pomell as you cañ, strayte, your thighes & | knees Close as iff theye weare glude to the sadle | butt your toes doune thatt you maye bee weake In | the hañes, *T* Thatt Is to Vnbrace your nerues, to | bee weake frome the knees dounwarde & Stronge | frome the knees vpwarde,— & nott touch your | Horse with the Legges, nor helpe with your legges | att All, butt to leade his Croupe free to followe his | fore partes thatt leades,— for when the Horse Is betweene the Pillers, or att the Single Piller | my waye, & no bodye off hiñ, yett hee goes verye | Juste as Cañ bee & yett ther Is no legges thatt | helpe hiñ, therefore you muste nott helpe with | your legges att all,— for iff you helpe with your | outwarde legg, hee thinkes hee muste Goe Terre a | Terre, & iff hee doe goe In Coruetts hee goes all awrye & | leanes on the oute side,— & iff you helpe with the | Inwarde legg, then hee putts oute his Croupe & leanes | all oñ the In side, & iff you helpe with both your legges It presses him to much & makes hiñ goe to quick a | time, therefore the Right waye Is nott to helpe with | your legges att all — This Is for a Horse thatt goes perfectlye,— butt iff a Horse putt In his Croupe to | much, you muste putt Itt oute with your Inwarde | legg, & iff hee putt oute his croupe to much then you | muste putt Itt In with your outwarde legg, butt | remember alwayes thatt your Horse Goes bias Vppoñ | his Circles, his forr partes alwayes to leade, which Is | oblike,— & this Is the Exacte waye for Coruetts |

[f.132^v uncanceled] For the Piroyte |

[cancelled] I thinke hee makes butt two Circles because hee Is | helpte with the outwarde Rayne off the bridle, & | goes In his length. ——— |

[uncanceled] For Terre a Terre |

[cancelled] To sitt strayte, & to feele hiṁ Gentlye vpon the hande, | thatt hee maye the better keepe a time, & iff you | looke towardes your Inwarde Sholder, Itt will fasilitate, | & giue libertye more to his Inwarde Sholder, to | Imbrase the turne much the better, & so goe Easeleye | & freelye withoute constraunte & bee pleased all | the whyle hee Goes, because Itt Is so naturall to hiṁ. | Iff you put downe your outwarde sholder very much you | caṁ nott putt Itt Iṁ, nor bee oblike, which is the busines. ——— |

[uncancelled] To Gallope a Horse forighte. |

[cancelled] To Gallope a Horse Strighte forwarde Is aṁ Exselente | Lessoṁ as Caṁ bee, for Itt putts a Horse vpon the | hande thatt hath no apewye & setles hiṁ & makes | hiṁ firme on the Hande Le petitt Galope, & stoppinge | off hiṁ att the Ende putts hiṁ vpon the Hanches | & oṁ the hande, att one time, & then turninge att | eyther ^{ende} after hee hath stopte, & rayed hiṁ twice | or thrise, vpon posates, then to turne hiṁ vpon a | walke ther hee obayes both the hande & the heele, | & theṁ hee will goe Iṁ pasadoes when you will | for to obaye the hande & the Heele Is all, so that | ther caṁ nott bee a better lessoṁ theṁ This. ——— |

[uncancelled] To Paseger his Croupe Iṁ. |

[cancelled] Is aṁ Exselente lessoṁ to doe Itt onelye with the | Bridle some times, when hee Is aduanste so farr | because Itt firmes hiṁ vpon the hande, & makes | hiṁ steadye to haue a good apewye, & to Vnderstande | suffer & obaye both the ^{bars} hande & the Curbe,— butt doe | nott vse Itt frequentlye, for feare off makinge hiṁ | to harde oṁ the hande, butt worke hiṁ for the | moste parte with the Cauatzane my waye, which | will setle hiṁ, & preserue his mouth, both barrs | & Curbe, which will theṁ bee so sensible as hee | will goe with the bridle alone, to wonder both | to the Rider, & the beholders, ——— |

[f.133^f uncanceled] For Terre a Terre. |

[cancelled] The Inwarde Rayne putts him on the oute side to reste | on his outwarde Legges, & Espetialye iff his nose bee | turnde vpp withiṁ the turne, & the resoṁ Is because | Itt putts downe his outwarde Sholder & his

outwarde | Hanch, & Indeed all the oute side off his bodye, which | putts
 hiṁ off his legges withoute the turne espetialye | on his outwarde hinder
 legg withoute the turne, | & makes thatt hinder legg to bowe so much Iñ |
 the Cambrill, as makes hiṁ Extreamleye $\wedge^{\text{vppoñ}}$ off the | Hanches, presses
 hiṁ withoute & att libertye | withiñ the Turne, the Horse muste Goe bias,
 you | & the Horse oblike, which I haue tolde you | offteñ, & the waye howe
 to doe Itt. ——— |

[uncancelled] How to putt a Horse Vppon the | Hanches. |

[cancelled] Nothings doth Itt more theñ stoppinge for Itt firmes | hiṁ off his
 heade, & putts hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches | att one time;— No Horse butt
 when his neck & heade | Is turnde Iñ, or braughte Iñ, when hee Is forste att
 a | stopp butt muste bee vppoñ the Hanches — for no Horse | putts downe
 his heade & pulls Itt Iñ, butt hee muste | bowe Iñ the Cambrills which Is
 Vppoñ the Hanches, | because his hinder legges Is made like our armes | for
 when hee holdes vpp his heade theñ hee is stiff { Iñ the Cambrills, & when
 hee pulls Iñ his heade theñ hee bowes Iñ the Cambrills & Is vppoñ the |
 Hanches,— when hee holdes vpp his heade theñ | his croupe Goes Iñ & hee
 Is strayed, & stiff oñ the | Cambrills & off off the Hanches, — Ande when
 | his heade Is pulled doune & Iñ, theñ his Croupe | goes oute a litle which
 makes hiṁ nesarelye | bende Iñ the Cambrills & so vppoñ the Hanches |
 { So The bitt | to bee shorte | Iñ the bran== | ches, & stronge | with the
 | curbe a litle | shorte pulls | doune his | heade & Iñ, | which putts | hiṁ
 verye | much oñ | the Hanches | }

so all Is a Horses heade downe & Iñ to putt hiṁ | vppoñ the Hanches, so
 stoppes Is moste Exselente | for thatt, & so goinge back for thatt pulls downe
 | his heade & In,— so my waye att the single Piller | pulls downe his heade
 & Iñ, which pulls hiṁ | Vppoñ the Hanches, — Vppoñ Coruetts holde \wedge^{him}
 well, | Vppon the Hande & thatt straytens the Curbe | which pulls downe
 his heade & In which putts | hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches,— the Cauatzane mye
 | waye pulls downe his heade & Iñ, which putts | hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches,—
 So all thatt putts a Horse | vpon the Hanches Is to pull downe his heade
 & Iñ | & vppoñ Circles as I tolde you before thatt waye | pulls hiṁ doune

on the oute side which makes hiṁ | Goe oñ th The Hanches, & this Is the
quintessence | off the truth off the manege. |

[f.133^v] To Paseger a Horse, his Croupe Iñ. |

Iff you woulde Paseger a Horse his Croupe Iñ Vppoñ | voltaes, to prepare
hiṁ for Terre a Terre, Itt Is the | Inwarde Rayne, oñ the oute side off his
Neck the | knuckles towards his neck, you sittinge oblike & | so the Horse
goes oblike, helpinge with the outwarde | legg a litle, butt nott so stronge as
Iñ Terre a Terre, | because the Action off a walke Is nott so violente, Iñ this
| waye the Horse doth nott lapp his legges ouer so | much, butt hee Goes
forwarde Continualye, & Is narowe | behinde which Is vppoñ the Hanches,
& large before, | & obayes both the hande & the Heele, & this prepares |
hiṁ for Terre a Terre. |

To Paseger a Horse his Croupe Iñ, Vppoñ Voltaes, to | prepare hiṁ for
the Piroyte, or demy voltaes Vppoñ | Pasadoes which Is all one, theñ you
muste helpe | with the outwarde Rayne, & outwarde legg, | thus hee Is
narowe, & large, Euerye Seconde time | both before & behinde, & lappes
oñ legg ouer añ | other more theñ the former, *butt Is ⁱⁿ danger Iñ* | goinge
backwarde wether the other alwayes goes | forwarde, & Is butt Euerye
seconde time vppoñ | the Hanches, *wel* heer the other waye Is alwayes
| Vppoñ the Hanches,— butt this prepares hiṁ beste | For the Piroyte,
& demye voltaes vppoñ Pasadoes | because you helpe with the outwarde
Rayne, Iñ | this Paseger & so you helpe with the outwarde | Rayne Iñ the
Piroyte & demye voltaes vppoñ | Pasadoes, & so this paseger fitts those
beste to | prepare hiṁ for theñ, this makes hiṁ obaye | the hande, & the
Heele to, & is proper Enough | for the Action off a Trott, because Itt Is
Cross | for the other Is nott onlye good butt absolutlye | trewe for Terre
a Terre & nothings Else & verye | good for Paseger. the outwarde Rayne
presses hiṁ | oñ the Inside, & the Inwarde Rayne presses hiṁ oñ | the oute
Side,— This Is the truth off these two | Exselente wayes for Paseger, &
the Resons howe | eyther off theñ workes & for whatt Eyther | off theñ
Is moste proper, so you shall nott bee | Iñ the Darke *n* for whatt you doe

butt worke | your Horse alwayes knowinglye & alwayes | for whatt Is moste
proper still for whatt | you designe In all your Lessons In the | Manege. |

[f.134^r uncanceled] For Terre a Terre, |

[cancelled] When you putt your bodye oblike, you muste twiste the | Raynes
off your Back like a with on thatt side which | goes a litle back, you shall
finde Itt moste iff you doe | Itt right as Itt shoulde bee, & theñ the Horse
will goe | Easeleye & perfectlye well.— The hande lowe | workes moste
oñ the Barrs & propereste for Terre a | Terre, — the hande a litle hier Is
propereste for all | Ayres, because Itt workes more oñ the curbe theñ oñ |
the Barrs, ——— |

The Exselenceye off puttinge a Horses Inwarde | hinder legg oute, or to
his outwarde hinder legg | Vppon voltaes, or Circles, large or narowe duñ
Piste, | or his heade to the wall, or his Croupe oute, or his | Croupe In, or
vppoñ stoppinge, or In makinge hiñ | Goe back,— In all these thinges the
puttinge oute off | his Inwarde hinder legg Is the busines, & so alwayes |
to worke hiñ In the manege Suples his Sholders, | & putts hiñ vppoñ the
Hanches. ——— |

1: Firste legg & Rayne off a Side to trot hiñ vppon | large Circles,
or narowe circles, duñ Piste putts | his Inwarde hinder legg oute, to his
outwarde hinder | legg, |

2: Secondlye legg, & Rayne off a Side to Galope hiñ | vppoñ large Circles,
or narowe Circles duñ Piste | putts his Inwarde hinder legg oute, to his
outwarde | hinder leg. |

3: Thirdlye, legg, & Rayne off a side as iff his | heade weare to the Piller,
your Inwarde Rayne, | & Inwarde legg, putts his Inwarde hinder legg, | oute,
to his outwarde hinder legg |

4 Forthlye, legg, & Rayne, Contrarye, his croupe In | pullinge the
Cauatzane Rayne as I taughte you | before you & the Horse oblige the
Horse to goe | bias, Eyther vppoñ large Circles, or narowe In | his length,
putts his Inwarde hinder legg oute | to his outwarde hinder legg, ——— |

5 The Horse heade to the wall, Legg & Rayne | Contrarye you & hee beinge oblige [*sic.*] & the Horse bias, putts his Inwarde hinder legg | oute, to his | outwarde hinder legg. ——— |

[f.134^v] 4: When Vppoñ Circles you Rayse hiñ, alwayes | 6: when you Rayse hiñ pull your Inwarde legg | a litle to hiñ,— & thatt putts his Inwarde hinder | legg oute, to his outwarde hinder Legg.- ——— |

5: Att the Stopp, the Inwarde Rayne, & Inwarde legg | 7: putts the Horses Inwarde hinder legg oute | & to his outwarde hinder legg. ——— |

6: For Goinge Back pull the Inwarde Rayne | 8: & helpe with the Inwarde Legg. which putts | his Inwarde hinder legg oute, to his outwarde | hinder legg. ——— |

These 8: ⁶: seuerall Lessons to worke a | Horse In Is the Quintesence off the manege | Suples his Sholders, putts hiñ vppoñ the | Hanches, because hee Is narowe behinde | still, for whersoouer a Horse Is narowe | hee Is vppoñ thatt, & neuer where his legges | 7: are wide, so nowe follows the 9 ⁷th Lessoñ. | 9: for Terre a Terre, legg & Rayne Contrarye, | pullinge the Rayne as I formerlye taughte | you, you oblike, & the Horse oblike, the | Horse to bee Bias, this putts his Inwarde | hinder legg, oute & to his outwarde | hinder legg ——— |

Vppoñ Demye Voltaes, legg, & Rayne, | Contrarye, pullinge the Rayne as I haue taughte you, you & the Horse | 8: oblike, the Horse to bee bias, putts | 10. his Inwarde hinder legg oute to his | outwarde hinder legg, which putts | hiñ Vppoñ the hanches, nott onlye because | his hinder legges Is narowe & withiñ | the lines off his forr legges, butt because | the Horses hinder legges beinge made | like our Armes, the puttinge the Inwarde | hinder legg oute off nesesitye hee muste | bowe In the Cambrills & thatt muste | putt hiñ Vppoñ the Hanches, wether | hee will or no.

{ To trot a Horse duñ | piste vppoñ a shorte | trot, legg & rayne | oñ the Inside, putts | his Inwarde hinder legg oute to his outw== | arde hinder legg, | which makes hiñ | bowe In the Cambrills, | & so vppoñ the | Hanches.} |

These 10: 9: lessons are | moste Exselentlye oporatiue & the truth | off the manege, for all these thinges thatt | I haue tolde you, therfor you see the | 11: 9: Inwarde hinder legg beinge putt oute Is | the busines to make a Horse Goe trewlye | & to putt hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches. |

[f.135^r] This Article more a bouthe the puttinge the Inwarde | hinder legg oute to the outwarde hinder legg to | make hiṁ narowe behinde — Itt Is a serten Rule | withoute an Exseption, thatt iff the Horse bee narowe | before hee Is wide behinde, & iff the Horse bee narowe | behinde hee Is wide before, this Is sertenlye trewe | & Itt Is as trewe, thatt the Horse Is alwayes preste | & vppoñ thatt wher hee Is narroweste, & neuer | Vppoñ thatt wher hee Is wide, wether Itt bee before, ——— | or behinde, & therefore to bee narowe behinde | makes hiṁ still vppoñ the Hanches, — wee haue | discoursde hetherto off the righte waye of workinge | off Horses to dress them perfectlye, Legg & rayne | off a Side, Legg & Rayne Contrarye, Vppoñ a walke, | Vppoñ a Trot, vppoñ a Gallope duñ piste, vpon | stoppinge, Vppoñ goinge back. — his Croupe oute his | Croupe Iñ, Vppoñ Paseger Vpon Circles Vppoñ | Paseger his heade to the wall,— vppoñ Terre a Terre, | Vppoñ demye voltaes Terre a Terre, whatt helpe | Vppoñ Posates eyther forwarde, or vppoñ Circles | vppoñ Coruetts vppoñ voltaes, forwarde or | Backwarde, & so Demye Ayres the same helpe | butt to giue a longer time,— & thus must for | the Inwarde Rayne off the Bridle & Inwarde | hinder legg beinge putt oute which Is the | Busines. ——— |

Nowe for the outwarde Rayne | off the Bridle & the Effectes off thatt |

When a Horse Gallopes a large Circle then the | Inwarde Rayne, & Inwarde legg, butt when you | Change hiṁ then you muste helpe with the outwarde | Rayne, & outwarde legg, wether your change bee | a Demye Voltae, Or a quarter off a Turne, wether | Itt bee withiñ the Circle, or withoute the Circle, | & so In Serpeiante which Is changinge Iñ & oute | & thatt Is butt a quarter off a Turne, thus for | the outwarde Rayne,— butt iff the Horse bringe | nott Enough his fore partes aboute then helpe | with your Iñwarde legg, thatt Is lett the poyse | bee oñ the Inwarde sturrope, & thatt will bringe | hiṁ a bouthe, to the purpose. |

For the Piroyte |

The outwarde Rayne nott helpinge with the legges att | all,— This outwarde Rayne preses a Horse off his | legges oñ the Iñside, narowes hiñ before, & Inlarges | hiñ behinde, & his outwarde hinder legg Is vpp | 2: because hee restes off his Inwarde hinder legg, ——— | & the outwarde Rayne workes these Effectes | which Is proper for All these thinges. ——— |

[f.135^v uncanceled] For Demye Voltaes Iñ Pasadoes. |

[cancelled] Thatt Is butt halfe a piroyte, & therfore | you muste helpe with the outwarde Rayne | for the same Resons, thatt I Gaue you before, | 3: & Eyther the outwarde legg, or the Inwarde | legg, as you finde ocation. ——— |

For Capriolls, |

Eyther forwarder or Vppoñ voltaes the | outwarde Rayne because Iñ all these wher | the outwarde Rayne Is vsed, Itt straytens | them before, & Inlarges them behinde, | & Iñ all these the Horses off them selues | are so for Itt Is naturall to bee so, & Espetialye | Iñ all Leapes, for their Croupes muste bee | free, otherwise theye Cañ nott leape, & |

{For paseger | the outw== | arde Rayne | 5: | }

the outwarde Rayne doth thatt, & when | theye leape Iñ Circles, then the Inwarde | legg a litle to hiñ, to giue his Croupe more | libertye to playe, Iñ deede to Goe a litle | 5: oute, for Iñ leapes a Horses Croupe muste | nott bee Constraynde, or subiected, butt | the Contrarye haue all the libertye Iñ | the worlde — The same helpes with the | outwarde Rayne serues for all Leapes | as well as Capriolls, wether theye bee | Groupadoes, Balotadoes, or a pase & a Leape |

So these 4⁵: Is all the vse off the | outwarde Rayne off the Bridle | thatt I knowe,— Exsepte a Horse bee | so stiff neckte thatt hee will nott Turne | & then to bende hiñ you maye vse the | outwarde Rayne,— butt thatt neuer hapens | Iñ my manege, for the Inwarde Cauatzane | Rayne eyther Iñ my hande or tied to the | Poñell, with the Inwarde Legg to helpe | makes hiñ

so suple as you neuer neede the | outwarde Rayne off the Bridle for thatt
| vice, — naye Itt makes them̄ so suple, & so | Easeye as they are neuer
Entier nor hath | the Credensa thatt hath troublde all our | Horse-meñ, &
writers so much, Ande | Thus much for the outwarde Rayne. |

[f.136^f uncanceled] For to recouer a Horse thatt hath the vice off | bringinge
Iñ his Sholders, to much, Iñdeed bringeⁱnge | In his outwarde Sholder Is
the vice. ——— |

[cancelled] 1: For a Horse thatt bringes Iñ his outwarde sholder | to much hee
muste off nesesitye theñ putt oute his Croupe, | butt nowe the question̄ Is
wether hee doth disobaye the | heele or the hande, I Saye hee doth disobaye
both heele | & hande, & doth Coume Iñ to the Turne, & nott keepe his |
Grounde butt doth de Robe le volte, — walkinge a Horse | neuer so longe
his Croupe Iñ vppoñ Paseger, & though hee | obaye both hande & heele
vppoñ a walke, as well as | Cañ bee, yett hee will haue the same vice still
whēñ hee | goes Terre a Terre so thatt walkinge doth hiñ no good | att
all,— Itt is a Harde vice to bee recouerde,- you muste | knowe thatt the hier
a Horse Goes before the more | libertye hee hath to bringe Iñ his outwarde
Sholder | therefore hee muste Goe lowe,— The remedye theñ to | recouer
hiñ Is thus,- you muste putt your bridle hande | as lowe as you cañ vppoñ
his neck, & as much oñ the | oute side off his neck as you cañ, & still worke
with | your hande on the oute side to thruste his sholders | & forr partes
as much frome the Turne as you Cañ | which putts Iñ his Croupe, & more
to putt ^h Iñ att the | same time thatt you press his sholders frome the |
Turne press your outwarde legg to hiñ as much as | you cañ & Spurr iff you
finde ocation̄ & keepe hiñ | as much forwarde as you Cañ, — & bringe Iñ
your | Inwarde Sholder a litle to putt his Croupe more Iñ | & these helps
will Cuer this Ill vice, weare hee | the stubbornste Horse Iñ the worlde, butt
all these | helps are false to a Horse thatt goes perfectlye | so whēñ the
disease Is Cuerde, you muste leaue | the Phisick, & faule to your ordinarye
& holsome | Diett off Ridinge Iñ the manege, which Is the trewe | waye as
I haue formerlye shewde you. ——— |

[cancelled] An other waye to Cuer this vice. |

2: When the Horse goes Terre a Terre oñ the lefte hande | pull the outwarde Rayn off the Bridle with your | Righte hande towardes you,— & so for the Righte | hande, putt your Bridle In to your Righte hande | & pull the outwarde Rayne off the bride with your | lefte hande,— This will Cuer hiñ butt Itt Is as wronge | & falsen theñ the firste, because Itt makes hiñ | looke oute off the Turne, & his legges goes much | falsen theñ with the firste waye. ——— |

[f.136^v uncanceled] An other waye to Cuer this vice, |

3: The Horse bringinge Iñ his sholders so | Extreamleye makes hiñ Coume In to the | Turne because hee goes nott forwarde, & | therefore holde your Bridle as I haue tolde | you, & helpe him with both your legges to | putt hiñ forwarde, & iff hee goes forwarde | the Horse Is Cuerde off thatt vice.— this Is | the beste waye. ——— |

An other waye after these | which Is the trewe waye. |

4: Thatt Is your hande hie or lowe as you finde ocation | the knuckles towardes his neck, your bodye oblike | & make the Horse goe vppon demye voltaes, his hinder | feete almoste Iñ a Place to fixe his croupe & make | hiñ obaye the heele, & when hee goes perfectlye | Vppon his Demye Voltaes, then hee will goe Vppon | his whole voltaes as well, & like this beste | Exsepte Iñ greate nesesitye,— & then to vse the | others thatt I writt before,. ——— |

An other waye for a Horse | Thatt bringes Iñ his outwarde | Sholder to much. |

For a Horse thatt bringes Iñ his outwarde | sholder to much, hee muste then off nesesitye | putt oute his Croupe & no Horse thatt putts oute his | Croupe, butt hee Is vppon the Sholders, & off off the | Hanches, then to putt hiñ vppon the Hanches | Cuers hiñ,— & ther Is no waye so good to putt hiñ | vppon the Hanches, as good stoppes, both vppon his | walke, Trott & Gallope, eyther straye forwarde | or vppon Circles,— & to rayse hiñ Iñ posates | & these two will putt hiñ vppon the Hanches | & then hee Is Cuerde, ——— |

To Galope a Horse Vppoñ large | Circles or narowe Circles dun | Piste.
 ——— | You muste helpe with the Inwarde Rayne, & | Inwarde Legg, &
 iff his sholders Coume nott In Enough | with the outwarde Rayne, Iff they
 \wedge^{bee} seperated | the Raynes In both your handes then pull the | Inwarde
 Rayne, & helpe with the outwarde | Rayne to both att a time, & you shall
 finde the | benefitt off Itt, ——— |

[f.137^r] Horse vppoñ Paseger his Croupe Iñ | The Inwarde Rayne off the
 Cauatzane | Tied straye to the Poñell. |

Heer Iñ this Actioñ beinge the actioñ off a Trott, | Iff your Raynes bee
 seperated Iñ both your | handes, you maye helpe hiñ with the Inwarde |
 Rayne off the Bridle, & att the same time helpe | with the outwarde Rayne
 iff his sholders | Coume nott Iñ Enough, & so to helpe thus for | Eyther
 hande,— or iff the Raynes bee onye | oñ your lefte hande, iff his sholders
 Coume nott | Iñ Enough, then helpe with the outwarde Rayne | butt till
 then helpe with the Inwarde Rayne | & whye you maye helpe with Eyther
 as ocatioñ | serues, Is because Pasager Is the same actioñ thatt | a trott Is
 which Is Cross,— Naye the same will | doe with a Gallope which Is two off
 a side & | Continued duñ piste, butt nott In Terre a Terra | because hee
 Is straytende before, & wide behinde, | & muste putt oute his Croupe to
 much, for my | former writinges will shewe you the Resons | off Itt; ——— |

Butt a Horse Vppoñ Paseger | his croupe Iñ, the Inwarde Rayne | off the
 Cauatzane tied straye | to the Poñell. ——— |

The Raynes seperated Iñ both your handes \wedge^{pull} the | Inwarde Rayne your
 hande oñ the oute side off | his neck, the knuckles towards his Neck, or |
 the Bridle onye Iñ your lefte hande your hande | oñ the oute side off his
 neck *on* \wedge^{to} pull the Inwarde Rayne & your knuckles | towards his neck oñ
 which hande soeuer you | goe sittinge oblike pullinge his nose a litle vpp |
 Iñ to the turne, Is absolutlye the beste waye | for paseger his Croupe Iñ,
 because Itt narowes | him alwayes behinde & so Vppoñ the hanches, |

obseruations |

The hande off the Bridle Lowe the Horse goes lowe | because Itt workes more oñ the barrs then the Curbe, presses | the Barrs, & slacks the Curbe, & so fitter for Terre a Terre | then Ayres, & Cuere the vice off bringinge Iñ his sholders | to much,— To holde the Bridle hande hier, workes more | oñ the curbe then on the barrs, presses the Curbe & slackes | the Barrs & therefore Is fitter for Ayres then Terre a Terre, | because Itt rayses hiñ more,— for holdinge the bridle hande | lowe or hye, the Horse alwayes Rises ackordinge to the | Highte off your hande, iff Lowe the Horse goes Lowe | Iff you holde your hande Hye, the Horse Goes Hye | Still ackordinge to the hight off your hande for | the Resons I tolde you before. ——— |

[f.137^v uncanceled] Obseruation, |

[cancelled] For lett the Curbe bee slack or no Curbe & the | Horse will hardlye Rise & lett the Curbe bee | strayte & hee will Rise hye,— so your hande lowe | slackes the Curbe & makes hiñ goe lowe, & the | Hande hye straytens, the Curbe & makes hiñ | goe Hye, so you nowe see the truth off thes perticuler | helpes, & their operations. ——— |

[uncanceled] For a Horse to goe Iñ Coruetts | Backwarde. |

[cancelled] For a Horse to goe Iñ Coruetts backwarde Vppoñ a | strayte line by a wall, you muste helpe with the outwarde | Rayne, which Is the Rayne to the wall, to narowe hiñ | before, & to Inlarge hiñ behinde because nowe his | hinder partes leades & his forr partes followes, | & your hande lowe thatt hee maye nott Rise to | hye, butt giue libertie for his hinder partes to | leade & helpe with your hande Euerye time as | hee faules oñ the grounde to pull hiñ back In Juste | time, & nott helpe with your legges att all, nor | so stiff off your sturopes & the Bodye a litle forwarde, | & thus hee will goe verye Juste ——— |

The wall for Terre a Terre. |

The Horse Heade to the wall, pull the Inwarde | Rayne as I haue tolde you, eyther the Inwarde | Rayne off the Cauatzane, or the Inwarde Rayne off | the Bridle, & sitt oblike, the Horses fore partes | to goe before his hinder partes & your hande lowe | thatt hee maye goe lowe, & thus hee will goe

Extreamly | oñ the Hanches, & verye Juste, & nothings will | make hiñ goe
better nor Is so good as his heade to | the wall, & helpe hiñ as I haue tolde
you. ——— |

[f.138^f] The moste Exselente Secrett off the Bridle hande /— I/=n the worlde
the Raynes beinge both Iñ your | lefte hande, to worke both the Bridle
Raynes att | one time, butt Espetialye the Inwarde Rayn | Thus for a
Horse thatt Is nott suple off his Sholders |

when both the Bridle Raynes are Iñ your lefte hande | when you goe oñ the
Righte hande for Terre a Terre, | then I tolde you to putt your bridle on
the | oute side off his neck which Is the lefte side, your | knuckles towardes
his neck, which pulls the Inwarde | Rayne because Itt lies aboue your litle
finger, & makes | the Horse oblike for the Resons I tolde you before, | nowe
iff his sholders Coume nott Iñ Enough, putt | your hande oñ the Inside
off the Turne, & helpe as | you did before, this pulls the Inwarde Rayne
moste | because you helpe hiñ as you did, & beinge oñ the | Inside off his
neck Itt pulls the outwarde Rayne | to, which bringes his sholders, & this Is
Extremlye | good vppoñ Paseger his Croupe Iñ.— Nowe for the | lefte hande
for Terre a Terre I tolde you to putt | your Bridle hande oñ the oute side
off his neck | which Is the Righte Side, your knuckles towardes | his neck
which pulls the Inwarde Rayne, because | Itt lies vnder your litle finger, &
makes the | Horse oblike for the Resons I tolde you Before ——— | Nowe
iff the Horse Coume nott Iñ Enough with his Sholders, putt your hande oñ
the Inwarde | Rayne moste, because you helpe hiñ as you did & | beinge
oñ the Inside off his neck Itt pulls the outwarde | Rayne to, which bringes
his sholders & this Is | Extreamlye good Vppoñ Paseger his Croupe Iñ |
This Is a moste admirable helpe iff his sholders | Coume nott Iñ Enough,
otherwise neuer vse Itt | butt the firste waye thatt I shewde you,— | which
Is farr the beste iff the Horse bee | Suple off his sholders, Iff nott suple off
his | Sholders then vse this waye— & Itt will | Cuer hiñ,— There are greate
Secretts off the | Hande. ——— |

{ *Ande the | other false* }

This laste Helpe for Terre a Terre I muste | tell you Is false so thatt It Is
butt to cuer the | vice of the stiffnes of his Sholders, because Itt | brings
In his outwarde sholder which Is verye | false for Terre a Terre besides, hee
cañ nott well | goe forwarde with Itt,— butt ther Is añ other falte |

{ *This for | Terre a Terre, | butt nott | for Paseger.* } |

the hande beinge oñ the Iñside the Horse Is | withoute mee, so thatt I haue
no feelinge of ^{hiñ} as | iff hee weare att libertye,— & when my hande | Is oñ
the oute side my knuckles towardes his neck, | I haue the Horse withiñ my
hande, & withiñ | my heele, & master off hiñ to driue hiñ as I liste, | faster
or slower as I will, & haue a feelinge of | hiñ both forr partes, & hinder
parte, & beinge | oblike his hinder legges Is alwayes within the | lines off
his forr legges, which Is vppoñ the | Hanches, & so his forr legg Is | alwayes
before his Inwarde | hinder legg which Is | trewe |

[f.138^v] For the Piroyte or Demye Voltaes | Vppoñ Pasadoe. |

Ther you muste helpe with the outwarde Rayne | your hande oñ the In side
off his neck to bringe his | sholders faste a boutte, heer the Horse goes nott
| forwarde as Iñ Terre a Terre, besides his legges makes | cleer añ other
action, heer his for partes are | streytende, & his hinder partes att Libertye
| so thatt I haue nothinge to doe butt to pull his | Sholders faste a boutte
which muste bee my hande | on the In side to pull the outwarde Rayne
which | pulls his sholders aboutte,— nott helpinge with | the legges att all,
& the Horse heer Is preste oñ | the Inside off the Turne & Iñ Terre a Terre
hee | Is preste oñ the oute side, the same helpes for | the piroyte serues also
for the demye voltaes | Vppoñ Pasadoes, those demye voltaes, beinge butt
| halfe a Piroyte,— & this Is the truth off this | busines. ——— |

Observations, for the outwarde Rayne |

You can neuer helpe with the outwarde Rayne | butt Itt straytens a Horse
before & Inlarges hiñ | behinde, Itt Is god [*sic.*] to Gallope large or Straet
Circles | duñ piste, because a Horse aughte to bee strayte before | & large
behinde Iñ a Gallope, yett the Inwarde Rayne | & Inwarde legg I like
better,— so the outwarde Rayne | maye bee good vppoñ Paseger, butt

I like the Inwarde | Rayne & outwarde legg better vppoñ Paseger as I | tolde you before, so for all leapes the outwarde Rayne | Piroyte & demy voltaes vppoñ Pasadoes, because all | these aughte to bee streyte before & large behinde | butt moste abhominablye false for Terre a Terre, | because thatt Ayre aughte to bee large before & | strayte behinde, & you cañ neuer helpe with the | outwarde Rayne butt you strayten ^{him} before & Inlarge | hiñ behinde. ——— |

[uncancelled] Obseruations for the Inwarde Rayne, |

For Terre a Terre ther Is no waye butt the Inwarde | Rayne pulde as I shewde you before for thatt | Inlarges ^{him} before, & straytens hiñ behinde makes | hiñ looke Iñ to the Turne to Imbrase the Turne | the better, & to goe forwarde to make hiñ oblike, | & my bodye followes hiñ oblike, & to goe bias so | thatt his fore partes alwayes goes before his hinder | partes, kepinge back his Inwarde hinder legg, | presses hiñ on the oute Side putts hiñ Extreamleye | Vppoñ the Hanches because hee Is narowe behinde | his towe hinder legges beinge withiñ the lines | off his forr legges & thus I haue the Horse withiñ my hande & withiñ my heele, wher the outwarde | Rayne [^] makes ^{him} within my hande & loste, & loose & my bodye | Iñ a wronge posture, Iñ the outwarde Rayne the | Horse followes the Hande & heer In the Inwarde | Rayne the hande followes the Horse, & Is Constraynde |

{* with | the hande | & puttinge | Itt Iñ with | the Heele. |}

* to goe well wether hee will or no, butt so Easeleye | & naturalye as Itt Is a pleasure to hiñ | when the outwarde [^] Rayne Is Constraynde | putting his croupe oute * |

[f.139^r uncanceled] Obseruations For the Bridle Raynes | Iñ Terre a Terre. |

[cancelled] The outwarde Rayne for the Righte hande the olde waye | Is the Inwarde Rayne for the lefte hande my waye, | Ande the outwarde Rayne for the lefte hande the olde | waye Is the Inwarde Rayne for the Righte hande my | waye,— I tolde you thatt the outwarde Rayne when you | worke thatt the Horse followes your hande, & wheñ | you worke the Inwarde Rayne the hande followes | the Horse which Is more Naturall,— wheñ you worke | the

outwarde Rayne you pull & force the Horse to | followe you,— & when you
 pull the Inwarde Rayne | the Horse pulls you Easeleye, & your Hande &
 bodye | followes him Naturalye, withoute Constraynte,— | when you helpe
 with the outwarde Rayne the Horse | Is withoute your hande, & as iff hee
 weare all withoute | you or his fore partes withoute your hande & his hinder
 | parte within your legg, so halfe off one side, & halfe off | the other side so
 loose, & discomposed, & your seate wronge, | & when you helpe with the
 Inwarde Rayne, the Bridle | on the oute side off his neck, hande & heele Is
 off one | side, & so the Horse Is within my hande & heele & | master off
 him to drive or helpe him to goe Slowe or | faste, hie, or lowe as I liste,—
 the outwarde Rayne | Straytens his forr partes, to bringe In his outwarde |
 sholder, & so makes him wide, ^{behinde} putts him vppoñ the | sholders, &
 off off the Hanches, & makes him looke | oute off the Turne,— Ande to helpe
 with the | Inwarde Rayne Inlarges him before to Imbrase the | Turne the
 better, & narrowes him behinde which | putts him Vppoñ the hanches,—
 To helpe him with | the outwarde Rayne putts oute his Croupe & all the
 same | time you woulde putt Itt In with your heele, to Contraries | att
 one [&] the same time which Is Impossible,— To helpe | with the Inwarde
 Rayne, pulls his Inwarde forr | legg frome his outwarde forr legg which
 Inlarges | him befor pullinge Itt back Circularlye which off | nesetye [*sic.*]
 makes Itt longer within the Turne to leade | withall, & att the same time,
 thatt you pull Itt so, you | putt his Inwarde hinder legg to his outwarde
 | hinder legg, & your outwarde hinder legg keepes | his outwarde hinder
 legg close to Itt which makes | his two hinder legges within the lines off his
 forr | legges, & so vppoñ the hanches,— The outwarde | Rayne presses the
 Horse on the Inside, leaninge | on his Inwarde hinder legg, which Is false, |
 butt the Inwarde Rayne presses the Horse on the | oute Side, & makes his
 outwarde hinder legg | bowe In the Cambrills, & his Inwarde hinder legg |
 thruste vnder his belleye which makes him Extreamley | on the Hanches —
 his Inwarde forr legg goinge before | his Inwarde hinder legg, & your legg
 keepes his | outwarde hinder legg within the line off his outwarde |

Lforr }

hinder legg the Horse oblike, & your bodye oblike | followes hiṁ, naturalye,
& Easeleye,— when the | outwarde Rayne makes hiṁ goe all Iñ peeces &
wronge | both you & the Horse,— butt you muste remember alwayes | your
hande on the oute Side off his neck your knuckles alwayes | towardes his
neck, & nowe for Terre a Terre & Paseger you | See playnly what Is right
& what Is wronge | & the resons off Itt. ——— |

[f.139^v] The olde waye for Trench & Martingale |

Is to no purpose to dress a Horse att all since the Ende off | Ridinge Is
to goe with the Bitt, for the Trench & martingale | you muste vse both
handes, & you haue nott a thirde | hande for the sorde, butt with the bitt
your lefte hande | gouernes the Hors, & your Righte hande Is free for the |
Sorde,— Butt I will lett you see thatt the Trench & | Martingale Is Juste
so much time loste as you Ride hiṁ | with Itt, & no preperation att all for
the Bitt,— for | firste the Trench hath no Curbe, therefore hee will nott |
Vnderstande the Curbe bye Itt, then secondlye ther | Is no Trench Iñ the
worlde, or Snaffle, thatt Euer | wraughte Vppoñ the barrs off a Horse butt
vppoñ | his lippes, & the weekes off his mouth, so whatt | preperation Is
ther Iñ the Trench for the Bitt, when | the Trench Cañ neyther make hiṁ
vnderstande the | Curbe nor the Barrs, & the Bitt workes onlye Vppoñ |
those two places Curbe & Barrs, & withoute those | two no Horse Cañ bee
a Readye Horse, naye pull | downe the Horses heade as much as you Cañ
with | the martingale, the Trench shall neuer worke vppoñ | his barrs, the
Snaffle Is the same, for a Trench Is | butt a greate Snaffle,— Then for the
Martingale | vse Itt neuer so longe, the Horse shall nott bee settlde | on Jott
the better when you take Itt off, So nowe you | maye see howe Vn^ufull a
follye the Trench & | Martingale Is for the dressinge off Horses, & | merlye
so much time loste to no purpose butt to | labor In vayne & disorder the
poore Horse so | thatt I wonder att those Horse-Meñ thatt had no | more
witt then to vse Itt.— No Itt Is the Bitt | with the Cauatzane, & the
Trewē Arte off Ridinge | thatt makes & dresses Horses perfectlye, & nott |
the Trench & Martingale; ——— |

Observations. |

When the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne Is tied shorte | to the Poñell then
you maye helpe with the outwarde | Rayne off the Bridle withoute anye
danger off Inlarginge | hiñ behinde & straytninge off hiñ before, because |
the Inwarde Rayne off the Cauatzane beinge tied | so streyghte giues hiñ
the righte plye off his heade | & neck, so thatt hee cañ nott faule Into
thatt former | vice, & thus you maye worke the outwarde Rayne | withoute
danger, Eyther Vppoñ Paseger his croup | Iñ, or vppoñ Terre a Terre, &
Itt suples his Sholders | well to boue,— butt to worke the outwarde Rayne
| off the Bridle alone withoute the helpe off the | Cauatzane Is verye false
as I haue shewde you | the resons off Itt heertofore,— Butt when the |
Cauatzane Rayne Is tied so shorte to the poñell | I cañ helpe better with
the Inwarde Rayne off | the bridle on the oute side off his neck the knuckles
| towarde his neck off, eyther side when the Cauatzane | Is tied shorte then
with the outwarde Rayne off | the bridle & much more trewlye & | Easier
for the Horse. |

[f.140^r] For a Horse that hath the vice off bringinge | Iñ his outwarde Sholder
to much. |

I tolde you formerlye thatt Itt was disobayenge *the* | both the Hande & the
Heele, butt more the hande, | for no Horse cañ bringe Iñ his *Croupe* sholders
to | much butt hee muste putt oute his croupe, & no Horse | that bringeth
Iñ his sholders to much, butt hee coumes | Iñ the Turne, & keepes nott his
Grounde, & iff hee | Rise to hye hee hath more libertye to bringe Iñ his |
outwarde Sholder,— Then the busines to recouer hiñ | off thatt vice Is to
keepe hiñ lowe, & to make hiñ goe | forwarde trewlye both with his legges
& bodye | you sittinge Iñ the righte posture as you shoulde, & | with trewe
& righte helpes for Terre a Terre as I | haue often shewde you before,—
Then to Cuer hiñ | Is thus,— Sitt oblike as I haue shewde you pullinge |
the Inwarde Rayne, your hande oñ the oute side off | his neck your knuckles
towardses his neck, & to | keepe hiñ doune thatt hee shall nott rise to hye
your | Bridle hande as lowe as his neck, & thatt will keepe | hiñ doune &
thatt ^{hee} shall nott rise to hye & ther Is halfe | his vice Cuerde, thatt hee
cañ nott coume In so much | & nowe to keepe hiñ frome Couminge Iñ att
all, because | his Couminge Iñ Is by resoñ off his nott goinge forwarde, |

therfore to make hiṁ goe forwarde you muste | helpe with both your legges,
 & as the outwarde | legg keepes Iñ his Croupe, so the Inwarde legg putts
 | hiṁ forwarde, so the hande lowe keepes hiṁ doune | & both legges putts
 hiṁ forwarde, & theñ hees | Cuerde with righte helpes & goes Trewlye this
 | I haue tried & finde Itt to bee moste Trewe, | wher all the other helpes
 will doe butt theye | are false both for the Mañ & the Horse | therfore vse
 none off theṁ butt this Exsepte Iñ | greate Extremetyes, ——— |

For Paseger, his Croupe In |

I haue Considerde better off Itt, & finde thatt Itt Is the | action off a Trott
 ^^m which action his legges are cross, & | the Inwarde Rayne off the bridle
 straytens his legges | withoute the Turne, & bindes vpp his outwarde sholder
 | & his legges withoute the turne & his legges withiñ | the Turne att libertye
 so as hee cañ nott bee vppoñ the | action off a trot which a walke Is butt
 so constraynde | & his outwarde sholder so bounde vpp as hee cañ nott |
 lapp the outwarde legges ouer the Inwarde legges | so the Horse muste bee
 att libertye withoute the | turne, butt In paseger because Itt Is the action
 off a | trot, hee Is narowe & wide Euerye seconde time thatt | Is when hee
 Is wide before hee Is narowe behinde | when hee Is narowe before then hee
 Is wide behinde | & hee Is alwayes Vppoñ thatt wher hee Is narroweste | &
 thatt Is Euerye seconde time a litle | Vppoñ the Sholders or a litle |

[f.140^v] Vppon the Hanches, butt more Vppoñ the Hanches, | then the sholders
 because his croupe Is Iñ the | narrower Circle, & therfore more preste &
 supiected [*sic.*] | In the Croupe, therfore for Paseger you muste | vse the
 outwarde Rayne thatt the outwarde | Shoulder maye bee free, thatt his
 outwarde | legg maye lapp ouer his Inwarde legg, so when | the Cauatzane
 Is tied to the Poñell, Itt pulls hiṁ | doune, & giues libertye to his outwarde
 Sholder | & theñ helpe with the outwarde Rayne to, | ther Is greate diference
 betwixte the Cauatzane | & the bridle for the operation off theṁ, for one
 | workes vppoñ the Nose & the other Vppoñ the | barrs & the Curbe,
 — Butt the outwarde Rayne | Is horrible false for Terra a Terra, demye
 voltaes | terre a Terre or le petit Galope his Croupe Iñ | or for Coruetts
 or demye Ayres, eyther forwarde | or Vppoñ voltaes, for all these are with

the Inwarde | Rayne for the former resons I haue shewde you, | So thatt
the outwarde Rayne Is for all Leapes | forwarde or Vppoñ voltaes, for the
Piroyte, | demye voltaes Vppoñ Pasadoes, Vppoñ paseger | his Croupe Iñ,
all these with the outwarde | Rayne because theye are all strytende before
| & larger behinde onlye the Paseger Is strytende | Euerye Seconde Time
— Ande the Inwarde | Rayne for Terre a Terre & demye voltaes Terre a |
Terre, & le petit Gallope his Croupe In hee Is | alwayes Inlargde before &
narowe behinde, | & Corvetts & Demye Ayres, though his hinder | legges Is
wider theñ his forr legges, yett | his hinder legges Is withiñ the lines off his
| sholders which makes hiñ vppoñ the hanches, | & therefore the Inwarde
Rayne for all these | & to keepe hiñ vpp;— this Is exactlye | the Truth.
—— |

[f.141^f] For the operatiõ off the Cauatzone | my waye, |

The Cauatzane my waye workes vppoñ his nose, & so hath | the greater
pull to giue hiñ the greater plye & bente | beinge the parte the furthest
off frome your hande, | & this plye or bente Is frome his nose to his withers
| which Is to bende his heade & neck *for Itt* ^ & workes | *butt litle* ^ ^{to}
oñ the Sholders, this bente Is to bende Into | the turne, Itt pulls his heade
doune to, & makes hiñ | looke In to the turne, his heade beinge pulde
doune | when hee Is preste putts hiñ more vppoñ the hanches | this Is
with the Inwarde Rayne off the Cauatzane | when the Inwarde Rayne off
the Cauatzane Is | pullde harde & streyte & so tied to the Poñell | Itt
hath more forse because the poñell keepes Itt att | a staye, & Is stronger
then ons hande,— & hath the | same operations as I tolde you before,—
Butt when | Itt Is tied to the poñell, Itt still keepes the righte | bente off
the Horse, & then I worke more Vppoñ | the Bitt, eyther with the Raynes
seperated Iñ | both my handes, or Else Iñ my lefte hande onlye, | when hee
Is thus bente when I woulde paseger | hiñ his croupe Iñ large or narowe
theñ I helpe | hiñ with the outwarde Rayne off the bridle | because Itt Is
Vppoñ the actiõ off a trott, & that | Is Cross & therefore muste haue his
legges free | withoute the turne, to lapp ouer his Inwarde | legges,— & when
hee Is thus tied with the | Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne, Iff I woulde haue |
hiñ to goe le petit Galope his Croupe Iñ, *

[uncancelled]{ * or Terre | a Terre : |R

[cancelled] theñ I hope with the Inwarde Rayne off the | bridle my hande oñ
the oute side off his neck, my | knuckles towardes his neck, to putt hiñ
oñ | the oute side off the turne, as the outwarde Rayne | putts hiñ oñ the
Inside off the Turne,— all this | Is with his Croupe Iñ,— Iff to trot or
Galope | duñ piste large or narowe Circles the Inwarde | Cauatzane Rayne
still tied to the poñell, then | I helpe with the Inwarde Rayne, & Inwarde
| legg, or outwarde Rayne to narowe hiñ before, | Iff the Piroyte with
the outwarde Rayne, Iff | for demye voltaes Vppoñ Pasadoes the outwarde
Rayne, | for all leapes the outwarde Rayne | for Coruetts, & demye Ayres
the Inwarde Rayne, | for Coruetts backwarde the outwarde Rayne, | For
Coruetts forwarde the Inwarde Rayne | for Terre a Terre Iñ his length the
Inwarde | Rayne, & so posates the Inwarde Rayne so | Stoppinge & goinge
back the Inwarde Rayne | all these the Inwarde Rayne off the Cauatzane |
tied streyte to the poñell which Is the beste thinge | Iñ the worlde, & theñ
helpe with the seuerall | Raynes off the Bridle as ocation offers you & as I
| haue tolde you for all these seuerall thinges. |

[f.141^v] So thatt the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne tied to | the Poñell, Is *al* for
all thinges what soeuer, | Croupe Iñ or oute, trot, Gallope, Paseger all |
Ayres, stoppinge Goinge back, Posates or anye | thinge Iñ the worlde thatt
Is Iñ the | manege, for withoute Itt no Horse Cañ | bee perfectlye dreste
Iñ anye kinde, to haue | the Plye off his neck, & to suple his sholders | to
looke Into the Turne to haue his legges | goe right as theye aughte to doe Iñ
all actions, | his bodye rightlye bente to bee parte off the | Circle hee Goes
Iñ, & bente thatt waye so Itt | Is the all Iñ all for Euerye thinge & Euerye
| Ayre, & Euerye Actioñ the Horse Cañ make | beinge vppoñ the nose Itt
preserues the Horses | mouth & barrs, & Itt Is so Effectuall as Itt | will
dress a Horse withoute the Bitt, | which the Bitt will neuer doe withoute
| the Cauatzane, for the barrs & the Curbe | are to Tender, besides the
Raynes off the | bitt cañ neuer giue hiñ the Plye nor bende | hiñ Enough,
nor suple his sholders because | Itt Is so neer you & workes vppoñ the
barrs | & the Curbe thatt Cañ nott bende hiñ posiblye | so as thatt Vppoñ
his nose, because the branches | off the bitt Is so lowe, & the barrs & the

Curbe | lowe, & nott roome Enough to pull, like the | * Cauatzane thatt Is
so much hier & so much | Roome to pull, & pulls & plies hiṁ all | frome
his nose to his sholders when | the other Cañ doe litle more then pull | his
musle & his heade, & goes no further, | the Cauatzane Rayne withiṁ Is for
| Euerye thinge, the bitt otherwise for | to suple his sholders you muste
helpe | with the outwarde Rayne & to staye | his outwarde sholder, with
the Inwarde | Rayne, & nott neer the forse the Cauatzane | Rayne hath for
Euerye thinge therfore | Vse Itt Iṁ all thinges, & with all Horses | Coltes,
halfe drete Horses Readye Horses | younge midle Agde olde & Euerye |
Horse & All Horses, for ther Is | no dressinge Horses withoute Itt, | &
with Itt you will dress all Horses | whatsoever off what dispotition soeuer
| weake midle strenge [*sic.*], or stornge [*sic.*] & | reduse all vices with Itt,
& when | you vse the Bitt hee will goe much the | better for workinge hiṁ
Continualye | with the Cauatzane. |

[f.142^r uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] Neuer press a Horse harde or much, | Vntill you | finde hiṁ verye
sensible, & obediente, both | to your hande, & your Heele,— & younge
Horses | muste neuer bee much preste, nor stopte to harde | for iff you doe
you will giue hiṁ such a krick | & taynte Iṁ his back, as hee will neuer
recouer Itt. |

Obseruations |

you see playnlye nowe off whatt greate Efecaseye | & operation the
Cauatzane my waye Is off, & howe | litle forse the bitt Is off to giue a
Horse the right | plye or bente with his heade, or neck, the resons | I haue
shewde you playnlye Iṁ the laste butt one. |

Obseruations. |

For Leapinge Horses, you maye bee well assurde | thatt no force, or Arte,
cañ make a Horse Leape, | Iff hee bee nott naturalye disposde to Itt, thatt
| Is thatt hee leapes off hiṁ selfe,— & then all the | Arte Is butt to giue
hiṁ a time, which Is Easeleye | doṁ, Iṁ a masters hande,— for no godes or

| poysons, will neuer forse a Horse to Leape | Iff hee bee nott disposed to
leape off hiṁ selfe. |

[uncancelled] For the Cauatzane. |

[cancelled] For the Cauatzane my waye tied to the poñell, | the Inwarde Rayne
as streighte as you Cañ, Itt pulls | his Inwarde forr legg, frome his outwarde
forr | legg, back Circularye, on thatt hande which hee goes oñ | & so makes
Itt longer theñ his outwarde forr legg to | leade Iñ Terre a Terre,— & the
Inwarde Cauatzane | Rayne att the same time, putts his Inwarde hinder
legg | oute to his outwarde hinder legg, so as Itt Inlarges | & widens hiṁ
before, so Itt doth narowe hiṁ behinde | widens hiṁ before to Imbrase the
turne the better | & narowes hiṁ behinde to bee vppoñ the hanches | &
makes his legges longer withiñ the turne to | leade, & nott preste butt free
thatt theye maye leade | because the Horse Is preste oñ the oute side off the
| turne, iff you helpe with the Inwarde Rayne off | the bridle, your hande
oñ the oute side off his neck | your knuckles towardes his neck, you & the
Horse | oblike for the Inwarde Rayne thus putts hiṁ | one thee oute side
off the turne his outwarde | sholder forwarde butt nott Iñ, & this Is the
trewe | posture for Terre a Terre, the Inwarde Cauatzane | Rayne tied to
the Poñell. |

[f.142^v] Ande Iff you woulde Paseger hiṁ then you | muste helpe with the
outwarde Rayne because | Itt Is the action off a Trott which Is Cross, &
because | hee muste bee preste on the Inside, & his legges | att libertye
on the oute side to lapp ouer his | Inwarde legges so hee Is wide & narowe
Euerye | seconde time, when hee Is wide before narowe | behinde & when
hee Is narowe before wide behinde, | because Itt Is the action off a Trott
which Is Cross | & therefore to helpe with the outwarde Rayne,— | to make
his sholders Suple,— butt iff his sholders | Coumes Iñ to much, theñ you
muste staye them | with the Inwarde Rayne as you finde ocation | & the
Inwarde Rayne for Terre a Terre as I haue | offteñ shewde you before, the
manye resons for Itt; | The Seate which I haue offten Shewde you | the
outwarde legg to reste harde vppoñ the | sturope as Iff you stooode off Itt,—
to keepe the | outwarde Hanch Iñ,— Ande iff his sholders | Coumes Iñ to

much theñ you muste helpe | with both your legges to putt hiñ forward, |
& then hee will goe righte, as hee shoulde | doe, & thus the Horse Is withiñ
the line | off your hande, & heele to helpe hiñ slower | or faster att your
pleasure,— the Cauatzane | beinge tied still to the Poñell,— which Is |
the onlye thinge Iñ the worlde both to giue | hiñ a Juste & righte apewye,
to setle hiñ oñ | the hande, & to putt hiñ oñ the Hanches & for | manye
thinges more, thatt are allmoste as | Effectuall. — |

* For the Cauatzane, & the | Bridle. |

When the Horse Is fitted for Itt you cañ nott pull | the Cavatzane to strayte
to the poñell, Itt bowes | hiñ frome the Nose to the withers & putts his
outwarde | sholder forward & a litle Iñ, & suples hiñ Extremlye | Iñ the
Sholders which Is the busines Vppon duñ | piste Indeed his Croupe oute
eyther Vppoñ a Trott | or a Gallope, theñ the Inwarde Rayne & Inwarde
| legg, or outwarde Rayne, & Inwarde legg, or as iff | his heade weare to
the Piller Inwarde Rayne & | Inwarde legg all to suple his sholders which Is
| the greate busines;— Theñ to paseger hiñ his | Croupe Iñ the outwarde
Rayne off the Bridle to suple | his sholders to haue his legges free withoute
& | preste withiñ the turne free withoute to lapp | ouer his Inwarde legges,
which suples his sholders, | le petit Galope his Croupe Iñ iff his sholders
Coume | nott Iñ Enough, worke the outwarde Rayne off | The bridle, & All
to suple his sholders. ——— |

[f.143^f] So Terre a Terre, Iff his sholders Coume nott In Enough | the outwarde
Rayne off the Bridle, & all to suple his | sholders which Is the mayne
busines.— This on the | Petit Gallope or Terre a Terre with the Bridle
alone | Is false, butt with the Cauatzane tied to the Poñell | Itt maye bee,
because that giues hiñ the Right Plye | For the Bridle a lone, workes oñ
the outwarde Barr | & so maye make hiñ holde his heade oute off the |
turne which Is false, & presses hiñ oñ the Inside which | Is false for Terre
a Terre, — Therefore when the Horse | Is verye suple oñ the Sholders for
Terre a Terre or | le petit Galope his Croupe Iñ helpe with the Inwarde
| Rayne off the Bridle, which worke on his Barrs | on the Inside off the
Turne, & makes hiñ looke In to | the Turne, & presses the Horse on his

legges oñ the | oute side off the Turne, which Is Righte, Iff the | Horse bee
 verye Suple off his Sholders, you maye helpe with the Inwarde Rayne off
 the Bridle | though the Cauatzane bee tied to the Poñell | the Cauatzane
 beinge thus tied stopp hiñ so & | make hiñ Goe back so, & Rayse hiñ In
 Posates so, | I[=aye] Vppoñ Coruetts, & demye Ares so, — An[=and] Iñ all
 | leapes so Eyther forwarde, or Vppoñ Voltaes, | or anye thinge thatt Is Iñ
 the manege, off | so greate force Is the Cauatzane my waye | Iñ my hande
 or tied to the Poñell, for the | dressinge off all Horses Iñ all kindes, & |
 withoute Itt thus Cañ no Horse bee perfectlye | dreste,— one thing I muste
 tell you, eyther | Vppoñ Ayres or Terre a Terre the bridle hande to | bee
 putt a litle forwarde Circularlye Is Exselente, | the wayes I haue formerlye
 tolde you. ——— |

[uncancelled] For Corections. |

[cancelled] Iff a Horse playe the Jade eyther restie, or Entier | which hee seldome
 Is, the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne | tied to the Poñell — butt iff hee bee
 restie Corect hiñ | soundlye with the Spurs eyether with one or both |
 Spurrs butt rather with both Spurrs & paye hiñ | soundlye,— & then
 walke hiñ Gentlye to see howe | hee obayes you, so lighte,— Ande the
 nexte morninge | Ride hiñ agenñ butt then bee fauorable vnto hiñ & |
 forgiue hiñ manye faltes, & ride hiñ outt a litle | whye & lighte — For
 thus the Horse will knowe | whenñ hee doth well thatt hee Is cherishte &
 rewarded, | & whenñ hee doth Ill hee Is punishte & tormented, & assure
 your selfe hee hath Judgmente to make | the diference, & will soone chuse
 the Easier parte, | which Is to obaye you; — And iff hee doe Itt nott att |
 the firste or seconde time, hee will doe Itt verye soone | after iff you followe
 this methode — which neuer | fayles, yett I muste tell you thatt Restye
 horses ar seldome | or neuer reduste so dangerous Is Itt for horses to | faule
 Iñ to bunglers handes, that spoyles | all Horses thay theye Ride, |

[f.143^v uncanceled] Obseruations, |

[cancelled] Before you Ride your Horse vppoñ Ayres Iñ his voltaes, | bee sure
 to paseger hiñ Iñ his length, his Croupe all | Iñ for theñ whenñ hee goes a
 litle larger Vppoñ | his Ayre, hee will goe with more pleasure, & Juster, |

Iff a Horse haue nott so good añ Apewye, & weake | then paseger hiṁ faste,
& his Croupe nott so much | Iñ, & afterwarde hee will goe much better
vppoñ | his Ayre, ——— |

Iff hee ^{bee} harde Vppoñ the hande keepe hiṁ more | subiecte Vppoñ the
hanches & putt hiṁ nott | forwarde so much & Rayse hiṁ In pesates | the
legges, ——— |

For Paseger I haue tolde you before, beinge | the Action off a Trott the
outwarde Rayne Is | moste proper for Itt to bee preste oñ the | Inside
for Else hee Coulede nott well trott vppoñ | Circle & the outwarde Rayne
pressinge the | Inside leaues the oute side att Libertye | which Itt aughte to
bee to bee the freer to | lapp ouer the legges off the Inside for | otherwise
hee coulede nott doe Itt,— butt iff the | Horse bringe Iñ his Sholders to much
theñ | the Inwarde Rayne to stayer them, ——— |

When you haue wraughte the Horse with the Cauatzane | my waye eyther Iñ
your hande or tied to the poñell, | when you haue wraughte hiṁ a greate
whyle | so, — then Itt weare good to ride hiṁ onely with the | Bitt, to
trye what you haue doñ; for that will | finde a falte soone, wether hee bee
nott suple | off the sholders or obediente to the Heele & | then worke hiṁ
with the Cauatzane agayne | wher you finde the dificultye & falte & | so
those faltres will bee soone amended, & after | a while workinge hiṁ with
the Cauatzane | trie hiṁ ageñ onely with the Bitt, & wher | you finde the
falte worke hiṁ a geñ with | the Cauatzane, & Iñ thus trienge & In thus |
workinge you will make hiṁ Iñ the Ende | a perfecte Horse. ——— |

[f.144^r uncanceled] Obseruations. frome hence the quintesence off | Dressinge
Horses. |

[cancelled] I had forgott to tell you that when you ride a younge | Horse,
wether with the Cauatzane the olde waye | or my waye, tied to the Girthes
or Poñell, the | Raynes off the Cauatzane muste bee Iñ your two handes, |
& holde them both stiff to setle the Horses heade | which Is between them
onely to pull that Rayne a | litle stiffer off thatt hande Iñ Circle which
you | goe oñ, or Else the Horse coulede nott turne oñ thatt | hande & your

hande to worke the Cauatzane lowe | & pretie stiff to setle his heade, & doe
nott slake Itt | butt holde Itt steadye & firme, to gayne vppoñ | the Horse
Euerye daye by litle & litle still to | strayteñ Itt, vntill his heade Is Iñ the
right place | wher you woulde haue Itt & beare the bridle | raynes verye
lowe to to setle & firme hiñ oñ the | bitt by litle & litle as you doe Vppoñ
his nose | with the Cauatzane, & vse all gentlenes thatt | maye bee with a
younge Horse & doe nott spurr | hiñ att firste by no meanes, & giue hiñ
butt | gentle & Easeye stoppes, att firste by anye | meanes for hurtinge his
back, & Ride hiñ | butt litle att a time to keepe hiñ Iñ luste | & make
verye much off hiñ by Clapinge hiñ | & giuinge hiñ some thinge to Eate;
—— |

when the Cauatzan Is Iñ your hande | or tied to the poñell, legg & rayne
on the Inside to putt | oute his Croupe vppoñ large Circles, & bringe Iñ
his heade | as much as possiblye you Cañ & stopp hiñ so, & when hee |
offers to Gallope off hiñ selfe theñ Gallope hiñ as you | did trot hiñ —
knowe thatt the Trott Is to lighten & | Suple all his members & the stopp
to setle hiñ oñ the | hande, & to putt hiñ vppoñ the hanches so that the
trott | & stopinge Is the foundation off all Ayres or anye | thinge thatt Is Iñ
the manege for Euerye Horse doth walke | Gallope & ruñ Easier theñ trot
— & neuer Gallope hiñ vntill | hee Is perfecte vppoñ his trot, settled oñ
the Hande & to | stopp perfectlye Vppoñ his trot & likewise to goe back
| perfectlye & stedelye which firmes hiñ oñ the hande, | makes hiñ lighte
off the hande, because Itt putts hiñ | vppoñ the hanches,— Theñ Gallope
hiñ vppoñ large Circles | lee petit Galope, & some times forighte [sic., the
propertie off | the petit Galope Is to firme hiñ & giue hiñ a good Apewye, |
butt theñ your hande muste bee lowe for that workes | vppoñ the bars more
then vppoñ the Curbe, & thatt firmes | hiñ & giues hiñ a good apewye &
bee shure thatt you | bende his neck with tienge the Inwarde rayne off the
Cauatzan to the poñell off the Sadle as harde as you Cañ | to bende hiñ
to the Circle thatt hee goes Iñ |

[f.144^v] For the Cauatzane thus Is the quintesence off dressinge | all Horses
perfectlye Iñ the manege Iñ all Ayres, | whatt soeuer & vppoñ the Grounde
& thatt which | Itt doth moste Exselentlye Is the Suplinge off | the Horses

Sholders, which Is the firste thinge | you are to begin withall, & the mayne
thinge to | dress Horses, for Iff his sholders bee Suple hee | will doe anye
thinge, & iff they bee nott Suplede | hee will doe nothings ——— |

To suple a Horses Sholders a geñ walke hiñ | as iff his heade weare to the
pillar legg & Rayne | off a Side & this suples a Horses sholders Extrea==
| mlye — so the Cauatzane my waye & suplinge | his sholders Is the
begiñinge & foundation | off all thinges Iñ the manege, firste Vppoñ his
| Trott, stopinge & Goinge back, & theñ vppoñ his | Galope & stoppinge,
vppoñ large Circles att firste | & theñ vppoñ narowe Circles, all duñ piste
Remember | still to bende his neck as much as you Cañ with | the Cauatzane
withiñ the Turne & thus much | for suplinge his sholders att firste, & these
| are the onlye lessons for Itt. ——— |

[uncancelled] To make a Horse sensible to the | Heeles, & to worke both his
Croupe | & sholders together. |

[cancelled] Before Euer you putt hiñ Vppoñ Circles, you muste | putt his heade
to the wall, & nowe you muste worke | legg & Rayne Contrarye, & be shure
you pull Iñ his | heade the same waye hee goes harde with the | Inwarde
Cauatzane Rayne tied to the poñell, & | *wh* lett his sholders goe before his
Croupe, for that | putts hiñ more off the Hanches, & when you finde | thatt
hee obayes your heel perfectlye thus theñ putt | hiñ vppoñ Circles Vppoñ
his paseger thus bringinge | Iñ his heade Extreamleye with the Cauatzane
& | because this action off Paseger Is the action off a | trott which Is cross
you maye helpe with the outw== | arde Rayne off the Bridle which will
suple | his sholders more, & Is moste proper, for this paseger | because the
Horse aughte to bee preste withiñ | the turne & att libertye withoute the
Turne to | lapp his outwarde legges ouer his Iñwarde legges | which the
outwarde Rayne off the Bridle makes | hiñ doe so,— Iff your Horse hath
lernte to aduance | which muste bee frome the Pillers, with your | hande
legges rod & tonge, then his Croupe Iñ vppoñ | paseger Itt Is good to make
hiñ aduance & goe | forwarde againe, this putts hiñ vppoñ the hande | &
putts hiñ vppoñ the Hanches |

[f.145^r Ande makes hi^m lighte, & so you maye doe duⁿ | piste, for sertenlye
ther Is nothings better theⁿ | Posates to make a Horse goe well, — & when
hee is | perfecte Iⁿ Posates, & obayes both hande & heele | thus theⁿ his
croupe Iⁿ putt hi^m vppoⁿ le petit | Galope, & keepe hi^m forwarde still; —
Ande | thus iff you bee a Horse maⁿ you will make | hi^m a perfecte Horse.
—— |

The Cauatzane my waye doth nott onlye suple his | sholders legg & rayne
off a side butt suples his sholders | also, legg & Rayne Contrarye his Croupe
Iⁿ makes hi^m | looke In to the Turne, butt also vnites hi^m & putts hi^m
together | righte & all off a peece & his legges to goe righte, vppoⁿ all |
actions & Ayres what soeuer, & the moste comelye sighte | that caⁿ bee to
see hi^m so Vnited, like a flienge Horse, | all off a peece, obaynge perfectlye
both hande & heele | & workinge with the Cauatzane thus one thinge you |
maye bee shure off, thatt your Horse thus shall neuer | haue the Credenza,
or bee Antier, which Is no smale | busines,— & ther Is no dressinge Horses
withoute | workinge the Cauatzane thus, & this waye. —— | & therefore
nott onlye vse Itt perpetuallye to all Horses | what soeuer butt holde Itt Iⁿ
hye Estematioⁿ as | the quintesence off the manege,— Iff you bee a perfecte
| Horse—maⁿ, otherwise neyther this or anye thinge | Else will doe, with aⁿ
Ignorante Persoⁿ,— & manye | manye yeares Is requirde before one Is a
perfecte | Horse—Maⁿ, —— |

For Terre a Terre, demye Voltaes Terre a Terre | Pasadoes, the Piroyte,
to Gallope & change Iⁿ Soldat | Coruetts, demye Ayres, Croupadoes,
Balotadoes, a pace, | & a Leape, Ande Le Caprioles, to make the cross
Iⁿ | Coruetts, & the serebaⁿ Iⁿ Coruetts, to goe back | Corvetts, vppoⁿ a
strayte Line, & back Iⁿ Coruetts, | vppoⁿ his voltaes off Eyther hande, &
to change | Vppon all these Justlye, I haue writteⁿ so Exactlye | off the^m
before, howe to lerne hi^m all these thinges | & to Ride the Horse Iⁿ all these
thinges Justlye & | perfectlye as I caⁿ ^{nott} mende or add anye thinge | to
Itt. —— |

* Still the Cauatzane thus I muste putt you Iⁿ minde | off & to worke his
sholders which Is the mayne | busines, for the Croupe Is Easeleye Reduste

— though | some Greate Docters saye otherwise yett theye are | verye much deseued, as theye are In manye thinges | more In this Arte off Horse-
Manship, which neuer | came Vnder their Capps, ——— |

[f.145^v] For Coruetts, I will remember you off this that to | giue Itt your Horse In
the hande Is better theñ | all the Pillers In the worlde,— Then Iff you haue
| made hiñ goe firste In Posates to leade hiñ both | Vppon the hanches,
& the hande, & theñ hee will the | Easier goe In Coruetts;— when you
begiñ to make | your Horse goe In Coruetts, att firste rayse hiñ as | hye
as you Cañ so hee goes forwarde & iff you | feele ^{him} pretye well off the
hande thatt hee beares | ther Itt Is much the better, & theñ hee will goe |
perfectlye well, Iff hee rise hye & goes forwarde | For iff hee rise hye & doth
nott goe forwarde | theñ tis Posates & nott Corvetts,— Butt you muste |
Consider to rayse hiñ so hye as hee cañ nott goe | forwarde thatt weare a
greate Error, butt to | Rayse hiñ so hye as hee maye goe forwarde, | This
muste bee doñ by your owne discretioñ | & when the Horse goes perfectlye
forwarde | Vppoñ a strayte line Itt Is Easeye to make | hiñ goe Vppoñ his
voltaes for Itt Is butt | Conuertinge thatt strayte line In to a Circle | & theñ
tis doñ,— & att firste Vppoñ a Circle | worke hiñ two or three Coruett &
theñ walke | hiñ, & then two or three Coruetts & walke him | a geñ, & thus
with a litle Coustome will make | hiñ goe perfectlye Vppoñ his voltaes, &
the | sooner & better Iff the Inwarde Rayne off | the Cauatzane bee tied to
the Poñell, & Itt woulde | much the more faciletate hiñ vppoñ his voltaes
| Iff formerlye vppoñ a strayte Line you had | vsed to tie the Cauatzane
Rayne to the Poñell | Still frome the wall,— & this Is the righte waye | to
worke Horses Vppoñ Coruetts; ——— |

[uncancelled] To putt a Horse Vppoñ the Hanches | Is the quintesence & Ende
off our worke, |

[cancelled] To putt a Horse vppoñ the Hanches, a shorte trot | stoppage verye
Effectuall goinge back putts hiñ | vppoñ the Hanches,— Posattes duñ piste
or his croupe | In putts hiñ vppoñ the Hanches — his heade to the | wall
putts hiñ vppoñ the Hanches,— le petit Gallope | putts hiñ vppoñ the
Hanches, Terre a Terre putts hiñ | Vppoñ the Hanches, Coruetts putts hiñ

vppoñ the | Hanches Espetialye iff hee Coruett backwarde | The Inwarde
 Cauatzane Rayne beinge tied harde to | the Poñell, putts hiñ vppoñ the
 hanches iff hee bee | preste,— a lighte hande, & firme putts hiñ vppoñ the
 | Hanches, iff hee bee preste, hauinge nothings to leane | oñ before, hee
 putts hiñ selfe on the Hanches, thatt hee maye | reste off some thinge &
 therefore off the hanches | because hee hath no place lefte hiñ Else to reste
 off. ——— |

[f.146^f] Duñ piste a shorte trot, legg & Rayne off a Side puttinge | his Inwarde
 hinder legg oute putts hiñ oñ the | Hanches, because his hinde legges Is
 made like | our Armes, & his Inwarde hinder legg being putt | oute makes
 hiñ bowe Iñ the Cambrills,— Iff the Horse | Putts his *In* hinder legges
 vnder his bellye hee Is | oñ the Hanches, when the Horses *bu* Croupe goes
 | oute vppoñ Coruetts or Posates theñ hee Is oñ the | hanches, & bowes Iñ
 the Cambrills, & theñ hath libertye | to putt his hinder legges vnder his
 bellye — which Iff | hee putt Iñ his Croupe hee cañ ^{nott} stande & doe
 Itt:— | & So a Horse iff hee puls [*sic.*] Iñ his heade Itt makes | hiñ goe
 oñ the Hanches, because hee doth theñ bowe | Iñ the Cambrills, & thrustes
 his hinder legges vnder | his bellye & his croupe oute which giues hiñ more
 | libertye,— for iff his heade weare vpp his Croupe | muste goe Iñ, & theñ
 hee cañ nott bowe Iñ the Cambrill | nor thruste his hinder legges Vnder
 his bellye | hee Is so stiff & Extended his heade beinge Vpp | which Is
 the Cause off Itt,— Posates, or Coruetts his | heade to the wall, or Iñ the
 Corner wher two walls | meet putts hiñ vppoñ the Hanches; — my newe
 waye | att the Single Piller putts hiñ verye much oñ the | handes;— when
 I saye the Horses Croupe oute | vppoñ Coruetts, I doe nott meane to putt
 his croupe oute | Vppoñ Circles or Vppoñ the strayte line hee goes In, |
 butt to thruste Itt oute backwarde & thatt putts him | Vppoñ the hanches,
 for the former resons I haue tolde | you, — Ande for a Horse goinge Iñ
 Caputchato,— | his heade beinge so much doune makes hiñ goe more |
 vppoñ the hanches Iff hee ^{bee} preste & wraughte my waye | for the resons
 I tolde you before; — no sayes some | Iff hee goes Iñcaputiato hee Is oñ
 the Sholders & | harde oñ the hande, theye are deceued, for iff a | that
 Horse that Armes hiñ selfe bee vppoñ the | Hanches hee Is lighte off the
 hande, & I haue | had Horses thatt haue gone very much Incapuchato |

the lightest & firmeste off the hande In the worlde | & the moste sensible
both off the Barrs, & Curbe,— | Iff you worke ackordinge to my methode;
——— | So you see all thatt putts a Horse vppon the hanches | Is before
with the Cauatzane, & the bitt & nothings | behinde. That cañ putt hiñ
vppoñ the Hanches, | To pull a Horse back & rayse hiñ as you pull hiñ
back, | five or sixe times so, & then reste & doe so ageñ & thatt putts | hiñ
verye much oñ the Hanches;— & doe soe fiue or sixe | times or so often
vntill you finde hiñ vppoñ the Hanches,— | & then hee muste bee light off
the hande. ——— |

[f.146^v uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] For a Horse that is retenu, & añ Enemye to the | Scoole by Ill riders
that haue spoylde hiñ before | hee coumes In to your handes, for to take
a Horse | & worke hiñ att firste hee shall neuer bee so | butt such a Horse
that oposes you In Euerye thinge | att firste Corecte hiñ soundlye with the
Spurrs, | ande afterwarde deale Gentlye with hiñ & | forgiue hiñ manye
faltas, & change Is [his] lessons | perpetuallye, thatt hee maye nott thinke
howe to | playe the Jade, & by litle & litle thus to gayne | Vppoñ hiñ
mynglinge corections with sweetnes | Gentle—nes & flateryes, & suñ times
to ride hiñ | much & some—times butt a litle, & whensoever | hee yeldes
though neuer so litle, make much off | hiñ & lighte off & sende hiñ to the
Stable,— | & thus In time you maye reduce hiñ though | I muste tell you
ther Is nott one restie Horse | In a hunderde thatt Euer Is recouerde.— |
Ride hiñ sometimes with the bitt & nott with the Cauatzane | to giue hiñ
more libertye & Ease. ——— |

[uncanceled] For Pasadoes. |

[cancelled] Iff the Horse Galopes le petit Gallope lett hiñ Gallope | Vppoñ
the Hanches,— & Iff you thruste hiñ toute | Bride lett Itt bee Vppoñ the
Hanches as much as you | Cañ, & to or three falcadoes, to stayer hiñ a litle |
vppoñ the hande before you turne hiñ, & helpe | with the outwarde Rayne
your outwarde Sholder | Couñinge In a litle, & with the outwarde legg &
| Iff his sholders Coume nott In Enough, helpe with | the Inwarde legg, &
Eyther off these helpes as | ocation serues off which hande soeuer you Goe

| & bee shure his heade bee a litle frome the wall, | to keepe his Croupe to
 Itt thatt hee maye keepe | the Line,— A demye volta thus Is butt halfe a |
 peroyte & therefore the outwarde Rayne which | straytens his forr partes &
 giues libertye for | his hinder partes,— Ther Is añ other waye Iff | you cañ
 doe Itt Exactlye which will bee as well | which Is Vppoñ Pasadoes when
 you Coume to make | the Demye voltaes, to helpe Juste as you doe Terre
 a | Terre, thatt Is your Bridle hande oñ the oute side | off his neck, your
 knuckles towardes his neck, though | Itt Inlarges hiñ before & narowes hiñ
 behinde, which | Is contrarye to the other yett the Horse Is more vppoñ |
 the Hanches then the other, & his heade frome | the wall as much as the
 other waye & therefore | I like this the better, butt Itt Is the harder waye |
 to doe, I [=aye] so harde as none butt a greate master Cañ | doe Itt, nor
 no Greate Master neyther butt my selfe | thatt deuisde Itt, for theye neuer
 thinke off these | Cureseties.— nor to Exsamiñ anye thinge | Butt merlye
 Rides by Routiñ. |

[f.47^r uncanceled] For Galopinge Large or Narowe duñ Piste |

[cancelled] I haue tolde you offten the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne | tied harde
 to the Poñell legg & rayne off a side Indeed | to putt oute his Croupe as
 hee Gallopes,— you must knowe | howe his leggs aughte to goe or Else you
 Cañ neuer tell | when hee Gallopes wronge & when hee Gallopes righte, |
 Vppoñ Circles hee muste alwayes leade with his | Inwarde legges & thatt
 Is righte & all the reste Is | wronge, the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne tied to
 the | Poñell, Inwarde Rayne & Inwarde legg, makes hiñ | Galope righte,—
 his Croupe oute as hee Gallopes.— | Butt when you leaue the Cauatzane
 & helpe hiñ | onlye with the Bitt, manye Horses will Gallope | false, moste
 Comonlye Itt Is, thatt theye putt \wedge *oute* Iñ | their Croupe to much, &
 therefore doe nott bende their | sholders Enough to helpe thatt when you
 Ride | onlye with the Bridle, spurr hiñ soundlye oñ the | Inside off the
 turne, which putts oute his Croupe | & att the Same time bende hiñ as
 much as you Cañ as iff you woulde breake his neck, your hande oñ | the
 Inside to pull the outwarde Rayne for thatt | bendes his Sholders,— *Iff*
 Ande keepe hiñ forwarde | alwayes Vppoñ his Circles,— & Iff you finde hee
 | putts oute his Croupe to much to goe false thatt | waye then bende hiñ as

much still with the | Bridle as you did & Spurr hiṁ soundlye oñ the | oute
side off the Turne & this will Cuer hiṁ Iñ | puttinge his Croupe to much
oute,— & Iff hee goe | nott forward, Giue hiṁ both the Spurrs soundlye
| & this will Easeleye Reduce hiṁ, & theñ onlye | the poyse a litle oñ the
Inside, & turne your hande | Gentlye, & the Horse will goe perfectlye well
| I make the longer discourse vppoñ this subiecte | because manye Greate
Masters for so thayre fames | neuer knowes wheñ the Horse Gallopes Righte
| or wronge, nor no gess att Itt Iñ the worlde | though theye Cale le boñ
Pies [= pied?] yett theye neuer | knowe wether their Horses Gallopes righte
or | wronge, & Itt Is so nesenarye for a Horse to | Gallope righte as Itt Is
the foundation off all | thinges, as giuinge hiṁ a good Apewye to Gallope |
& change Iñ Soldate Terre a Terre, demye Voltaes | Terre a Terre Pasadoes
changinge Vppoñ all these | the Piroyte or anye thinge that Is vppoñ the
| Grounde so nesenarye Is a Horses Gallopinge | trewe & Righte, which Is
the foundation off | all these thinges I haue named, & therefore | studye Itt
well. For withoute Itt no Horse | Can bee pfectlye [*sic.*] made or dreste. |

[f.147^v uncanceled] obseruations |

[canceled] Remember alwayes to keepe your Horse bias Vppoñ | his Circles, as
I haue tolde you Exactlye before | both for Coruetts & Terre a Terre & le
petit Galope | Vppoñ Circles for so alwayes the Horses forr | partes Goes
before his hinder partes,— so Itt bee | doñ as I haue Exactlye sett Itt doune
In the | laste Chapter off Terre a Terre, & the laste | Chapter Iñ Coruetts,
with all the perfecte helps | of Hande, heeles, bodye, legges, & seate, & so
the | Helpes of the Cauatzane Iff you vse Itt, & therefore | Study those two
Ayres well Iñ those Chapters, | & beleue Itt the three Pillers, are starke
naughte | & Spoyle all Horses for the Pillers Is nothinge | butt by Rote &
a Horide Routinge,— which Is by | the sence off sighte, & not by the sence
off | touch or feelinge which Is the sence wee worke | off which Is feelinge
the Hande, & feelinge | the Heeles, thatt Is to bee withiñ the hande, & | the
heelles together, & Vppoñ the Hanches sensible | off his mouth & sensible
off his sides, & thatt | muste bee doñ frome the three Pillers, for all | they
pretences to the hande, & the Heele, | For those three Pillers haue spoyled
more horses | theñ anye thinge I knowe & neuer shall make | a perfecte

drete Horse, lett mounſieur de | Pluinel ſaye whatt hee will In his Booke
| off them; ——— |

Remember neuer to make your Horse to Goe | Terre a Terre vntill hee bee
perfectlye vppoñ the | Hande, with a temperate Apewye, Extreame | Suple
off his Sholders, & verye Sensible to the | Heeles, vppoñ his trot, to stopp
perfectlye, to goe | back Easeleye to Gallope duñ Piste Large & narowe | &
to leade righte with his legges, to walke Juste | his heade to the wall, legg &
Rayne off a side his | Croupe oute, to paseger his Croupe In legg & Rayne
| Contrarye vppoñ the Actioñ off a trot right nott | to falsefy his legges
or Actioñ att all, & Easeleye | to rayse In Posates when you will, & when
| you haue braughte your Horse to this suplenes | when you will then you
maye make him doe | anye thinge thatt his forses & Speritts will | giue him
leauē to doe, & this Is the Righte | waye to dress Horses & no other waye
I will | assure you for all the reste are butt toyes & | oute off the waye &
wronge with a Great dell off | formaletye, & mountebanke talke, to Amuse
& Coosin | the Ignorante parte of the worlde, for ther Is butt one | right &
this Is Itt, & all the riste [*sic.*] are wronge. |

[f.148^r] For a Vitius Horse. |

That bites att his sholders, & att his bitt & att his Riders legges & rises, &
turnes rounde redye to Coume ouer,— | The beste remedye thatt I knowe
Is to ride him withoute | a Cauatzane to offende him as litle as maye bee &
to tye | the nose bande as streyte as you Cañ, & also to haue añ | other nose
bande below wher the bitt Is tied, & to tye | thatt as streyte as posible cañ
bee so straye as hee can | nott open his mouth,— Ande when the Horse
findes that | hee cañ nott bite, hee will leauē those Jadis [*sic.*] trickes In a |
litle time, — & because the spurrs giueñ him oute off time | a peers to bee
the Cause off his restiuenes & vitiusnes,- therefore | doe nott giue him the
spurrs off a greate whyle, butt onlye | trot him vppoñ large Circles, & walke
him quietlye & | peaceable, & when you haue Gaynde him to this poynte,
| then Vppoñ a peaceable & litle Galope you maye then | touch him with
the Spurrs, butt verye Gentlye butt | Eueñ to feele them & no more, — &
this waye will Cuer | him or Else nothinge; ——— |

For a Horse |

Thatt when hee Is turnde vppon his watringe bitt will | slip his bridle to haue a nose bande to bee tied streite | hee will slipp Itt for all thatt.— or a Curbe of leather | tied streyte vnder his chiñ, these two together will | doe no good for hee will slip Itt In spighte of them | both,— so the Chale bande streyte will doe no good | neyther nott all three together nose bande leather curbe | nor chawle bande,— Butt the waye that followes | will doe Itt,— which Is to haue a leather Rayne tied | to his heade—stall In the midle off his heade, & so to | goe a longe his neck, & so tied to the Sursingle prettye | strayte, & then hee Cañ nott posiblye slipp his bridle. | yett some Horses will : & therefore haue añ other Rayne oñ the | other side, & then hee cañ nott slipp Itt. ——— |

[uncancelled] obseruations. |

[cancelled] When a Horse goes false vppon his Terre a Terre | In bringinge Iñ his sholders to much, & takinge | to much Grounde with his forr partes, ther Is no | waye to remedye Itt like tienge the Inwarde Cauatzane | Rayne as strayte as posible you Cañ to the Poñell, | for theñ hee hath nott so much roome to bringe Iñ | his sholders, & takes shorter steps & lese Grounde | & theñ hees Cuerde. ——— |

[f.148^v uncanceled] For the Hande Iñ Terre a Terre, |

[cancelled] Your hande on the oute Side off his neck, your | knuckles towardes his neck, off which hande soeuer | you goe, puttinge Itt Iñ that posture alwayes a litle | forwarde Circularye for the Resons I haue giueñ | you before Iñ the Chapter off Terre a Terre | butt onlye to feele hiñ Gentlye vppon the Hande. |

For the hande Iñ Coruetts | Vppon voltaes. |

Your hande on the oute Side off his neck butt a | litle, the knuckles towardes his neck, & your | hande a litle forwarde & Circularye, butt heer | you muste helpe hiñ with the hande & giue | hiñ a time, Euerye time off his Cadance

as hee | faules to the Grounde to holde hiṁ vpp a geñ | for this Is añ other
action theñ Terre a Terre. |

For the hande strayte forwarde | In Coruetts. |

Your hande alwayes *frome* \wedge ^{to} the wall to | pull the Rayne frome the wall
& Euerye | time off his Cadance, your hande a litle forwarde, |

For a Horse thatt Is | an Eneye [*sic.*] to the Scoole & doth retayne his
forces | & thinkes still a gaynste the manege & to auoyde | Itt, or att leaste
agaynste his good will & mynde | Iñ Euerye thinge thatt hee doth, this I
consider is | his thaughtes, which I añ sure Is so,— Nowe Iff I Cañ | putt
hiṁ oute off those *faultes* ^{thaughte} hees Cuerde,— walkinge | makes hiṁ
thinke more, trottinge makes hiṁ thinke | still, le petit Galope Is so Gentle
as still hee Continewes | those thaughtes,— stoppinge vppoñ anye of these
| still hee thinkes vntoardlye Raysinge hiṁ Gentlye | giues libertye still to
haue those Rebellius thaughts | therfore to putt theṁ oute off his heade the
beste | waye Is to Gallope hiṁ duñ Piste the Cauatzanes | Inwarde Rayne
tied to the poñell butt nott to | streyghte & Gallope hiṁ his Croupe goinge
oute dun | piste as harde & faste as you cañ, oñ both handes | & this will
putt those malignante thaughtes oute | off his heade for hee hath nott theñ
time to thinke | hee Is so preste & trounste awaye, & this sertenlye | will
Cuer hiṁ,— & when hee goes Terre a Terre | on both handes press hiṁ
as faste as you Cañ for | the former Resons \wedge ^{to} Putt those toyes oute off
his heade | & this sertenlye will doe Itt & iff hee goe oñ the | sholders no
matter for one muste nott Cuer all thinges | att one time butt one vice after
añ other, & after hees | Cuerde off thatt Spice of Restines, stayen [*sic.*] \wedge
^{him} butt a | litle off the hande & nott pressinge so much hee will | goe vpp
oñ the hanches as youle haue hiṁ |

[f.149^r uncanceled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] When you woulde knowe what you haue wraughte | vppoñ your
Horse to see wether hee Is Suple off his | Sholders or no, Ride hiṁ withoute
the Cauatzane | I meane doe nott vse \wedge ^{itt} butt \wedge ^{by} anye meanes haue Itt
oñ | & putt his heade to the wall & walke him so, & iff hee | bee nott suple

off his Sholders, or off one Sholder you | will finde wher hee Is nott Suple,
as hee doth walke | or paseger, hee will putt his heade oñ the Contrarye
| side to whatt hee goes oñ, & then to helpe Itt helpe | harde with the
Cauatzane oñ that side hee Goes oñ, | & pull the Rayne as harde as you
Cañ bende hiñ | oñ thatt side hee goes oñ & to Suple his Sholders | &
so vppoñ his voltaes Iñ paseger tie the Inwarde | Cauatzane Rayne to the
poñell as shorte as you cañ | on that side hee Is nott Suple, & this will Cuer
hiñ | Iñ a litle time,— so hee goes bias, his sholders before | his Croupe,
—— |

[uncancelled] obseruations. |

[cancelled] What soeuer you doe Iñ workinge your Horse putt your | Horse
forwarde still though Itt bee neuer so litle Iñ all | thinges Exsepte when
you pull hiñ back, or Coruett | hiñ backwardes; —— |

[uncancelled] Iff a Horse bee añ Enemye to the | Scoole & thatt hee Is nott
retenu or Restiue then you muste |

{nott}

press hiñ to much for iff you doe you will make hiñ | starke madd;— butt
iff hee rebeliuslye putts oute his croupe | or refuses to turne, or bolte, theñ
giue hiñ the Spurrs soundlye | vntill hee obayes you,— & the nexte daye
Ride hiñ Gentlye | & butt a litle, & thus Iñ a litle time you will finde | him
obediente, & reduste to your will. —— |

[cancelled] Suple off his sholders, obediente to the Heele & | to bee verye much
off the Hanches, Is all thatt cañ | bee thaughte off Iñ the manege,— for
beinge firme | off the Hande thatts the grounde off all — for Iff hee | bee
nott firme off the hande hee cañ neuer bee suple | off the sholders,— &
iff hee bee nott firme off the | hande Itt Is Imposible for hiñ to obaye the
heele, | & iff hee bee nott firme off the hande as Imposible to bee oñ the
hanches,— so thatt to bee firme off the hande, | Is the Grounde off all,
& withoute thatt all the reste | Is nothings & ther Is nothings to firme a
Horse | Vppoñ the hande like the Cauatzane my waye, firste | to worke hiñ
with Itt, Iñ your hande, & afterwarde | to tie Itt to the Poñell,— with

those firste lessons I haue | taughte you, & so all the reste off the lessons
are so | Exacte as after this, theye will make hiṁ both | obediente to the
hande, & the heele, & putt hiṁ vppon | the hanches, & more cañ nott bee
doñ, or desierde | both Iñ all Ayres, & Vppoñ the Grounde |

[f.149^v uncanceled] Trewe obseruations, |

[cancelled] When you worke your Horse Vppoñ large Circles | Duñ Piste vppoñ
his Trott, with the Cauatzane | my waye Iñ your hande, or Else tied to
the Poñell | legg & rayne off a Side, or Else to helpe with | the outwarde
Rayne to suple his sholders eyther | vppon large Circles or narowe Circles
duñ Piste, | vppon his trott, wher his legges Iñ thatt action Is | Cross,
you muste knowe howe theye aughte to goe | which Is thus,— his hinder
legge oñ the Inside | off the Turne, & his forr legg on the oute side off | the
Turne are lifted vpp together, & his hinder legg on the Inside off the Turne,
whēñ Itt Is sett | doune, Is sett a litle beyonde his outwarde hinder | legg,
e & a litle forwarder,— & his forr legg | withoute the Turne Is sett doune
att the same | time a litle forwarder theñ his Inwarde | forr legg, & both
Circularlye,— his Inwarde | hinder legg beinge sett doune thus, muste off
| nesestye bende & suple his sholders, & the | Cauatzanes Inwarde rayne
beinge wraughte | as I tolde you, muste off nesestye putt oute | his Croupe
& suple his sholders,— & thus hee | Is bente & suplde Extreamleye, & can
neuer | bee Antier, & his legges alwayes to goe righte | & trewlye as theye
Aughte. & the moste | Exselente lesson thatt cañ bee. ——— |

{Ande when | hee changes | his legges | cross, then | his outwarde | hinder
legg | Is sett before | his Inwarde | hinder legg close | & his Inwarde |
legg before his | outwarde forr | legg, & somtimes | beyonde Itt, & | both
circularlye. |}

Nowe to worke hiṁ duñ piste large or narowe | Circles, the Inwarde
Cauatzane Rayne Iñ | your hande or tied to the Poñell, legge & | Rayne
off a side, or the outwarde Rayne the more to suple his Sholders vppoñ a
Gallope, | I will tell you then howe his legges Goes | for a Gallope Is an
other action theñ a Trott | for a Trott Is cross, & a Gallope Is both off a
side, | alwayes leadinge with his legges withiñ | the Turne, & makes fowre

distincte times | with his fore legges as I haue shewde you | before, — well
then his forr legg withiñ the | Turne leades Circularlye *

{* & Is sett | downe beyonde his | outwarde | forr legg, |}

& his hinder legg | withiñ the Turne followes, butt Is sett doune | a litle
before his outwarde hinder legg & a | little beyande [*sic.*] Itt which suples
his Sholders, | & his hinder partes Extreame & makes hiñ | Galope righte,
& nothings like Itt — & this Is a | moste exselente lessōñ & the foundation
off | all thinge In the Manege, to trot & Gallope thus,— | his forr partes
coumes towardes the Center, & | his hinder partes fly Itt, preste more vppōñ
| the sholders then the Croupe, butt when hee is | thus preste & suple In
the Sholders, the Croupe | Is Easeleye wraughte afterwarde, — I must tell
| you In these two lessons the Horse Is preste & leanes on the | in side off
the Turne.— |

To walke hiñ thus to Is verye good. |

[f.150^r] To putt a Horse Croupe In, Vppōñ the Action | off Paseger, which Is
the action off a Trott & howe | his legges goes. ——— |

The Horses croupe In Vppōñ Paseger, to lapp oñ legg ouer | añ other which
Is the Action off a Trott, the Inwarde | Cauatzane Rayne tied to the poñell,
nowe Itt ^{is} the outwarde | Rayne, & outwarde legg,— for the horse muste
bee preste | withiñ the turne to keepe his legges att libertye withoute | the
turne, or Else theye Cañ nott lapp ouer his Inwarde | legges, & this Is to
Suple his Sholders to, when his | outwarde forr legg Is Vpp, then his Inwarde
hinder | legg Is Vpp & theye are sett doune together, butt his | outwarde
forr legg lapps ouer his Inwarde forr legg | & his Inwarde hinder legg Is sett
downe a litle forwarde | butt verye litle, & the nexte remoue, the Horses
Inwarde | forr legg Is Vpp, & att the same time his outwarde | hinder legg
Is vpp, & then his outwarde hinder legg, | lappes ouer his Inwarde hinder
legg, & att the same | time his Inwarde forr legg Is sett doune Circularlye, |
& so his hinder legges Circularlye to,— this doth | nott onlye suple hiñ all
ouer butt makes hiñ turne | Easeleye — his forr partes makes the largeste
Circle, | & his hinder partes the less Circle & so the more | subiected, &

therefore vppoñ the Hanches,— this for | both handes,— Butt you muste
remember the Inwarde | Cauatzane Rayne tied to the Poñell, or Iñ your
| hande,— & nowe you see whatt greate diference | ther Is, betwene the
Horse Croupe oute & Iñ, | & the trewe motioñ his legges make. ——— |

To putt a Horse Vppoñ le petit Galope | Vppoñ Circles. his croupe In |

The Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne tied to the poñell | to helpe with the
outwarde Rayne, for thatt | makes the trewe Gallope, the outwarde legg, |
helpinge,— for a Gallope as I haue tolde you Is | 1: 2: 3: & 4: with his 4:
legges, hee muste goe | bias, his forr partes alwayes leadinge & this | will
suple hiñ & prepare hiñ for Terre a Terre | yett I muste tell you I cañ helpe
with the Inwarde | Rayne to make hiñ Galope righte le petit Galope | butt
you muste ^{nott} press hiñ to much with the Inwarde | Rayne for then you
will putt hiñ oñ the oute side | off the Turne, & the Horse muste bee preste
oñ | * the Inside off the Turne,— I like the Inwarde | Rayne better, because
whē hee goes le petit | Galope vppoñ Circles, I cañ make hiñ Goe 2: or
3: | Cadanses Terre a Terra, & then le petit Galope | a geñ which makes
hiñ perfectlye obaye both | the Hande & the heele,— & thus much for | le
petit Gallope vppoñ Circles. ——— |

[f.150^v uncanceled] For Terre a Terre, |

[cancelled] For terre a Terre, Is añ other Action then a Gallope, | for a Gallope
the Horse makes 4: distincte times | with his 4: legges, — & In terre a
Terre hee makes | butt two Times, as 1: 2: pa-ta,— like a Coruett butt
preste forwarde heer you muste helpe with the | Inwarde Rayne, for thatt
presses hiñ oñ the oute | side & putts hiñ vppoñ the Hanches, the Horse
| muste goe bias, oblike, both you & the Horse,— | the perticulers, & the
quintessence off Itt I haue | fullye writt iñ the Chapter off Terre a Terre, &
| therfore Reporte to thatt Chapter, ——— |

[uncanceled] For the Piroyte. |

[cancelled] You muste helpe with the outwarde Rayne, your | hande oñ the
Inside off his Turne, & nott to turne | as faste as you Cañ for thatts
butt a broulerie & | makes hiñ goe false with his legges & scramble, |

& braake [*sic.*] his time,— for thoug hee goes verye faste | yett hee muste
goe a time,— like a crochett reste | betwixte Euerye turninge off your
hande, faster | or slower acordinge to the Horses time & Nott to | hasten
hiṁ beyonde Itt, for Euerye Horse takes | his owne time, faster or Slower,
ackordinge to his | Agiletie, breath, & strength — & Euerye horse to | goe
a litle slower theñ hee cañ Iñ all thinges Is | the beste, for so all horses goes
Juster, Easier,— | stronge, with more Alecretye & pleasure & Iñ | winde;—
Ande this Is a greate truth ——— |

[uncancelled] For Pasager. |

[cancelled] The Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne tied to the Poñell | heer you muste
helpe with the outwarde Rayne | off the bridle, to press hiṁ withiñ the
turne, & keepe his legges free & att libertye withoute the | Turne, or Else
hee coulde nott lapp theṁ ouer his | Inwarde legges,— butt heer Is this
business howe to | haue hiṁ thus vppoñ the hanches, for iff his croupe
| goe before his forr partes hee Is wide behinde & | therefore off off the
Hanches, & though his hinder | partes Is \wedge ⁱⁿ the les Circle thatt will nott
doe Itt, iff his hinder legg withiñ the turne goe before his | fore partes &
helpinge with the outwarde Rayne, | ther Is no waye to helpe Itt, butt
one,— & thatt Is | this,— thatt the Horse muste goe bias his forr partes |
before his hinder partes, thatt Is Itt thrustes his | Inwarde hinder legg oute
to his outwarde hinder | legg, & so theye beinge close together putts hiṁ
vppoñ | the hanches Easeleye, this with the bridle onlye | In your hande
to worke the outwarde Rayne, & so | his heade to the wall off what hande
soeuer you goe or In Circles still to keepe the Horse bias for | the resons I
haue tolde you,— for whoe soeuer thinkes |

[f.151^r] To putt his croupe so much Iñ to make hiṁ obaye the heele | Is verye
much deseued, iff hee thinkes thatt putts hiṁ | Vppoñ the hanches, for Itt
putts hiṁ off off the hanches | for the resons I tolde you before.— Nowe for
Terre a | Terre thatts A añ other Actioñ theñ Pasager, & heer you | helpe
with the Inwarde Rayne to keepe back or rather | putt oute his Iñwarde
hinder legg, & the horse preste | on the oute side, which the Inwarde Rayne
doth so | so the Inwarde Rayne Iñ Coruetts, to keepe hiṁ vpp & | to goe

a longe time, So le petit Galope the Inwarde | Rayne,— Butt Iñ all these the Horse muste goe bias to | to putt his Inwarde hinder legg more to his outwarde | hinder legg, which makes hiñ more oñ the hanches | because hee Is so narowe behinde,— & the horse Iñ | all these butt Coruetts preste oñ the oute side, & Iñ | Coruetts preste on neyther Side butt Eueñ,— | when hee trots duñ piste, theñ hee Is preste oñ the | Iñ side, butt his legges withiñ the turne goes | beyonde his legges withoute the Turne, so his Hinder | legg with \wedge^{in} *oute* the turne Is putt oute Suffitientlye | & so when the Horse Gallopes duñ Piste his legges | within the turne leades, & sett doune beyonde | his outwarde legges to $\wedge^{\&}$ thatt his Inwarde hinder | legg Is putt oute suffitientlye, preste oñ the Inside, | when you worke his heade as iff Itt weare to | the Piller, legg & Rayne oñ the Inside his Inwarde | hinder legg Is putt oute to the purpose, — so vppoñ | a Shorte trot, rayne & legg oñ the Inside putts | oute his Inwarde hinder legg;— Naye the Piroyte | thatt Is helpte with the outwarde \wedge^{rayne} & preste oñ the | * Inside,- wher hee restes off his hinder legg with *oute* \wedge^{in} | the Turne, when his outwarde hinder legg Is sett | doune his Inwarde hinder legg, Coumes to Itt though | verye litle for iff Itt shoulde goe frome Itt, hee coulde | nott goe, butt Scamble,— so wether hee bee preste | within the Turne, or withoute the turne the | outwarde Rayne, or the Inwarde Rayne, his Croupe | oute or Iñ my waye, all the quintesence off the | manege Is to putt oute his Inwarde hinder legg, | to suple his sholders, & to putt hiñ vppoñ the | Hanches & to firme hiñ vppoñ the hande; ——— | so Exselente a thinge Itt Is to dress all horses | perfectlye, with the Cauatzane my waye to putt | oute his Inwarde Hinder legg Iñ all thinges | the Horse heade to the Piller, legg & Rayne Contrarye | the olde waye Is abhominablye false for Itt putts | his Inwarde hinder legg before his sholders therefore | neuer vse Itt;— The outwarde Rayne In all leapes | to keepe his Croupe free & to putt Itt oute, & though | Itt Is \wedge^{in} the Ayre, yett his Inwarde hinder legg Is | putt to his outwarde hinder legg, so the Inwarde | hinder legg putt oute In all thinges you see Is the | quintesence off the Manege,— Ande therefore | obserue Itt & practise Itt Iñ all thinges you doe | Iñ the manege Euen Iñ stopinge & goinge | back, & Euen Coruetts goinge bias keepes his Inwarde | hinder legg, thatt shall nott Coume | Iñ. ——— |

[f.151^v] Demye Voltaes Vppoñ Pasadoes Is butt halfe a Peroite, | helpte with the
 outwarde Rayne & preste oñ the | Inside, restinge on his Inwarde hinder legg
 yett | when his outwarde hinder legg Is sett downe, | his Inwarde hinder legg
 Coumes a litle to his outwarde | hinder legg, though verye neer In the plase
 & turnes | Circularlye,— naye when hee goes demye voltaes | In pasadoes,
 a peece off Terre a Terre, thatt you helpe | with the Inwarde Rayne then
 his Inwarde hinder | legg Is putt oute to his outwarde hinder legg,— |
 So you see thatt In all actions the Horse makes | Itt Is still the puttinge
 oute off his Inwarde | hinder legg,— & the resons off Itt are playne & |
 Rationall,— firste thatt his Inwarde hinder legg | Shoulde nott goe before
 his Inwarde forr legg, | thatt Is his Croupe before his Sholders or att | leaste
^{halfe} *haue* his Croupe before his sholders which | Is nott onlye Vnnaturall
 butt false for all his | legges goes wronge & will make hiñ looke oute |
 off the turne besides Itt makes hiñ wide behinde | * & therefore off off the
 hanches;— Besides a Horses | hinder legges beinge made like our Armes,—
 | the Inwarde hinder legg beinge putt In beyonde | his Sholders does nott
 onlye make hiñ wide & so | off off the hanches, butt makes hiñ stiff In the
 | Cambrills, & so more off off the Hanches, & when | his Inwarde hinder
 legg Is putt oute to his | outwarde hinder legg, then hee bowes In the |
 Cambrills, because his hinder legges are made | like our Armes, & iff youle
 trie Itt by your | Armes youle finde Itt so,— & this Is the Reson & | Resons
 whye you shoulde In all thinges putt | the Horses inwarde hinder legg to his
 outwarde | hinder legg, which off nesetye muste putt hiñ | Extreamleye
 vppoñ the Hanches, & the more | because by this meanes hee Is made so
 narowe | behinde,— & withoute this a Horse shall | neuer goe perfectlyer I
 assure you; ——— |

You muste remember neuer to putt your Horse | Vppoñ anye Ayre Vntill
 hee bee verye suple | both off his sholders & croupe, thatt Is verye | Sensible
 both to the hande, & the heele, & within | both the hande & the heele, att
 one time to obaye | Them both perfectlye att one time, — for vntill | then
 Itt Is labor In vayne to putt hiñ,— for Coruetts | will make hiñ Impatiente,
 & to trepigne, which | Is to trample,— & manye other Inconueniencyes, |
 as greate a follye as to offer to make a Boye Reade | before hee knowes his

letters,— & therefore lett hiṁ | bee verye suple, & firme off the hande before
you putt | hiṁ to Coruetts or anye other Ayre. |

[f.152^r] obseruations. off Horses |

you muste knowe thatt off all Horses In the worlde | off what nation soeuer
they bee Spanishe Horses | are the wiseste, & farr the wiseste, & strangleye
| wise, beyonde anye māns Imaginatioṁ,— butt I muste | tell you they are
nott the Easier drete for thatt, | because they obserue to much with their
Eyes, | & their memories to good, & so concludes with | their Judgemente
to soone, & withoute the mā x |

{^x recko== | ninge | withoute | their | Hoste. | }

which they shoulde followe, & obaye his hande | & heele when soeuer they
feele those by coustome | & habitt, off those, & nott by Coustome off anye
| thinge Else for thatts Routiṁ & by Rote, & this | Is the cause thatt their
ouer wisdom, makes | them so harde to bee drete ——— |

Nexte the Spanishe Horse for wisdom the | Barbe Is the nexte wise Horse,
butt nott neer | so wise as the Spanishe Horse, & thatt makes | hiṁ much
Easier to bee Drete, besides hee Is | off a Gentle Nature, & Dosible, &
neruus, & lighte. |

:* The Englishe Horse Is less wise then the | Barbe, fearfull & Skitishe for the
moste parte, | & Doged & Rebellius to the Manege, & nott | Comonlye so
apte to learne,— butt those theye cale Englishe Horses, are so Compounded
off | all countrie Horses, as theye partisipate some== | thinge alwayes off
their Siers, so as thatt | maye some thinge alter the case. ——— |

The frisoṁ, hath Ande Is less wise then the | Englishe, butt no Horse goes
better In the | manege Eyther vppon the Grounde, Terre a Terre, | or In all
Ayres,— & no Horse off more Vse eyther | for a Single Combatt a Horse-
back, or In the | warrs for the Shock, & hardlye to liue off anye | thinge,
& to Indure anye thinge Eyther heates | or Coldes,— & no Horse what
soeuer, makes a | mā a peer more a Sorde mā, then this Horse, | beinge
so quiett, so bolde, & so ashurde, & none | more comleye for Entries off

greate townes, with | Rich foote-Clothes, & rich Sadles theñ this Horse, |
for hee Is a mañlye Horse, & fitt for Euerye | thinge butt Ruñinge a waye,
though hee will | Ruñ faste for a whyle, butt I doubte nott longe | because
his winde Is nott like a Barbs, yett a | Heauye Mañ well armde Vppoñ a
Barbe |

[f.153^v] Ande the same wayghte Vppoñ a Duch Horse | The Duch Horses
strength Is so much aboue | the barbs, as Compared thus I beleue the |
Duch Horse maye Ruñ as faste & as longe as | the Barbe, for the Barbs
winde serueth to no | purpose, when his strength Is nott able to Carie |
his wayghte, for thus the barbe will wante | his litle lighte Jockeye off hiñ,
with a Couple | off Trenchers for a Sadle, & a Lute stringe | Iñ his mouth
for a Bitt,— The Denmarke | Horse Is añ Exselente Horse Iñ the same |
kinde, & coñonlye apter to lerne & lighter | ther are more leapinge Horses,
off these | countries, & kindes theñ off anye Horses | Iñ the worlde. Butt
nowe theye gelde all Iñ | holand, for their profitt, for coches & to keepe
the trade | sendinge 9000: euerye yeare In to france & diuers other places
| that you can hardlye gett a stonde horse worth anye thinge |

{their Coltes | at 2: yeares | olde springe | their mares | & then they | gelde
| them so | Avarise | spoyles | their | Breede, | A towne | will Joyne | & giue
| aboue 200: | for a stalion | butt then | hee couers | all the | mares, | that
| belonges | to that | towne | like a | Towne Bull. |

For the Almañ or Germayne Horse, those | thatt write that they are like
the Holanders so are much deseued, theye meane | the Coñon Countreye
Carte Horse,— butt lett | mee Informe them, ther are fewe Princes Iñ
| Germanye, butt haue Exselente Races, & breedes | off Horse, & their
Stallions are alwayes | eyther Coursers off Naples, Spanishe Horses, | Turkes
Iñ a bundance, & Barbs, & breedinge | off these Stallions their mares
Coumes to bee | verye fine like their Siers & verye pewre | Breedes off
Horses,— as I had one no Napolitan | Iñ the worlde like hiñ for shape
stature, | Couller, strength agiletie & good Nature | woulde make twentye
Capriolls, *wi* the | hieste thatt Euer I sawe & the Justeste & | withoute anye
helpe Iñ the worlde, & | theñ Vppoñ the Grounde to Galope & | change

& goe Terre a Terre, Itt was añ | other kinde off action̄ theñ Euer anye | other Horse did, Hee was a boue the Rate | off Horse kinde, This was a Germanye | Horse his Sier a Courser off Naples.— | I haue nowe two Horses off the Counte | off oldenburge his moste Exselente breed | as fine Horses as Euer I sawe, & one the | hopefuleste that Euer I sawe, thatt Prince was pleased | to presente those Horses to mee & sayde iff I liked nott theñ hee | woulde finde mee others which was like a Prince & | moste Generouslye,— As likewise the Prince of weste Frislande | sente mee a verye fine Horse,— thus much off the | Almañ Horse. ——— |

[f.153^r] For the Courser of Naples, I haue nott seen manye | off theñ butt La. Browe Iñ his Booke sayes that the | Race Is mighteleye decayed, which Is almoste a hundered | yeares a goe, & Pluinell Iñ his booke sayes wee haue | nott nowe such Napolitans as wee haue had, for all | the Rases are Basterded & spoyled,— Ande the | Arch-Duke Leopoldus when hee gouernde these | Countries off Flanders, Brabañ & — Sente for In to | Italeye for eyghte, or teñ Coursers whilst I was | heer which coste hiñ a boue 300: a Horse, Jurneye | & all,— They weare Greate vaste Horses with | huge Heades, & Thick Necks, heaueie Horses with | no Speritt Iñ the worlde, nor no strength, dull | heaueie Jades, fitter for a Brewers Carte then the | sadle,— Ande the Marquis de Carasene, a Spanierde | that nowe Gouverns all these Countries Totaleye | a litle mañ, butt both witteye & wise añ Exselente | Soldier, both for Conducte, & Courage & a good | Horse-Mañ which fewe Spanierds are, & my | verye Noble friende for trewlye hee Is verye | kinde to mee, & makes greate Estimation̄ off | mee, tolde mee that the late warrs Iñ Naples | hath Ruinde the kinge off Spayns Race | off Horses ther, & so Iñ all the Countrye the | like butt thatt theye begañ nowe to repayre | Itt & that hee hoped withiñ fourteen̄ yeares, | Itt maye bee Establishte, as formerlye Itt | hath been, & thus you See thinges doe nott | Stande att a staye, for what hath been formerlye | Is nott so Nowe,— & this Is the truth off the | Napolitañ,— & all the reste off the Races off | Italeye are decayed,— the Duke of Florence | hath the beste Race nowe. ——— |

For the Turkes, I haue seen̄ verye fewe off | theñ, butt two merchantes, broughte three Turkes | heer to Antwerpe, verye fine Horses, butt odlye

shapte, | their heades verye fine, butt like a Camells heade | & Exselente
 Eyes, & thin Neck & Exselentlye risen | somewhat greate Bodies, the Croupe
 like a mules | legges nott greate butt maruolus Sinowe good pastornes, | &
 good hooues, & their backs risen some-what like a | swines, — I had a
 groome, a heauye Englishe Clowne | which I sett vppoñ them, & theye
 made no more off him | theñ iff hee had been as lighte as a fether, theye | a
 peerde nott so fitt for the manege, as for to Ruñ a | Course which I beleue
 theye woulde haue scowerde | theye Trotted verye well & no Amblinge att
 All. |

[f.153^v cancelled] The Horses a boutte Constantenoble, though M^r | Blundevile
 sayes theye are verye Ifauorde | Jades, butt hee was mighteeye deseued,
 with | his olde Aughters, for I haue spoken with | manye Gentle-meñ thatt
 haue been ther, as | likewise with diuers merchants thatt came | Frome
 thence whoeme [*sic.*] all agree, thatt ther | are ther, the moste bewtifull
 Horses In the | worlde, sayenge In soyle time, ther are manye | Hunderde,
 tederde, & so shifte places when | theye haue Eateñ thatt Bare, & Euerye
 Horse | hath a Mañ to looke to him, & Euerye Mañ | a litle tente to lie In,
 & theye saye Itt Is one | off the moste Glorius Sights to see those Horses,
 | that cañ bee, — & the moste Bewtifull Horses | In the worlde, — &
 sertenlye theye are braue | Horses. — The Price off one off these Horses |
 Is a boutte a 100: or a 150: poundes a Horse, butt theñ | ther Is añ other
 dificultye which Is to gett a pass | for the Grande Signore Is verye stricte In
 sufferinge | anye off his Horses to goe oute off his teretories, & | when thatt
 dificultye Is ouer, ther Is añ other | dificultie, which Is iff you haue nott a
 Turke or | two for your Conuoye theye will bee takeñ frome you | bye the
 waye & theñ the Dificultie off a longge | Jurneye, for Sicknes, or laminge,
 for you muste | Coume thoroye [*sic.*] Germanye, the length off the voyage
 | makes Itt dangerous, iff you haue nott verye carefull | meñ to Conducte
 them, besides a good Groome you | muste haue añ Experte Farier, & by no
 meanes to | sufer anye to shewe them butt him, the Resoñ Is this | for when
 theye perceue ther Is a fine Horse theye | will hier a farrier to prick him
 or spoyle him | thatt theye maye haue him, which Is practised | dayleye,
 ——— |

For the Arabieñ thatt Is nurste with Cañells | milke, ther are the strangeste
 reportes off them | Iñ the worlde, for I haue been tolde by manye | Gentle-
 meñ off Credit & by manye manye | merchants, — that the Price off these
 Horses | are a 1000: 2000: & 3000: pounce a Horse, añ Intolerable | &
 An Incredible price, & that the Arabiens, are as | Carefull & diligente
 Iñ keepinge the Geneoliges | off their Horses as anye Princes, cañ bee Iñ
 keepinge | their pedegrees, they keepe the Geneoliges off their | Horses by
 medalls, — when anye off their Soñs | Coumes to bee meñ, then their fathers
 giues | them to shutes off Armes, with two good Semitars, | & one off these
 Horses, & prayes God to bless hiñ | & thers his portion. ——— |

[f.154^f] Ande hee lies Iñ one Roome, & his Horse lies alwayes | Iñ the nexte
 Roome to hiñ, I beleue nott aboue stayres, | Theye talke theye will Ride
 forscore miles Iñ a daye, | & neuer drawe the bridle, when I was younge I
 | Coulede haue baughte añ Nagg for teñ poundes thatt | woulde haue doñ
 as much verye Easeleye, — I neuer | sawe anye butt one, which M^r Johñ
 Markhame a | merchante braughte ouer, whoe sayde hee was a | righte
 Arabieñ, hee was a baye butt a litle Horse | & no raretye for Shape, for I
 haue seen maneye | Englishe Horses farr finer, — M^r Markhame | Solde hiñ
 to kinge James for 500: & so theye | traynde hiñ for a Course, & when hee
 Came to | Ruñ Euerye Horse beate hiñ, — & thus much off the Arabien
 Horse. |

For the Spanishe Horse I onlye before tolde you | off his wisdome, butt iff
 hee bee well chosen I | assure you hee Is the Nobleste Horse Iñ the worlde, |
 firste ther Is no Horse so Curiously shapte all | ouer frome heade to Croupe,
 the moste bewtifull | thatt cañ bee, for hee Is nott so thiñ & Ladye like |
 as the Barbe, nor so Gross as the Napolitañ, butt | between both, — off
 Greate Speritt & off Greate | Courage & dosible, the proudeste walke, the
 | proudeste Trott, & beste Actioñ Iñ his Trott, | the Loftieste Gallope, the
 Swifteste Careere | the louingeste & Gentleste Horse, & filleste [*sic.*] | for a
 Curius Pensill to drawe, & the fitteste for | a kinge In a daye off Triumph
 to shewe hiñ | selfe to his People, or In the Heade off añ Armeye | off anye
 Horse Iñ the worlde,— Ande therefore | no Horse so fitt to breede oñ as a
 Spanishe | Horse, — Eyther for the manege, the warr, ——— | amblinge for

the Padd, Huntinge or for | Ruñinge Horses, Conqueror was off a Spanishe
 | Horse, Shatten Hearinge was off a Spanishe | Horse, Buttler was off a
 Spanishe Horse, | & Peacock was off a Spanishe Mare, & these | beate all
 the Horses Iñ their Time, so much | as no Horse Euer Rañ Neer them, — I
 saye hee | Is absolutlye the beste Horse Iñ the Worlde | for a Stallioñ, for
 all these seuerall thinges | thatt I haue formerlye named, Iff you doe wisley
 aproprate such mares to hiñ as shall | fitt for such vses as you woulde haue
 your | Breed, & so hee Is fill [*sic.*] for all thinges butt, | to breede Carte
 Horses, — Nowe wher the | beste Races off Spanishe Horses | are |

[f.154^v cancelled] The Kinge of Spayne hath manye Races, butt | his beste
 Is Iñ Cordoa, [*sic.*] wher hee hath a boue 300: | mares & Coltes, — Iñ
 Andolosia, ther are moste | Exselente Races off Horses as Cañ bee nott
 onlye | of Noble Mens, butt also off Priuate Gentlemens, | Nowe for the
 Prises, — S^r Edwarde Hide nowe | Lorde Chanselor off Englande, when
 hee was | Embasador Iñ Spayne tolde mee, that S^r. | Beniamiñ wrighte a
 merchante Iñ Spayne | thatt loues Horses, solde a Couple off litle | Spanishe
 Horses for 300: pistolls a peece & | hee sayes, & manye others Confirmes
 A^{itt} for a | greate truth, thatt Itt Is a Coñon Pice [*sic.*], & Rate | att
 Madrid, 300 & 400: Pistolls a Horse, ——— | & the marquis of Seraluo
 tolde mee, thatt a | Spanishe Horse thatt was calde Ile Brano | that was
 sente the Arch Duke Leopoldus | hether thatt his master helde hiñ att a
 | 1000: Crowns Rente, & thatt hee hath knowne | Horses att 7: 8: & a
 1000: poundes Sterlinge | & a Gentle mañ tolde mee thatt hee knewe a |
 Cauallier Iñ Spayne, offerde añ other 300: | pistolls, butt to lett hiñ Ride
 his Horse butt | añ After Noone, & hee was Refused, for the owner had
 Resoñ, for Itt was to Goe to | the Joco de Tauro, wher hee mighte haue |
 been kilde, — for manye off the fineste | Horses Iñ the worlde Is kilde att
 thatt | Sporte which Is the greateste Piteye thatt | Cañ bee; — so nowe you
 See thatt a Spanishe | Horse Is deer ware,— & then Reckoñ his | Jurneye
 frome Andolosia, to Bilbo, or St | Sebastieñ, which Is the nexte porte for |
 Englande, Is 400: miles att leaste & hee | Cañ travell nott a bou teñ miles
 a daye | with your Groome, & your farier att Leaste | besides the Casualtye
 off Lamnes, Sicknes, | & Death, thatt iff hee Coumes saflye to you | yett

hee will bee a verye Deer Horse to you | I assure you, — Ande these are
greate truthes | off the Spanishe Horse. ——— |

[f.155^r uncanceled] For the Barbe. |

[cancelled] The Barberye Horse Is as fine a Horse as cañ bee, butt | somewhatt
slender, & a litle to Ladye Like, hee Is so | Laseye & neglegente Iñ his
walke, as hee will stumble Iñ | a Bowlinge Green, hee trots like a Cowe, &
Galopes lowe, | & no action Iñ anye of those Actions, — butt coñonlye hee
| Is Sinue & nerues, & a cleane strength, Exselentlye winded, & good att
length to Induer, greate Trauell, the wiseste | nexte the Spanishe Horse &
more Dosible, verye apte to | Lerne & Easeye to bee drete, beinge for the
moste parte | off so good a dispotition, Exselente aprehentioñ, Judgmente, |
& memorye,— & when hee Is sertchte, & wakende no | Horse Iñ the worlde
goes better Iñ the manege Iñ | all Ayres what soeuer, & rarelye vppoñ the
Grounde | Iñ all kindes, — The mountayne Barbs theye saye | are the beste
I beleue the Largeste, butt for my parte, | I rather desier a midlinge Horse,
or a Less Horse | These Barbs are cheape Enough Iñ Barberye, as I haue
| been Informde, both by manye Gentle-Meñ, & manye | merchantes, for
theye saye thatt Iñ Barberye | you maye by [*sic.*] a verye fine Barbe, for
20: 25: or 30: | att the moste, butt then your Journeye Is somewhat |
greate, nott by seae, for frome Tunis, to Marsellus Iñ | France Is no Greate
Voyage, butt frome Marsellus to | Callis ^{by lande} you goe all the length off
France, & att Callis | to Shipp them for Englande, — you muste haue | an
Exselente Equier, a Farrier, & one Groome, & | hier the reste off Groomes
as you Goe, butt you muste | take heed thatt those meane Roges ruñs nott
a waye | with soñe off your Horses for ther Is no Trustinge | off the=m, so
your Englishe Farier, & your Englishe | ^{groome} farier muste alwayes lie
Iñ the Stable & none | off those fellowes, — butt your Gentle-Mañ off the |
Horse which aughte to bee a good Horse-Mañ will | order thatt carefullye,
— Butt iff you woulde goe añ | other waye to worke, & a shorter voyage,
then sende | In to Languedock & prouince, wher manye Gentle-Meñ | bye
[*sic.*] Barbs, off 2: 3: & 4: yeares olde att Marsellus, & | keepes them
2: or 3: yeares, & then sells them which | Barbs you maye bye [*sic.*], for
40: or 50: pistolls a peece & | Verye fine Horses as Cañ bee butt then hee

thatt you | Sende muste bee verye Skilfull to chuse well & to | take heed
thatt they bee righte barbes,— for I haue | harde ['heard'] thatt manye In
those Countries a boute marsellus | when ther are manye Barbs Coumes
oute of Barberye | thrusts In coltes off theyr owne Breed amongste them
| for Barbs, & so Sells them, when I was att Paris ther | came 25: Barbs
ther as they sayde nothings butt | Skiñ & bones, so leane, & they weare
solde for 25: pistolls a Horse, my Lorde viscounte Mountagewe | baughte
nine as I remember for I was with him | & helpte to chuse some for him, &
one did beate all | the Ruñinge Horses In Englande |

[f.155^v cancelled] Butt trewlye Iff I had had a million I woulde | nott haue
boughte one off them for they weare | verye ordinarye Horses, neyther doe
I thinke | they weare righte Barbs, neyther by their | Shape, nor Price,
— Butt Breade In some llandes | therabouts, for Iff a man bee att Greate
charges | I woulde Eyther haue añ Exterordinarye | Horse or none, — For
latleye I had a letter frome | a Horse-man att Paris, a French Man that
giues | mee Intelegence off Horses, thatt a merchante | att Paris had two
Barbs, the fineste thatt Euer | he sawe,— sixe yeares olde a peece butt nott
dreste | att all,— & helde theme att 200: pistolls a peece, | therefore you
see thatt righte Barbes & fine | ons, are verye Deer as all good things are,
| Ande thus much off Barbs, ——— |

The Barbe Is nott so fitt a Horse for a Stallion | For the manege, as for
ruñinge Horses, for hee | getts loardge & loose Horses therefore to nott breede
| off him for the manege, Exsepte hee bee a shorte | Horse frome the heade
to the Croupe, stronge | Ramase, & Racoursye, & off a Superfluetye off |
Speritt which fewe barbs are off, & therefore | Breed off your Spanishe Horse,
with choyce | Englishe mares, — & iff you haue a delicate | well chosen Duch
Mare or two, makes añ | Exselente Compotition for the Manege. |

For the Hungarieñ Horse theye are nott worth Speakinge off, butt iff you
will beleue | those off thatt Nation theye will magnifie | them Extreamleye,
& so will all nations what | Soeuer mighteleye Comende their owne Horses |
butt I haue seene Hungarieñ Horses & theye | are nott worth Comendations
I assure you, |

F When the kinge off Polande sente añ Exterordinarye | Embasador with
 manye off the Nobilitye & Gentrye | off Polande to Conducte the Ladye
 Maria frome | Paris to Polande to bee his Queene I was theñ | att Paris &
 sawe his Enterye which was one off | the moste Glorius, & manlye Sights
 thatt Euer | I sawe, after the Polick waye with verye rich | clothes, Polick
 Capps & Greate fethers, & will | when all the masters off Academies weare
 | Comāded to wayte off the Embasador with | all their Scollers & Horses
 In their rich clothes | & sadles, all a la mode their maynes full, | off Ribañs,
 — I proteste In comparisoñ off the Poluxs | theye lookte like Hobyse Horses
 nott butt that their | Horses weare better butt the diference was meerlye |
 In the manlye Habitt off the Polanders, though theye | weare verye Rich to
 boote, — Butt their Horses I doe | nott like att all, — for theye are |

[f.156^f cancelled] For their Shape Juste as the Coñon & ordinarye Horses, |
 & Geldinges In Englande, — & for their Bitts, theye | are Juste like our
 Snaffles, onlye ringes for the Bridle | to bee fastende to as ours are wantinge
 those litle | crosses or oute thinges thatt coumes frome theñ, butt Iff | you
 will beleue the Polanders theye will tell you *their* | *Polanders theye will*
tell you thatt their Horses are | the braueste Horses In the worlde, which
 I haue nott | fayth for, — when wee saye or hath been añ olde | sayenge
 thatt the Polande Horse Is the beste Horse | In the worlde, theye meane
 the meñ to fighte a | Horse-Back, & nott the Horses; Thus much off the |
 Polander. ——— |

For the Swedishe, Horse, I had the Honor to | wayte off the Queen of Sweade,
 when shee | was heer att Antwerpe, & shee vsed mee verye | Gratuslye,
 & Ciueleye, & añ Exterordinarye | Ladye I assure you In all thinges,
 witt Judgmente, | Courage, Grandure all Languages, Greate Lerninge,
 understandes all Countries, a | Greate States woemañ, & añ Exterordinarye
 | Persoñ & mee thinkes greate Louelines aboute | her, Butt for the Sweadishe
 Horses shee | had some for the sadle, butt no greate matter | In theñ, butt
 shee had eyghte *Sweadishe* Coch | Horses, large, Noblye Shapte as Euer I
 sawe * |

{* off the | Counte | off | olden== | bergs | Breede |}

beyonde anye Coursers thatt Euer I yett sawe, | Their Coullers Isabells
with longe white | maynes, Tayles, & toppinges, & these shee | sente Into
Spayne as to A presente to the | Catholike kinge, & Itt was a kingleye |
Presente Fitt for such a Queene to presente | & for so greate a kinge to
receue, & thus | much off the Sweadishe Horse. ——— |

Nowe I muste tell you thatt ther Is good & | Badd Horses off all [^] Countries
nations Iñ the worlde | butt ther Is more Badd theñ good as ther are | off
meñ, — & though ther bee *but* millions off | Paynters yett ther was butt
one Vañ Dike off | manye Ages, or I beleue shall bee the like Iñ | musick,
Iñ Horse-manship, & Iñ wepons, the | like Iñ Horses, for a rare Horse Iñ
anye kinde | Is a dificulte busines to finde, I assure you | & so a rare mañ,—
Itt Is a Harde thinge to finde | fitt Horses for the manege Eyther vppoñ
the | Grounde or Iñ Ayres,— tis trewe arte doth much | butt nature Is the
Grounde for Arte to worke oñ | for withoute thatt Arte Cañ doe butt litle |
Tis trewe I dare Vndertake to make a Cowe goe | Juste Iñ the manege butt
when I haue doñ | thatt Itt Is butt a Cowe & so a Jade | thatt Is dreste hee
Is butt a | Jade when you haue | doñ all you can. |

[f.156^v cancelled] I asshure you Itt Is a verye harde thinge | to finde a good
Padd Nagg or a good Padd | Geldinge, to Amble finleye vppoñ the hanches
| & frome his Amble to his Gallope or frome | his Amble to his Trott, &
firme oñ the hande | Vppoñ the Bitt, I assure you I haue seene verye | fewe
off them, & as fewe good Buck hunters | or Haukinge Nagges, *wi* or winter
huntinge | Geldinges, or Horses to Gallope or Ruñ | shurleye [*sic.*] vppoñ
all groundes, plowde landes, | moores, Parkes, forrests, & Euerye wher |

{* because | hee galops | Vppon the | Hanches |

with a Snaffe, & a Scotch Sadle the Raynes | Slack Iñ his neck, which makes
hiñ the Safer | bee founde lett mee tell you thatt for Runinge | Horses ther
are the moste off them to bee | founde, & the leaste vse, Coñonlye theye
| Ruñ Vppoñ Heathes a Greene Carpetts & muste | ther Ruñ all vppoñ
the Sholders, which | In Troublsome Groundes Is readye to breake | ons
Neck, — & off vse though I loue the Sporte | off a Ruñinge Horse verye
well, & thinke | I añ as good a Jockeye as anye, & haue Riddeñ | manye

hundered matches, & seeñ the beste | Jockeyes, & Studied Itt more theñ
 I thinke | theye haue doñ,— Butt nowe you see howe | dificulte a thinge
 Itt Is to haue a good | Horse Iñ anye kinde for anye Thinge | Therefore I
 Conclude a knowinge Horse | mañ Is nott so hapye for Horses, as a Citiseñ
 | off Londoñ thatt knowes nothings more theñ | to bye [*sic.*] a Horse Iñ
 Smithfeilde for eyghte | pounce teñ shillings or ther aboutes to | Carye
 hiñ to Nottingame, or to Salesburye | & lett hiñ haue neuer so manye
 faltes | yett his Ignorance findes none, which | hee Is verye hapye Iñ, so
 nowe you doe see | howe dificulte a thinge Itt Is to haue a | good Horse Iñ
 anye kinde for anye thinge |

[f.157^r cancelled] Nowe for a Readye Horse Iñ the Manege Is off the | Greateste
 vse Iñ the worlde, for a soldier for | hee obayes Euerye thinge ackordinge to
 the will | off the Rider, both his hande & heele, shure & firme | vpon the
 hande & lighte, nott skitische, fears neyther | Drumms, Trumpetts, Coullers,
 nor Cañon, nor anye thinge, | & you maye Ruñ hiñ Vpon anye thinge &
 hee | will obaye you,— & iff hee rise hee knowes howe to | Coume downe
 ageñ, for you cañ nott pull hiñ | ouer with both your handes, & Iñ a worde |
 there Is no Horse off vse, butt one thatt Is perfectlye | drete Iñ the manege,
 butt thatt Is nott Iñ all | Scooles, & maneges beleue mee. ——— |

[uncancelled] For a Single Combatt a Horse backe manye sayes | Ile stande still
 theñ whatt will you doe with | your Readye Horse,— hee standes still vpon
 | añ Ignorante Horse, & I putt my readye Horses | heade to his or neer Itt,
 — & for Exsample I goe | on the lefte hande, my Horses Croupe oute my
 | Horse obayes the hande, & heele so well, as his | sholders & his Croupe
 Goes Eueñ & makes no | Angle att all, iff hee stande still as hee sayde | hee
 woulde, & promised so to doe, theñ I haue | hiñ on the flanke oñ his righte
 hande or the | Sholders off his Horse & *giu* theñ I give the | Spurr to my
 Horse with all the forse I cañ | & takinge ^{him} on the flanke or side wayes
 with | my Horses heade agaynste hiñ with all the | Force off my Horse,
 Sertenlye hee will bee | tumblede ouer,— Butt nowe putt the Case thatt |
 myne Is a readye Horse & his Is nott, beinge | Heade to heade as I sayde
 before, my Horses | Hinder partes, & forr partes goes together | & makes
 no Angle which *Is* ^{his} Cañ nott doe | theñ I goe with his croupe oute

oñ the lefte | hande to gett his righte flanke, hee seinge | that turnes *the*
 ^ his Horse to followe mee | to hinder mee off gettinge his righte flanke |
 & so off nesesitye giues mee his lefte flanke, | which puttinge my spurrs to
 the Horse & | takinge thatt angle, ouer, & ouer hee muste | needes goe, &
 trewlye I woulde neuer haue a Combatt | a Horse back butt this waye, or
 Else as you goe | Side by Side *on* your Enemeye [*sic.*] on the righte hande
 | as soone as Euer you are paste his heade turne, | your hande to take hiñ
 oñ the flanke, which | will Confounde hiñ, for to ganie lee Croupe Is | to
 farr a boue, & thus Is a Readye Horse | master off anye other Horse that
 Is nott | drete & so master off the mañ, for hee cañ | doe no more theñ his
 Horse will giue hiñ leaue, for his courage heer cañ nott bee | putt In acte
 beinge vppoñ an | Vndreste Horse. |

[f.157^v cancelled] The Marquis off Carasena tolde mee, thatt iff I weare |
 In Spayne, the Kinge of Spayne woulde treatte mee | verye Gratuslye &
 ackordinge to my qualetye & more | & thatt his Catholike Ma:^{thie} woulde
 lett mee haue | the choyce off the beste Horses In Spayne & as manye | as I
 woulde & did assure mee thatt those that come | oute off Spayne are so farr
 Shorte off those thatt remayne | ther as posible Cañ bee,— & yett Captiñ
 Mazin tolde | mee hee thaughte Itt Imposible thatt ther shoulde | bee finer
 Spanishe Horses then hee did see att | Bruxells, both whatt the kinge of
 Spayne sente | To the Arch-Duke Leopoldus, as also those Spanishe | Horses
 Doñ John de Austria, had sente hiñ oute | off Spayne hether,— I wayted off
 Doñ John whoe | vsed mee vereye [*sic.*] Siveleye & some sayde more theñ |
 hee vsed anye a litle mañ, butt a verye fine Prince, | & Extreame hansome,
 A greate dell off witt Judgmente | & Courage, & a greate Stats-mañ for
 his time, hee askte | ofteñ for My Booke off Horse-Manship before Itt |
 came oute, & semed to bee as glad off Itt when I | Sente one to presente
 Itt to hiñ, when hee was heer | att Antwerpe hee did nott see my Horses
 butt all | the Spanishe Grandes & off offisers was heer to | a boue twentye
 Coches, besides manye others, & Greate | Persons In this Countrie as the
 Duke Dascott whoe | Is a fine Gentle-man & manye others besides — & I |
 Ridd three Horses my selfe before them, & my | Equier Captiñ Mazin fiue
 Horses, & when theye | wente Back to the Courte Doñ Johñ askte them
 | wether *th* my Horses weare so Rare as their | Reputations was, & theye

anserde his Highnes | thatt theye wanted nothings off meñ butt speakinge
 | & theñ *the* the Marquis off Seraluo, who Is master | off Doñ Johns Horse
 & our Gouvernor heer off the | Castle, tolde Doñ Johñ thatt hee askte mee
 whatt | Horse off all nations I liked beste & that I | anserde ther was good &
 badd Horses off all | nations, butt off all kinde off Horses the Barbs | weare
 the Gentle-meñ off Horse-kinde butt | Spanishe Horses weare Princes, &
 this anser | pleased the Spanierdes Infinitlye, & tis verye | trewe theye are
 so. |

[f.158^r] The Marquis off Carasena, was so verye Erneste with mee | to see mee
 Ride, & I saye Ciueleye Erneste, & I excusde Itt | whatt I coulde, for
 trewlye I had nott been a Horse-back | off a greate whyle before & oute
 off practise, butt hee | repeated his desiers so much to mee, sayenge hee
 desierde | no more butt to see ^{^mee} a Horse-back though a Horse did butt
 | walke vnder mee, — I tolde hiñ Itt was nott worthye | off hiñ, & though
 I thoughte I shoulde hardlye sitt | Iñ the Sadle, yett I woulde obaye his
 Coñmande so | some two dayes affter hee pleased to Coume hether, & | I rid
 a Spanishe Horse before hiñ Calde le Superbe | a lighte Baye a Bewtifull
 Horse, & though a harde | Horse to Ride yett when hee was litt righte the |
 Redieste horse Iñ the worlde, hee wente Iñ Coruetts | forwarde, Backwarde,
 side wayes oñ both handes, | made the Cross perfectlye vppoñ his voltaes,
 & | changinge vppoñ his voltaes so Juste withoute | breakinge a Time, & Iñ
 such musicall time, as | no mutitiañ Coude keepe a Better, & theñ wente
 | Terre a Terre perfectlye, — Theñ I mounted añ | other Spanishe Horse
 Calde le Jantie & hee was | well Babtisde for hee Is the fineste shapte Horse
 | thatt Euer I Sawe, & the neateste a browne Baye | with a white Starr
 Iñ his for heade no Horse | Euer wente Terre a Terre like hiñ so Juste &
 so | Easeye, — & then the Piroyte Iñ his length so Juste & | so swifte as
 the standers bye Cañ hardlye see the | Riders face as hee goes;— & trewlye
 when hee hath | doñ I añ so diseye as I can hardlye sitt Iñ the Sadle ——— |
 this Spanishe Horse le Jantie goes so Exactlye Iñ | Coruetts forwardes, as
 no Horse Cañ goe better, hee | Is a Horse off no greate strength, therefore
 you see | when a Horse hath Agiletie lightnes, Speritt | well temperde, & a
 good dispotioñ howe much a | better Horse hee Is then a Horse thatt hath
 onlye | strength withoute these for a Duch-Brewers | moste mightye greate

& strong Horse wantinge Speritt | & a gilette woulde neuer goe well Iñ the manege,— then I | mounted a Barbe thatt wente a metz Arie [*sic.*] verye hye both | forwarde & vppoñ his voltaes — & Terre a Terre & when I | had rid the Marquis off Caresene semed to bee Infinitlye | well satisfied, & some Spanierds, thatt weare by Croste | them selues & cried meraculo;— the Marquis off ormonde | was then heer a Verie Noble & Honorable Person as | cañ bee,— & tolde a Spanierde off qualetye talkinge | off Horses thatt hee woulde bringe hiñ to añ Englishe | Lorde thatt woulde shewe hiñ good Horses, & hee | admierde them Extreamleye, wee haue had off all | Nations heer to Coume to see them, abundance off | Spanierds, off the beste qualetye & officers abundance | The Prince of Condye ^{twise} & a greate manye Noble meñ, | & french officers with him, & his Highnes hath been | heer twice & a bundance off French att other times | & latlye three or fowre French Lordes | verye Ciuell & theye thinke | all the Horse-manship | Is Iñ France. |

[f.158^v] yett one off them sayde par Dieu Monsieur Il | ett bien Hardye qui mounte de vant vous, & | sayde Ile nia plus de Signiurs Eñ AEngletere | Coume vous — Etaliens wee haue had heer Iñ | abundance, Germayns greate store & off Qualetye, | The Lansgraue off Hess, which theye calde the | mad Prince butt a verye Noble Gentle-Mañ & | Extream kinde & good Naturde hee writt | mee a letter a verye kinde ^{one} oute off Germanye | & sayde hee woulde sende mee two Horses | off his owne Breed, & soone affter was kilde | Iñ the warrs, the kinge off Sweade made | with the Polander, this Prince maried the | kinge of Sweades Sister, — hee spoke a litle | Englishe & manye Sweades hath been heer & | Some off Greate qualetye, & Danes off the | beste Sorte, & Polanders, — so manye wee | haue had heer In the Couerte or Ridinge House | & Itt Is pretye Large, & so full of Greate Lordes | & Coñanders as I proteste my Equier Captiñ | Maziñ had much a doe to gett Roome to Ride | & offten wee haue been att thatt with them | I haue had fowre Barbs fiue Spanishe Horses | & a bundance off Duch Horses moste Exselente | Horses as Couelde bee; — A Graye leapinge Horse | & the moste bewtifull Horse thatt Euer I sawe | & wente the hieste & Justeste Iñ leapes thatt | Euer I sawe, & withoute anye helpe Iñ the worlde | & Vppoñ the Grounde, & Terre a Terre beyonde | all other Horses, Trewlye

hee lookte as iff hee | had been a boue the Rate off Horse kinde, the | Duke
of Quise hearinge off hi^m two Gentle-meⁿ | a French Rider & aⁿ Englishe
Maⁿ both writt | mee worde thatt iff I woulde parte with hi^m | The Duke
of Quise woulde giue [*sic.*] mee sixe ——— | hunderde pounce Starlinge
for hi^m, *which* | & hee died some three dayes before I harde | Itt butt iff
hee had nott died I shoulde haue | desierde his Highness to haue Excusde
mee, | for I woulde haue taken no money for hi^m | for hee was a boue
Prise, besides I a^m to olde | & to greate a begger to thinke to bee made
Rich | by the Sale off a Horse I haue bought Horses | to the Sum off manye
Thousandes butt neuer | was a good Horse Courser for Sellinge thatts |
none off my profession, — butt my Gratius Master | when hee harde this
Horse was dead, Sayde |

[f.159^f cancelled] I proteste I a^m verye Sorye for Itt, nott onlye for my | Lorde
Newcastles Sake butt such a Horse realye Is | aⁿ Uniuersall loss to maⁿ
kinde, & I assure [^]you this | kinge Is able to Judge for I proteste hee Rides
the | beste off anye Gentle-maⁿ Iⁿ the worlde, naye | I assure you I neuer
sawe anye Riders French or | Etaliens ride so well or so Grase-fullye, & both
| nations & Riders off those Nations hath Rid my | Horses heer butt coulde
nott make the^m Goe att all | & his Ma:^{tie} made the^m Goe admirablye well
& | this Is for truth sake, & nott flaterye att all, for | the kinge knowes
verye well wether Horses | Goe well with hi^m or no,— & hee sayde to mee
| very knowinglye, my Lorde sayes hee ther are | verye fewe thatt knowes
Horses, & Itt was willeye | Judgde off his Ma:^{tie} for all Vndertakes Itt, butt
| verye fewe knowes the^m,— somethinge I muste | saye for my selfe, thatt
Itt Is a greate Joye to mee | to see his Ma:^{tie} Ride so well, because I had
the | Honor when I was his Gouvernor to sett hi^m a | Horse-back firste &
to Instructe hi^m,— hee Is | such a kinge as ther Is no more to bee founde
| so, for wisdom, witt vallor, good Nature, Bountefull, | greate kindnes, &
always In the Righte place, | Caⁿ Read Meⁿ as well as busines knowes all
their | Humors, & knowes whatt Aplicacions to make to the^m | a handsome
Prince as Caⁿ bee, & when ther is ocation | for Balls no maⁿ Dances like
hi^m, a greate vertuoso, | & Vnderstandes the^m all, as Musick, Pictures,
| Medalls, Statues, figures, Seales, Hanginges, | all furneture Arketecture,
& what nott, Iⁿ | perfection, Ande for Nauigation admirable | & so for

all fortifications, vnderstandes all | Countries, & States, & Iff anye doubtte
off this | greate truth lett them butt speake with him, | & theye will bee
fullye Conuerted I warante | you to the purpose, for I vowe to God realye
| I neuer harde ['heard'] anye man speake more to the | poynte, & the
Truth off thinges ^{then} as his Ma:tie doth, | In all thinges what soeuer, &
so God preserue | him I besech him & restore him to his kingdomes | to
the Coumporte [*sic.*] off all his loyall subiects, |

[f.159^v] Nowe I muste lett you knowe Trewlye all | The Horsemanship, thatt Is
In the Christian | worlde. ——— |

Firste wee will begiñ with Italeye, which was the | firste, & the foundatiõ
off all the Horse-manship In | the worlde, — Theye vsed to trotte a Colte
two or three | yeares In their Bardell, Longe Cañon, & Cauatzane | before
hee came to strayten him with narower lessons | to giue him a good Apagio,
which Is to setle him on the | Hande & Intolarable time spent to litle
purpose trottinge | Vpp & doune Hills & stopinge doune Hills, & such olde
| mustie fooleries, to spende time to no purpose, & labors | & tiers Horses
more then iff theye made them Goe ——— | Butt nowe In Italeye I beleue
ther Is hardlye one man | thatt Is towards a good Horse—Man, for I haue
Inquierde | off & Exsaminde all the Italiens, & other Nations | Thatt haue
been latlye In Italeye & theye all conclude | ther Is no Horse—man ther
worth anye thinge, theye | doe nott settle a Horses heade, which Is the
Grounde | off all,— & their legges workes Continualye like winde | mills
Sales, Auto, A-uto, which Is moste Ignorantlye | doñ off them, & which Is
much worse Iff Itt can bee | theye alwayes ^{pull} the outwarde Cauatzane
Rayne to | the Turne, so that the Horse goes one waye & Lookes | añ other,—
butt thatt Is nott all for thatt makes him | goe false with his legges, both
vppon his trotte Galope & | Terre a Terre,— butt theye saye theye doe Itt to
putt In his | Croupe thatt Is verry trewe Itt doth so, butt Itt putts his | Arse
before his head, & thats damnable false, | An Etalien heer att Bruxells a
Napolitan Rider | thatt was Doñ Johns Rider mighteleye Comended | butt
the Simpleste fellowe In the worlde I dare saye | hee shall neuer dress a
Horse perfectlye, I sawe | his Create añ Etalien Ride fowre Horses heer In |
my Gardeñ, off the Marquis off Seraluoes, neuer a | one vppon the Hande

neyther did theye anye thinge | butt Gallope false & change false, a verye
Simple | fellowe as Euer I sawe a Horse-Back I dare saye | a Horse-Coursers
Boye In Smith-feilde shall make | anye off their Geldinges, Gallope & change
better In a | Snafle, than hee did anye off his with a Bitt, | Thus you see
Italeye hath loste their Latiñ for | Horse-mañship or Else theye neuer had
much | & the Ignorance of others did admier their nothings | & iff theye had
a litle more then theye haue nowe | I doubt Itt was no greate matter,— So
you see thinges | Standes nott att a Staye, iff theye Coulede haue Ridd, | In
shure I coulede nott Ride one off their Horses | twentie yarde butt to lighte
because I shoulde | finde theye weare neyther obediente to the hande | nor
the Heele, so falsleye Ridd, & thus much for | your Italieñ Horse-Mañship,
— Thatts nothings | butt talke & mountebanke. ——— |

[f.160^r] Nexte for the French Horse-manship, |

In shorte all theyr dressinge off Horses are butt att | three Pillers, or Postes,
The Single Piller with a longe | Rope tied to his nose att one Ende, & the
Groome to holde | Itt a bouthe the poste att the other Ende, & on to followe
| him with a whip calde a Chambrier, & you are welcoume, | This is nott
within the hande, & the heeles which you | talke off, butt within the Rope
& the Chambrier, the | Rope for the hande, & the chambrier for the Heeles,
so | this Is a greate Mistake, — Then you muste putt him | betwixte two
Pillers, with a Rope ageñ, vpon his | nose with the two Rayns off the Rope
tied to Each | Piller, & one behinde him with a Chambrier to whipp | him,
which will make him braueleye Restie, iff with | greate dificultie hee Scapes
thatt, then you muste | Jaunte him frome one side to añ other, & on with a |
Rod before, & añ other with a whipp behinde him, | to make him Rise iff you
Cañ, & iff some Horses | goes In Ayres between the Pillers, theye will nott
| goe frome them, the Reson Is playne, for between | the Pillers the Horse
goes Vppoñ the nose & nothings | Vppoñ the Bitt, so nott knowinge the
helpe off the | hande eyther vppoñ the Barrs, or the Curbe howe | shoulde
hee goe beinge Ignorante off Itt, — The | Pillers haue Spoyled more Horses,
then Euer anye | thinge In the worlde did & shall neuer dress a | Horse
perfectlye as longe as theye liue att them, | nor neuer giue a Horse a righte
Apewye nor firme | him on the Hande, & shall goe no wher butt wher | hee

Is vsed & Ill Enough ther to,— & false dreſte | beinge neyther to the Hande
or the Heele as hee | aughte to bee Eyther for a Horse off vse or pleasure |
besides tis a Routiñ theye Goe all by Rote, which | Is by the Eyes, & nott
bye [=by] the ſence off feelinge | which Is to feele the Hande & the heeles,
& ſo | to obaye them,— So for the Frenſhe Horse-manship, | The Recite Is
take two Ropes, three meñ & three | Pillers, & theye will Spoyle all your
Horses ——— | Brobutuñ Este, & thus you are welcome to the | Frenſhe
manege. ——— |

For the hye Almañ or Germane Ridinge, |

a good whipp Iñ their handes, & trounce them ſoundlye | butt theye neyther
knowe whye nor wherfore theye | are all for varietie off Bitts Iñ Germane,
which ſhewes | theyr Ignorance, thinkinge a peece off Iron Iñ a Horses |
mouth Cañ make hiñ knowinge ſometimes theye will | Imetate the french,
ſome times the Etalieñ, & ſomtime | their owne & ſertenlye their owne Is
as good or as Badd | as anye off them, — I ſawe them Ride att Hamberowe
| the Queen of Sweades Horse-mañ a braue Ignorante Germayne | Rider, &
ſo Iñ Hollande Juſte the like which Is | worſe then nothinge, for nothinge
woulde nott Spoyle | Horses, which theye doe. ——— |

[f.60^v] Nowe for my newe Methode off my manege, | & my Equier Captin
Mazines, ther Is no | Truth butt ours, for ther Is butt one truth Iñ | anye
thinge & all the Reſte Is falſe, ſome ſayes | butt neerer the truth,— whye
iff one bee withiñ añ | Inch off Itt & nott ther, yett hee Is as much nott Iñ
the | truth as hee thatt Is a hunderde miles off, tis | trewe hee Is neerer Itt
for diſtance off place, butt | nott for truth, — I haue practiſed the manege
& | ſtudied Itt Euer ſince I was ten yeares olde, I | haue Rid with the beſte
maſters, manye Etaliens | a bundance off French, ſome Germayns, manye
| English, haue read all their Bookes, Etalieñ | Bookes, french Bookes,
Engliſhe Bookes all that | hath been writt I haue reade ſome Latiñ Bookes |
a greate dell of practiſe, Spoylde manye Horses | haue had manye thouſande
poundes worth | off Horses haue been longe a boute Itt, — Butt ſtill | Itt
rañ Iñ my minde thatt ther was ſome thinge | which theye all miſte, & ſo
att laſte founde | oute this newe Methode off Dressinge Horses | which Is

the Greateste truth Iñ the worlde | & the Quintesence off Horse-Manship,
& so muste | reffer you to & ^{this} my Booke, — Butt sayes one doth your |
{& both to | my firste | Booke, |}

Lo:^{ps} thinke thatt your Booke woulde make mee a | Horse-Mañ,— firste I
anser for the Booke thatt | Itt Is sett doune Iñ writinge as playnleye & as
| clearlye as posiblye Cañ bee, then ther Is Circles | & his shooes to shewe
howe his legges shoulde | goe, then ther Is Exacte figures Iñ all postures,
| & Iñ all actions both off man & Horse, & more | Cañ nott bee, — butt
wether my Booke will make | you a Horse-mañ or Noe, though Itt doth as
much | as *can* a Booke Cañ doe, I cañ nott tell thatt for | firste you muste
haue Itt all Iñ your heade, & | beinge Ignorante off Itt Itt maye bee you
will | nott vnderstande Itt butt putt the Case you doe | Vnderstande Itt,
yett wantinge the practise | you Cañ nott doe Itt, & no falte att all off the |
Booke butt Iñ you,— for the Englishe thinkes | theye cañ see nothinge butt
theye cañ doe Itt | which muste bee by Heauenlye Infutioñ & | Inspiration
which I neuer sawe anye Ride by | Eyther off them, though manye preaches
as theye | thinke bye [*sic.*] them, no Itt Is a longe studye a diligente |
practise, a longe Habitt & Coustome which doth | all thinges Iñ the worlde
& nothinge doñ withoute | Itt,— for ther Is Cuñinge In daubinge doe you
thinke | thatt añ Ignorante Scoole Boye Cañ bee as lerned | as a Docter, or a
Skilfull mutitiañ *R*Writes | the rareste booke Iñ the worlde for composinge |

[f.161^r] or Singinge doe you thinke thatt as sounne as you haue | read his Booke
thatt you cañ doe Itt no trewlye, & yett | nott the falte off the Booke,
butt your falte, to bee so | partiall to your selfe as to thinke thatt you can
doe | anye thinge att the firste that you neuer practised | or studied.— Itt
woulde bee a miracle I assure [^] you butt I | Shall see no such miracles Ime
Serteñ off, [^] that — & so a | Luteniste to write a rare Booke, as soone as
you haue | reade Itt, doe you thinke you can playe on the Lute | no trewlye
butt you [^] can Jangle the Stringes, — I butt you | saye you cañ ride, fayth
Juste as you Jangle the | Lute stringes, & no otherwise, I ['ay'] butt you
haue lernte | Iñ Italey & France, I ['ay'] marye [exclam.] thats some thinge
Indeed, | so manye Crowns a month, & the Horse did nott throwe | you

& thers all,— Mr Spenser the beste Scoller In all | the Academye, & a fine Gentle-Mañ, & had been | two yeares ther & when hee Came to ride on off | my Horses Coude nott make him Goe, so his Brother | In Lawe, sayed [^] my Lord you muste Excuse him for hee hath | nott Rid off a greate whyle, no by God sayes Mr | Spenser, Brother you are deseued, for I knowe nowe | I Coude neuer Ride, — God knowes howe manye younge | Galantes Coumde newlye oute off Academies, Englishe | French, Irishe, & Gentle-Meñ In this Countrye thatt | weare famde for good Horse-Meñ, & trewlye no | peece off a Horse-Mañ, & rid the woefuleste thatt | Coude bee,— Naye masters off Academies, two french | Meñ that Rid, Rid God knowes verye meanlye | & two other french Riders thatt stood by laffte | att them, & verye wortheleye.— I ['ay'] butt sayes hee I | Cañ ride a Readye Horse, wherin hee Is mighteleye | deseued,— For a Readye Horse, Is the hardeste Horse | to Ride, for the leaste motioñ Is añ absolute | Coñmande vnto him, & añ Ignorante giues him such | Counter times as hee putts him quite oute butt | because a Gentle-mañ hath Rid a hundered | miles In a daye hee thinkes hees a Horse-Mañ |

{why a | poste boye | cañ doe | as much |}

or because hee cañ ruñ a match with his Groome | or leape a Dich or a Hedge a Huntinge & holde | by the mayne, hee thinkes hees a Horse-mañ whye | his Huntsboye doth as much & my Lorde Maior | when hee goes to waye ['weigh'] Butter, sitts a legg off | eyther Side verye Graueleye, añ Exselente Horseman, | why I haue seen manye wenches Ride a Stride, | & Gallope & Ruñ their Horses, & yett I thinke | theye woulde hardlye ride a Horse well In the | manege butt because People cañ Ride off this | fatioñ theye thinke their Horse-Meñ, wherin | theye are verye much deseued, — Butt to ride a redye | Horse sertenlye Is the moste dificulte Horse to Ride | Mr Germayne a fine Gentle-mañ & the beste Scoller | du Pleseye had In all his Academye I woulde haue | had him Rid butt hee woulde nott, & I tolde | him iff you will butt sitt still I will warante | you the Horse will goe well with you |

[f.161^v] I ['ay'] by God sayes hee, butt a mañ Cañ nott sitt still | which was

sayde knowinglye & like a | Horse-mañ, for one that Is nott a Horse-mañ
| cañ nott sitt still,— that belonges onlye to a | greate master,— Butt Is
nott all Trades bounde | Prentice, seauen, & nine yeares, & manye bunglers
| off them̄ to, & all professions twentye & thirteye | yeares, before these
are greate Masters In̄ | anye one off them̄ & Horse-manship the hardeste
| off all & yett the Englishe Gentle-mañ will | Ride the firste daye as well
as the greateste | Master, butt hees deseued, naye theye thinke | to bye Itt
with their moneye anye qualetye | Iff good qualeties Could be purchaste
with | Moneye my Lord maior woulde be a fine | Gentlemañ,— Ande thus
theye thinke & | talke, & muste speake foolishlye when theye | speake off
thinges theye doe nott knowe | for Academies theye Ride all alike, three |
Pillers three meñ, & a whip Calde a Chambrier | & you are welcome, —
Iff this weare nott the | Righte waye off Ridinge, whye doth our Kinge |
that Vnderstandes Ridinge verye well sende | his Horses to Captin maziñ,
so does the Duke of Yorke, | a good Soldier, the Duke of Gloster a good
Horse-Mañ,— | & Rid att du Plesis Academye, sendes his Horses to Captiñ
| Maziñ, whatt doe you saye to the Prince of Conde, a rare | Soldier, &
añ Exselente Horse-mañ, tooke three or fowre | Horses oute off a French
Academye att Bruxells to | sende them̄ to Captiñ Maziñ, & a bundance off
French | Caualiers off Qualetye sendes dayleye Horses to Captiñ | Maziñ,
— & one off them̄ tolde mee, Par Diezue Monsieur | Ile bieñ hardye qui
moute de vant vous, — The Counte | off Merceane that famous Soldier,
hath had manye | Horses with Captiñ Maziñ, The Marquis of ormonde, |
Earle off Bristo thre hee tooke oute off a Duch | Academye att Bruxells to
sende to Captiñ Maziñ, | In̄ this countrye the Duke Dascott & abundance |
off others, oute off Germanye manye, & oute off | the States dominions, —
Ande sertenlye iff our | Methode weare nott the beste for dressinge Horses |
sertenlye all these People Could nott be so deseued, | to take their Horses
frome other handes & sende | them̄ to Captiñ Mazin x — Ther Is añ Etalien
Rider | Signior dell Campe att Bruxells, thatt after [^] he sawe my Horses |
{sayde}

Il fout tirer le Planch thatt Is to drawe the Bridge | none to Coume after
Itt,— Butt lett Itt be whatt | Itt will, Euerye Mañ doth what hee Cañ,

& iff hee | please hiṁ selfe with his owne opinioṁs, though hee | dislike
my waye neuer so much hee pleases mee | abundantlye though hee shoulde
sensure a thinge | hee Vnderstandes nott, I aṁ so Compleſante with hiṁ, |
& iff hee caṁ nott doe Itt & therefore Shoulde saye | Itt Is a foolishe thinge,
the manege, Itt shall please | mee verye well, |

[f.162^r uncanceled] For Barbs. |

[cancelled] I aṁ off opinion & beleue Itt Is trewe, thatt ther neuer | Came oute
off Barberye the beste Barbs,— nott butt one mighte | haue theṁ,— Butt
the Case Is this, Those thatt bringes | Barberies oute off Barberye, are
Eyther french Horse— | Coursers, thatt Trades Iṁ Barberye, or Merchants,
firſte | to begiṁ with the Horse Coursers, theye alwayes bye | those Horses
that are cheapeſte for their Aduantage | for iff theye baughte off greate
prises, Itt woulde nott | quitt coste & so theye bye butt the worſte, &
meaneste | off Barbs,— Theṁ for the merchants, theye wante | Scill,— besides
theye will bye the cheapeſte to for | their aduantage, when Horses off price
theye | knowe nott well howe to putt off a geṁ, & so theye | bye butt
the worſte, & meaneste off Barbs, oute | off these reſons I haue ſhewde
you, which muſte | make mee beleue abſolutlye thatt the beste Barbs |
doe nott coume ouer.— for doe wee nott ſee dayleye | heer the Horse
coursers off Brabande & flanders, | thatt goes Into Englande Euerye yeare
to bye | Horses, thatt theye bringe ouer the meaneste | & worſte Horses,
& Geldinges, that are In the | kingdome, & meerlye for to bye att Easelye
rates | thatt theye maye putt theṁ off with aduantage | for iff theye shoulde
bye Iṁ Englande Horses | off a 100; 150: & 200:¹ a Horse which price hath |
beeṁ giueṁ both att Moltaṁ, & Pankrich fayre, | those greate Prises woulde
nott goe off heer, wher moneye Is so Scarſe & so theye woulde | bee vndoṁ
& therefore byes off Smale prizes. |

Iff please God I Euer Coume In to Englande | I will ſende Captiṁ Maziṁ Into
Spayne In to | Andolofia, to bye mee two Spanishe Horses | for Stallions
for ther Is the beste Races, & though | Spanishe Horses bee verye Deer;
yett ther one maye | bye a younge Spanishe Horse off fowre, or fiue | yeares
olde, for a 100: or a 150:¹ a Horse which Is | verye cheape Iṁ Coṁpariſoṁ off

Elder Horses, att | Madrid,— & theñ Captiñ Maziñ shall goe with | those
Horses In to Barberye which Is añ Easeye | Pasage frome Andolosia, Iñ to
Barberye for Itt | Is butt passinge the straytes, which Is nott so farr, | as
betwixte Douer & Callis , & ther the Captiñ | Shall bye mee the beste Barbs
hee cañ see, or will | bee solde, & bye mee Sixe, eyghte, or teñ as hee likes |
& theñ Ship them all for Marsellus, & frome | thence all the waye by Lande
to Calis, & so for | Englande, & theñ to Welbeck. ——— |

I will nott spare Captiñ Mazin to goe In to | Turkeye butt iff I Coule finde
a mañ with | Scill & honestye, I woulde venter so much moneye | as to bye
two Turkes,— To speake with the marchantes, | Itt Is to litle purpose, for
theye haue no Scill,— butt I | beleue of Sackuile Crowe añ Noble Gentle-
Mañ thatt | was Imbasador att Constantenoble, Coule putt | mee Iñ a
good waye for the | beste Turkes. ——— |

[f.162^v] For Englishe Horses, & Scotch Gallawayes. |

Sertenlye the Englishe Horses for all vses whatt | soeuer, frome the Carte
to the Manege are the beste | Horses Iñ the worlde, & some moste bewtifull
| Horses as anye are what-soeuer, off anye *Nation* ^{kingdome} | for theye are
bread oute off all *nations* ^{the} off Horses | off all kingdomes,— Butt iff you
woulde bye for | the manege att fayres,— you muste goe to Powell | fayre,
& Harborowe fayre, & meltoñ fayre |

{Northam= | ton & | Lester | shyre: ——— |}

& theye saye nowe thatt Northamtoñ fayre Is the | beste,— Thatt Is you
muste bye such Horses as theye | Sell for the Carte & Coch Horses, for such Is
the | beste for the manege, you muste nott thinke | to bye delicate Shapte
Horses, like the Spanishe | Horse, Barbe or Turke, butt yett hansomer
Horses | theñ Coñonlye Duch Horses are,— That Is you | muste bye a
Shorte truste Horse with good feet | & legges, full off Speritt & action,
liueleye & | iff hee leape off hiñ selfe so much the better, | & iff your Horse-
mañ hath Skill to bye you | three or fowre off these theye Cañ nott doe amiss
| for the manege, & proue moste admirable | Horses both Iñ all Ayres, &

Vppoñ the Grounde, | Thatt Is for theñ selues butt I woulde nott | breed
off theñ by no meanes ——— |

Molteñ fayre for the moste parte are younge stonde | Horses, & some
Geldinges, butt fitter for the Padd, & | huntinge, theñ for the manege,—
Ripoñ fayre Is butt | the reñnante off molteñ fayre, & Coñonlye butt
| Geldinges, & Nagges,— This Is yourke Shyre,— Nottingame | shyre
Lentoñ fayre, which Is a greate fayre, off all sortes | off Horses, butt
Espetialye Geldinges, & Nagges fitter for | the Padd, & Galopinge, theñ
for the manege,— some | stonde Horses are ther to,— Iñ Stafforde Shyre
a greate | fayre att Pankridge, butt for the moste parte theye | are butt
Coltes, & younge Horses, though Sometimes by | chance ther are others,—
manye other fayres butt nott | worth the Naminge, & thus much for the
Northereñ | Partes,— For the weste Countrye I añ verye Ignorante | off
butt my Lord Pauletts Ansestors had a good breede | off Horses, Tregunill
bredes butt by chance nowe & theñ, | my Lorde off Pembroke did breede
butt I neuer harde | off anye rare Horses off his Race. Iñ Wostershyre | &
Iñ the vale off Esañ ther Is good stronge Carte | Horses,— Iñ Cornwell,
ther Is good nagges, & Exselente good welshe nagges to — & Iñ Scottlande
the Galawayes | the beste Nagges off theñ all; — Ther weare | manye good
Races Iñ Englande when I was ther butt | all those are nowe Ruinde,— Ther
Is manye newe breders | off Horses Coumde vpp theye saye, butt I doubte
none | off the beste, because I beleue their Stallions are nott | verye pewre,—
my resoñ Is thatt these meñ thatt nowe | Gouverne are nott so Curius, as
the Greate Lordes, & | Greate Gentrye weare heer to fore neyther will theye
| bee att the Coste besides theye haue nott knoledge | off Horses Iñ ther
partes & kindoumes [*sic.*], neyther | Indeed doth theye knowe Horses, for
though Euerye | mañ pretendes to Itt yett I assure you ther are verye | fewe
knowes Horses as the kinge | sayes verye wisleye. ——— |

[f.163^f] For Englishe mares ther are none like theñ Iñ the | worlde to breed oñ,
butt then you muste aproprate | theñ, fitt for such Horses as you woulde
Breed; ——— | as for Exsample, iff you woulde breed for the manege | The
mares muste haue fine forhandes, butt nott to longe | necks, fine heades,
& well hunge oñ, & their necks rightlye | turnde, brod breasts, good Eyes,

greate Bodyes, for so the | foles will haue the more Roome to Lye their
good Legges | & by no meanes longe, good Hooues, Shorte & bendinge
| Pastornes, & shorte frome the heade to the Croupe & | stuffye,— This
shape fitts the manege beste off all Shapes | & iff your mares bee thus
Chosen, Itt makes no matter | whatt Couller thayre off, nor whatt marks
nor whatt | Tayles, or mayns, they haue, so theye bee shapte thus | full of
strength, & a superfluite off Speritt, & | nott a boue sixe, or seauē yeares
olde;— Butt I muste | tell you, thatt iff you had, towe or three fine Duch
mares, | shapte as I formerlye tolde you Itt makes a fine | Compositiōn,
with a Spanishe Horse, for the manege | Ande a Spanishe Horse, with such
mares as I haue | Tolde you; — Thes are nott onlye for the manege butt |
Iñ a mañer for all vses ——— |

Iff you woulde haue mares to breed Ruñinge Horses | off, theñ theye muste
bee Shapte thus,— as lighte as | posiblye you Cañ, Large, & longe, butt
well shapte | a Shorte back butt longe sides, & a litle longe | Leggde — &
their breasts to bee as narowe as maye | bee,— for so theye will Gallope, the
lighter, the | nimbler, & ruñ the faster,— for the lighter & | thiñer you breed
for Galopinge Is the better ——— | your Stalliōn by anye meanes a Barbe,
& somewhat | off this shape, thatt I haue discribde the mares to | bee off,—
for a Barbe that Is a Jade will gett a better | Ruñinge Horse, theñ the beste
Ruñinge Horse Iñ | Englande, as S^r John Feñwick tolde mee, which | hath
more Experience off ruñinge Horses theñ | anye mañ Iñ Englande, for hee
hath had more | Rare Ruñinge Horses theñ all Englande besides, | For *off*
the moste parte all the famous Ruñinge | Horses Iñ Englande, thatt rañ one
agaynste añ | other, weare off his Race, & breed,— Some Coñendes | the
Turkes verye much for to breed Ruñinge Horses | oute off, butt theye are
so Scarse & Rare, as I cañ giue | no Judgmente off theñ, & therfore aduise
you to | the barbe a gayne, which I beleue Is much the | better Horse, to
breed Ruñinge Horses oute off. |

[f.163^v] What Stature a Horse Is beste to bee off eyther | for the warr, or for a
Single Combatt, or anye thinge Else. ——— |

Ther are greate disputts, amongste Caualiers | a boute this busines,— I will
nott trouble you |

{much }

a boute thayre Arguments, butt onlye deliuer | Vnto you my opinion,—
Those that are for hye & | large Horses, sayes theye are stronge for the
Shock, | butt theye mi^lste knowe thatt all Large Horses | are nott stronge,
naye for the moste parte thayre ['they're'] | nott onlye the weakeste Horses,
& comonlye off | no Speritt, or Actioñ,— butt putt the Case a greate |
Horse weare stronge, yett hee Is so tall & his | strength defused, & Indeed
so oute off his strength | as a midlinge Horse, antreden sells or rather a |
less Horse beinge Vnder hiñ sertenlye woulde ouer throwe | hiñ withoute
all doubte so thatt a midlinge | Horse, or a Less Is beste for the warr, or
a Single | Combatt withoute all doubte midlinge Horses, | & less Horses,
Theye haue for the moste parte, | both strength, Speritt, & agiletie & nott
one | Iñ hunderds, butt proues well,— when a large | nott one Iñ thousandes
doe proue well,— Naye | the midlinge, or less Horse for all thinges | Is beste,
for the Padd, Buck Hunters, Haukinge | Nagges, or Geldinges, for huntinge
Horses for | winter, Galopinge oñ the hye waye manye | miles,— for the
Coch for the Carte, for anye | thinge,— & iff theye shoulde faule,— a litle |
Horse woulde doe hiñ less hurte then a greater | Horse to lie vppoñ hiñ,—
Geldinges & Gelte nagges | are fitter for greate Jurneyes or huntinge or |
haukinge Iñ Suñer then Stonde Horses, for their | heate with the heate
off the weather soone heates | their feet, & founders, when Geldinges are
Cooler | & so trauell better, & nott tier so soone Iñ the heates | off Suñer.
—— |

[f.164^r uncanceled] obseruations. |

[cancelled] I tolde you manye sayes theye cañ Ride a Readye Horse | because
theye thinke hee goes off hiñ selfe wheriñ theye are | mighteleye deseued, for
a Readye Horse Is the hardeste Horse | Iñ the worlde to Ride for the leaste
motioñ Comandes | hiñ, & their Ignorante vnsetlde seates giue hiñ such
| Counter times as putts hiñ quite oute,— Butt some younge | Gallantes
sayes I will bye a readye Horse for my Exercise | twice or thrise a weeke,—

Itt semes hee Vnderstandes horsem= | anship well thatt thinkes so,— for
 I dare vndertake | when hee hath baughte that Readye Horse, hee shall |
 nott bee a Readye Horse In his handes a weeke, for | Itt Is as greate añ
 Arte, to keepe a Readye Horse In tune | as to dress hiñ, which Is to make
 hiñ, & hee muste | bee a greate Master thatt cañ keepe a redye Horse In |
 tune, Itt Is nott Ridinge a yeare or two att Paris In | añ Academye, or In
 Italey will doe Itt, I doubtte | wether their Masters cañ doe Itt or no; —
 Ande | thus theye are verye much deseued,— & when the | Horse Is putt
 oute bye them then hees a Jade rather | then theye will Confes them selues
 no Horse-meñ, | butt theye doe nott sett the sadle oñ the Right | Horse.
 ——— |

[uncancelled] Obseruations. |

[cancelled] Olde Grisoñ & manye Etalien Aughter woulde haue | a Bardell
 which Is a strawe sadle sett firste off a Coltes | back, & nothings butt a
 Rope Cauatzane off his Nose | which Is to no purpose In the worlde,— butt
 loss off time, | Then to trot hiñ two or three yeares, Vpp hills & | downe
 Hills to stopp hiñ Is to less purpose & more | loss off time, & then to make
 an Acre off Grounde | for a Circle, or Ringe as theye Cale them & thatt |
 In ploude landes to, & a hundered turnes hee had | better Ride a Jurneye
 of thirteye miles I wonder | what Horses theye had In those dayes, I añ
 shure | those Horses wee haue nowe are nott able to doe Itt | & then to
 Ride them two, or three howers att a time | when one maye well Ride halfe
 a doseñ att leaste | In añ hower, & giue them suffitientlye; Enough then |
 their Cingle turnes, & double turnes narowe Calde | Radopiare, which Is
 rediculous, & the Repolone, which | Is to Gallope hiñ halfe a mile, & then
 turne hiñ | x with their seuerall maneges, off matza Tempo, Tutto | tempo,
 & Contratempo, verye Rediculous, ——— |

{x ilfauor= | dlye | & false |}

& for a Restie | Horse to Rayse a whole towne with staues to beate | hiñ,
 with manye Curius Inuentions, with Squirts | fier whelpes Hedge-Hogges,
 nayles & I knowe nott whatt | & the same for a Horse thatt Ruñes a waye
 to doe Itt | before him, as you did to the Restie Horse behinde | hiñ & then

for Spurringe the bunchinge stroke & | the klinching stroke & iff hee will
nott Indure the | Spurrs bootes stufte with strawe & spurrs att them | to
hange att his sides which Is nott worth a Strawe | & the chambetta that
signifies nothings, & for a | Horse thatt Is a frayde & startes, whirlegiges |
off seuerall Coullers which will | make him teñ times worse |

[f.164^v] Ande to laye stones In his waye, & a hollowe ditch | to Ride him In
Lamentable businesses In Horse—Mañ— | ship, & so manye foolishe wayes for
the Credensa, | thatt Shall neuer Cuer him, off that vice, & to | take heed
by anye meanes nott to make him to | weake neckte a Prime note,— Theñ
that M^r | Pagano, woulde neuer vse his Horse to anye | thinge butt a walke
or a trot att the moste | & theñ I añ shure hee shall neuer dress a Horse |
perfectlye, & theñ sayes M^r Blundevile Itt was | a wonder to all beholders to
see thatt In | eyght dayes hee woulde make him Ruñ a Career | perfectlye,
which I will vndertake to pass a | Career perfectlye the firste morninge thatt
| Euer hee Ruñ,— & for his Capriole, hee mistakes | the Ayre as well as the
Makinge off him | & for Coruetts M^r Blundeule did nott Vnderstande | Itt
nor his Master Grisoñ belike when hee Sayes | the Spanierds takes delighte
In Itt to make their | Horses goe In Coruetts, which neuer Spanierde |
yett coude doe hee takes tramplinge & prancinge | for Coruetts wheriñ
hees much deseued, for Coruetts | Is the hardeste Ayre In the worlde to
make | a Horse Goe In, for hee muste bee perfectlye | withiñ the hande,
& the Heeles, & Vppoñ the | Hanches which Is nott tramplinge & then to
| ride shorte after the Turkishe fation, wheriñ hees deseued | for tis a le
Genette, which Is the Spanishe fation to, & | to ride shorte In Coruetts,
hees mistaken for I woulde | ride longer In Coruetts theñ anye other Ayre
& wheras | hee sayes hee woulde nott haue a boue towe In her Ma^{ties} |
stable to goe In Coruetts for Itt Is off no vse & such delightinge | toyes
off prancinge vpp & doune, which theye will doe | when theye shoulde goe
vppon the Grounde wherin | hee Is mighteleye deseued,— for firste ther
Is nothings | makes a Horse better vppoñ the hande theñ Coruetts | &
thatts vsefull, then ther Is nothings putts a Horse | so much vppoñ the
Hanches & firmes ^{him} ther as Coruetts, | & thatts vsefull to,— & then
thatt hee will goe In | Coruetts when hee shoulde goe vppon the Groonde
| ther M^r Blundeule Is mighteleye deseued for theye | are seuerall helpes,

& lett a Horse bee neuer so apte | or perfecte Iñ Coruetts, & made vppoñ
the Grounde | to which Is the firste thinge muste bee doñ | I dare saye hee
shall neuer offer att Coruetts with | mee butt goe Juste vppoñ the Grounde
as I woulde | haue hiñ, for theye are seuerall helpes,— Ande wheras | hee
sayes Iñ fiue or Sixe monthes hee can ^x make a Horse | to Galope the feilde
for a Soldiers Horse thatt Is | Iñ añ Aire off Grounde to Gallope & change
still | vppoñ a Gallope, I will Vndertake to make a Carte | Horse to doe
Itt Iñ three dayes,— no thatt Is nott Itt, | & then to digg oute his Ringes
& Intrench hiñ selfe | a Horible folleye,— I desier no more then a playne
| place withoute Hills for stoppinge or anye | such toyes, & will dress hiñ
perfectlye | Ther, by the newe methode |

f.165^r] Off my Printed Booke which I refer you to;— For M^r | Blundeuills Bitts
theye are veye rediculous, the | Eyes are naughte, the Cheekes as Ill, & the
mouthes | worste off all,— with Catts feet, vpsetts, & Portes | & broken
Portes, Catts feet & vpsetts, with a Riuet | nayle, & then the Compleate
bitts, which are Compleatlye | abhominable, with theyr water Cheane &
Trench | & the mouth off the Bitt to bee as bigg as my wriste | & the
branche as longe as my Arme, & the curbe to bee | as bigg as a cheane for
a Horse nose, with a Tom | stores flienge Trench which Is a snafle tied to
the | Bitt & all these tormentinge Ignorante follies ——— | & his legges to
bee so loose as iff theye weare broken Iñ | the knees, & to helpe with them
vpp & downe, as iff theye | weare winde mills sayles, — Ande thus much
for M^r | Blundeuills Ridinge which Is Grisoñ translated Iñ to | Englishe. |
& theñ to strike a Horse with a cugell or a Rodd between the | eares & vppoñ the heade
Is abhominable, ——— | ——— | which hee thinkes | Is a rare secrett. |

[uncancelled] For M^r Blundeuills Bredinge |

[cancelled] To turne the Stallion loose to the mares Is Indiferente well | butt *to*
pu nott righte, butt to putt hiñ to them agayne att | Holande Tide starke
naughte,— to couer Iñ hande you shall | nott haue halfe off them proue
with fole, & Itt Is vnaturall, | then to haue a Horse fole or a mare fole by
tienge | his righte, or lefte stone, to obserue the moone, & the | winde, to
sayle to procreation or gett a foole by the | Almenack veye Rediculous,—

or to putt such paynted | clothes before them̄ to make the fole off whatt
 Couller | you woulde haue them as Rediculous,— & as soone as | the Horse
 hath couerde iff hee Coume doune off the | righte Side tis a Horse colte,
 & iff off the lefte Side | Itt Is a filleye, & so manye dayes after shee Is
 mounted | iff her cote lookes slick & shines, then̄ shee hath conseued, | Iff
 itt doe nott shyne then̄ shee hath nott conseued. ——— | Tales to tell
 childereñ rather then̄ to tell meñ off | Resoñ, & discretioñ, all mountebanke
 & foolerye | Then to make the Horse lusteye & the mare ther Is | litle or
 nothings In thatt,— Then̄ Mr Blundeule | sayes for as much as all mares
 foles standinge | sertenlye hee ^{tooke} that note oute off some olde lerned |
 Aughter, as Aristotle or the like,— for I will assure | you thatt neuer anye
 mare In the worlde did Euer | fole standinge, *if* iff shee did the fole woulde
 | Breake his neck,— for hee coumes In to the worlde | with his heade firste,
 & his two feet oñ both sides | off his heade, no the mare Is In to greate
 payne to | fole standinge, & therefore shee lies doune & foles { So,— Then̄
 M^r Blundeule sayes, ther Is a thinge | growes In the foles forheade like a
 figg which | the mare Coñonlye bites off, which Is caled | Hipomones, & Iff
 Itt bee taken Itt doth miraculous | thinges In loue matters, which hee was
 loth to | write off, trewlye hee was ouer carefull with | all his olde writers,
 In my Contience iff Itt coulde | bee Gott Itt woulde doe miraculous thinges
 | nott onlye In loue, butt In Euerye | Thinge Else. ——— |

[f.165^v] Butt the truth off this business Is, ther was | neuer anye such thinge
 did Euer growe vppoñ | anye foles forheade, & therefore coulde neuer | bee
 bitt off bye the mare;— Tis trewe thatt the Secundine or Cleane, or bagg In
 which the fole | lies In, all the stringes meetes att the Ende which | lookes
 like a litle knott & thatt hanges loose | Vppoñ the foles heade, butt when̄
 the fole Is | foled, thatt & the bagg goes together for tis | all one thinge,—
 Then M^r Blundenile sayes | you muste take heede thatt the mare doth nott
 | Eate that Bagg or Secundine, — because the | Countrye wiues kye doe
 So;— I haue Inquierde | off the Countrye meñ & theye saye nott on Cowe
 In | hunderds does Itt, & for mares Ile assure you theye | neuer doe Itt, you
 saye then̄ what doe theye doe | marrye I saye theye lett Itt lie ther & trouble
 | them̄selues no more with Itt, — Then M^r Blundeule | Condemnes ^{those}
 that take the foles to bee taken̄ off att Martlemas, | butt ackordinge to his

olde Lerne'd Aughters hee | woulde haue them suck two yeares att leaste, |
that Is hee woulde haue them heauie flabye | Jades besides the looss [*sic*/]
off the frutfulnes off his | mares wherīn his olde Aughters are verye | much
deseued,— Theñ hee sayes that foles legges | are as longe when they are
foled as Euer afterwarde | wherīn hee Is verye much deseued,— does hee
thinke | thatt the Bodye onlye growes, & the legges nott att | all, a verye
rediculous opinioñ, for looke att the | foles legges, & the mares & you shall
finde the | mares legges are longer a greate dell,— can anye | man thinke
thatt a Grewhonde welpeth as soone as | hee Is welpte thatt his legges
are as longe as when hee | Is a dogg,— verye rediculous,— Then to knowe
which | fole will haue the beste Speritt, by ruñinge formoste | & leapinge
off Hedges & Rayles, I knewe a Colte thatt | nothinge woulde keepe him
īn, leapinge ouer all | thinges hee came neer, & when hee Came to bee
Ridd | the dulleste Jade thatt coulde bee thatts nothinge | theⁿ to knowe
bye their feet, & much white thatt | theye are nott longe liude as false a
Rule as anye | hee hath sett doune,— Theⁿ howe manye teeth a Horse |
hath which neuer anye Horse had so manye, Theñ | wheras Euerye Horse
hath two Tushes belowe | & two a boue, & I assure you neuer Horse īn
the | worlde had two Tushes a boue, some Horses haue | no tushes att all,
& theye Coñonlye are Ill Naturde, | beinge somethinge off the mare butt
such Horses | ther are nott one mare īn hunderds that haue | Tushes butt
those thatt haue are Ill naturde, partisi= | patinge to much off the Horse,
& both these a kinde | off hermofrodicall compotitions,— Thus you see |
howe lerne'd people with their olde Aughters | are deseued ——— |

[f.166^r uncanceled] For the Elements by that to knowe the dispoition | off
Horses. |

[cancelled] As M^r Blundeuile sayes the Sorrell Is off the Elemente | off fier, &
therefore Is full off metle, Hott & fierye & | I assure you I haue knowne more
Sorell Horses dull | Jades then off anye Couller,— Theñ thatt a white Horse
| Is flegmetick, & so pertisepates, off the Elemente off water | & therefore
dull & heauye Jades, & I assure you I haue | knowne white Horses to bee
fuller of speritt & liveleyer | then anye other Couller, & so his Elements
are wronge | īn Euerye thinge, the beste waye Is to trye your Horse | &

that Phelosophye will holde to knowe hiṁ beste | for his Elements are false
fooleries. ——— |

Then M^r Blundeuill Speakes off the markes off | Horses, thatt ther are fowre
good, & seauen Badd | such a foote off the farr side, & such a foote off the
| nar side, & which forfoote & which hinder foote | & nott to much white
Iñ his face nor his legges to | bee verye hye white & fethers & I knowe nott
whatt, | a kinde off Coniuration, all false & rediculous | Lies, when once I
heer a mañ talke off markes | & Elements I haue doñ with hiṁ, for Ile talke
| no more with hiṁ, Trie your Horse & thatts the | beste Philosophye to
knowe hiṁ bye, ther are | good off all Coullers, & off all markes, & Badd
| off all Coullers, & off all markes, butt ther are | more bad Horses then
good Horses, off anye Couller | or anye marke as ther are off Euerye thinge
| Else Euen off meñ Iñ all thinges, therefore markes | & Coullers are foolishe
& false toyes, onlye to abuse | Simple, & Ignorante People withall. ——— |

Then M^r Blundeuile Speakes off the perfecte | Shape off a Horse & such
a Horse as hee discribes | was neuer off Gods, & natures makeinge butt
| off his owne, or some foolishe Aughters hee hath | read,— for hee takes
seuerall partes off seuerall | Horses, & putts them together, which Is a Horse
| off their owne makeinge, for ther was neuer such | a Horse foled,— Euerye
Countreye hath a seuerall | Shape off Horses, as the Turke, the Napolitane
the | Spanishe Horse the Barbe, & the Duch Horse | & all verye fine Iñ
their kindes, — butt In a | worde I will shewe you the rediculousnes off
Itt, | thatt no mañ cañ sell doune the perfecte shape | off a Horse, as for
Exsample whoe can sett doune | the perfecte shape off a Dogg, a Mastiue
Is nott | a Grewhounde, nor a Grewhonde a lankishyre hounde, | nor a
Lankeshyre Hounde a litle Beagle, & yett | all verye fine Dogges Iñ their
kinde & so off | Horses, & nowe you see the Rediculousnes off | Itt, & the
Imposebiletie to sett doune the perfecte | shape off a Horse. ——— |

[f.166^v] Then M^r Blundeuile sayes a Spanishe Horse Is | Piñ Buttockte narowe
& Slender behinde, I beleue | hee woulde haue a Spanishe Horse to haue a
dutch | Horses Buttock, Indeed that woulde bee verye | Corespondente to
the reste off his shape, some | Spanishe Horses haue Ouall Buttocks, which

Is | the fineste Buttocks off all, — theye haue verye | good Buttocks,— Theñ
thatt theye haue Ill feet | tis trewe some hath, & so haue all Countrye |
Horses Duch the worste, & Englishe verye bad | some off them, then thatt
theye are weake, | ther are more weake duch Horses theñ | Spanishe, I
haue had manye Spanishe Horses, | both with good Buttocks, good feet,
& stronge | & iff some shoulde bee weake yett their Speritts | makes them
goe better theñ anye other Horses | thatt are stronger, theñ hee sayes theye
are | Gentle Iñ their youth, & growe vitius In their | Age, & I assure you
no such thinge Iñ the worlde | for theye are as Gentle Iñ their Age as
theye | are Iñ their youth & verye louinge Horses, | butt M^r Blundeuile Is
verye much abusde | by his olde Aughters thatt hee reuerenses so | much,
Theñ hee sayes the Genett hath a Comleye | Goinge like the Turke, which
Is neyther | Amble nor Trott,— I woulde knowe off M^r Blundeuile whatt
strange kinde off goinge | thatt Is nether off those two, | butt I will ashure
him thatt ther Is no Horse | thatt hath fowre legges, cañ goe butt Itt muste
| bee the Actioñ Eyther off añ Amble, or a Trott, | Gallopinge & Ruñinge Is
añ other thinge & | so are all Ayres Iñ the Manege,— Butt Mr | Blundeuile
was a good Scoller, butt nott a | good Horse-mañ, |

For M^r Blundeuile hee was a fine Gentlemañ | well trauelde añ Exselente
Scoller, & had añ | Exselente manlye stile a good translator & | putt thinges
Into añ Exselente Methode, | & tied him selfe to much to olde Aughters |
which knewe as litle as hee I=n Horse-manship, | & so Aughoretye a busde
him hauinge no | knoledge him selfe Iñ the Arte, & totaleye | wantinge
Experience Iñ Itt.— butt his treatye | for dietinge off Horses Is verye lerned
as any | Phititiañ Cañ write butt yett his dietinge | off Horses Is nothinge
as Itt aughte to bee | for hee wanted Experience butt for his Cuers | off
Diseses Itt Is moste admirable, & Indeed | the Father off all that busines,
— Markhame | Is butt Blundeuile with other names, & will | nott acknowledge
Itt, hee hath manye newe medcins | butt theye are worth nothinge as his
oyle off | otes & Then coumes delagraye which Is butt | Blundeuile with
some newe medcins thatt | are butt Indiferente Butt Blundeuile Is the |
Father for all Cuers & the Rareste. |

[f.167^r] The beste medcins off Mr Blundeule, are those off martin | which was
 prime mareshall, to Queen Elizabeth, as I take | Itt hee was añ Almañ,
 & ^{an} Exselente farrier, yett Eueñ, | hee was mistakeñ aboute the Glanders
 & mourninge | of the chine Extreameleye, by my woefull Experience Iñ |
 Horses I knowe Itt, — as I shall better Informe you | wheñ I sett oute
 my Booke of martialerye & Shooinge, | Mr Blundeule sayes, thatt Barleye
 makes a Horse | piss read ['red'] like Bloud, butt hee did nott Vnderstande
 | Itt perfectlye,— Tis trewe Iñ Italey, Spayne, & | Barberye theye feed
 their Horses all with | Barleye, butt Itt Is because theye haue no otes, | for
 sertenlye Exselente otes Is the beste feedinge | for a Horse Iñ the worlde,—
 Butt you muste | knowe thatt off Barleye ther are two kindes, | the Coñon
 Barleye thatt theye make Beer off | & thatt maye make a Horse piss a litle
 read, | & off thatt Barleye theye neuer giue their | Horses Iñ Spayne, butt
 off the other Barleye | which ^{is} caled by the name off Bigg, & thatt neuer |
 makes them̄ Piss Read, & Is the beste fedinge | for Horses wher ther wantes
 otes, Rye scouers to | much, & wheate to fattninge, & good Breade to |
 purseye & foggeye — Iñ Spayne theye giue Barleye | Strawe as my Lord
 Cottingtoñ tolde mee, butt firste | they treade Itt with oxen̄, & then̄ tis as
 softe as | Silke,— M^r Markhame was no Horse-mañ Iñ the | worlde, butt
 onlye tooke notes off medcins, & sett | them̄ doune methodicallye & M^r
 Delagra as Ill | a Horse-mañ onlye notes off medcins, & sett theme [*sic.*] |
 doune methodecallye, M^r De Lagra his breedinge | off Horses, Is *m* the moste
 ridiculous thinge | thatt Euer was writt,— Ande thus for our | Englishe
 Aughters, I haue tolde you the truth | off them̄; |

To Informe you off the Spanishe | mules. |

I haue seen the fineste shapte off them̄ Iñ the worlde | the fineste shapte
 heades & the beste sett oñ, the | fineste turnde necks, & thinneste, & well
 risen Exselente | Backs, good bodies, their legges so cleane & Sinue ——— |
 admirable hooues, their Croupes a litle Slender | & Iñ a worde no Horse Iñ
 the worlde finer shapte, | & onlye their Eares a litle longe which me thinkes
 | Is a grace to them̄, theye are off all Coullers as Bayes | duple Grayes & so
 forth,— Extreameleye stronge as | stronge as two Horses, verye large, some
 as large | as anye Horse what-soeuer, & off greate prises as | three & fowre

hundered Pistolls a mule, the | kinge of Spayne, bewtifull & large ons In
his | Coch,— theye use thēm verye much for the Sadle, | for theye Amble
moste curiuslye, & Easileye, |

[f.167^v] Theye seldome stumble, butt whēn theye doe | theye neuer faule further
thēn their knees | verye safe & shure to ride ōn, ther are some | verye litle
ons, & fine ons like Gallawayes | & those cōmonlye great Generalls, &
Cōmanders | ride on Īn the trenches to vewe thēm & a boutte | fortified
Castles,— the Grosser Sorte theye vse | for Sumters wagons, & Cariers for
manye | thinges, & theye ride poste off thēm, as Joh̄n | de Borge which
was Gouvernor heer tolde | mee thatt theye woulde Amble as faste as anye |
Horse good [*sic.* 'could'] Gallope, theye liue longe & sounde | thirteye yeares
att leaste, ther are males & | females off thēm, & verye Hott Īn the acte |
off Generation̄, butt neuer produces anye thinge | with anye thinge Eyther
to Gett or bringe | fourth, theye saye one Is neuer ashurde off | thēm from
bitinge or strikinge though | the Groome hath kepte thēm twentie yeares, |
butt I perceue no such thinge Īn thēm, I haue | seen a mule goe In Caprioles
Exselentlye well | theye saye theye haue Ill mouthes butt thatts | because
theye spoyle thēm with Horible bitts | & theye vse both ther Bitts & other
Sadles | & furneture to thēm thēn to Horses, wherīn | theye are verye much
mistakēn,— for those | thatt are for the Sadle, I woulde vse the | verye
same Bitts & Saddles, as for Horses, & | no otherwise Tis trewe thatt for
Sumters ther | Is a proprietye thatt theye vse for thēm, onlye | & nott for
Horses, which Is verye Comleye | & Īn Spayne theye vse Īn their Coches
Ropes | for the mules to drawe the Coches withall, | & so theye vse those
Ropes also for Horses to | drawe Coches bye, & thus much for the mules.
* |

{* theye | are Exse= |lente to | Ride ōn | Īn stony | wayes, | none| like them
| theye | are so | shure | off foote. |}

Nowe for the Stallions. /—

The Stallions thatt getts these mules are Asses vppōn | verye fine Spanishe
mares,— S^r Benjamin Wrighte a | Noble Merchante, thatt liues att Madrid
writt mee a | letter, thatt a Stalliōn Ass woulde Coste att the | leaste 250:

pistolls, butt others tells mee much | more & greater Prises they are att, & greate Resoñ | since mules are off so greate vse to them̄ Iñ Spayne, | besides my Lorde Cottingtoñ tolde mee thatt the | Asses Iñ Spayne, are greater & larger beastes | then̄ Euer hee sawe off Horses Iñ all his life | or almoste off anye other beaste, & moste furius | & full off Speritt,— & thatt Ther are meñ thatt | liue onlye bye the orderinge off them̄, & no other | men can doe Itt butt those meñ which makes a | trade off Itt theye are so furius as theye woulde | kill others, & these meñ when̄ the Asses Couers anye | mares theye Hoode them̄ that theye maye nott | pull the mares Iñ peeces, | & kill them,
 ——— |

[f.168^r] when̄ theye Braye Itt Is a moste lowde & Horide noyse | beyonde anye Lion̄ Iñ the worlde,— & nowe you see ther | Is greate Reson, whye theye Shoulde bee off greate prises, | butt one thatt thinkes theye Shoulde bee Juste such | litle dull Asses as are Iñ Englande & 20: or 30: a peece | woulde laugh to heer this tale tolde because theye thinke | ther Is nothinge more Iñ the worlde then̄ theye haue | seen,— as S^r Walter Rawleye sayde well Iñ thatt Case, | sayes hee ther are stranger thinges Iñ the worlde | then̄ between Staynes & Londoñ, The Asses Iñ France | are Juste like the Asses Iñ Englande, litle laseye, | dull & woefull thinges, & off as smale Price | onlye those partes off France, thatt Is nexte | Spayne, ther the Asses are large, butt nothinge like, | or Iñ Comparisoñ off those Iñ Spayne, nott to bee | talkte off,— The Shee Ashes [*sic.*] Iñ Spayne are verye | fayre & large to, for else howe cañ you Imagin̄ | such huge large, & greate Puisante Beastes, shoulde | Bee produste,— Ande thus much off the hee & shee | Asses Iñ Spayne. |

for a horse Is withiñ the corde & the Shambrier & nott withiñ the hande & | the heele, the corde vppoñ his nose which Is nott vppoñ the barrs or the | Curbe, & the Shambrier behinde him̄, which Is nott the Spurrs, & thus | theye are deseued |

Horse-menship. |

{This | Is for | pluui= | nells | Horse== | man== | ship. }

I tolde you before, that his three pillers Is a routine which Is | Itt teaches
Horses onely by rote, which Is by the Eyes more | theñ obayenge the hande
& the heele,— & spoyle more | Horses theñ Euer anye thinge did, & I am
shure thatt no | mañ Iñ the worlde by his methode att the three Pillers |
shall Euer make a perfecte Horse Itt Is Impossible. — * | & theñ to putt a
Horse between the Pillers with the | wateringe bitt which hee Coñendes so
much Itt Is a toye | & then to w^hipp hiñ with the Shambrier with a longe |
Rayne tied to the Arch off the bitt & the other Ende | the Groome to holde
Itt att the Piller, & prese hiñ harde so to make hiñ goe halfe Iñ Coruetts &
haue Terre a Terre, | as hee sayes which Is Impossible because theye are two
| seuerall Ayres, this hee Extolls a boue all thinges | which Is a greater follye
theñ the other,— & theñ | when a Horse will nott Rise or aduance, theñ to
| haue two meñ to holde a stick a foote hye or a litle | more to make a Horse
to skipp ouer Itt, & that will | make hiñ Rise a rediculus thinge,— Then to
worke | a Horse with Spectacles on as foolishe a thinge | as anye hee hath
Inuented, for greate Secretts nott | worth the Hauinge,— as also to take
hiñ bie [*sic.*] the | Raynes off the bridle, or one rayne, neer the cheekes off
| the bitt, & then to pull hiñ to you, & to putt hiñ frome | you, & to helpe
hiñ with the greate Ende off the Rodd | vppoñ his Sides, this hee Extolls
as the quintesence off | Horse–Manship, which Is moste rediculus — butt
| thatt which Is the foolisheste thinge off all Is to | thinke to dress Horses
perfectlye with the bitt, withoute | the Cauatzane, which I añ shure hee
neuer cañ for | many Resons,— Ande theñ for Leapinge Horses to | dress
them with longe Godes, poynsons & hande Spurrs | as rediculus a thinge as
anye Itt maye make hiñ kick | butt neuer Leape iff hee bee nott disposde
to leape for iff | nature doth nott make hiñ a leapinge Horse arte shall |
neuer doe Itt, & when a Horse doth leape with a poynsoñ | I will make
hiñ leape better with a Rod a greate dell | for I haue tried Itt offteñ, with
Horses thatt I haue had | oute off their handes, so you see howe all these
thinges | are moste reduculus follies, ther Is no trewe waye Iñ | makinge
horses perfectlye butt my methode | & therfore studye my Booke. |

[f.168^v The follies off some People thinkinge | Theye cañ make leapinge Horses.

Ther are manye presumtius fellowes Ignorante as | theye are presumtius,
 thatt Lauffinge sayes theye will | make anye Horse a Leapinge Horse,—
 whye because | theye will make hiṁ leape ouer a stick like Jack a | napes or
 a dogg, or make a Horse leape ouer a Barrell | a Rayle, Hedge or ditch,—
 Iff thatt weare so wee shoulde | haue manye leapinge Horses, for I knowe
 no Horse | almoste butt will doe Itt withoute anye Greate Arte | God helpe
 their Ignorance poor Soles, for a Horse to | leape So Is nott the Same
 leapinge as a Horse leapes | Iñ the manege,— Firste for their Horses that
 leapes | ouer hedge & ditch & off their fatioñ theye laye | the Raynes Iñ his
 neck & putts hiṁ forwarde | which Is a leape off their fatioñ butt nott a
 | Leape Iñ the manege, & wher theye giue hiṁ the | Raynes to leape, wee
 holde hiṁ & helpe hiṁ | Vpp with the hande to leape & so with our heeles
 | Iff Itt need att the same time, & thus the Horse | obayes both the Hande
 & the heele att the same | time, añ Exselente mouth & good apewye both
 | Vppoñ the barrs & the Curbe, & thus a Gentle— | Mans hunts-boye will
 hardlye make a Horse | thus I beleue, though hee cañ leape his masters |
 Geldinge ouer a hedge,— besides our Horses | will leape Iñ a place so,— &
 nott att leape | frogg as their Horses, or att Barleye breake | to leape two
 or three yardes forwarde | withoute feelinge off his mouth,— Thus doth |
 Ignorance talke off thinges theye doe nott know, | Naye some Horse-Meñ
 haue been̄ so foolishe | as to thinke they coulde make a leapinge | Horse,
 with layenge wiñ bushes for hiṁ to | leape ouer, which Is the same as a
 hedge or | ditch so foolishe theye haue been̄, & nowe | you see the truth off
 this trewlye Anotomisde | to you. ——— |

[uncancelled] A Trewe obseruation |

[cancelled] When the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne Is tied veyre | streyte, & harde
 to the poñell,— & that the Horse trotts | Iñ large Circles, or narowe
 Circles duñ piste, or | rather his croupe oute, Itt thrustes his Inwarde forr
 | legg beyonde his outwarde forr legg, & thrustes his | Inwarde hinder legg,
 beyonde his outwarde hinder | legg, & muste doe so nesessarelye because the
 Inwarde | Cauatzane Rayne bindes vpp his Inwarde legges | or rather putts
 them̄ oute so thatt hee Is preste oñ | the Inside & att libertye withoute the
 turne & | though his Inwarde legges are beyonde his outwarde | legges, yett

when his outwarde legges are sett doune | his outwarde Sholder Coumes Iñ
a litle — the same Is | Vppoñ a Gallope duñ piste or his croupe oute his
Inwarde | legges are sett doune beyonde his outwarde legges butt | when his
outwarde legges are sett doune, his outwarde | sholder coumes Iñ Euerye
seconde time preste oñ | the Inside off the turne & his legges att libertye |
withoute the turne & leapes with his Inwarde | legges righte as hee shoulde
doe your | Inwarde legg, to haue the | poyse, Inwarde | Legg |

[f.169^F] Ande Inwarde rayn & some times to helpe with the | outwarde Rayne
iff his sholders Coume nott Iñ Enough, | This Is the beste lessoñ Iñ the
worlde, to suple a Horses | Sholders, & aughte to bee doñ to all Coltes, &
younge | Horses, & Indeed to all Horses drete or nott drete | Iñ workinge
off them, for Itt makes hiñm trot righte | & Gallope righte & suples his
sholders, which Is the | principalste thinge, & besides giues hiñm a righte |
apewye, & settles hiñm oñ the hande nothinge like Itt, | & setlinge a Horse
off the hande Is the Grounde | off all thinges, for withoute that ther Is
nothinge | to bee doñ. ——— |

[uncancelled] For Paseger a Horses Croupe Iñ |

[cancelled] Heer the Horse lapps oñ legg ouer añ other, hee | shoulde bee preste
withiñ the turne & att libertye | withoute the turne, or Else howe shoulde
hee | lapp those legges our [*sic.*] his Iñwarde legges, & therefore | you muste
helpe with the outwarde Rayne off | the Bridle, which presses his Inwarde
legges & | giues libertye for his outwarde legges,— this | paseger Is the
action off a trot so hee crosses his | legges, butt Euerye Seconde time, &
his hinder | legges beinge Iñ the narouer Circle are the | moste preste, yett
for feare the outwarde | Rayne shoulde putt oute his Croupe to much, |
lett the Horse goe bias Vppoñ his Circles | & thatt will putt his Inwarde
hinder | legg a litle oute, which Is the quintesence | off the manege which
fewe vnderstandes | for thus his forr partes will leade & his | hinder partes
narowe for Else his Inwarde | hinder legg, woulde goe before his Inwarde |
shoulder, & wide behinde & oñ the sholders | you muste tie the Inwarde
Cauatzane Rayne | veye streyghte alwayes & this both suples | his sholders,

& makes hiṁ obediente both | to the hande, & the heele, & more caṁ nott
| bee, |

[uncancelled] obseruations, |

[cancelled] Monsieur de Memoṁ the prime & helde the moste Exselente, | Horse
maṁ att Paris, bred fowre or fiue yeares vnder | Monsieur de Pluinell, &
alwayes practisde this arte | frome his childhood Came frome France hether
with | fowre or fiue Horses, to teach the Duke off Angeane | & did mee the
Honor to Coume hether off a visitt to mee | frome Bruxells,— so I treated
hiṁ the beste I Coulede & | shewde hiṁ my Horses, both leade oute & Ridd,
& hee | had a younge maṁ with hiṁ heer his Nephewe, thatt | had rid vnder
hiṁ for the space off seauē yeares, & | though hee sawe the Horses Rid
before hiṁ the daye | before beinge three off the readieste Horses thatt |
Euer I had,— yett wheṁ hee Rid them hee coulede nott | Incounter them or
make them goe att all,— & trewlye | to my thinkinge naye to my knowlege
hee had neyther | hande, heele nor Seate, as hee shoulde haue had, so | Itt
was Imposible to make them goe Righte. |

[f.169^v] Soe Mounsiour de Memoṁ tolde mee hee had founde | a new methode
for dressinge of Horses, & Itt Is this, | firste neuer to trot a Horse, that Is
his Maxiṁ, | nexte neuer to vse the Cauatzane, nor pull the | Horses heade
In to the Turne,— This Is what hee will | nott doe,— The nexte Is whatt
hee will doe to dress | Horses, & thatts this, to putt hiṁ to the Single |
Pillar with a longe Rope & ther pinch hiṁ | with the Spurrs, which sayes
hee putts hiṁ | vppoṁ the hande, then to whip hiṁ a boutte with | the
Shambreier, to make hiṁ goe halfe Terre a Terre, | & halfe Iṁ Coruetts, *
& this Is the newe waye off | Dressinge, Indeed off nott dressinge Horses.
—— |

{* & then | to make | hiṁ goe | Iṁ Coruetts | which | setles | hiṁ on | the |
Hande |}

Butt nowe to take Itt Iṁ peeces, & Anotomise this | newe waye,— Firste
whatt hee will nott doe —, | which Is neuer to trot a Horse, which Is the |
foundation off all thinges Iṁ the manege, eyther | to Setle hiṁ oṁ the hande

or to putt hiṁ oñ the | Hanches, — nexte neuer to vse the Cauatzane which
 | no Horse cañ bee dreste withoute Itt, for manye | Resons, Theñ thatt hee
 will neuer pull the Horses | heade Iñ to the Turne, & then the Horses legges
 | & bodye shall neuer goe righte or Euer suple to | Eyther hande or heele,—
 Nowe howe hee will | worke his Horse,— To putt hiṁ to the Single | piller
 with a longe Rope & ther pinch hiṁ | with the Spurrs. Itt will doe braueleye
 with a | Colte that neuer knewe the Spurrs, hee will | throwe hiṁ rather theñ
 bee putt vppon the hande | with Itt, naye a Horse that knowes the Spurrs
 | will neuer bee putt vppoñ the hande with | thatt Inuentioñ, theñ to whip
 hiṁ a boutte with | the Shambrier, to make hiṁ goe halfe terre a terre | &
 halfe Coruetts, which Is Impossible, for theye | are two seuerall Actions with
 his legges, besides | This Exselente lessoñ Is Iñ Pluuinells Booke | butt hee
 neuer vsde Itt butt to a Horse thatt | was almoste dreste, & Itt Is naughte
 theñ & | theñ to putt hiṁ Iñ Coruetts which setles hiṁ | oñ the hande sayes
 hee, This Is Iñ La Browes | Booke, butt for a Horse thatt Is neer dreste &
 nott | for a Colte, besides some Horses will neuer | goe Iñ Coruetts, doe
 whatt hee Cañ, So this | methode maye spoyle Horses, butt shall neuer |
 dress Horses I assure you,— you maye take | my worde for thatt. So Endes
 this newe | methode.— hee will neuer Trott, Gallope, or walke a Hore [*sic.*]
 | & no Horse Iñ the worlde cañ bee made withoute those three | with the
 Cauatzane. & his heade pulde Iñ to the turne | with stoppinge & goenge
 back. |

Obseruations, |

I haue tolde you often thatt you muste neuer Rayse a | Horse, or make hiṁ
 aduance, which Is to make hiṁ Rise | before, vntill hee bee verye firme off
 the hande, & verye | Suple both Iñ his sholders & verye obediente to the
 | Heele, to trott & Gallope duñ Piste, & looke In to the | turne,— stopp
 perfectlye vppoñ his Trott & Gallope to | goe back, & his Croupe oute legg,
 & Rayne off a Side | to Suple his Sholders, & to paseger his Croupe Iñ | To
 obaye hande & heele, & firme off the | Hande ——— |

[f.170^r] For iff you aduance hiṁ, or Rayse hiṁ before this time, | you will make
 hiṁ restye & neuer to bee firme off the hande, as all their Horses Iñ France

are, & merlye with | Raysinge them̄ between̄ the Pillers, as soone as theye
 haue | Them̄,— why Raysinge makes them̄ Restie Is this, as soone as | you
 woulde putt him forwarde hee Rises to opose, because | hee woulde nott
 goe forwarde — & so Rises Continewlye | which Is to disobaye you, Iñ nott
 goinge forwarde, & thatts | Restie,— whye hee cañ nott bee vppoñ the
 hande Is because | hee cañ nott doe thatt which hee doth nott knowe, &
 before | hee Is oñ the hande to Rayse hiñ putts hiñ vppoñ the | Hanches,
 & nott vppoñ the hande iff att firste to putt | hiñ vppoñ the hande hee
 muste goe a litle vppoñ the | sholders, — Thatt ^{this} is trewe, Captiñ
 Maziñ thatt Is the | beste Horse—mañ Iñ the worlde, Ridd a younge Horse |
 off myne thatt was fiue yeares olde, & setlde hiñ | firme vppoñ the Hande,
 & verye Suple Iñ his sholders | & obediente both to the hande & heele, As
 by the | former lessons I tolde you,— & Ridd hiñ sixe monthes, | & then
 made hiñ aduance before butt founde hee | did Itt t soone, for the Horse
 did begiñ to stick so | hee Gaue Itt ouer a geñ, & fell to the olde Lessons |
 vntill hee made hiñ more obediente to the Heele to | flye Itt,— so nowe you
 see howe dangerous Itt Is, to make | a Horse Aduance to soone, & therefore
 take heede | off Itt by anye meanes, to shuñ Itt iff you will haue | good
 Horses, & nott Restie; — |

[uncancelled] obseruations. |

[cancelled] Pluinell & moste off the greate Masters Iñ Horse—manship | prayse
 alwayes Gentlenes, & flateries & makeinge much | off Horses, eyther by
 clappinge, strokinge them̄, or speakinge | flaterenglye vnto them̄, or giuinge
 them̄ some Rewarde | to Eate, & Pluinell sayes on aughte to bee a
 prodegall | In Caressinge, & makeinge much off them̄, & añ Nigarde | Iñ
 Corections, & Carefull nott to offende them̄ & | that ther Is no other waye
 to dress Horses butt this. | Butt Captiñ Maziñ thatt Is as good a Horse—
 Mañ ——— | & hath drete as manye good Horses as Euer hee did, | doth
 neuer make much off them̄, that I see, neyther | a brode, before hee getts
 vpp, when̄ hee Rides them̄, or | when̄ hee lights, nor yett Iñ the Stable,
 Eyther to | make much off them̄, or Euer giues them̄ anye thinge | to
 Eate,— & yett no Horses goes better then̄ his Horses | doth;- nor thretens
 them̄ with his voyce or Euer | Speakes to them̄,— No *Cap* doubtte butt the

Captiñ | doth Itt a purpose , to keepe them̄ In̄ subiectiōn, & | feare off
 hiñ,— for familiaretye breedes Contempte, | & Curteseye doth no good,
 butt makes them̄ presume | & sertenlye hee Is In̄ the Righte for Awe makes
 | diligence, still to obaye hiñ,— Neyther doth hee vse | the Rodd almoste
 att all *or* for one Rod will serue hiñ | a yeare or his voyce — butt a good
 hande & good heeles, | & seldome letts them̄ scape with a falte withoute
 | punishinge Itt maye bee hee will spare them̄ the nexte | morninge, butt
 otherwise neuer Corects them | withoute a falte & sertenlye this Is | the
 trewe waye off Dressinge | Horses. ——— |

[f.170^v uncanceled] obseruations. |

[cancelled] wher as I tolde you In̄ the laste Chapter, that Captiñ | Maziñ did
 neuer cherishe, make much, or flatter his Horses, | a purpose to keepe them̄
 In̄ Subiectiōn or Awe Itt Is well | butt yett I muste tell you, thatt thatt
 Slauishe Awe makes | them̄ Rebell offteñ to trye howe theye cañ Eskape Itt
 | & theye seldome doe anye thinge willinglye, & with | pleasure, or Gayetye,
 & mirth,— butt like Slaues alwayes | vnder the Cudgell, & with feare, butt
 no Loue att All, | rather hatinge the Rider theñ Louinge hiñ, Indeed | cañ
 nott Indure to see hiñ,— for a Boye thatt lernes | to dance, iff one shoulde
 alwayes whipp hiñ as hee | dances, or all the whyle hee dances, to putt hiñ
 In̄ | feare off Beatinge, hee woulde dance butt heaueye | & with no metle
 speritt or Alacritye att All,— Butt iff | hee lookte for some Rewarde iff
 hee did well, hee | woulde dance with Greate Speritt & metle, ——— |

Ande since all the worlde Is Gouvernde, by hope of | Rewarde, & feare off
 punishmente, Horses are so to | as well as Meñ,— Therefore I thinke the
 beste waye | Is when̄ theye doe well to rewarde them̄, to Incourage | them̄
 to doe the like ageñ, & when̄ theye doe Ill to | punishe them̄, Thatt theye
 shoulde take warninge | nott to doe so anye more,— Tis trewe feare Is the |
 shurer holde, because Itt dependes Vppoñ you, & for | thir owne sakes, for
 feare off punishmente theye | will doe well when̄ loue dependes Vppoñ their
 | will,— butt ther Is a diference betwixte Staringe & | Starke Blinde,— for
 to see a Tirante A Horse-back | Sertenlye Is nott good,— & all with loue Is
 worse | for the resons I haue tolde you before,— Therefore | In̄ my opinioñ

ther Is no waye like minglinge | rewardes, with punishments, so the Horse
 Ile | Warente you will haue so much Judgmente & | memorye as to chuse
 rewardes, & Shuñ punishmentes | for his owne Sake, — & this sertenlye
 Is the beste | waye which I chuse , & vse & finde the Horses | goe verye
 willinglye, & frelye with mee this | waye,— & haue loue for mee, because I
 hau [sic.] loue | for them, & so Endes this Chapter, & my opinioñ | off this
 Question,. ——— |

[uncancelled] Trewe obseruations. |

[cancelled] That which makes Horses goe beste Is meerlye the | verye Seate,
 seate & hande as I shewde you Iñ the | laste Chapter off Terre a Terre,
 & Iñ the Chapter off | Coruetts & the resons off Itt, & to sitt Easeye
 nott | weake, for to sitt Easeye pleases all Horses what | soeuer off what
 dispotition or forse soeuer. ——— | The ^{Horses} Inwarde legg to bee kepte
 back Is the busines | Iñ all thinges the Horse doth, workinge eyther | the
 Inwarde Rayne or outwarde Rayne, & therefore | Vppon voltaes his Croupe
 Iñ the Horse to goe bias | doth thatt, & narowes hiñ behinde which putts
 hiñ | vppoñ the Hanches, the outwarde Rayne presses | hiñ withiñ the
 Turne, & the Inwarde Rayne presses | hiñ withoute the Turne,— I haue
 tolde you formerlye | Iñ what Cases those two Rayns aughte to bee vsed, |
 & so dun Piste & howe his leggs Goes both vppoñ | his Trott & his Gallope
 Duñ Piste |

[f.171^r] Ther Is no makinge Horses withoute the Cauatzane my | waye for
 Suplinge Horses, & Euerye thinge Iñ the Manege, | The hande lowe putts
 a Horse vppoñ the barrs, more then | the Curbe, & Settles hiñ beste off
 the Hande,— the hande | Hye workes more oñ the Curbe, then the barrs,
 & Is beste | for Ayres, & the hande lowe for the Grounde,— for whatt |
 highte soeuer the hande Is off, the Horse will Rise to | thatt highte & no
 more butt Juste thatt highte ——— | I cañ nott Imagiñ anye thinge more
 Iñ the manege then I haue | written alrebye. Iff I doe you shall haue Itt,
 for I will sett | Itt downe.— Doe nott make to much haste to dress Horses,
 | for beleue mee, ther Is nothinge Iñ this worlde thatt Is | good, thatt Is
 doñ off a Sudden, no more with Horses | then with men,— for all wee doe

Is butt habitt, & | Coustome, & often repetitions that makes vse perfecte
| Iñ Euerye Thinge, & so the like Iñ Horses I assure you, |

[uncancelled] For a Horse that Is Aprehensiue, & will not | coume neer anye
thinge, butt afrayde & startes, |

[cancelled] I knowe nothings better then iff fayre meanes will nott | doe Itt,
to giue hiñ the Spurr Soundlye vntill hee obeyes | you, — & iff hee bee
afrayde off noyse, to acoustuñ hiñ to Shott | Drums, Trumpetts, & seuerall
noyse for Coustome doth Euerye | thinge, — some vses to stopp his Eares
with wool butt that | doth nott Cuer hiñ, — butt onlye keepes hiñ frome
hearinge | so the vice Continewes still;— Butt Itt maye bee hee Is aferde
| off what hee sees, as well as off whatt ^{hee} heeres, & then you | muste
putt Spectacles oñ which Is rediculous, so you | muste vse hiñ to Coullers
& fier, as well as noyse & | so to the Sorde, & by litle & litle Coustome
will Cuer hiñ | for Coustuñ doth Euerye thinge, both with beaste birde
| & fishe as well as with mañ, & Is the greate kinge | ouer all Animalls
whatt soeuer, & power ouer Vegetables | to;— Therefore Coustome by litle
& litle will doe Itt; ——— | Ther Is no Horse vsefull thatt will nott Indure
anye | thinge Eyther by Sichte or hearinge, & neuer to bee | disorderde
with theñ, butt to bee as quiett as iff ther | weare neyther off theñ,— nor
to take notice off theñ | & to bee moste obediente both to your hande &
heelles | to Leape well, eyther hedge, ditch, rayle or anye thinge | & to swim
well which are all Exselente thinges | for a Soldiers Horse, & cañ nott bee
a vsefull Soldiers | Horse withoute theñ, thus In Shorte I haue deliuerde |
you my opinioñ off All these perticulers, which Is | moste Trewe; |

For Coruetts vppoñ Voltaes, & to change | Vppoñ theñ Thus. |

Sitt strayte, a litle oblike, nott helpe with the legges att | all, the toes downe
to vnbrase your Nerues & your hande | on the oute side off his neck butt
verye litle & helpe him | Euerye time with your hande In musicall time &
ackordinge | to the time off the Horse for Euerye Horse takes his owne |
time though all Ayres shoulde bee quick frome the Grounde, | & to staye
vppoñ the Hande, & helpe with the Rodd Iñ a | Juste time eyther cross his
neck, or oñ the Inside which | you please, as you finde ocatioñ, — Ande as

the Horse Is thus | goinge Vppoñ his voltaes In Coruetts — on the righte hande |

[f.171^v] When you woulde change hiñ, putt your Right | legg Gentlye to hiñ, & then holde hiñ vpp with your | hande a litle oñ the oute side off his neck, the knuckles | alwayes towardes his neck oñ which hande soeuer | you goe, & as soone as hee hath Changed then take | your right legg frome hiñ as before & helpe nott | with the leggs att all, nowe you are oñ the lefte | hande, when you woulde Change ageñ, putt your | lefte legg Gentlye to hiñ
^ your hande to holde hiñ Vpp a | verye litle oñ the oute side off the Turne & | then take awaye your lefte legg as before & | helpe nott with the leggs att All, — The resoñ | whye vppon his Changes I begiñ with the | Legg & nott the hande Is this, iff I begañ with | the hande hee woulde stopp & iff I did turne | my hande his croupe woulde goe oute & loste | & therefore I begin with the legg butt Instantlye | I holde hiñ vpp with my hande, & they are | so neer together as none Cañ perceue Itt,— Iff his | Sholders doe nott Coume ^ In Enough you muste turne your | hande otherwise nott, & this muste bee doñ | so neatlye, & Gentlye & with so much Arte as | posible cañ bee,— & this Is the quintesence off | Changinge vppoñ voltaes In Coruetts. ——— |

[uncancelled] Changinge Vppoñ Terre a Terre | thus |

[cancelled] Your bodye oblike, your knuckles Towarde his neck | & oñ the oute Side off his neck, & as hee Is goinge | Terre a Terre oñ the righte hande lett his sholders | Coume In a litle before you Change hiñ & then | helpe hiñ with the Righte legg & holde hiñ | Vpp with your hande & oñ the oute side off his neck, | Whye his sholders Is to Coume In a litle before you | change hiñ Is to fixe his Croupe that Itt shoulde | nott goe oute & so the hande oñ the Contrareye | side off the turne for the same resoñ & putt hiñ | alwayes a litle forwarde vppoñ Eüerye Change | nowe you are in the lefte hande before you change | hiñ, lett his Sholders Coume In a litle to fixe | his Croupe & then helpe hiñ with the lefte legg, | & putt hiñ fowarde a litle & then holde hiñ | vpp with your hande & on the oute side off his |

neck, — I begiñ with my legg to change hiñ | for the same resons I tolde
you Iñ the laste | Chapter off Coruetts;— *

{* onlye | nowe you | muste bee | stiff Iñ the | hams & your | heeles downe
| to lende | your nerues | & your outw= | arde legg | still close | to hiñ |}

Vppoñ demye voltas | Terre a Terre the same helps, & the same waye | In
Euerye Thinge ——— |

For Galopinge & changinge | The outwarde Rayne & the outwarde legg &
| putt hiñ forwarde alwayes, iff his Croupe goe | oute to much theñ your
Bridle oñ the oute side | off his neck to helpe with the Inwarde Rayne | &
keepe Iñ his Croupe, other wise nott butt helpe | with the outwarde Rayne
& outwarde Legg. ——— | & thus much for changinge ——— |

[f.172^r] I had forgott to tell you, that vppoñ Demye Voltaes, your hande | on
the oute side, your outwarde legg close to hiñ & sitt oblike | the knuckles
off your bridle hande towardes his neck, & | when hee makes his demye
volta, lett hiñ goe a litle more theñ | halfe a turne to fixe his Croupe,
before you change hiñ, & when | you doe change him helpe hiñ with the
Inwarde legg, — firste & then holde hiñ vpp with your hande & a litle oñ
the oute | Side off his neck,— this frome the wall Is beste, butt by a wall
| Itt Cañ nott bee, for you Cañ nott goe thorowe the wall, & therefore |
by a wall Itt cañ bee butt a Juste halfe turne or demye volta | which you
maye Eyther helpe with the Inwarde Rayne, or | outwarde Rayne att your
owne pleasure, so Itt bee doñ with | Arte & Scill Like a Greate Master, or
otherwise nothinge Is | righte Iñ the mange [*sic*]. ——— |

[uncancelled] obseruations. |

[cancelled] To putt a Horse vppoñ the Hanches I haue tolde you manye | thinges,
butt ther Is none better, theⁿ a lighte Easeye, yett | a firme hande,— for
hauinge nothinge to reste oñ before | hee putts hiñ selfe oñ the hanches, to
reste ther, hauinge no | other place to reste off, & muste reste off somthinge
& | therefore a lighte hande putts hiñ oñ the hanches | for iff you a beare a
stiff & harde hande off hiñ, hee will | leane vppoñ your hande to reste ther,
& the more you pull | the more hee will pull & bee harde oñ the hande &

therefore | ther Is nothinge better theñ a lighte hande to putt hiñ | vppon
the Hanches. & the Cauatzane my waye helpes mighteleye | to putt hiñ
oñ the Hanches .|

[uncancelled] For the Piroyte |

[cancelled] The outwarde Rayne thatt Is your Bridle hande muste bee | oñ the
Inside off his neck & turne vpp your litle finger | still puttinge your hande
a litle more oñ that side the | Horse Is preste oñ the Inside off the \wedge turne &
restes oñ his hinder | legg within the turne, & his outwarde legg goes oute
| more, & stiff Iñ the Cambrills, & so breakes the line | & can nott goe
longe & so Is false, & therefore you | muste helpe hiñ as I tolde you before
with the | hande, & your outwarde legg to hiñ to keep his | outwarde legg
to his Inwarde hinder legg, followinge | thatt close almoste Iñ a place, &
thus hee will goe | oñ the hanches & righte & trewlye as hee aughte | to
doe for otherwise his Croupe will bee loste | a piroyte Is butt Juste like a
Demye volta vppon a | Pasado & ther you helpe with the outwarde Rayne |
& outwarde Legg, & so you muste doe In the Piroyte | for the same Resons
I haue tolde you before | & this Is the trewe waye for the Piroyte & none |
Else,— & therefore Practise Itt, Iñ the Piroyte the horse | hath three legges
vpp & rests off one legg, that Is his two forr legges | are vpp, his outwarde
hinder legg, & as those are sett doune the |

Inwarde hinder legg remoues Circularlye & theñ the other | three are vpp
a gayne, & so hee goes rounde & & [*sic.*] swifte & vppoñ | the Hanches iff
you helpe with the outwarde Rayne | & outwarde legg, as you doe Vppoñ
the Demye Voltaes | Vppoñ Pasadoes,— for Itt Is all one for a Demy Volta
Vppoñ | Pasadoes, Is butt halfe a Piroyte,. ——— |

[f.172^v uncancelled] obseruations. |

[cancelled] To haue the Cauatzane my waye, & to trot a Horse | Vppoñ large
Circles as I haue tolde you the mañer off | Itt, to suple his sholders, to firme
hiñ oñ the hande, | obediente to the heele to stopp perfectlye vppoñ his |
trott, & then to Gallope hiñ large duñ Piste, to stopp | perfectlye Vppoñ
his Gallope to Goe back Easelye to | paseger Easeleye which Is to walke his

Croupe Iñ | & to Goe le petit Galope his Croupe Iñ bendinge his heade |
 verye much Iñ to the Turne, with the cauatzane & when hee | Is perfecte
 Iñ all these thinges, theñ aduance hiñ or Rayse | hiñ & nott before,- &
 lerne hiñ to rise frome the Pillers | Iñ your hande, & then make hiñ goe
 Iñ Pesates dun piste Vppoñ his Circles, & theñ make him goe Iñ Pesates
 his | Croupe Iñ vppoñ his voltaes,— & withoute this | methode you cañ
 doe nothings, & with this waye you | shall make all Horses perfecte Horses,
 Iñ all thinges, | Eyther vppoñ the Grounde or Iñ Ayres iff his strength |
 & agilettye will giue hiñ leaue, naye Itt will forse | nature verye much so
 much hath Arte the power, | *the* though Arte for the moste parte Is butt
 to | followe Nature, & to sett her Iñ order,— & with this | methode all
 Horses are to bee dreste Iñ some measure | & withoute this methode no
 Horse cañ bee dreste | lett them talke what theye will, for thatts butt |
 talke, & nothings Else. |

For Paseger his Croupe Iñ. |

I tolde you, you muste helpe with the outwarde | Rayne, to press the Horse
 withiñ the turne, & to | bee att Libertye withoute the turne, thatt his |
 outwarde legges, maye lapp ouer his Inwarde | legges, or Else hee coude
 nott doe Itt,— butt theñ | you muste helpe with the outwarde legg to
 | keepe his outwarde hinder legg *to* that that | legg maye lapp ouer his
 Inwarde hinder legg | for iff you did nott helpe with your outwarde | legg,
 the Horses outwarde ^{hinder} legg, woulde goe oute | & bee stiff & so nott
 vppoñ the Hanches this is | the righte waye for paseger, because Itt Is the
 | Action off a Trott for theñ the Actions off his | legges are Cross,— butt
 these helpes are nott for | Terre a Terre, because Iñ thatt action his legges
 | goe both off a Side, & therfore the Inwarde | Rayne, & outwarde legg,
 as I haue perticularlye, | & punctualye tolde you befor, & so for le | petit
 Gallope the same helpes, as for Terre a | Terre; ——— |

[f.173^r uncanceled] obseruations. |

[cancelled] All the three Pillers of Pluinell are ridiculous thinges | & by Rote
 because Itt Is by the Eyes & nott by touch which | Is the feelinge the hande
 & the heele,— so Vppoñ the | watringe bitt between the Pillers, so the longe

Rope between | the Pillers, or att the Arches off the Bitt, so the whipp or
| Chambrer, so the Spectacles oñ to worke hiñ, so a foote to | pull hiñ by
the bitt off one side or the other with the | Greate Ende off the Rodd, to
prick hiñ oñ the Side so to | leape ouer a Stick to make hiñ aduance or
hittinge hiñ | oñ one off his hinder legges to make hiñ aduance, all |

{ x or | Godes | or poy= | nsons. }

these are butt Idle tricks, & deuises, & by no meanes the | trewe way off
makeinge or dressinge Horses perfectlye as | theye Shoulde bee — my waye
att the Single Piller Is | the beste Iñ all those kindes for Itt putts hiñ vppoñ
| the hande & putts hiñ vppoñ the Hanches, & makes him | obediente vnto
the Heele,— & ther Is no falte Iñ Itt, butt | thatt Itt makes hiñ goe a litle
to much by the Eyes, | which Is Sichte,— which all those wayes muste doe a
| litle,— Naye a Master to helpe a Horse whilste añ | other Rides hiñ I haue
lefte longe a. goe because | that Is to much by the Sichte, for hee will nott
goe | withoute añ other man helpe hiñ, & therfor for that | I neuer nowe
helpe a Horse butt leaue hiñ to hiñ | thatt rides hiñ, & then hee obayes
both hande & | heele, & nott by Sichte att All which Is the perfection |
off Horse-manship, for hee Shoulde obaye his Rider | & nott two to make
one Horse goe,— Therefore Iñ | shorte ther Is nothinge butt my methode
with the | Cauatzane off my fatioñ to make all Horses what | Soeuer moste
perfectlye, & drest Exactlye, to | the hande, & the heele Iñ all the obedience
In | the worlde & to looke Into the Turne as | theye aughte to doe, & to goe
righte with their | legges, Iñ all actions what soeuer, both Narurall [*sic.*], | &
Artefitiall,— Iñ all mañer off Ayres, & | vppoñ the Grounde — & therefore
practise my | methode, & none Else for iff you doe ^{nott} you will | bee
deseued & goe oute off your waye Extremleye. |

[uncancelled] For a Horse that doth nott bringe Iñ | his sholders Enough. |

[cancelled] When the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne Is tied harde | to the pomell the
Horse croupe Iñ, Vppoñ Paseger, or | Vppoñ le petitt Galope, the Rayne
off the Bridle seperated | Iñ both your handes, Iff his sholders Coume nott
Iñ Enough | theñ pull the Inwarde Rayne oñ the same side frome | his neck
with litle Jerkes, nowe & theñ, & helpe with | the outwarde Rayne to, to

bende his Sholders more & | some times the outwarde Rayne to giue hiṁ
 litle chockes | as hee goes Iñ time as hee gaue Itt hiṁ selfe butt yett |
 helpe with your hande Iñ the Horses owne time, & | thus you helpe with
 both Raynes att a time, — & | some times Itt Is añ Exselente helpe iff his
 Sholders Coume | nott Iñ Enough to take the Raynes seperated Iñ both |
 handes, & pull the Inwarde Rayne harde to your Inwarde | thygh, & frome
 your Bodye, & this will mighteleye bringe | Iñ his Sholders & Suple theṁ,—
 & the Horse Iñ all | these Is preste oñ the Iñ side off the Turne,— all these
 | are Exselente lessons, to suple a Horses | Sholders. |

[f.173^v] Trewe obseruations. |

The Inwarde hinder legg, to the Turne alwayes | putt oute a litle, Iñ all
 thinges Is the quintesence | off the manege wether his Croupe oute or Iñ,
 the | Croupe Iñ doth Itt \wedge ^{in terre a terre} & allwayes your Horse to goe |
 bias vppoñ his voltaes, or his heade to the wall | doth Itt beste for his
 sholders goinge before his | hinder partes, putts oute his Inwarde hinder
 legg, | which Is the greate busines Iñ the Manege, for | so his hinder legges
 are neer toger [*sic.*], & so Vppoñ | the Hanches, the Inwarde Rayne off the
 Bridle | doth Itt pulde as I haue tolde you, & so doth the | Inwarde Rayne
 off the cautzane, for Itt putts | oute his Inwarde hinder legg, narowes hiṁ
 | behinde, & Inlarges hiṁ before, because Itt pulls | his Inwarde for legg,
 frome his outwarde for legg, | & therefore Inlarges hiṁ before, & att the same
 | time, Itt putts his Inwarde hinder legg oute to | his outwarde hinder legg,
 & therefore narowes | hiṁ behinde,— & so muste off neseteye bee vppoñ |
 the hanches,— & Thus his \wedge ^{inwarde} for legg, muste alwayes | bee before his
 Inwarde hinder legg so that halfe | his sholders goes alwayes before halfe
 his Croupe, | & thus hee Cañ neuer leane or goe false, & his | for partes
 alwayes to Imbrase the Turne the | better,— & the outwarde hinder legg, to
 bee kepte | Iñ a litle with your outwarde legg, makes | his two hinder legges
 withiñ the lines off | his forr legges, which makes hiṁ vppoñ the | hanches,
 & his for partes to leade, as Horses | alwayes sholde doe for theye doe nott
 trauell | with their Arses firste, butt with their heades, | & for partes,—
 Ande Remember thatt no Horse | can bee vppoñ the Hanches, butt those
 that bende Iñ | the Cambrills, & bowes ther, & the more his hinder | legges

goes vnder his bellye, the more hee bowes In | the Cambrills,— & remember
for a serteyne Rule | thatt no Horse cañ bee vppoñ the Hanches Exsepte |
his Croupe or Buttock bee thruste oute backwardes | as for Exsample, when
you giue a Horse a good | stopp, his hinder legges goes vnder his bellye |
& his Croupe or Buttocks are thruste oute, bowes | Iñ the Cambrills, &
so Vppoñ the Hanches, | when hee goes lee petitt Gallope his croupe Iñ
| his hinder legges, ar [*sic.*] thruste vnder his Bellye | & his croupe goes
oute bowes In the Cambrills, & | Is Vppoñ the Hanches, — So Iñ Terre a
Terre his | hinder legges are thruste vnder his bellye | & his Croupe Goes
oute bowes Iñ the Cambrills, & | Is vppoñ the Hanches,— So Iñ posates, or
Pesates | his croupe Is thruste oute, bowes Iñ the Cambrills | & Is Vppoñ
the Hanches,— butt iff hee bee rayse to | hye Itt putts hiñ off off the
Hanches, for then hee | Is stiff off the Cambrills because his Croupe Goes Iñ
| thatt putts hiñ Vppoñ the hande butt off off the | Hanches,— Therefore
you muste alwaye [*sic.*] Rayse hiñ |

{ x when | you pull | a Horse | back his | off his | hinder | legges goes | vnder
| his bellye | he putts | oute his | Croupe, | bendes | Iñ the | Cambrills | &
Is Vppon | the hanch= | es. |

[f.174^r] Nott to hie, In Pesates, iff his Croupe muste goe oute, bowe | Iñ the
Cambrills Ande so bee vppoñ the Hanches | my waye att the Single Pillar,—
Iñ Coruetts putts oute | his Croupe, makes hiñ bowe Iñ the Cambrills, &
| so vppoñ the Hanches, because hee cañ nott Rise | hye & therefore putts
oute his Croupe & Is Vppoñ | the Hanches, so all thatt putts a Horse Vppoñ
| the Hanches Is before, eyther with the Cauatzane | or Bitt, & nothinge
behinde, — The Inwarde hinder | legg, & Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne, Is
the quintesence | off the manege, with thrustinge his Croupe oute | which
makes hiñ bowe Iñ the Cambrill & so | Vppoñ the Hanches, which Is the
Ende off all | our worke, & busines Iñ the manege, & this | Is that which
none Eyther knowes or haue | thaughte off. & therefore marke Itt remember
| Itt & practise Itt iff you cañ,— & iff you Cañ nott | doe nott finde falte
with a thinge because | you cañ nott doe Itt, for sertenlye no Mañ | Is borne
to all professions, by Inspiration, | butt with greate Studye, diligence, care,
| patience, & longe Practice,— for no Mañ Is borne, | with so supream a

witt a boue others as to | doe anye thinge as soone as hee sees Itt, thatt |
hath been so manye yeares, añ other mans, | Studye. — |

I muste remember you off one thinge more that to | putt hiñ on the hanches
Is all before so that when his | heade Is pulde doune, & Iñ then hee Is vppoñ
the hanches, | for his croupe goes oute, & bowes Iñ the Cambrills & | therefore
vppoñ the hanches,— thatt Is the Horse muste | bee a litle hier behinde
theñ before for then his | Croupe goes oute, & bowes Iñ the Cambrills, &
therefore | vppon the hanches — as for Exsample a Horse goes | doune a
Hill, theñ his Croupe Is hier theñ his | for-partes & his Croupe goes oute,
& theñ hee bowes | Iñ the Cambrills, & Is Extremlye vppoñ the Hanches, |
so iff hee bee turnde Iñ the Stable, his Croupe Is hier | theñ his for-partes
& putts his Croupe oute, bendes | Iñ the Cambrills, & therefore Is veye
much Vppoñ | the Hanches,— So Iñ playne Grounde wher ther | Is no hills
you muste Suple Itt with pullinge | his heade doune & Iñ as much as you
cañ to make | hiñ hier behinde theñ before which putts oute | his Croupe
makes hiñ bowe Iñ the Cambrills, & putts | hiñ vppoñ the Hanches,— as
stoppinge off hiñ | pullinge back, paseger, le petit Gallope, & Terre a Terre
| all these pulls hiñ doune, & putts oute his Croupe | which putts hiñ oñ
the hanches, iff the Inwarde |

{Cauatzane}

Rayne bee tied to the poñell or pulde harde Iñ | your hande, Itt putts hiñ
Vppoñ the Hanches because | Itt putts his Inwarde hinder legg oute to his
| outwarde hinder legg, or att leaste keepes Itt Iñ | the place [deleted and
illegible] that Itt Shall nott coume In to much | & thatt putts hiñ vppoñ
the Hanches,— So Iñ Pesates | or Coruetts, the Iñwarde Cauatzane Rayne
tied to | the poñell putts the Iñwarde legg oute which putts | hiñ vppoñ
the hanches because Itt thrustes his Croupe | oute butt when you haue
nothinge butt the bridle | what theñ whye theñ the Inwarde Rayne off | the
Bridle doth the same In all thinges |

[f.174^v uncanceled] For Setlinge off A Horses Heade. |

[cancelled] For the setlinge off a Horses heade I haue tolde | you offteñ, thatt

ther Is nothinge like the Cauatzane | my waye tied to the Poñell, for iff hee
bee to | lighte off the hande, Itt pulls hiñ downe to the | righte apewye, &
iff hee bee to harde oñ the hande | Itt pulls hiñ vpp to the righte apewye,
& so setles | hiñ & makes hiñ firme off the hande which | waye soeuer,—
butt this I muste tell you for a | a [*sic.*] greate truth wheriñ moste are
deseued, that | worke hiñ whatt you cañ, & with all the | seuerall Bitts
you cañ deuise, which are nothinge | to the purpose,— Itt Is Imposible
for anye man | to make hiñ Carye his heade hier, or lower | then Nature
hath apoynted, & that hee will doe | Iñ Spighte off all your Arte, naturalye
which | hee will finde oute, with Greate Ease & will | nott bee putt frome
Itt by no meanes Iñ the | worlde,— & wher theye saye a Horse thatt | goes
Incaputiato, & armes hiñ selfe agaynste | the Bitt, muste off nesesitye bee
harde off the | Hande,— theye are mighteleye deseued,— for iff | a Horse
bee oñ the Hanches hee muste bee | lighte off the Hande,— & holdinge
doun his | heade Is the waye to bee oñ the Hanches | for I had a Horse
thatt Armde hiñ selfe as much | a gaynste the Bitt & wente Incaputiato
as much | as Euer I Sawe anye Horse,— & yett was the | lighteste & as
sensible to the hande as anye | Horse Iñ the worlde,— & muste needes bee
so | because hee wente so much vppoñ the Hanches | for iff a Horse goe
verye much vppoñ the | Hanches hee muste bee lighte off the hande | wether
hee Arme hiñ selfe agaynste the | Bitt or no; Ande thus People are deseued
| with olde Aughters, & their lies folloinge | Authoretye & nott resoñ; —
Belefe, & fayth | Is good for the nexte worlde butt nott for | this worlde,—
Espetialye Iñ Horse-manship, | & so Endes this Chapter. ——— |

This Is to bee Joynde to the Chapter off his | Inwarde Hinder legg,—— |

Butt paseger his Croupe Iñ Is the outwarde Rayne | because Itt Is the
Action off a Trott which Is Cross & | so Itt will suffer Itt, for the Horse
beinge preste | withiñ the Turne,— restinge off his Inwarde hinder | legg,
hee cañ nott putt thatt oute & the outwarde | hinder legg Cañ nott goe
frome Itt, so this Is | righte for Paseger, to bee preste withiñ the | turne &
att libertye withoute or Else his | outwarde legges Coulede ^{nott} lapp ouer his
Inwarde | legges butt when soeuer you Rayse hiñ In | Pesates his Croupe
Iñ you muste helpe with the | Inwarde Rayne to putt oute his Inwarde |

Hinder legg which makes hiṁ bowe Iñ | the Cambrills, because his hinder |
Legges are made like our Armes | & therefore muste bowe Iñ the | Cambrills
iff Itt bee | Thruste oute,. |

[f.175^r] *Naye nowe I will tell you aṅ other thinge which maye | Seeme Strange
butt nott so strange, as Trewe, which Is this | when the Horse Trotts, or
Gallopes, Vppoṅ large Circles | Theñ I tolde you thatt his Inwarde forr legg
Is sett | doune beyonde his outwarde forr legg,— & his Inwarde | hinder
legg Is sett doune beyonde his outwarde hinder | legg,— & though hee Is
preste within the turne Extremleye, | & his for partes Coume towards
the Center, & his | hinder partes flies Itt, & his Croupe oute, & supde |
mighteleye Iñ the Sholders, & the more for his | Croupe thus,— yett the
Horse for all these thinges, | vppoṅ the Hanches, though not much & can
nott bee otherwise, because |*

{somethi= | nge |}

this Inwarde hinder legg, Is thruste so much oute | which off nesesitye
makes hiṁ bowe Iñ the Cambrills, & therefore myghteleye \wedge ^{somethinge} on the
Hanches, so legg & | Rayne off a Side x

{x as iff | his heade | was to | the Piller. |}

thrustes his Inwarde hinder | legg So much oute;— & makes hiṁ bowe Iñ
the | Cambrills, & therefore \wedge ^{a little} vppoṅ the Hanches. ——— | Therefore
you see playnleye nowe, what aṅ Exselente | & moste Rare thinge Itt Is, to
keepe a Horses Inwarde | Hinder legg oute, Iñ all maṅer off thinges thatt |
Is \wedge ⁱⁿ the Manege, whatt soeuer, & Iñ what soeuer | you worke hiṁ,— The
absolute quintesence off | the manege, & withoute Itt nothinge Is righte
| butt moste false for a bundance off Ireparable | Errors,— & with Itt all
thinges Is righte & trewe | to a heare ['hair'],— Beleue this for Itt hath been
studied | to the Purpose, & no Horse butt Is perfectlye made | with Itt. &
all Is his Inwarde hinder legg, | putt oute Iñ all Thinges. — & beinge putt
oute thus | hee muste bowe Iñ the Cambrills, because his hinder leggs | are
made like our Armes. ——— |

Butt I muste tell you for as greate a truth that whensoever | Vppoñ
large Circles duñ piste thatt when the Horses | Inwarde hinder legg Is putt
oute & bowes Itt putts hiñ |

{nott}

a litle vppoñ the Hanches butt *nott so* ^{very} much *as* vppoñ the Sholders,
for the more still that his buttock | doth goe oute the more still hee Is vppoñ
the Sholders, | for this lessoñ Is nott to putt hiñ vppoñ the Hanches | butt
to suple his Sholders,— for iff you woulde | putt hiñ vppoñ the Hanches
you muste putt Iñ | his Croupe, for the larger Circle, Is wraughte moste |
because Itt goes the moste Grounde, yett his hinder | parte Is the moste
preste because the narower Circle | & therefore Vppoñ the Hanches,— butt
some thinkinge | thatt the more you putt Iñ his Croupe the more hee |
Is oñ the hanches I doe nott thinke so because his | Inwarde hinder legg,
goes befor halfe his sholder | & so hee Is wide behinde, off off the hanches
& goes | backwarde,— Butt iff his Croupe bee Iñ & you putt | oute his
Inwarde hinder legg, then hee bowes | Iñ the Cambrills, his hinder leggs
narowe behinde & | so vppoñ the Hanches, & the more Vppoñ the hanches
| iff the Horse goe bias, because by that meanes the | Horses hinder leggs
are neerer together, & so | narower & therefore vppoñ the Hanches, & | This
Is moste Trewe. ——— |

For iff the Horses hinder legg within the turne goes before his | Inwarde
Sholder hee doth nott onlye goe backwarde butt his Inwarde | hinder legg
Is stiff Iñ the Cambrill & therefore nott vppoñ the | Hanches butt when
you putt oute his Inwarde hinder legg then | hee bowes Iñ the Cambrills &
therefore vppoñ the Hanches, because | his hinder legges are made like our
Armes, | & hath a Joynte more which Is the stiflinge | Joynte. ——— |

[f.175^v uncanceled] A Trewe obseruation. |

[cancelled] Some Comēdes the Martingale mighteyleye for | Settlinge off a
Horses heade,— with a Bitt wheriñ | theye are mighteyleye deseude,— firste
iff the | Horse weare a Bitt, the Martingasl [*sic.*] Is tied to | the Cauatzane,
which Is the beste waye for not | offendinge his mouth, well then Itt pulls

hiṁ | so downe, as the curbe workes nott att All, & | therfore a foolishe
 thinge,— Then̄ iff you tie | Itt to the *bi* Arches off the bitt as false | Raynes
 are, then̄ the Curbe workes nott att all | which Is rediculous, beinge then
 the Bitt butt | as a snaffe Iñ his mouth;— & Is off no Vse Iñ | the worlde,
 for when̄ you take off your | martingale the Horse shall bee as Ill as Euer
 | hee was because thus hee Is neuer lernte to knowe | the Curbe & so the
 martingale Is a foolishe | rediculous thinge;— For lett mee tell you for | the
 Greateste Truth Iñ the worlde, that no | Horse what so euer cañ bee firme,
 & setlde | oñ the hande, that doth nott knowe, & obaye, | & goe firmleye
 vppoñ the Curbe, & this Is | a serteyne Rule, & secrett thatt fewe knowes,
 | or knowe howe to worke a Horse to Itt. ——— | nor neuer Comes Vnder
 their Capps, you | see by their Horible, mistakinges. ——— |

Ther was a greate master, that woulde Ride | his Horses twice a Daye, sayenge
 that iff hee | coulde dress a Horse Iñ Sixe monthes once a daye | Ridinge
 off them̄, hee was shure hee coulde dress a | Horse Iñ three monthes ridinge
 them̄ twice a | daye wherin his worship his [*sic.*] much deseude, for a |
 Horse beinge fleshe & bloud Cañ nott Induer | perpetuall Trauell, hauinge
 litle Reste & no Exercise | Is more violente for a Horse, then̄ Iñ the manege
 | naye ridinge so much off nesesitye one morninge | hee will nott recouer
 Itt off a daye or two, & | Iff a Horse opose the Mañ which all Horses will
 | doe att firste or vitius, one muste Corecte hiṁ | Soundlye, & howe will
 you Ride hiṁ Iñ the after= | noone agayne, dull hiṁ & take off his speritt
 | & to hate the manege & make hiṁ like a | valtinge Horse rather then like
 a liue Horse | & you cañ neuer giue his meate, water or reste | Iñ order,—
 & off nesesitye muste make hiṁ | Sick, & Subiecte to manye diseases, &
 shortlye | after death to followe, & ther Is your wise | a daye to Ride hiṁ,
 & the Huntsmañ to dress | hiṁ for his Doggs.— Some sayes agen̄ theye |
 woulde Ride no Horse twice a daye, butt Horses | thatt weare verye vitius,
 & off greate strenth, | I haue seen manye Horses that are vitius, | butt fewe
 Horses off such greate Strenth. |

[f.176^r] For Iff the Horse bee verye vitius, you muste Corecte | hiṁ Soundlye,
 & Ride hiṁ so longe vntill hee | obayes you, Iñ some smale measure,— &
 then̄ I aṁ Shure | you haue Ridd hiṁ so violantlye, & so longe as hee |

will hardlye bee to Ride the nexte morninge, therefore | sertenlye nott to
bee Ridd anye more that daye ——— | & iff the Horse bee so dosible as
to obaye you In Euerye | thinge, Sertenlye the beste waye Is butt to take a
litle | off hiṁ that morninge to Incourage hiṁ to doe so | ageñ, & the more
to Incourage hiṁ, nott to Ride hiṁ | Vntill the nexte morninge a geñ, So
hee will bee | plesante, liuelye, & In luste & take pleasure In you & | the
manege, & lerne more thus In a month Ridinge | hiṁ butt once a daye,
then hee shall In three monthes | & Ride hiṁ twice a daye, hath nott all
Scollers | playe dayes, & Serteñ howers off Reste that daye | off Studdeye,
& all trads-meñ holedayes to reioyce | theṁ selues,— & Euen Statsmeñ
diuertisments | frome *Studdye*,— Busines, — Good prechers preach | nott
Euerye Sundaye,— & hath nott Lawe-yeares | their termes, & vacations,
& Euen Cariers Horses | Restes Christmas, & other Holedayes, & so Carte
| Horses, & Brewers Horses, Coch Horses, & Hacneye | Horses, Ruñinge
Horses, & Huntinge Horses | & Shall onlye Horses off the manege bee
Horse | Galleye Slaues, ther Is no Resoñ for thatt, no | Dogges Cañ Hunte
Euerye daye or Grewhoundes | Course Euerye daye or Spañiells Hunte |
Euerye daye or Haukes fie Euerye daye | Ther are hunderde Exsamples
off Itt, butt | these are suffitiente, to lett you see the greate | Follye &
Ignorance off those that will Ride | their Horses off manege twice a daye,
| Juste like the Polander, beinge Sick his | Phititiañ gaue hiṁ nine Pills,
to bee takeñ | three Euerye nighte, for three nights together, | hee verye
wisleye Considered, thatt iff three | Pills Euerye nighte for three nightes
together | woulde recouer hiṁ, thatt theñ takinge all | the nine Pills one
nighte woulde make hiṁ | well presentlye, & so did, & had almoste purgde
| hiṁ selfe oute off this worlde,— & so the Horsemañ, | thatt iff hee make
a Horse In Sixe monthes a | Redye Horse In Ridinge hiṁ butt once a daye
| thatt iff hee Ride hiṁ twise a daye hee shall | make hiṁ In three monthes
Juste like the Polanders | Pills,— so shall hee Ride his Horse to death as
hee | had almoste purgde hiṁ selfe to death ——— | Itt Is so rediculous,
as Indeed Itt requiers no | Anser att all. ——— |

[f.176^v uncanceled] obseruations, for a younge or Ignorante | Horse. |

[cancelled] An Ignorante Horse, & a Colte Is all one, for neyther | off them knowe anye thinge In the Mange, whie | then for such a Horse when you Ride him, iff hee | leape, & strike oute behinde, & putt In his buttock | to much to hinder him frome turninge, & doe manye | Extrauagenses, — Sitt you still, & keepe him steadye | with the Cauatzane more then with the Bitt, yett | to feele Itt *with the* by litle & litle, & steadye & | keepe him still to walke rather then trot, vppoñ | large Circles, puttinge him In the waye, withoute | mouinge & neyther Spurr him or beate him with | the Rodd, nor threateñ him with your voyce, butt | lett him take his pleasure, vntill hee wearye | him selfe, & when hee sees hee cañ nott throwe | you, & thatt you doe nott hurte or offende him att All, | hee will giue those Extrauagante ^{is} ouer, & bee | reduste In a fewe dayes; — This Gentlenes I recomende | to you because these Horses are Ignorante & knowe | nott whatt theye doe, & therfore theye muste bee | forgiueñ for heer ther Is nothinge off malice | or vitiusnes, butt meerlye follye, & Ignorance | Butt for a malitius, & vitius Horse, thatt knowes | your will & will nott doe Itt, hee muste bee | beateñ with manye Stripes, Espetialye with | the Spurrs, & Spurde Soundlye vntill hee | obayes you, or some what towards Itt, & thus | you muste Consider what Is Ignorance, & what Is | vitiusnes, & aplye your remedies ackordinglye, | or Else you will neuer bee a master In our | Arte nor neuer dress anye Horse perfectlye, | no more then a Phititiañ to aplye wronge | medcins to the Disease, shall Euer Cuer the | Patient

———— |

For the French Ridinge. |

A French Gentlemañ had a Barbe, that to Du Plessye | helde the beste Horse—Mañ, & beste Academye att Paris | desieringe him to Dress him, & hee was so longe with him | as hee Coste his master 60:^l I baughte the Barbe afterwarde | att Bruxells which Coste mee a boue 120:^l when wee came to | Ride him, hee was nott ^{att} all vppoñ the hande no more then a | Colte, naye so much worse as hee was Restie & worse | then thatt which was Entier, puttinge his Croupe In | so much as hee *was Entier* would nott turne & nothinge | butt kick, & flinge, to disobaye the mañ, & would | nott suffer one to gett vpp vppoñ him, — I haue seene | manye Horses off

the french dressinge the same | which waye Is so Ignorante as Itt spoyle
all horses | In the worlde & this Is the Exselente french | Ridinge, which
deseues Fathers, & their Soñs with | greate charge to lerne nothinge, & to
Spoyle | Horses. ——— |

I muste tell you Itt Is a verye Dangerous thinge | for Horses to faule In
the Manege, Vppoñ anye action | hee doth, butt Espetialye vppoñ Paseger
his Croupe In | for his legges beinge Cross theye are offteñ tied together |
& the Horse—mañ Can nott tell when theye are so, & then | puttinge hiñ
forwarde when theye are tied together when | the Horse hath no legges to
goe oñ hee muste off nesetye faule. | this oftner hapens to amblinge &
pasinge Horses In the | Manege, butt Itt hapens to trottinge Horses to, | I
haue seen three faule thus with | Captiñ Mazin. |

[f.177^r uncanceled] obseruations. |

[cancelled]; When a Horse Is retenewe, restie, & melencollye, & añ Enemye to
| the Scoole,— Itt Is all In his heade, full off malice & rancor | agaynste
the Mañ, & the manege,— & I perceued this daye, | is thatt which makes
hiñ opose moste In nott goinge well, | Is merlye In nott thrustinge his
hinder legges Vnder his | Bellye, both In Trottinge Galopinge, in Paseger
his Croupe In, In | le petit Gallope his Croupe In & In Terra a Terre,—
for | hee holdes back his hinder legges, or rather putts them back | vppoñ
all these actions resteleye, & then tis Imposible hee | Shoulde goe well,—
naye when you Spurr hiñ to putt hiñ | forwarde, though hee obayes you to
goe forwarde yett | presently after, hee will nott thruste his hinder legges
| forwarde, naye rather pulls them back, as I tolde you before, | Iff you
press hiñ with your leggs, & holde hiñ vpp vppoñ the | Hande hee will
nott mende his falte for all thatt, naye | shoulde you take the Chambrier,
& stande behinde hiñ to | press hiñ forwarde Itt will doe no good butt
rather make | him more Restie, or Else to throwe oute his Buttock to |
Extremetye, so I knowe nothinge Cañ doe hiñ good Exsepe [*sic.*] | you
coule putt a better dispotition Into hiñ, for Itt Is | all his filthye dogged
minde which for the moste | parte Is gott with Ill Ridinge,— & bunglers
att the | firste In Corectinge hiñ oute off time, or Else In lettinge | hiñ

haue his will to much,— & lett mee tell you for | a greate truth, that the
worste naturde Jade Iñ the | worlde, by Nature Is much Easier dreste &
Reduste | to obedience theñ a Horse that hath beeñ spoylde & | made
Restie by Ill Ridinge, so much worse Is añ Ill | Coustome Continued, theñ
añ ill dispotitiõ by | Nature. |

The Juste waye for Terre a terre. |

When you sitt strayte Iñ the Sadle, the poyse oñ the | outwarde sturope,
butt nott to leane doune vppoñ Itt to | much, butt onely the outwarde legg
to bee a litle longer | theñ the Inwarde legg, & the Inwarde legg to bee a |
litle before Itt butt verye litle & sitt all vppoñ the | sturopes, the outwarde
legg close to the Horse & the | knee turned Inwarde, & still Iñ the hañe to
bringe the | calfe off the legg to the Horse & sitt all vppoñ your | twiste, &
as forwarde, to the poñell off the sadle | as you Cañ,— theñ for the bridle
hande oñ the righte | hande butt your hande oñ the oute side off his neck
| or turne, the knuckles towardes his neck, pullinge | your litle finger vpp
strayte withoute turninge your | hande. which pulls the Inwarde Rayne,
lienge aboute | your litle finger, your Arme a litle frome your bodye | which
makes your bodye oblike, your lefte sholder | couñinge a litle Iñ, & your
neck behinde remoued a | litle oñ the lefte side, & *th* your buttons a litle oñ
| the righte Side,— This makes the Horse nesarelye | to goe bias,— butt
nowe I muste tell you wher you | muste looke or turne your heade which
muste bee oñ | the Inside off your hande withiñ the Turne to the | Inside off
the Horses heade, which keepe your hande | steadye for did you looke to
your Inwarde Sholder | Itt woulde remoue your bridle to much withiñ the
| Turne, & did you looke Juste betwixte the Horses Eares | your outwarde
Sholder woulde nott Coume Iñ Enough | nor bee oblike neyther you nor the
Horse, your hande | muste goe Circularlye with the Horse & steadelye, &
| butt to feele hiñ thus the Horse beinge Bias, the Inwarde | Rayne pulde
thus, In larges the Horse beefore [*sic.*], In pullinge | his Inwarde forr legg,
frome his outwarde forr legg, | & |

[f.177^v] putt his Inwarde hinder legg to his outwarde hinder | legg, which
narowes hiñ behinde, makes hiñ bowe Iñ | the Cambrills, Espetialye his

outwarde hinder legg | which hee restes on, & thrustes his Inwarde hinder |
 legg Vnder his bellye, which with all these things | makes him̄ verye much
 vppoñ the hanches, the | Ho^rse Is preste oñ the oute Side, & therefore off
 nesesitye | muste looke withiñ the turne,— & his for partes | beinge Inlargde
 muste Imbrase the turne the | better his hinder leggs beinge withiñ the lines
 | off his forr leggs hee muste needes bee vppoñ the | Hanches, & his Inwarde
 for-legg, beinge pulde | firme his outwarde for-legg beinge Circuler | his
 Inwarde forr legg off nesesitye muste bee | longer then his outwarde for legg
 to leade | which Is righte, & So makes the largeste Circle | & his outwarde
 for-legg the seconde Circle | & his Inwarde hinder legg the thirde Circle |
 because Itt Is thruste so much before his outwarde | hinder legg & vnder
 his bellye & his outwarde | hinder legg makes the forth, & leaste Circle |
 because hee restes so much vppoñ Itt, & bowes | Iñ the Cambrills,— Thus
 the Horse makes fowre | perfecte Circles a boutte the Piller or Center as |
 I haue tolde you, & the Resons off Itt, Thus doth | the Horses fore-partes
 goe allwayes before | his hinder partes, that Is halfe ^his sholder withiñ |
 the turne before his halfe Croupe within the | Turne, that Is his for-legg,
 withiñ the turne | before his hinder legg withiñ the turne & | thus the Horse
 cañ neuer leane or goe false | butt moste Exactlye Trewe, with heade, neck,
 | bodye, legges & all,— Nowe for the leftte hande | Euere thinge [*sic.*] as for
 the righte, & the same | waye onlye changinge hande, bodye & legg, | onlye
 I will tell you for the bridle hande | which Is nesesitye & thatt Is when
 you goe | oñ the leftte hande you muste putt your | hande oñ the Contrarye
 Side off his neck your | Arme close to your bodye, & the knuckles off | your
 bridle hande turnde towards his neck | which pulls the Inwarde Rayne for
 the leftte | hande, because that Rayne lies vnder | your litle finger,— &
 this makes you oblike, | & the Horse oblike & Euerye thinge for | the leftte
 hande Itt workes as trewlye Iñ | all those Seuerall things, as I tolde you
 for | the Rightte hande, — * Ande this Is moste | Exactlye the truth for
 Terre a Terre, & all | the delicate & sutle helps, that cañ | bee for Itt Iñ
 the worlde. ——— |

Ande thus the Horse Is withiñ your hande | & your heele, & so you driue
 him̄ & make him̄ | goe as you liste, slower or faster, hyer or | lower butt
 remember that your hande bee | nott to hye butt thatt the Horse maye Goe

lowe | & preste, for iff your hande bee lowe the Horse | goes lowe, & iff your hande bee hye the Horse | goes hye, for the Horse alwayes goes ackordinge | to the hyghte off the hande,— & Terre a Terre | shoulde alwayes bee lowe, & preste. |

[f.178^r uncanceled] For the Bridle Hande |

[cancelled] When the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne Is tied to the Poñell | or onlye with the Raynes off the Bridle seperated Iñ both | your handes, when you doe Paseger your Horse his Croupe Iñ | iff his sholders doe nott Coume Iñ Enough, pull the Inwarde | bridle Rayne frome his neck to make Itt shorter then the | outwarde Rayne, & ^{to} suple his sholders, & iff you woulde | suple them more turne your hande that hath the outwarde | Rayne Iñ Itt a litle oñ the Inside off his neck turninge vpp | your litle finger, & this will suple him more & | remember the hande thatt hath the outwarde Rayne, to | bee alwayes a litle hier, then your Inwarde Rayne, that | hol Is helde by your Inwarde hande to the Turne, & | thus much for Paseger, his Croupe Iñ; ——— |

Nowe iff hee goes le petit Gallope his Croupe Iñ; Iff | his sholders doe nott coume Iñ Enough, vse the same | helpes, as Iñ pasager & so the same helpes for Terre a | Terre, iff his sholders doe nott Coume Iñ Enough, which | Is pullinge the Inwarde Rayne frome your Bodye | *butt* to make the Inwarde Rayne shorter a good | deale then the outwarde Rayne, butt then with the | outwarde Rayne you muste helpe otherwise, for you | muste nott turne your hande oñ the Inside off his | neck att all, butt holde Itt oñ the oute side somewhat | Stiff & hyer then your Inwarde hande,— & this you | maye vse for le petit Gallope his Croupe Iñ or Else | for Terre a Terre;— Iff you press his Croupe verye | much Iñ — Butt I am off opinioñ for le | petit Gallope his Croupe Iñ or Terre a Terre, Ther Is | no waye like that which I writt Iñ the Chapter | before this for Terre a Terre, for Itt makes the | Horse goe Bias & oblike, Exactlye trewe with | heade, neck, bodye legges & all, & so naturalye | & Easeleye, his fore-partes alwayes Goinge before | his hinder partes withoute anye forsinge or | wranglinge att all butt with his verye good | will because Itt Is naturall, & Naturall Is | Easeye, & therefore

practise this laste for Terre a | Terre & le petitt Gallope his Croupe In̄ &
no | other waye, for the other Is to much forste a | greate deale. ——— |

[uncancelled] For trewe obseruations, |

[cancelled] Vppoñ large Circles, the croupe oute, the Inwarde Rayne | off the
Cauatzane tied to the poñell, helpinge with | the Inwarde Rayne pulde
to your Bodye, & helpinge | with the outwarde Rayne att the same time
makes hiñ | Gallope righte & suples his sholders, & so the outwarde |
Rayne withoute the Cauatzane, the poyse oñ the Inwarde | Side suples his
sholders, because his croupe goes oute | & his Inwarde legges Is set doune
beyonde his outwarde | legges, & preste withiñ the turne, & therefore his
sholders | Is suplede the more the more his Croupe goes oute the | more
his sholders are Suplde, & so legg & rayne off | a side as iff his heade weare
to the Piller suples his | sholders Extreamleye;— Butt nowe for Paseger his
| Croupe In̄, the Cauatzane Rayne within the Turne | tied to the poñell,
you maye pull the Inwarde Rayne | off the Bridle frome his neck within the
turne & | helpe with the outwarde Rayne to, eyther with | the Cauatzanes
Inwarde Rayne, or withoute Itt, | or Helpe onelye with the outwarde Rayne,
for | Paseger Is the action off a trot which Is cross & ther,== | fore hee
cañ nott putt oute his Croupe so | much & hee Is preste withiñ the | Turne,
& his legges att liberty | withoute the Turne |

[f.178^v] or Else howe shoulde hee lapp his outwarde legges, ouer | his Inwarde
legges, & thatt Is the outwarde Rayne which | doth thatt, which Is to bringe
In̄ his outwarde Sholder | & your outwarde legg muste keepe his Buttock In
order | thatt Itt goe nott oute to much & nothinge doth thatt | better theñ
to lett the Horse goe bias, which putts hiñ | more off the Hanches, because
his Inwarde legg Is thruste | oute, bowes In̄ the Cambrills, & therefore goes
more oñ the | Hanches,— besides beinge the less Circle his Croupe Is |
then more preste, & therefore Vppoñ the Hanches, & all this Is because
the horses legges Is vppoñ the Action off | a Trott, which Is Cross, hee Is
more vppoñ the Hanches theñ | Vppoñ the Sholders, for the manye Resons
before I tolde you, | hee restes all Vppoñ his hinder legges firste Vppoñ one
| hinder legg, & theñ vppoñ the other hinder legg, & his | outwarde hinder

legg Can nott goe much oute because | Itt faulus [*sic.*] his Iñwarde hinder
 legg, butt all the danger | Is for his Inwarde hinder *le*legg to goe before
 his | Sholders, which Itt cañ nott bee neyther Iff you turne | your hande &
 Serue much with Itt, for theñ his Sholders | goes before his Croupe,— or
 keepe the Horses which Is the | reste, & theñ Itt cañ nott bee,— & thus
 his shoulders are suplde to obaye the hande & his Croupe wraughte to |
 obaye the heele, & all these helps aughte to bee | because his leggs goes
 Cross, vppoñ the action off a Trott | & thus much for Pasager,— Nowe for
 le petit Gallope | his Croupe Iñ or Terre a Terre, this Is añ other Action |
 for Iñ Paseger his legges are Cross vppoñ the action off a | Trott & changes
 Euerye *time* seconde time,— & Iñ le | petit Gallope his Croupe Iñ ther hee
 leades with his | Inwarde legges, to the turne & alwayes keepes theñ so |
 & neuer changes, & is a leape forward, & makes fowre | distincte times,
 with his fowre legges as 1: 2: 3: & 4: | & therefore your helps muste bee
 otherwise Juste as | I shewde you before Iñ le petit Galope, preste oñ the |
 oute side, with the Inwarde Rayne oblike & theñ | the Horse muste thruste
 his Iñwarde hinder legg | forward & bee oblike & bias as you are & so
 vppoñ | the Hanches,— For Terre a Terre, the same helps | for the same
 Resons, off thrustinge his Inwarde | hinder legg forward vnder his bellye &
 differs | frome a Gallope the Action off Terre a Terre, onlye | Iñ this thatt
 a Gallope makes 1: 2: 3: & 4: & the | Action off Terre a Terre, makes butt
 2: as 1: 2: pa, Ta: | like a Coruett, butt lowe & preste, & Forwarde which
 | a Coruett Is nott, butt for the action & time Is all one | butt quicker
 lower, & more preste & this Is the | Truth off all these seuerall workinge
 off Horses | Iñ all these seuerall kindes,— which Iff you | Cañ Excute [*sic.*]
 perfectlye, you are to bee Estemed, | añ Exselente Horse—mañ. ——— |

The false waye workinge the Horse | Vppoñ Paseger, petit Gallope or Terre
 a | Terre his Croupe Iñ. |

The false waye Is when the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne | Is tied as shorte as
 cañ bee to the Poñell, & theñ pullinge | the Inwarde Rayne off the bridle
 as harde as you cañ | frome his neck, to bringe Iñ & forse his sholders, &
 att | the same time to forse his croupe Iñ & as violentlye as | you cañ with
 the legg, & Spurr, this Is such añ action | So agaynste nature to pull Iñ

his sholders & forse his | Croupe to att the same time as Itt Is Imposible a Horse | Shoulde goe with Itt, & therefore the Horse growes restye | or Entier, or putts his Croupe oute violentlye to Ease hiṁ | selfe, or groe desperate, to ruṁ a waye or to bolte, or to | Rise readye to Coume ouer with you ——— |

[f.179^r] Or to bite att your legges, & manye Extrauagenseyes more for | fleshe & bloude can nott Indure thatt torture & Vnnaturall | goinge Like a Soldier when hee Is tied heade & heeles | together I beleue hee Is nott att anye greate Ease, this Is worse, | & *Itt* Indeed Itt makes all horses restye or desperate beinge | aṁ Imposibeletye, & Indeed a verye Rack vnto Horses which | makes them Confess by their Actions that theye Caṁ nott | doe Itt, for all Horses that are rid so playes the Jades & | muste doe so offenesetye for their Ease,— for sertenlye | thatt which Is naturall Is beste, & Itt Is naturall when his | sholders Coumes Iṁ that his croupe shoulde goe oute a litle | & when his sholders goes oute thatt his Croupe shoulde goe | Iṁ a litle this God & nature hath ordaynde by his shape | & nott his heade to bee violentlye pulde Iṁ to the turne | & his croupe att the same time, to bee violentlye Spurde Iṁ | to the Turne, this Arte Is a gaynste nature, & arte shoulde | bee nothings Else butt to followe Nature & to sett her In order | butt *one* when a Horses Croupe Is so much forste Iṁ the | poore Horse hath no other waye Iṁ the worlde to helpe | hiṁ selfe butt to put this Inwarde hinder legg befor his | Inwarde sholder, & so hee goes backwarde, & halfe his | Croupe before his sholder withiṁ the turne, & so wide | behinde & off off the hanches, — Butt the Rider findinge | thatt will nott Suffer Itt, & therefore pulls his sholders | Extreamlye & presses his Croupe Extreamlye, which | putts hiṁ vppoṁ the Rack agayne & so makes hiṁ playe | the Jade to worke Imposibileties, for would hee, | that Rides Eyther lett the Horses sholders goe before his | Croupe, or his Croupe before his sholders, the Horse woulde | doe Itt, though the laste Is Vnnaturall, for no maṁ | trauellis with his horse Arse before his heade, butt | yett the Horse woulde doe eyther off these two, butt | the Rider will nott suffer hiṁ, butt pressinge still | his Croupe & findinge that to goe firste, then hee | pulls his sholders thatt thatt maye goe before his | Croupe, & att the same time preseinge both Itt Is such | a Horide torter as the Horse ruṁ In to a hunderde | Extrauagenseyes rather then to suffer, that which | Is

Impossible, — Therefore the trewe waye for pasinge | Is as I tolde you before,
the Horse oblike, & bias *as* | *I tolde you before*, & so for le petit Galope,
& Terre a | Terre, as I tolde you before though theye are other | helpes,
thatt Is the Horse to goe oblike, & Bias his | Croupe Iñ, alwaye shuñinge a
litle the Center, | which makes hiñ Goe Naturaley & Easeleye & | moste
Juste & pleasantlye, because this Is to bee | doñ with greate fasiletye,— &
the Horse neuer to | playe the Jade with you, & the other waye | Impossible
to bee doñ, & therefore alwayes to playe | the Jade with you, — for hee
muste needes opose | a thinge thatt hee cañ nott doe & Is Impossible to |
bee doñ & with such payne to boote so nowe | you see the righte waye &
the wronge, & the | resoñ off Euerye thinge so cleer as nothinge | cañ be
Cleerer,. ——— |

When a Horse makes a litle falte hee shoulde nott | presentlye bee punishte
seuerlye for Itt, butt pass Itt ouer & | trie by fayre meanes firste, & iff
hee doe nott mende Itt | theñ punishe hiñ soundlye for alwayes keepinge
a Horse | Vnder the Cudgell & by seueretye Is nott good,— Iff the Horse |
playe the Jade oute off malice vse the Spurrs & to the | purpose soundlye,—
& some times the Rod will putt hiñ off off | punishmente, & the Varietye
off Itt manye times Cuers the vice | as I haue seen Itt offteñ, & no longer a
goe then this daye |

[f.179^v] The Turks are the moste Curius Iñ keepinge their Horses off | anye
Natioñ, & valewes theñ, & Estemes theñ moste | all the wayes off dressinge
theñ, & keepinge theñ cleane | theye haue that cañ bee Imaginde,— Theye
Cloth firste | with a fine lineñ Cloth *ne* & Hoode nexte their Skiñ | Then
with a heare ['hair'] Cloth & Hoode *both off theñ* lined | with felte, ouer
their liñen Cloth, & hoode & all | these Clothes to bee made so fitt as to
Couer their | breasts, & to Coume pretye lowe doune to their leggs, | Itt cañ
nott bee better theñ this waye theye take for | their *Coueringe* clothinge The
Spanierds are verye | Curius a boue their Horses to Iñ all thinges & their
| Gro^mes so dilegeñ [*sic.*], as theye neuer suffer theñ to bee oute | off the
Stable, butt alwayes doinge some thinge a boue | their Horses, & Espetialye
Curius a boue their mayns, | Toppinges, & tayles, makinge [^] ^{them} cleane
diuers wayes | washinge, & plattinge theñ, & Estemes hyleye off their |

Horses, & no Natioñ loues them better, & the Masters | Contineulye Iñ the
Stable, to see the Groomes doe their | dewtye, butt the Spanierds, & the
Turks bee none | off the beste Horse-meñ, they Ride shorte strange | Spurrs,
& Sadles, Espetialye Bitts, which are moste | abhominable. ——— |—

The Etaliens are verye Carefull, & neate a boutte | their Horses, butt theye
haue loste their lattin Iñ | Ridinge off late, or Else theye neuer had Itt, |
our Ignorance, made vss thinke theye did rarelye. |

The French Some are Curius, Iñ keepinge & | dressinge their Horses, butt
for the moste parte | nott, theye Highley Esteeme Horses, & *gi* will | giue
greate prises for them *more then anye | other natioñ*, - Butt their Ridinge Is
naughte | the three Pillers, two Ropes & a Shambrier which | Is a whipp, &
three meñ att a Horse, & this waye | Spoyles all the Horses, thatt Coumes
Into their | Handes,— & French Groomes neuer Rubbs a Horses | legges
well. ——— |

The Alman or Hye Germans, loues Horses well | Some Sayes theye are verye
Curius, butt methinkes | nott theye Coñende their Groomes Extreamleye |
butt I thinke theye doe nott deserue Itt, sertenlye | the beste Groomes are
Englishe Groomes, butt no | Groomes are good Exsepte the master looks
| Strictlye ouer them, — for the masters Eye | makes the Horse well dreste
as well as the | prouerbe *m* that the masters Eye makes the | Horse fatt.—
Denmarke, Swede, Polande, | Transiluania, Hungaria, & all those Countris
| are much like the Almans, for litle Cureoseties | Iñ keepinge, & dressinge
their Horses, & all | their Ridinge a like naughte no mañ In | Germanye will
Ride withoute a Cauatzane | though hee knowes nott the vse off Itt att all
| nor whatt to doe with Itt, Iñ flanders Brabante | & these partes as also
Iñ Hollande & those partes | are much like the Germayns ——— |

In moscouia, I haue harde \wedge ^{the} Emperor hee had a stable off | Horses, &
a French Rider, — Hee hath some Horses | Coumes oute off Tartarie, &
Turkeye butt none | good Iñ his owne Countrey,— A Rider Is off no |
greate vse ther Exsepte hee Coulede dress & make | a redye Beare, wher ther
are plentie, & Noble Rases | off those beastes ther. ——— |

In the mogors Countrys theye haue no good Horses * |

{* Exsepte | you woulde | dress | Elephants |}

the beste theye haue Coumes oute off prtia [*sic*] ——— | Sr Walter Rawleye tolde mee thatt Iñ the weste | Indies ther was the fineste Shapte Horses, & fineste | Coullers Iñ the worlde, beyonde all Spanishe | Horses & barbs thatt Euer hee Sawe,— & they ther | knowe so litle the vse off Horses as theye | kill them̄ for their Skiñs. |

{ In Denmarke ther are Exselente good Horses,— & Iñ Norwaye litle stronge Horses | butt nott so pewrlye Shapte, I sawe Six Narawaye Horses Iñ a Cotch, veye litle | Horses, Isabells, with white maynes, & white Tayles some off their Heades a | litle to bigg butt veye fine litle Horses, & stronge,— For Islande Horses theye | are all Curlde like their Dogges, butt more Curlde so as no Currie-Combe cañ | dress them̄, nor nothings Else & theye are butt dull Jades. |

[f.180^f uncanceled] obseruations, Vppoñ large Circles. |

[cancelled] Vppoñ large Circles his Croupe oute for all the helpes both | with the Cauatzane, bridle Raynes legges & bodye as I tolde | you before, onlye this aded, that after a whyle that hee | Is acoustomed to Itt,— Then I woulde haue you Trott hiñ | withoute stopinge off hiñ vppoñ his Trott butt frome his | trott to Gallope hiñ le petit Gallope Gentlye & frome his | Gallope to his trott a gayne, & thoughe off the same hande | Still, yett change hiñ frome trott to Gallope & frome Gallope | to trott, vntill you thinke Itt suffitiente & then stopp | hiñ Eyther Vppoñ trott or Gallope which you please | this Is a moste Exselente Lessoñ, nott onlye to suple | his Sholders butt to make hiñ attende, & obaye the | will off the mañ, hauinge no Continewde Rule to fixe | his minde off to goe by Rote eyther In trottinge, or | Gallopinge, butt still to obaye the mañ as hee helpes or | Comādes hiñ to Eyther, & nott knowinge wheñ Itt Is | hee muste absolutlye obaye both the hande & the | heele, & so stopinge some times vppoñ a trott & some times | vppoñ a Gallope nott knowinge wheñ hee shoulde bee | Stopte, nor wher hee shoulde bee stopte makes hiñ | still to

obaye the mañ, both hande & heele, & therefore | a better Lessoñ Cañ nott
bee Iñ the worlde & therefore | vse Itt for all our Ende Is butt to make a
Horse obaye | the hande & the Heele, & this lessoñ doth Itt as | much as
anye lessoñ cañ doe;— Iff the Horse retayne | his forces, theñ Gallope hiñ
faste, & quick, & theñ | softlye a geñ, & theñ faste ageñ as ocatioñ serues |
& thus softlye, & quick vppoñ his Gallope, nott knowinge | when hee muste
doe Eyther makes hiñ obaye | both his Riders hande, & heele, which Is the
Ende | off our worke, & the quintesence off the manege,. |

When you haue supled the Horse suffitientlye | oñ the Sholders, & finde
hiñ Eyther harde off | the hande Iñ nott beinge vppoñ the Hanches, then
| trot hiñ large duñ piste & stopp hiñ often & | good harde stopps &
when hee leaste thinkes off Itt | for iff hee woulde stopp off hiñ selfe putt
hiñ forward | withoute stoppinge off hiñ, & stopp hiñ when hee | thinkes
nott off Itt, — & doe the same vppoñ a Gallope | often Stopps, & harde
& putt him back Sometimes | & you will finde hiñ verye much vppoñ the
hanches | this Is an Exselente lessoñ both to setle hiñ oñ the | bitt, & to
putt hiñ vpon the hanches, butt when | you haue doñ that you muste
nott Continewe this | lessoñ longe for Itt pinches a Horse verye much | oñ
the back, besides Itt makes hiñ fearefull to | goe forward, & so maye make
hiñ stick & restie | & manye Inconuenienceyes, maye Coume off Itt ther=
| fore your owne Judgmente muste worke ackordinge | to ocatioñ, — when
you doe stopp hiñ as I formerlye | tolde you, you maye stopp hiñ vppoñ a
walke to | as well as vppoñ a Trott or a Gallope; ——— |

[f.180^v] obseruations Aboute the Plye or bendinge off the | Horses Sholders Into
the Turne, Ande Iñ what | place the Cheekes off the bitt then are or wher
| theye reste. ——— |

When the Inwarde Rayne off the Cauatzane Is | tied harde to the Poñell,
& you pull the Inwarde | Rayne off the bridle to, his neck bendes so much |
Iñ to the Turne wether vppoñ large Circles his | Croupe oute or his Croupe
Iñ as theñ the Cheeke off | the Bitt thatt Is nexte to the Turne Is *on* ^{beyonde}
the | Inside off his neck, or sholder, & the outwarde | cheeke, remoued
ackordinge to the distance off | the cheekes, which Is much more theñ the

midste | off his neck,— & this plie suples his neck & sholders | Extreamley
 makes hiñ looke Iñ to the Turne | heade, neck, bodye, legges & all goienge
 moste Justlye | as theye aughte to doe, wether his Croupe Iñ or oute | & this
 Is the quintesence off the Manege, & withoute | this no Horse Cañ bee dreste
 perfectlye or cañ goe | Justlye Iñ anye kinde eyther Vppoñ the Grounde | or
 Iñ Ayres, nor posible to doe anye thinge righte | Vppoñ Circles, or Voltaes
 withoute Itt. ——— |

I tolde you this was with the Cauatzane the Inwarde | Rayne tied to the
 poñell, as pulls Iñ his | heade & neck so much, as makes the Inwarde |
 Cheeke off the Bitt so much withiñ his neck | oñ the Inside off the turne,
 because the Cauatzane | workes oñ his nose, & nott off his barrs or Curbe
 | att all, & thats the Resoñ the Inwarde Cheeke | off the bridle Coumes so
 much beyonde his | neck oñ the Iñ side off the Turne ——— |

Butt nowe to worke onlye with the Raynes | off the Bridle, which workes
 vppoñ the bitt | Is añ other busines, for nowe I Consider whatt | the Bitt
 Is, for that Is añ other Ingin, Itt | workes vppoñ the Horse Barrs, & the
 Curbe, & | the tow branches are like leuers, to worke | off those two places,
 as the Raynes pulls the | Cheekes, eyther the Inwarde Cheeke, or the |
 outwarde Cheeke, the barrs & the place off | the Curbe Is much lower
 theñ his nose which | the Cauatzane workes off, & the Ringes | wher the
Cauatzane Raynes off the bridle | Is fastende att the Ende off the Cheekes |
 are much lower theñ the Barrs or the Curbe | butt as the Cheekes are pulde
 by the Raynes | off the Bridle so doth the Bitt worke Vppoñ | the Bars, or
 the Curbe ackordinglye | As for Exsample oñ the Righte hande, the | Rayns
 operated Iñ both your handes iff you | pull the Inwarde Rayne frome his
 neck oñ | the Inside theñ you pull the Inwarde cheeke | Iñ to the Turne &
 then the mouth oñ his barrs | withoute the turne, & makes the Horse looke
 | oute off the Turne & presses the Curbe oñ | the oute Side & muste off
 nesetie doe so, for | when the Cheekes are pulde Iñ the mouth off | the
 bitt muste goe oute, for whersoever & off |

[f.181^r] what side soever, the Cheekes are pulde, the mouth | off the bitt goes
 still Contrarye to the Cheekes, & muste | doe so Iñ all Resoñ, the bitt beinge

añ Instrumente, that | Is made so to doe, & cañnott bee otherwise.— The same | operatiō Itt hath for the lefte hande iff you pull the | Inwarde Rayne frome his neck the mouth goes still | Contrarye to the Cheeke, the Cheeke goes Inwarde & | the mouth goes outwarde, — *then* & the Horse \wedge ^{leggs} Is preste | on the In̄side off the Turne,— Therefore In̄ Terre a Terre, | the Raynes seperated In̄ both my handes, I pull the | Inwarde Rayne beyonde his neck my knuckles towardes | his neck which pulls the Inwarde cheeke to mee, & | theñ the mouth goes Contrareye, that Is the Cheeke is | putt frome the Turne & the mouth bendes In̄ to the | Turne & the Horse looks In̄ to the Turne as hee | shoulde doe,— & the Horse \wedge ^{leggs} Is preste oñ the oute side | off the Turne,— on the lefte hande the Inwarde Rayne | pulde thus, hath the same operatiō, your hande beinge | oñ the oute side off His neck, your knuckles towardes | his neck, pulls the Inwarde cheeke frome the turne | & the mouth off the bitt goes In̄ to the Turne alwayes | Contrarye, & can nott bee otherwise, presses the Horse | oñ the Inside off the barrs, & oñ the Inside off the | Curbe, & so lookes In to the Turne, & the Horse ^{leggs} preste | on the oute side off the Turne, which Is proper for | Terre a Terre, & thus workinge with the Bitt | produses manye Exselente things, for Terre a | Terre, as I perticulerlye haue sett doune In̄ the | Chapter off Terre a Terr. ——— |

Nowe lett Vss Consider, workinge with the outwarde | Rayne off the Bridle, what operatiō that hath, | off the barrs, Curbe, & Cheekes, which cheekes | Gouvernes Barrs, & Curbe, — as for Exsample | goinge oñ the Righte hande I turne my hande | oñ the In̄side off his neck, this pulls the outwarde | Rayne, pullinge the outwarde, Rayne, pulls the | outwarde Cheeke to mee, theñ off nesesitye Itt | muste putt the mouth off the Bitt frome mee | presses the Horse oñ the oute Side off the Barrs | which Is oñ the oute side off the Turne, & so | presses hiñ oñ the oute side off the Curbe & so the | Horse muste looke oñ the oute side off the Turne | & all this Is because the cheekes are pulde to | you oñ the oute side, therefore the mouth off the | bitt muste goe frome you still Contrarye & neuer | fayles, nor cañ nott, for Itt Is Imposible Itt shoulde | worke otherwise, butt Itt Is trewe Itt suples & | bringes In̄ his sholders, the resoñ Is this the | Horse \wedge ^{leggs} Is preste oñ the Inside off the Turne & | then hee muste needes bringe In̄ his Sholders | though hee Is

preste to looke oute off the Turne | The same thinge Is for the lefte hande
 & the | same Resons for Euerye thinge workinge with | the outwarde Rayne
 off the Bridle,— Thus the | bitt & Raynes are trewlye anotomised, which
 neuer | was before,— The outwarde Rayne doth well | for the Piroyte butt
 for Demy voltaes vppoñ | Pasadoes I woulde worke & Ride hiñ moste as |
 for Terre a Terre, & hee will keepe the line as well | Rayne, & goe better.
 ——— |

[f.181^v] one thinge more aboute the Bitt, when you pull the | Inwarde Rayne
 off the Bride frome his neck the | cheeke withiñ the Turne, you pull frome
 his neck | to bringe Iñ his sholder, butt theñ the cheeke beinge | pulde
 frome his neck, the mouth goes oute & presses | the Horse on the oute
 Side off his barrs, & oñ the oute | Side off the Curbe because wher soeuer
 the Cheekes | are pulde the mouth off the Bitt goes | Contrarye | butt
 findinge the Horses Sholders Coumes nott Iñ | Enough with this theñ hee
 helpes with the | outwarde Rayne to , both att a time, & that pulls | the
 outwarde cheeke to you, & putts the mouth | off the Bitt more from you,
 & therefore presses the | Horse more oñ the oute Side both barrs, & Curbe
 | & so eyther off them are false, butt both together | more false, for when
 you worke with both | Raynes together, ther Is butt one thatt hath the |
 predomante power, Itt Is trewe Itt bringes Iñ | the Horses Sholders because
 hee Is preste oñ the | Inside butt the bitt & the Curbe workes oñ the | oute
 Side off his mouth, & the Horse lookes a litle | oute off the turne this Is
 writt for the Righte hande | the outwarde Raynes I tolde you was good for
 | paseger His Croupe Iñ because Itt presses hiñ oñ the | Inside, & leaues
 his legges att libertye oñ the | oute side, the better to lapp ouer his Inwarde
 | legges & his croupe nott to goe oute because pasager | Is the Actioñ off
 a trot, which Is cross, Butt Iñ | le petit Gallope his croupe Iñ, or Terre a
 Terre | Itt Is the Inwarde Rayne, as I haue tolde you | formerlye because
 the Horse leades with his | Inwarde legges, & alwayes keepes them so & | Is
 preste Iñ the oute side,— & passeger Is preste | oñ the Inside, & his legges
 Vppoñ the Actioñ off | a Trott, which Is cross & thatt makes the diferece
 | with the Helpes off the seuerall Raynes Iñ | Pasager, Le petit Gallope, &
 Terre a Terre, |

For the workinge off the Bitt | when the Horse goes straye forward, |

When the Horse goes straye forward, eyther Trottinge | Gallopinge, or
vpon Coruetts, Iff you holde your hande | lowe, Itt presses more Vpon
the Barrs then the Curbe | because the Cheekes off the Bitt Is nott pulde
so much | to you or to the neck off the Horse & therefore the Curbe | Is nott
straytende so much, & so the Horse Is att more | libertye, & his heade a litle
hier, — Butt when you | holde your Bridle hande a litle hier, & pull Itt | vpp
to you, then the Curbe workes more & pulls | downe the Horses heade,—
The Reson Is playne, | for when you pull the Cheekes hard & Vpp, | then
you pull the mouth off the Bitt downe | & so the Horses heade, because
Itt workes harde | on the Curbe,— for Itt Is moste trewe, that when | the
cheekes off the bitt Is pulde vpp the mouth | goes downe, & straytens the
Curbe & when The hande | beinge Hye & when the Cheekes are nott pulde
harde | then the Curbe Is slacte & the Horses heade att | more libertye,
for the presure off the barrs, & Curbe | dependes Vpon the Cheekes, for
when the Cheekes | goes vpp the mouth off the Bitt goes doune & when |
the Chekes off the bitt goes [deleted undecipherable] doune the mouth off
the | Bitt goes Vpp, this Is the operation off the | Bitt, & the Effects off
Itt, I haue | Tolde you. |

[f.182^r] The Cauatzane Is an other busines then the Bitt for the bitt workes |
Vpon the barrs & the Curbe & hath two Cheekes wher Vnto the | Rayns
bee fastende on both sides the Horse neck & the Bitt Is | In his mouth,
& the Curbe vnder his Chin & these lowe Espetialye | the Branches,—
Butt the Cauatzane Is Vpon the nose which | Is much hier, & workes
onlye ther, withoute mouth or Curbe, | well then the Cauatzane beinge
tied off my fation though | Itt bee to the Girthes, iff you pull Itt cross his
neck the | oblike line, your hande on the oute Side off the Turne | your
knuckles towards his neck, Itt pulls his heade | Vpp a litle, & workes the
same Effecte for bendinge off | his neck as the bitt doth butt much more,
because you | haue a greater pull, the Cauatzane beinge Vpon his | nose
& beinge further off you then the bitt hee Is bente | the more because you
haue more power to pull. ——— | Then consider when the Inwarde Rayne
off the | Cauatzane Is tied to the pomell, Itt Is the same oblike | line thatt

the other was when you had Itt Iñ your | hande, onely a litle shorter, & hath the same operation, | Iñ Euerye thinge, — & pulls Vpp his heade a litle ——— | Butt nowe iff you haue Itt Iñ your hande & holde Itt | oñ the Iñ side off the turne & pull Itt harde, & lowe | theñ you pull down, the Horses heade, & bringes Iñ | his outwarde Sholder, which Is good Iñ large Circles | eyther vppon Trottinge or Gallopinge, or vppoñ paseger | for the Resons I tolde you before,— so that the | Cauatzane & the Bitt differs so much Iñ their | operatiue workinge,— as when you pull the Cauatzane | a litle hye, Itt putts vpp the Horse heade, & when | you pull the Bitt hye & harde Itt pulls doune his | heade,- & when you holde the Cauatzane lowe | & oñ the Inside off the Turne, & pull Itt harde Itt | pulls doune the Horses heade & you holde your | hande lowe with the Bridle, Itt giues his heade | libertye, for the Resons I tolde you before, so nowe | you see that the Cauatzane & the bitt differs in their | workinge verye much, so much difference betwixte | the Horse & the mouth,— Itt Is trewe that the Inwarde | Cauatzane Rayne tied to the poñell, Is so rare a thinge | & so Efectuall, as you maye almoste worke as you liste | with the Bridle, the Cauatzane still doinge the | busines, & \wedge ^{when} oñ coumes to worke with the bridle alone, | one maye Easeleye bee deseued, Exsepte hee hath | all these Considerations, the Exelenceye off the | Cauatzane thus tied maye deseue hiñ when hee | Coumes to worke with the Bitt alone. ——— |

[uncancelled] For Coruetts, |

[cancelled] When you worke a Horse Vppoñ Coruetts befor you doe that | you muste make a Horse to rise perfectlye Iñ Pesates | which Is hye before & to staye vppoñ the Hande, vsinge | the Cauatzane still,— & this forwarde & nott vppoñ Circles | att firste by no meanes — Theñ to make hiñ goe In Coruetts | tie the Cauatzane \wedge ^{raine} frome the wall still to keepe his hinder | legg *frome* \wedge ^{to} the wall that Itt shoulde nott goe oute butt putt to | his other hinder legg, & begin with two or three Coruetts & | then walke hiñ a geñ, & theñ Coruett hiñ a geñ, & iff you help |

{him}

one the hande & hee goes forwarde with Itt hee will quicklye | bee drete,
& iff hee goes forwarde to much lett hiṁ make |

[f.182^v] his Coruetts Iñ a place, or pull hiṁ back, & theñ make hiṁ | goe Iñ
Coruetts, — when your lefte Sholder Is to the wall | you muste theⁿ tie the
right Cauatzane Rayne to the | poñell, which doth nott onlye keepe back
his hinder legg | on the same side the Cauatzanes Right rayne Is tied, butt
| Itt also suples his sholders Extreamleye, & prepares hiṁ | nothings like
Itt to goe Vppoñ Voltaes oñ the righte hande, | when your righte Sholder Is
to the wall, theñ you | muste tie the lefte Cauatzane Rayne to the Poñell |
for the same resons, & worke hiṁ Iñ Coruetts as I tolde | you before, & this
will prepare hiṁ & make hiṁ | goe Vppoñ his voltaes oñ the lefte hande,
no lesson | better att the firste,. ——— |

Butt after this I will tell you a rare lessoñ for | Coruetts, which Is this, tie
the Righte Cauatzane | Rayne to the poñell, & lett hiṁ goe oñ the lefte |
hande legg & Rayne off a Side as iff his heade | weare to the Piller & rayse
hiṁ Iñ Coruetts so | towe or three his Croupe oute & then walke hiṁ | &
theñ Coruett hiṁ thus, this keepe oute his Inwarde | hinder legg, & so
suples hiṁ to the hande & heele | as ther Is nothings like Itt, butt though
hee goes | oñ the lefte hande hee Is suplde for the Righte | hande — The
lefte hande Is thee same you muste | tie the lefte Cauatzane Rayne & goe
oñ the righte | hande, his Croupe oute, & helpe legg & rayne off a side |
& doe In all thinges Else as you did before, & | thus hee Shall neuer bee
Entier, butt moste | Suple both to hande & heele; ——— |

Nowe to putt hiṁ Vppoñ Coruetts oñ his voltaes, the | Inwarde Cauatzane
Rayne, muste still bee tied to the | poñell, & his Croupe muste nott bee
Iñ to much butt | rather duñ piste for teachinge off hiṁ, & to keepe | oute
his Inwarde hinder legg Is the busines, & helpe | a litle with the Inwarde
Rayne off the Bridle, | & make hiṁ goe three or fowre Coruetts, & theñ
| walke hiṁ, & theñ Coruett hiṁ a geñ, & so deminishe | your walke, &
augmente your Coruetts vntill hee makes | a perfecte turne Iñ Coruetts, &
when hee Is perfecte | theñ lett the Horse goe Vppoñ his Turnes bias Iñ |
Coruetts;— & thats the perfection Iñ voltaes, you | muste helpe with the

Inwarde Rayne as I tolde | you Iñ the Chapter off Coruetts, & nott helpe
with | your leggs att all, for the former Resons I tolde | you; ——— |

Iff you finde hee hastens to much then Rayse | hiñ hye In pesates, & keepe
^ ^{him} vppoñ the hande | & helpe hiñ with the Rodd vppoñ his sholders |
& legges to make hiñ bende them which Is the | onlye Grase Iñ all Ayres
what soeuer, this & thus | workinge off hiñ, vppon his voltaes, Eyther duñ
| piste, or his Croupe Iñ Vppoñ Pesates, & this will | make hiñ goe rarelye
Iñ Coruetts. ——— |

This aditiõ for the Chapter off | the Cauatzane |

The Cauatzane my waye the Inwarde Rayne off Itt | pulls the Horses nose
Iñ to the Turne, & therefore the | Inwarde cheeke off the bitt goes frome the
Turne as | Itt shoulde doe, thoughe the Inwarde cheeke bee oñ | the Iñside
off his neck, the oblike line with the Cauatzane | Is beste for le petit Galope
or Terre a Terre because Itt | keepes his outwarde sholder frome cominge
In to | much, presses hiñ oñ the oute Side ——— |

[f.183^r] So thatt his legges within the Turne are att Libertye to leade | & so
goes Juste as cañ bee Iñ the worlde, Easeleye & lookes Iñ | to the Turne, &
halfe his Sholder before halfe his croupe | which Is moste righte & Trewe, —
for terre a terre Butt iff you pull | the Inwarde Rayne harde within the turne
kepinge Itt | Still oñ the Inside off the Turne, thatt bringes his outworde |
Sholder Iñ & presses hiñ mighteleye oñ the Iñside off | the Turne, & beinge
preste So to goe Terre a Terre Is false | because the action off his legges
are cross like a Trott | onlye hee doth nott change them Euerye time butt
keepes | them Cross still Iñ the Same posture, & all this falshoode | Is with
bringinge Iñ his outwarde Sholder for then hee | muste bee preste oñ the
Iñside which makes his legges goe | thus Cross & false, for le petit Galope
his Croupe Iñ for | for [sic.] terre a Terre — *wh* wether his Sholders goes
before | his Croupe, or his Croupe before his sholders, still hee goes | false
with his legges as I tolde you because his outwarde | Sholder Coumes Iñ &
preste oñ the Inside,— Butt to bringe | Iñ his outwarde Sholder, & preste
oñ the Inside Is good | for trottinge or Gallopinge large or narowe duñ piste
| & for paseger, to his croupe Iñ, to keepe his legges free | withoute the

Turne, to lapp ouer his legges withiñ | the turne, & therefore to bringe Iñ
his outwarde sholder | & to bee preste within the Turne for these two, for |
paseger though his Croupe bee Iñ Is the action off a trot | which Is Cross,
& that admitts Itt, & Iñ large Circles | his Croupe Is oute, & therefore maye
Galope though hee | Is preste oñ the Inside,— butt his Croupe Iñ will nott |
Suffer Itt for the Resons I tolde you before,— & therefore | you muste helpe
as I tolde you, for le Petit Gallope, | & Terre a Terre, the Resons you haue
before off Itt | Though the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne bee so strayte | as to
bringe his heade to his sholder, yett I Cañ | make hiñ Goe trewlye Terre a
Terre Iff I helpe as | I tolde you Iñ Terre a Terre, & putt the Horses | bodye
oblike for theñ hee Is preste oñ the outeside, | his legges withiñ the Turne
leades halfe his | Sholders b withiñ the Turne, before halfe his | Croupe
withiñ the Turne & lookes Into the Turne | Naturalye, & Easeleye,— &
nowe you see perfectlye | what Is false & what Is Trewe Iñ Euerye | Thinge,
& for Euerye thinge, & more Cañ nott bee, |

This muste bee added to the Chapter off the | Bitt |

I tolde you the Bitt workes ackordinge as you pull the Raynes | & as the
cheekes are pulde so the mouth goes alwayes Contrarye, | as for Exsample
iff you pull the Inwarde rayne cross his neck | the cheeke Is pulde frome the
Turne, & the mouth off the | Bitt In to the Turne, & so the Horse heade &
neck & the bitt | workes oñ the Iñ side off the barrs, & the Curbe oñ the
Inside | off the Curbe withiñ the Turne;— Iff you pull the Inwarde | Rayne
frome his neck then you press his barrs on the outeside | off the turne &
also presses the Curbe on the outeside off | the Turne, because you pull
the Inwarde cheeke Into the | Turne, so the mouth goes oute & workes oñ
the oute side | off his mouth, — Iff you helpe with the outwarde Rayne |
theñ you pull the outwarde Cheeke to you, & then the | mouth goes oute
& so the Horse heade oñ the oute side | off the Turne, & presses his Barrs
& curbe oñ the oute | Side,— & iff you pull the outwarde Rayne frome his
| neck, then the Cheeke beinge pulde frome his neck the | mouth goes Iñ
to the turne & hee Is preste oñ the Inside | off his barrs, & Curbe withiñ
the Turne heer Is greate varietye | off Workinge with the Bitt, & you see

playnleye thatt | the Cheekes & the mouth alwayes goes Contrarye | Itt
neuer fayles to doe So. |

[f.183^v] Butt nowe the dificultye Is howe to make hi^m looke | Into the Turne,
& to bringe In his outwarde Sholder | for Paseger, & to press oⁿ the barrs,
withiⁿ the Turne | & the Curbe withiⁿ the Turne, which none off the other
| wayes doth,— well theⁿ for Terre a Terre, I tolde you | you muste putt
your Bridle hande on the oute side off | his neck your knuckles towardes his
neck, you sittinge | oblike & your ^{hande} rather lowe, then hye, you beinge
oblike | the Horse Is oblike also, & this keepes his outwarde | Sholders
frome Cou^minge Iⁿ which Is righte for terre a | Terre Butt nott for Pasar
[sic.] for ther hee muste bringe | Iⁿ his outwarde Sholder, nowe heers the
dificultye | howe to bringe Iⁿ his outwarde Sholder & to make | hi^m looke
In to the Turne,— with great dificultye | I haue founde Itt,— & Itt Is
thus,— iff the Raynes bee | seperated In both your handes,— Iff oⁿ the
Righte | hande, pull the Inwarde Rayne to your outwarde | Sholder, the
knuckles towardes the Horse neck, butt | the Rayne muste bee pulde hye
to your outwarde Sholder, | & bringe Iⁿ your outwarde Sholder & looke oⁿ
the | Inside off his heade, heer the cheeke withiⁿ the turne | goes frome the
Turne, & therefore the mouth In to the | Turne preste on the Inside off the
barrs & oⁿ the Inside | off the Curbe,— which Is all righte as Itt shoulde
bee | butt heers the miraculousnes off Itt, thatt workinge | Thus you pull
the outwarde Sholder Iⁿ to the turne | & presses the Horse oⁿ the Inside
which Is righte | for Paseger because Itt Is the actioⁿ off a Trott which | Is
Cross,— so the hande hye pulde thus Is for paseger, | & because Itt pulls
Iⁿ his outwarde Sholder, & presses | hi^m withiⁿ the Turne,— & the hande
lowe pulde | thus, keepes back his outwarde Sholder, & therefore | fitt for le
petit Gallope, & terre a Terre, & preste oⁿ | the oute Side off the turne, Itt
Is miraculus to see | both these helpes to worke seuerall Effects so trewlye
| & so Juste for all these seuerall actions off the Horses | legges Itt coste
mee much studye, & paynes before I founde | Itt oute I assure you,— for
the lefte hande the Inwarde | Rayne wraughte Juste as I tolde you for the
Right | hande,— & this Is the truth, & quintesence off | the bridle. — |

I muste tell you, thatt the cheekes lie slope to you, & | the Rayns more slope before theye Coume to your | hande so the bitt cañ nott presse verye much off | hiñ beinge So farr frome the perpendicular line | & as the Cheekes are pulde vpp the mouth goes doune | & as the Cheekes goe doune, the mouth goes alwayes | Contrarye, as I tolde you before,— Butt nowe to lett | you knowe whatt Is the perpendicular line ——— | Thatt Is to thruste your hande forwarde, Juste | perpendicular to the Ende off the Cheekes, & so pull | Itt Vpp harde, & itt workes Extreamleye Vppoñ | the Curbe which Is to pull his heade doune | this I neuer vse, onlye tell you what Itt Is, & the effects of Itt |

Workinge the Cauatzane off the same fation hath | the same operation & when the Cauatzane Is | tied to the poñell, then workes the Raynes | as I tolde you, & Itt hath the same operation | eyther for le petit Gallope his Croupe In, or Terre a | Terre or paseger his Croupe In or Vppoñ large Circles | his Croupe oute, eyther to staye his outwarde | Sholder, or to bringe In his outwarde Sholder as | ocation serues for seuerall thinges, as I haue | Tolde you Before. |

[f.184^r] one thinge more with the Cauatzane, iff Itt bee In your hande | & cross his neck, that Is to pull Itt oñ the oute Side off the Turne, | that Is the Inwarde Rayne off the Cauatzañ or Else the same | Rayne tied harde to the Poñell,— both off them Is añ oblike | line,— & though the Inwarde Cheeke off the bride bee pulde | beyonde his neck, or Sholder yett the Cauatzane thus tied | Putts the Inwarde Cheeke bias or oblike frome the Turne | which Is as Itt shoulde bee, so Rare Is the Cauatzane my | waye & the oblike line. ——— |

So for the Bitt the Cheekes to bee oblike doth the | busines, which the Raynes pulde oblike as I haue tolde | you workes righte off his heade, neck, Barrs & Curbe | all on the In side, eyther to keepe oute his *Inwarde* | outwarde Sholder, or to bringe In his outwarde Sholder | oute for le petit Gallope or Terre a Terre the hande | lowe, or Coruetts vppoñ voltaes,— or to bringe In his | outwarde Sholder the hande hye to your outwarde | sholder for paseger trottinge large or Gallopinge | so the oblike Line doth

both, so rare a thinge Is the | oblike line, Eyther with the Cauatzane or
workinge | with the Bitt. ——— |

For Paseger, I tolde you the hande hye to the | outwarde Sholder, to pull
the Inwarde Rayne Cross | his neck, which is the oblike line for the righte |
hande to pull the Inwarde Rayne off the Bridle | thus bringes Iñ his outwarde
sholder, & the more | iff you bringe Iñ your outwarde Sholder, the more his
| outwarde Sholder Coumes Iñ, naye iff you looke to your | Inwarde Sholder,
the Horses outwarde Sholder Coumes | Iñ much more, & iff you bende your
bodye a litle In to | the Turne,— his outwarde Sholder Coumes Iñ moste
off | all, & the Horse preste oñ the Inside,— this for paseger | or his Croupe
oute vppoñ large Circles, Trott or Gallope, |

Butt for Terre a Terre I tolde you the hande lowe | the Inwarde Rayne pulde
oblike cross his neck | restinge on the outwarde sturope, & the Horse ^{leggs}
preste | oñ the oute side & looke butt off the Horses heade | withiñ the
Turne, & this keepes back the Horses | outwarde Sholder, & manye thinges
more which I | haue tolde you & all off them Conduses moste Exselently |
for Terre a Terre — & remember your hande beinge | thus lowe, workinge
oñ this mañer keepes oute | his outwarde Sholder & presses hiñ oñ the oute
| Side off the Turne,— So you see these two seuerall | helps howe ^{theye}
worke Seuerall wayes, & moste | righte Iñ Euerye thinge workinge a Horse
Iñ | the manege . ——— |

when you press a Horse oñ the oute side the helps | as I haue formerlye
tolde you for Terre a Terre, both | with the hande, & Seate, then you muste
reste more | off the outwarde Sturrope & bee Concaue oñ the oute side | off
your Body, & conuexe within & that presses the | Horse oñ the oute side &
proper for Terre a Terre | because the Bodye leanes on the oute side, & thers
the | poyse & wayghte & so the Horse lookes Into the Turne | Naturalye,—
because hee Is preste oñ the oute side & the | Horse Is concaue withoute
the Turne & conuexe withiñ | the Turne as you are, because both you &
the Horse are both preste oñ the oute side off the Turne & the Horse muste
goe | Bias,— Butt nowe to make hiñ bringe Iñ his outwarde | Sholder for
paseger & preste oñ the Inside & to looke In to the | Turne Is the Dificultye,

whye theñ Thus, pull the | Inwarde Rayne to your outwarde Sholder the
knuckles | Towardes his neck whye you shoulde pull Itt so hye to | your
outwarde Sholder Is because you haue more roume | to bende the Horse
neck more & so consequentlye to bringe | Iñ his outwarde Sholder, & your
outwarde Sholder which | doth fasilitate his outwarde Sholder to coume Iñ
the better, | & makes you concaue oñ the Inside, & conuexe withoute | The
turne & makes the Horse so to, the | poyse & wayghte beinge now | oñ the
Inside, ——— |

[f.184^v] & his legges att libertye withoute to lapp ouer his Inwarde legges | which
Is proper for paseger which Is the Actioñ off a Trott, | Butt the difficultie Is
to make hiñ looke Into the Turne | which the outwarde Rayne cañ nott doe
because Itt preses | hiñ oñ the oute Side off his barrs, & Curbe,— neyther
cañ the | Inwarde Rayne pulde frome his neck doe Itt, for that also | presses
hiñ on the oute side both off his barrs & Curbe which | makes hiñ looke
oute off the Turne,— Butt this waye with | pullinge the Inwarde Rayne to
your outwarde Sholder | presses hiñ oñ the Inside off the Turne, bringes Iñ
his | outwarde Sholder, concaue within & Conuexe withoute | both you &
the Horse & makes hiñ looke Into the turne | which nothinge Else doth,
which Is miraculous, & the | Reson Is because the Horse Is preste oñ the
Inside off the | Barrs, & Curbe & therefore lookes In to the Turne, the |
Rayne beinge pulde so Hye & oblike.— Butt some | maye saye your poyse
beinge oñ the Inside howe | cañ you helpe with the outwarde legg, I anser |
the poyse Is nott so much as to hinder that helpe | an other thinge Is when
you helpe with the outwarde | Rayne, you helpe with the outwarde legg to
& theñ | your poyse Ile be sworne Is oñ the Inside,— & therefore | this trewe
waye maye bee doñ as Easeleye, as the | olde false waye since both off theñ
Is the poyse oñ | The Inside, & the Horse ^{leggs} reste oñ the Inside & this
| newe & trewe waye will bee doñ Eseleir, & the | Horse to looke Into the
Turne wher the others | makes hiñ looke oute off the Turne, & therefore
false | beinge preste on the oute side off the barrs & Curbe, | & this newe
waye trewe because Itt presses hiñ oñ | the Inside barrs & Curbe though
hee Is preste oñ the | Inside off the Turne, this oblike line presses hiñ | oñ
the Inside off his barrs, & Curbe, because Itt pulls | the Inwarde Cheeke
frome the turne bias & slope | & therefore pulls the Horse heade In to the

turne | alwayes as I tolde you the mouth goinge Contrarye | to the Cheeke,
& therefore presses hiṁ oñ the Inside | off the *Curbe* barrs & *Curbe*,— This
Is a moste Exselente | trewe & miraculous waye off workinge Horses | the
Cauatzane workes the same effecte though Itt bee vppon his nose. |

[uncancelled] For the Piroyte. |

[cancelled] The Piroyte Is preste within the Turne, his sholders | coumes faste
aboute, butt helpinge with the outwarde | Rayne so harde bringes Iñ his
sholders, butt Itt makes | hiṁ looke oute off the Turne because thatt presses
| hiṁ oñ the oute-Side off his Barrs, & *Curbe* ——— | Ande therefore
Sertenlye the same waye I tolde you | for paseger, which Is to pull the
Inwarde Rayne hye | vpp to your outwarde Sholder your knuckles towardes
| his neck, your bodye Concaue withiñ the turne & | Conuexe withoute the
Turne presses the Horse oñ | the Inside off the Turne & bringes his outwarde
| Sholder Iñ all which thinges are proper for the | Piroyte, & makes hiṁ
looke Iñ to the Turne to | boote, which the outwarde Rayne doth nott | butt
contrarye workinge oñ his barrs & *Curbe* | oñ the oute Side, & the Inwarde
Rayne pulde | as I tolde you oblike Cross his neck hie to your | outwarde
Sholder, workes oñ the barrs & the | *Curbe* oñ the Inside off the Turne
because the | Inwarde Branch off the Bitt is pulde frome | the Turne oblike
which putts the mouth off | the bitt Iñ & so the Horses heade, workinge
vpp | the barrs & *Curbe* oñ the Inside off the turne | alwayes the mouth off
the Bitt goinge Contrarye | to the Cheekes Is the resoñ off all this,— Ande
| Sertenlye this doinge all the other waye doth & | lookinge Iñ to boote
muste bee much better, & greate | aduantage for the Horse makinge the
Piroyte | much better, faster, Easier, & Trewer. for the piroyte. |

You muste giue litle firme Jerkes with | your hande still to your shoulder
your knuckles | still to his neck. a butt those Jerkes [word deleted illegible]
bee firme | nott to disorder h[.] [.]outt butt onlye to | bringe hiṁ faste
aboute Iñ | his Turne. ——— |

[f.185^r uncanceled] Obseruations aboute the Posture off Horses, | Iff they goe
righte. |

Tis trewe thatt off all postures the straye line | Is the Easieste butt since
 Horse—meñ propoude | sutch & sutch Ayres \wedge & voltes to be performed by
 horses, | then the Esieste wayes both for their Aprehen= | tion, & their
 motion which Is grantinge the | Horse Is to \wedge doe sutch a thinges which
 posture crosses | Nature the Leaste or Goes with Itt to helpe Itt | to thatt
 Ende, for I doe nott thinke the dressinge | off horses anye other thinge theñ
 to sett wilde | nature Iñ order, & make Itt methodicall, for | I vnderstande
 no crossinge off Itt for nothings | thatt Is forsde Is eyther Comley, Easeye,
 or righte | butt by methode to Conuerte Nature In to Arte | & by Coustum
 to *make* ^{conuerte} Arte Into Nature for | Euery Horse muste take his one
 [=own] Ayre, which | Nature hath apted hiñ to, thatt muste bee | followed,
 & maye be mutch helped butt you | muste nott chuse hiñ one. — Coustum
 Is so stronge | Vppon Euerye thinge, As wee see heauie & Lumpishe |
 bodies beinge practised frome their childhoode | howe Easelye theye Valte
or Tumble when a more | Agill, Bodie for the sighte farr, Cañ nott doe neer
 | anye off those thinges, for wante off Arte & Practice |

Thatt no Ayre what—soeuer Anye Horse euer | wente Iñ, Iff hee weare
 perfectlye made by a | Greate Master did Euer cross Nature, my | reson
 Is thatt All Ayres thatt Eeuer was Is | Naturall to Horse kinde, thatt Is
 to suñ horse | or other.— For Example I my selfe haue seene | foales,
 Coltes, & younge Horses before Euer theye | weare touthed or Handled.—
 to pass a Carier & | stopp as perfectly as anye Arte Coude teach them, & |
 Aduance as well, Calope [*sic.*] & change frome hande to hande, | serpeiare,
 naye which Is more terra, terra, both releue | & determine.— butt selduñ
 aboue a quarter, or a demie volte | the same I haue seene Iñ Coruetts, demye
 Ayre, Cropadoes & | Capriole.— butt they did nott Continewe | Longe.—
 yett this shewes those | Ayres are all naturall | to Horses, & |

{nothinge Vrgde vppon them more theñ to make Itt more | Easeye to them,
 which withoute vanety butt for truth sake I neuer | sawe anye methode like
 this, Eyther by my readinge or ridinge. — } }

[f.185^v] 2 The Consideration thatt made mee Inuente | this new methode &
waye off ridinge |

Firste I was tierde as mutch with | readinge Longe discourses to Confounde
mañ | & Horse, as with ridinge, after a tedious | methode thatt neyther theye
nor I vnderstode | Ande sumthinge methoughte still ther was, | lefte thatt
was nott yett founde oute so I | begañ to Consider, & wente as deepe &
lowe | as I Coude, because I woulde leaue litle | or nothings behinde mee,—
Then I | Considered, a Horse to ^{bee} a liuinge creature | with sutch a kinde
off Shape, with 4: | Legges, which shape & Legges oughte to | bee putt Into
sutch a posture or Postures, | as hee meyghte performe sutch Ayres | with
the greateste Ease to *him self* | & Combines both to *him selfe* & the the
[sic.] | rider.— ^{sum} *thinke I founde thatt nature had | made his hinder*
Legges narrower then | his fore Legges x & butt wee will ta wee are neuer to
| *Cross Nature* theñ both his hinder Legges | drawinge strayghte Lines frome
his fore | Legges, I woulde haue his hinder feete to | stande withiñ the lines,
& his fore legges | withoute them, butt so thaye are withiñ | Itt makes no
matter howe litle x for withoute | this hee will neuer bee perfectly Vppon
| the Hantches, & withoute thatt no horse | Cañ goe well In any kinde.—
Iff a horse | stradle whatt maye hee bee vppon his | Arse butt nott vppon
his hantches for | the Stradlinge puttes him off Itt for | theye sett him wide,
when a Horse his | Legges are neer together thaye are apter | to slide vnder
his belly which Is a | righte waye for the | stop hantches |

{ x *them for paralels*, only the more theye are thruste vnder | his bellye the
naroer they muste Goe, & | So Consequently the more Vppon the hantches
| this figure shewes Itt, |}

[f.186^r] Like a stopp, & hee goes forwarde with | Itt, which stradlinge hee cañ
nott, for | hee Cañ nott goe to wayes att one time | x Vppon his turnes besides
thatt Action off Stradlinge tendes | tow mutch to restiuenes, for seldum |
shall you see a Horse displeasd att a | stopp, butt hee will stradle, the only
meanes | hee knowes to opose your will to putt | him Vppon the hantches,—
Thus mutch | for forwarde. — |

Vppon his | Turnes. |

Wee muste nott alter frome \wedge our firste grounde & | principle, since you will
finde the truth | off Itt, so playnly; — I saye theñ whatt | Action soeuer
the Horse doth, wether | forwardes, backwardes, sideways or | turninge, the
Hinder Legges, muste | still bee within the lines off his fore | Legges x whatt
action soeuer hee makes | Exsepte his heade to the piller. Ande this Actione will
neuer fayle | you so you fayle nott Itt butt produce | admirable Effectes,
Iff you aply the | remedie for this Is the Grounde off | All;— Ande *one* the
reson Is because Itt | puttes hiñ vppon the hantches, & so | Easelye, &
añ other Is because hIs [*sic.*] fore | partes goes allwayes before his hinder
| partes, which Is resonable, because | naturall.— Then I vnderst | ande
when hee Goes Vppon a Circle | *Itt Is thus*, Itt Is nott after the olde |
opinion, thatt the Horses hinder | partes Is the Senter, & his fore partes |
the Circumferance x his head to the Piller & so Contrarye | for a Horse Is nott
like a payre off | Compases, hee hath towe ——— |

{ for stradlinge beyonde the lines | parels aperes as iff wayte woulde |
breake Itt, besides tis dangerous to | Incorde hiñ besides the Horible |
falsnes off Itt. & Is oute off his | strength. though forwarde I haue | seene
Itt In Coruetts with mutch | disguste. ——— }

x I meane the lines parels for Iñ terra | Coruettes & all other Ayres In \wedge
terra the fore | Legges beinge pull'de so Close & rounde | to his belly, the[y]
are mutch withiñ | the lines off his hinder legges, butt | yett his hinder
Legges, mutch within the | lines parels, iff hee stode still Vppon the |
grounde, or else hee woulde neuer bee vppon | the hantches. ——— |

[f.186^v uncanceled] 4 | towe Leggs more so hauinge 4: the Senter | Is neuer Iñ
hiñ, butt Iñ the piller, or | añ Imagenarye one; which you muste | alwayes
remember Iff you goe off the | righte hande to haue the Center off the |
same hande & towards the Croope & so | off the Lefte hande, off the
Lefte hande | off you, alwayes shuñinge the Center Iñ | this mañer, for
otherwise his croupe | woulde goe before his heade which Is dange= | rous,
& Vnnaturall, & so false, Nowe you | muste vnderstande to your Imaginary
| Center, or Piller, your Horse makes 4: | seuerall Circles with his 4: Legges
| a boue Itt, * Thatt Is the Narr for Legg | withiñ the Turne makes the

greateste | Circle, the farr forelegg the seconde, | the narr hinder legg withiñ
the turne | the thirde, & the farr hinder legg witho= | ute the turne the
Leaste.— nowe | you muste note thatt terr a terra releue | I meane, which
for the posture off a Horses | Legges are as Iff he Galoped, butt this dife=
| rance, In a Gallope thayre ^{both} off a side & | like an Amble. butt differ in
hauing allwayes thatt side ^{for the hinder legg within} | the Turne fowles before
wich añ Amble hath nott the fore legg off the same | Side, butt Itt alters
In this thatt his fore | Legges are both Vpp att a time, & so Imetates | a
Coruett, beinge once though a very shorte & | quick all frome the Grounde
att one time like | other Ayres, & therefore Terra, terra maye | be verye well
Caled añ Ayre & verye | properlye.— You muste Euer haue a | relation to
a Center & why his fore | Leggs shoulde make those seuerall Circles [^] ^{In}
terra terra Is this. ——— |

{ Iff hee goe terra terra, though to lardge, butt Iff hee goe butt off one piste
| though neuer so narowe ^{iff off the hantches hee make} ⁴ *hee makes butt towe*
Circles for the hinder Legges followe the | fore legges ^{butt withond him} *In the*
In a place thatt Is the Legges off a side,— Butt terra terra 4: Circles | iff
hee Galope, & the Legg withiñ the turne alwayes leades — Exsepte in tow
Cases, butt 3 - butt this is curiosety more then vse. | }

[f.187^r uncanceled] A Horse Leggs beinge all Equall, when hee | bendes his
bodie to the forme off a Circle | as hee muste alwayes doe, the [^] ^{outwarde}
^{forr} Leggs tendinge to | Come ouer the Inmoste fore Legg ^{both} Goinge one
way | muste nedes bee shorter, & so makes the Lesse | Circle, Ande the
same In the hinder Legges | iff his legges weare nott thus hee coulde nott
bende his bodie, butt false |

Ther Is no diferance for the dificultie off a | Horses Goinge, butt to open the
Angle or to | flye the Center more or Less [^] ^{with his croupe or bodie} for Iff hee
goes | In a Less Circle [^] ^{with his rope neer the center} the bente, flexure, or hoape
[sic.] off | his Body, Is mutch more so mutch harder Ande | Grante the same
potion neer the Piller, & as neer | the line frome the Center, you will finde
Itt farr | Easier Vppon the Larger Circumferance because | the Plie off his
bodye or flexare Is nott halfe so | Greate, Ande will Goe as mutch grounde

as iff | Itt weare strayght, Iñ Comparison off the Less circle, | The Grounde
 Is mutch more which make Itt the | Easier, This I saye Is Iñ Case the horse
 Is Iñ the | same potition to the Center, norowe [*sic.*], as Lardge;— | butt Iff
 I open the Angle with his Croupe, & flye | the Center, as mutch as maye
 bee, Ande lett the Circle bee neuer so narrowe, yett shall hee goe mutch
 | Easier, then when the Angle Is Closed, though | Iñ a Lardger Circle, so
 the Ease you see Is Iñ | flienge the Center, as well as Iñ the Lardgenes |
 off the Circle.— The trewe potition off a | Horses Bodye, Vppon a Circle
 Eyther off on piste | which Indeed Is *two* Circles, ^{as} *which* I haue formarly
 | shewed, or Else terra terra, which Is fore Circles | a bouthe the Center as
 I haue metioned [*sic.*] heertofore ——— | Then heer you muste Consider
 what Circle soeuer | hee goes Iñ, hee Is parte off Itt, & frome his for legges
 | to his Hinder, Is the Juste measure for his bente or | flexure as so mutch
 off that sircle & alwaye bende | Iñ—warde ackordinge to thatt Circle, wether
 righte | hande or lefte hande, butt Coñonly the Circles, Then | Itt is nott
 Enough for a horse to turne or | looke with one eye | Iñ. ——— |

[f.187^v] 6 Butt to bende Iñ his sholders ^{vpon} the voltes & as mutch as | posibly
 maye been & Vppon a shorte trot or | walke butt then Itt muste bee the
 Action | off a trot ^{alwayes} flye the center sum thinge or Else hee will bee off
 off the | Hantches, & Iñ this action because his | Legges are moued Cross,
 Itt puttes hiñ | better Vppon the Hantches & beinge a more | moderate
 pace addes to Itt, & Iñ this action | Itt Is cleere Contrarye to all others
 for | heer hee lappes one Legg ouer an other | & the *outwarde* ^{towefowre}
 Legges *still make the* | *greate* ^{make} butt one Circles, Contrarye both to ^{the}
 hinder legges an other | Calopinge & terra, terra.— Butt I | muste still putt
 you Iñ minde thatt | his hindere legges bee withiñ the lines | parelels,
 perpetually, Iñ what—soeuer hee | doth or Else you will neuer haue hiñ | off
 the Hantches;— *For* ^{besides} Vppon voltes iff | his outwarde hinder legg bee
 withoute | the line paralel to his outwarde fore | Legg, his Croupe his oute
 which Is false | Ande iff his Iñwarde hinder Legg to | the Volte, bee withoute
 the line paralel | to his fore legg off the same side | then his hantch or thatt
 parte off his | hantch Is before his Sholders, which | Is horrible false.— for
 Nature Intendes | the fore partes allwayes to Goe firste | so haue I seen
 Ignorante people So spurr | a Horse to keepe his Buttock Iñ withoute |

sustayninge the other hantch, & theye | beinge parelels, & nott straytned,
 because | hee wroughte butt off one side, so thatt | Vppon nesetie, the
 more hee putt thatt | hantch, Iñ, the more hee made the other | hantch
 to mutch Iñ, & so Goe before his | fore-partes, which besides the falsnes
 | makes a Horse Antier & off off the hantches | because his \wedge hinder legges
 are nott thruste vnder | His Belleye, butt stradles because | hee workes all
 off one | Side. ——— |

{ when hee laps one ouer añ other because theye are further frome | the
 Center, butt when hee settes them̄ doune the othere legges are the | Greater
 Circles because theye are by turnes & deale equalye one | with añ other,
 because this action, Is alwayes lowe legges vpp all | a time Cross, & the
 others are Continued all. ——— | }

[f.188^f] 7 One thinge I muste referr to the fowre | Circles aboute the Piller,
 thatt those | Legges thatt are still nexte the Center | muste make the leaste
 Circles, & so | those thatt are further off the greater | & Lardger, for iff
 a Horse Croope bee | Iñ, his hinder legges the Leaste Circles, | I saye still
 thatt which Is nexte the | Center, or Piller, butt you will finde | thatt legg
 which Is nexte the Center, | when hee standes still, Is nott so when̄ | hee
 Galopes, or Goes terra, terra butt | the outwarde, for Else hee Cañ neyther
 | Galope trewe, nor Goe to stande or | giue the righte flexure off his bodie
 | Iñ terra terra, butt vppon the trot | Itt Is Contrary as I noted before,
 because | Iñ thatt action his legges are Croste | Iñ the Galope Itt muste
 followe, ——— | I saye still worke the shoulders whatt | you cañ, to for the
 Croupe Is Easier | made sensible, Iff you worke the | Croupe, you muste
 putt his heade to the | Piller as you did his Croupe, & alwayes | off one side
 off the Piller his heade muste | bee as his Croupe vsed to bee, & for | the
 same resons, for you shall finde Itt | So naturall, iff off the Lefte hande the
 | piller off the same side, & so off the | righte for iff Itt weare Contrarye |
 wether his buttock weare Iñ or oute | Iff the Center weare nott off the same
 | side you woulde finde your selfe redier | to Goe off the Contrarye Hande,
 still to | whatt you Iñtended, Heer Iñ the action | off workinge the Croupe
 his heade to | the Piller you will finde his hinder legges | makes the Greater
 Circles, & his | fore legges the Less \wedge Circle beinge | remoued the |

{ *p* further frome the Center, this action beinge neuer faster theñ a | trot
 or vppon thatt motion, you will finde his legges, the motion beinge | Cross,
the Legges the legges thatt are sett doune still are neerer the Center | &
the others further off, Iff his heade bee to the piller, butt iff the Croupe |
bee to the Piller, the legges thatt are still sett doune are the further off | the
Center — because the action Is Cross & now his fore legges are the greater
 | Circles. ——— | }

[f.188^v] 8: for the puttinge Iñ off the outwarde | Hantch, & the sustayninge off
 Iñw= | arde hantch which *ner* makes | his hinder legges make añ Angle to
 | the Parels, This the Greate mistery | off this worke, since Itt doth all |
 the worke thatt Cañ bee duñ to | make a perfecte trewe & redye | Horse,—
 butt for this I will shewe | you the waye when I sett you a | Horse—backe
 & nott before exsepte | a litle att the *Pill* double pillers | with the Horses
 naked. ——— |

Thee seuerall \wedge ^{naturall} Actions off horses | *thatt are naturall* Iñ all their |
 actions *paces* Iñ whatt Posture their | Legges are, Iñ. ——— |

Firste wee will begiñ with a walke | or rake, Iñ frenshe Caled the Grande |
 paye,— Iñ this Action the Horse Liftes | to Legges alwayes off a side, tow
 off a | Side Iñ the Ayre, & towe vppon the | Grounde. ——— |

Iñ añ Amble the verye same | Action & Posture off his Legges. | butt so
 mutch faster ——— | mutch Itt alters as the towe Legs off a Side butt so |
 Iñ a Gallope *no alteration att All | butt the same motion —* are alwayes so |

Iñ ruñinge the verye same butt | so mutch faster Ande for which | Legg to
 Leade Itt makes no matter | Iñ all these actions, so the hinder | Legg off
 the same side followes | for else Itt Is false |

{ Hee maye bee redier to leade | with one legg then an | other, butt thatt Is
 nott | Itt, for iff hee followe with | the Hinder legg off the same | side Hee Is
 righte, though Itt maye | bee nott so nimble, butt thatt which | theye cale
 the wronge legg before |

Naturall Phelosophye Iñ horse—manship, |

for the trot that varies from all | these, for hee hath alwayes tow legges |
Vpp butt they are cross, & nott off a side | as the reste are.— when they
saye a | horse hath the wronge legg before tis trewe | }

[f.189^r cancelled] 9: Is a shuffle, & thatt Is no other butt | this, when they
shoulde bee both Vpp | off a side, & the other side att the same | time both
off the Grounde, which is | the naturall Galope, & ruñinge | Then doth hee
shifte cross which Is a | Galopinge Trot, or a ruñinge trot, | which Is so
mutch a gaynste the | nature & motion off the Galope & | ruñinge, as Itt
makes hiñ fumble | His Legges redie to Coume doune | exsepte hee lighte
towe off a side | a geñ & theñ hee Is righte This | His Sacred Ma^{tie} taughte
mee, the | firste & I thinke no mañ ^{euere} obserued | Itt butt hiñ selfe butt
Itt ^{is} moste trew | & rational. — Ande I Heer I muste | needes saye for
the Honor off Armes | & Horse-manship, ^{withoute flattery} Thatt his Ma^{tie} Is |
the beste Mañ att Armes thatt Euer | Yett I sawe, Iñ deed none Euer yett
| Came neere hiñ nott his teachers. ——— | Ande I haue seene his Mā^{tie}
Hitt Horses | better att the firste ridinge theñ | theye thatt dressed them,
though | the beste Horse-meñ & so ackounted. |

[uncancelled] Thee seuerall Motions | thatt Horses Goe Iñ by | Arte, which Is
Iñ the | Perfecteste Manege. ——— |

the motions are these. ——— |

[f.189^v uncanceled] 20 The Legg within the turne leades | & the hinder eterra
| releue Is Juste like a Coruett for | all his feete are frome the Grounde
att | one time — & goes pa ta, pa ta, The mañer Vppon | the voltes I haue
Expressed hertofore. |

Terra terra determine. |

Is Juste as a Horse ruñes Iñ a | Carere, ^{withoute time} onlye Vppon the Voltes
the | Legg within the turne alwayes | Leades, & the hinder legg off the |
same side followes like a Galope. | & because hee Goes off the hantches |
Itt Is 4 Circles Le croupe de dans | otherwise butt tow, as I thinke. |

A Coruett, demy Ayre, | Groupadowe, Gapriole. |

Ande all other Ayres, are absolutly | once all the feete frome the Grounde,
 | though the Lower the Lese time | & the hier the Longer, for thatt | Horse
 thatt Goes the Longeste | time goes the hieste Iñ Capriole | & ther Is greate
 reson for Itt. | Iñ all these Ayres, pullinge his legges | Close Vpp to his
 Belley, makes them | mutch Closer then his hinder legges | yett his hinder
 legges muste be within | the Lines parels or else hee Is nott | Vppon the
 Hantches,— ther Is no sutch | Grace Iñ these Ayres As to pull his | Legges
 close Vpp to his Bellye & hange | Iñ the Ayre, & when he | faules to the |
 Grounde quick vpp a gayne like a teñis Bale, to the time off pa, | ta, pa,
 ta, butt euery | horse muste | kepe his one time | butt nott hastned | oute
 of Itt |

The Posture a Horse shoulde | a peer to Goe Iñ when hee goes Iñ anye |
 Ayre. |

A pase & a Lepp or tow or | three pases are butt so manye Coruettes
 betweene the Leape & these make him | goe hier because Itt Is like a ruñinge
 Leape he hath | more Horse then euery time a Leape. | & proper for weake
 Horses & light | of the Hande ——— |

[f.190^f uncanceled] 11: *butt* those thatt are neerer the Center makes | the less
 Circle, & those which are further | off, the Greater, wether his fore partes
 bee | nexte the Center, or his Croupe & off w & | absolutly his fore leggs
 make butt one Circle | & his hinder legges the other iff hee bee vppon |
 the Action off a trot \wedge ^{lapinge} one legg ouer an other which I woulde alwayes
 | haue hiñ because thatt Action puttes him | so well vppon the hantches,
 Ande wether | his Croupe, or fore partes bee nexte the Center | you muste
 alwayes shuñ Itt a litle & haue | the Center continuallye off the same side
 | thatt you make the Turne.— heer you | muste note thatt Iff you shuñ
 nott the | Center butt euen with Itt or off the other | side, thatt his croupe
 goes befor his heade | which Is false, & note also vppon his walke | Iñ thatt
 posture, which Is helped by the | Ignorance off pullinge the Contrary rayne
 | off the Cauatzane oute off the turne makes | Hiñ Goe añ Amble, which Is
 false | doctrine Iñ horsemanshipe because his | Croupe Is before his Heade

& the | whole posture of his Bodie false which | Is a moste abhominable
thinge to see. |

The Posture off a horse vppon | a strayghte Line Iñ a walke, amble | or
trott, or anye other Ayre. |

Vppon a walke tow legges off a side, Vppon | añ Amble the Like, vppon a
Trott Cross & | Parels to the same side, butt Iff he \wedge & putt Vppon | the
hantches off anye off these, theye are nott | tow lines, butt 4: because his
hinder Legges | are within his fore Legges & nott then parels, | though
strayghte forwar [*sic.*],. ——— |

The posture Vppon | his turnes thus. ——— |

Iff hee Galope off one Piste, In a Circle lett the hoope off | his Bodie bee neuer
so mutch Grantinge his | Hinder Legges, to bee withiñ his | fore legges which
muste bee |

[f.190^v uncanceled] 11: or else hee will neuer bee vppon the Hantches | & thus
Itt Is fore Circles Vppon anye action thatt | the Horse cañ make — — —
Le croupe de dans sauinge vppon a trott x The posture off |

{^x for thats butt | tow Circles |}

A Horse Bodie Is Vppon his turnes to bowe | his Bodie ackordinge to the
Circle like a | Hoope to Buntch outwarde, & hollowe within *his outwarde partes*
Inwarde & | *his In warde partes outwarde* as thus | to buntch oute his bodie
frome the turne, | his outwarde shoulder to coume Iñ as | mutch as Cañ bee,
& His Inwarde Shoulder | kepte Back, his outwarde hantch to Coume | Iñ as
mutch as Cañ bee & his Inwarde hinder | Legg kepte back, his Buttock to
buntch a litle | like his bodie, His necke & heade to looke Into | the turne, &
to turne so mutch as to looke | with both Eyes Iñ fienge the senter a | litle
with his hinder legges within the | Lines Parels thruste Vnder his Bellye,
| You will finde this *mos* the quintesence | Iñ makinge Horses, to keepe him
oute *or* | forpartes or hindere partes ackordinge to | ocation I will shewe
you heerafter moste | Easelye. ——— |

Betwene the Pillers | Horse naked. ——— |

Heer you muste Vnderstande thatt My | methode off workinge Horses
 betwene | the Pillers Is with thatt Hudge | aduantage, as worke them
 between | the Pillers for the voltes eyther off | the righte Hande, or the
 Lefte, eyther | for the Sholders or the Croope, | Ande Itt Is duñ by this
 methode | firste I take the Longe rope, & | for which hande I oulde worke |
 Hiñ for the Sholders, as for | Example Iff I woulde worke | his sholders for
 the righte |

[f.191^r uncanceled] La Broue. ——— |

Il fauste auoir de Jugement, Car le chastiment | ne serue^{nt} qentans, quilz
 sont bien Juges & dile= | gemente efectues — pour alegrir vn | Cheuall de
 trott, & de Galop, & pour rendre le | boushe agses de toutt age pour finir
 Lexercise | deuant le Lasetude, ni trope soutenir sur le | Cauesson ni Sur
 la bride.— Il ne faus Jamayes | Vser de forse qes premierement vous Aves
 essies | toute le Voyes de dousur.— A younge horse oute | off Ignorance
 makes faltes therfore nott to | be beaten Vntill he knowes.— Ande iff a
 horse | haue been *as* ^{to} mutch spured, you muste vse as | mutch Jentlenes as
 with a Colte to recouer | hiñ. Ande greate spurrs, & to be a greate | spurrer
 spoyles all for theye are Contrarie | to a good scoole, & younge horses.—
 if theye be | sensible startinge, & restie flegmatick or | melencolye, spurrs
 will frichte them, to make | them fearfull, & by Consequente make them |
 more restie then they weare.— or make them | so Iff theye weare nott.— or
 make them | double harted. Ande iff theye be sanguin | & Collerike Itt will
 putt them Into dispayer | & All desperate Courses.— as to piss for | anger
 or feare, to bite att your legges. | to ruñ agaynste wales, to lie doune, to |
 Coume ouer with you & Indeed what nott | to spoyle hiñ selfe & you. iff
 a horse haue | been spoyled with to mutch spuringe you | muste lett hiñ
 reste, till he hath recouered | his strength, & forgott his malice, & iff he
 be | nott helthfull you will loose your labor | vntill he be well, therfore you
 muste purge | hiñ & Cuer hiñ firste & then ride | hiñ Agayne. ——— |

[f.191^v uncanceled] { W New= | Castle | }

2 I recomende still Jentlenes, iff Corections | with huge Judgemente, &
 selduñ, & nott | malitiuslye when you doe Itt, for assure your | selfe Is

is [*sic.*] a greate secrett to please horses | & the nexte waye I knowe Is
to \wedge ^{be} pleased your | selfe, for Indeed all Horseman shoulde neuer | bee
Angerie, butt punishe withoute passion, | like a kinde off God-heade to
beastes. ——— | butt assure your selfe as you are pleased so | Is the Horse,
Philosophycalye howe this | Coumes I knowe nott, butt \wedge ^{thus} Itt is like one
| bodie this, & as greate a truth as the | Sentaures was a fictioñ.— butt thus
| mutch wee see the Colerick mañ hath manye | enemies, when the Jentle
hath none, Ande | one muste forgiue suñ times, for to mutch | subiectiōn
is like Sañum Jus. &. Ande wee | see iff \wedge ^{you be} *I am* merie & pleased
 \wedge ^{you are the} *I am* liklyer | to please añ other, & when ^{you wee} are both |
pleased ^{you wee} are nott liklye to faule oute. ——— | the Contrarie iff \wedge
^{you be} *I am* Colerike ^{your} *m* selfe 20 | to one \wedge ^{you} *I* shall offende An other,
Ande \wedge ^{then} ther | Is a quarell & Cuffinge & then Itt goes | to bloudd thats
the spures, then tis selduñ | or neuer taken vpp, butt prosedes to Infe= |
nite malitiusnes, & nott so mutch then == | for the manege ^{to Instructe} as
to be reuenged one | off añ other which Is a fine thinge when | Itt Coumes
to thatt for the Mañ to be the | Worste beaste off the towe, & howe shoulde
| this wiñ any thinge when theye are both | so malitius one agaynste the
other for that | ruñes to nothings butt opotion, Ande iff one | doe giue
the spurres Itt muste be withoute all | Pation or Anger, & make mutch off
hiñ after | for Itt is rather to waken hiñ then to Anger | hiñ, for iff one
shoulde beate a boye | before he dances, & be |

{ Angerie with hiñ, sertenlye he woulde danse with no Courage, & | I neuer
yett sawe anye thinge doe anye thinge eyther well or Coumleye | thatt was
forsed, therefore Jentle \wedge ^{im} all. *I haue* euen to Sittinge easelye vppon |
a Horse, for the other ^{sittingetostronge} displeases hiñ & Confoundes weake
horses as mutch | as the Spurres, suñ malitius horses ther maye be, & then
more rigor | maye be vsed Inñ thatt Case, butt still with huge Judgemente
butt In good fayth I | neuer sawe rigor gett mutch, butt spoyle mutch I
haue seene.— Ande surly |

[f.192^f uncanceled] 3 Theye that stande mutch vppon forse | haue butt litle
witt; for wee see brayne | & crafte ouer Coumes more then forse | Else
howe shoulde a litle Cornishe mañ | ouer throwe the great Porter, or sesar |

Pompe, *though Iñ hosti [sic.]* Itt is vnderstandinge | humors, & aduantages
 Iñ all thinges that | preuayle with witt & Judgemente with | a litle forse,
 Else howe shoulde a Crane, or | litle Puleye doe as *as* mutch as manye | meñ
 & farr Easeier — Ande assure your | selfe Horses as theye are Anemales haue
 | both Pation & Vnderstandinge, therefore | one muste worke Vppon their
 brayne, & | nott make them made & putt them oute | off their Braynes with
 beatinge — for | iff a Tutor shoulde beate a boye vntill he | reade, before
 he knowes his letters I thinke | hee woulde soone kill hiñ [^] before hee Instruct
 him & so *woulde* you | your horse, — & howe Vnresonable this Is | Judge
 since you scorne so mutch a beaste | Iñ Comparison off a mañ for reson,
 & yett | by your actions, Judge hiñ farr more | knoinge & Vnderstandinge
 then mañ | kinde for, a boye Goes longe to scoole | before he Goes to the
 Vneuersetie, & | after to the Ins a Courte, then Trauell | see, the warr, & be
 a Courtier, before | wee Ackounte hiñ a readie mañ, | For Vnderstandinge
 sake Grante a | beaste no aduantages off vss iff you | doe you shall be the
 beste & he the | mañ, And in Good fayth then I woulde | haue the Horse
 ride the Ass, & suñ= | times he doth by *his* the mans | folleye. ——— |

Itt Is good to back horses att thre iff theye haue beene made restie you
 aughte to haue | as longe a time to recouer hiñ as the makinge a Colte, &
 more, & farr more patience.— Butt | iff a Horse doe Itt off puer malice &
 Ill nature, he aughte to [^] be soundly punished butt nott to | Longe & rather
 with the shambreier nerue, butt the beste Is a radd, for the spurres makes |
 a Horse more restie. butt then faule to your Courtshipes a gayne with hiñ.
 for hope off | rewarde & feare of punishmente Gouvernes Vse all, both Heer
 & for the nexte. Ande | remember thatt punishmente neuer bringes that
 fasiletie Iñ the manege thatt rewardes | & flateries doth. |

[f.192^v] 4 Allwayes iff you Cañ lett hiñ render & yelde | to you with Jentlenes,
 Ande iff He refuse to | turne off one hande turne hiñ off the other | to
 please hiñ, & trie a gayne his harder hande | Ande vppon a walke Is the
 beste Lerninge off | a Horse, because Itt fortiefies his Memorie beinge | the
 Gentlieste & sloeste pase, he hath time | to obserue more, Ande Is Iñ less
 fouge & Coller | & so the apter & Easier to Lerne & obaye | beinge nott
 displeased since this action Is | nott violente.— The shoulders withiñ & |

the Croupe oute will Cuer the disease off | Entier for Itt Is Juste Contrarie.
 To mutch | Constraynte to a Dull Horse makes hiṁ a stone | & a Block, & to
 a Collick starke madd. I thinke | ones Armes maye helpe more properlie
 then | the single piller, yett thatt is a question with me. In a worde the
 beste meanes Iñ this arte | are those thatt are Leaste Contrarie to the |
 nature off the Horse. They that vse one | kinde off methode with all kinde
 off Horses | will be mutch diseaued, espetialye iff Itt be | forse for thatt Is
 a sure waye to spoyle mutch | butt to rectefie Litle.— Itt is beste to | a
 propriate *iff* euerie horse to what he Is fitteste | for ther Is nott a Jade Iñ
 the worlde so ordererd | for iff he be nott fitt for one kinde of manege | he
 Is for añ other, or Else for ruñinge, huntinge | Carte, Carier or mill. Ande
 though I aṁ | Confidente all Horses maye be made manege | so so, or be
 made doe suṁthinge or other, yett | one muste nott take Itt for a disgrace
 iff *nott* | all proue nott Exselente for all thatt goes to | the vniuerseties
 proue nott greate Docters | nor Iñ no Calinge or are then thinke nott |
 horses more Capable Ande sure Itt restes | mutch Iñ the Horse—mañ to
 chuse none butt | sutch as Is liklieste to proue rare, & worthye | both off
 his Labor & his credit | for a Cowe iff she shoulde |

{ be taughte to manege woulde still be butt a Cowe, Ande surlye all | Horses
 muste take their one Ayres, what Nature hath moste apted | them to, for a
 Horse—Mañ Is nott to make Nature, butt to sett Nature | Iñ order. to hide
 the eye withen the turne both hinders hiṁ off turninge to faste | & if he
 bringe nott ouer his shoulders faste enough Itt helpe thatt | which seeme
 Contradictories, butt Experiance findes the Effectes | thus. ——— | }

[f.193^r] 5 For stopinge Is an exselente thinge, for Itt assures | the posture off the
 heade, makes hiṁ lighte off the | Hande, & puttes hiṁ vppon the Hantches,
 butt Itt | muste be duñ when he leaste thinke off Itt | or Else Itt will make
 hiṁ retenu, & restie Iñ | the Ende, which Is off all thinges to be shuñed |
 since a freduṁ & resolution with obedience | Is the thinge wee muste still
 Ayme att, the | Horse thatt Is racoursie & shorte frome the | nose to the
 Croupe, Is beste for the manege |

{ So he be releue | deuante | }

since he Is easileste putt vppon the Hantches, | & so to stopp, butt añ Ill
mouth, & charged | mutch with fleshe off his fore partes, will | hinder hiñ
frome stopinge as mutch as a | longe horse, & weake Iñ his hinder partes
naye | a strange backed horse is with more difecul= | tis Suñtimes putt
vppon the Hantches iff | he doe vppon the sholders naturalye, then the |
weaker ther are many Considerations to | be had Iñ this Action off the stopp,
besides the | Counterpoyse off the Bodie, Ande neuer stopp | sudenlye att
once butt with towe or thre | litle falcadoes, both because Itt giues the |
better Grace both to the mañ & the horse | besides Itt pintches hiñ less
for manye | horses are spoyled, Iff nott lamesd, weakned | for euer, with to
Indiscrete stopinge | espetialye when theye are younge. | for Colerick horses
you muste pardon them manye | faltes, & ^ n^{ott} offende them att all eyther
by exercise | corection, or anye furneture theye haue aboute | them, & the
Jentler & sloer pase you vse the | better to quiett them still the more, for
| Colerike horses & Impatiente theye feare so | mutch stopinge As they fall
Into a 1000 vises | & becume desperate iff you offer that, so that | you had
better worke them Vppon the | manege withoute thatt for a | whyle, for
stopinge is a | great Constraynte & | obedience |

[f.193^v] 6 I woulde haue a mañ vse extreame patience In | all he doth, & iff thatt
doe nott worke the desiered | effectes, be discouraged for all horses will nott
| be made good Horses, no more then all meñ | to be made good Meñ, for
all thatt goe to the | vneuerseties, proue nott Docters, nor Scollers. | The
false raynes rather helps the falsnes off | the mouth both off the barres &
Curbe so | Itt be handled discretlye then otherwise. ——— | I comende the
trott to setle the horse heade | make hiñ lighte off the hande ferme his |
hantches, butt iff he be to lighte off the | hande Itt muste be a resolute trot, |
iff | he be to heuie off the hande, a shorter | trot & vppon the hantches,
for this action | off the trot depende moste thinges that | belonge to the
manege.— those horses | that leanes to mutch of the bridle, are | Comonlye
dull & fleshye, & those thatt | pull Are quick & Impatiente, the trot as
| I sayde before & the peaseable Galope | will Corecte both beinge aptlye
aplied. | one shoulde nott stopp his horse before he | turne hiñ exsepte
he be abandone harde off the | hande & heuie off the sholders, & to putt
with | a litle faynte befor you turne hiñ off the | Contrarie side serues well

to assure his hantch | butt Itt falsefies the demie volte so mutch | as you
 muste quitt the wall, or else discra= | sfullye & oute off proportion Coume
 to Itt | a gayne & Itt is so aparente your Error as | all the beholders thatt
 are nott blinde will | Condemne you.— The litle Galope doth firme | the
 mouth verie mutch if Itt be weake | & to sensible, & iff a horse pull the
 hande beinge | to violente & aprehensiuē, the Galope will temper | hiṁ &
 Iñ time bringe hiṁ frome those | Intemperate violente aprehentions. |

[f.194^f] 7 Continewe still patience, for for the moste parte | horses makes faltes
 eyther oute off Ignorance | for else the rider workes them for the moste |
 parte vppon Imposebilities.— The stopp makes | him light off the hande
 firmes his heade Iñ a good | place & orders all his bodie, butt you muste
 knowe | the principall thinge Is to putt hiṁ vppon the | hantches, which
 is the greate worke for | no horse Is lighte off the hande or Indeed | fitt for
 anye thinge vntill he be redused | to thatt, butt by the waye suṁ weake,
 Or | Impatiente horses will neuer giue you leaue | to putt them by the
 ordinarie meanes att | firste butt by litle & litle . — to vse hiṁ to | mutch
 Vppon the demie voltes will make hiṁ | to hastie & falsefie them, therefore
 ^ the beste Is to | make whole turnes att the ende off them, that | he waye
 wayte of with obedience to your Coṁandes | & nott goe by routine.— to
 pasefie a Colerick horse | vppon the pasades, Itt weare good to vse the
 | litle Galope, & for the demie volte doe Itt | Vppon the trot withoute
 stopinge or Staienge | a volte or towe, & so a waye agayne, vppon | sutch
 an Action as you thinke moste fitt. | I woulde make the Pasadoes, Longer
 or shorter | ackordinge as he Is to lighte off the hande or to | harde *thatt* &
 still to lett hiṁ wayte vppon my | hande or heele, & nott to goe by rote,
 & eyther | Vppon a trot or le petite Galope for ther Is | nothinge more
 Contrarie to the Pasadoes, or | Justnes or Exselenceye off the Manege then
 | to Greate fouge or furie,. Therefore after those | Lessons, I woulde alwayes
 temper & quiett my | Horse with the litle Galope, or trot espetialy | iff
 he be Impatiente, Iff he be retenu I | woulde Ende them vppon a liuelye
 & furieus | Course.— manye times Caprioles giues an apuie to him thatt
 hath litle or none. ——— | for Coruetts iff he be harde off the Hande you
 muste | stop hiṁ before you rayse hiṁ, naye suṁtimes | pull hiṁ back to

Contrary to one that hath nott an | apuie, for this setles hiṁ more, | vppon
the hantches. |

[f.194^v] 8 Coruettes & Pesates, settles a horse heade | puttes hiṁ Vppon the
hantches rayes hiṁ | before, makes hiṁ lighte off the hande | puttes hiṁ
Into the beste Action which | is together to shorten hiṁ, & giues | hiṁ
patience yett by your leaue suṁ | are so Impatiente as they will neuer
| Goe Iṁ thatt Ayre,— Itt helps a | horse that Is lowe before & that |
naturalye stoppes Vppon the sholders | on muste neuer Constrayne a horse
to | anye thinge for thatt will vterlye | spoyle hiṁ.— Coruetts makes a Horse
| thatt Is retenu or restie mutch more | because Itt Is off Itt selfe that waye,
butt | Contrarie they shoulde be determind | with quick lessons [^] ^{to} putt
oute those Fanceies | oute off their heade.— A Horse thatt | Is extream full
off fouge, sensible & | determine Is fitter for the feilde In | Campanies, then
Coruettes or leapes. ——— | for his Extreame Impatiences & Aprehentions
| takes a waye his memoreie, & so his obedience | Iṁ Exersisinge horses you
muste alwayes — | ende vppon a walke or trot or litle Galope | to giue
hiṁ more Joye & libertie Iṁ his | Lessons, for otherwise he will stick still
| wher you stopp hiṁ, & so becouṁe dull | or restie, & nott wayte your
hande [^] & ^{hee} ^{le} butt | Coustuṁ.— to change places giues a | Horse greate
Contentmente & Courage | to turne to often & to faste maye Indanger |
the horses brayne iff he haue to weake a one | litle & [^] ^{of} ^a midle stature Is
the beste for — | Horse-men for to tale their helps & actions | are to farr
off. ——— |

[f.195^r] 9 The less you keepe a methode Iṁ the place | though a methode Still
Iṁ the Actions off | obedience the better for so a horse still | waytes your
Comādes, & nott by rote or | knowinge the place which Indeed Is rule
| withoute rule Coruettes sertenly doth assure | & lighten the heade off a
horse that Is charged | with flesh, butt Caprioles doth nott so. ——— | for
Coruettes Is made all Vppon the hantches | butt leapes makes hiṁ harder
off the hande | for Itt Is made all Vppon the fore parte | A Leapinge horse
aughte to be patiente for | thatt Ayre else will quicklye putt hiṁ Iṁ | Coller
& disorder.— Ther Is nothinge more | Contrarie to Caprioles, or disorders
or resties a | horse sooner then to Constrayne hiṁ when he | Is wearie, &

oute off breath, & his Courage taken | off & his forses disunited.— for a horse to lighte off the hande Is nott fitt or proper for anye | Ayres thatt releue iff he made fitt you muste | trotte hiṁ & Galope hiṁ firste to giue hiṁ an | apuie. ——— |

The Seconde booke A Collick & Impatiente horse you maye trotte
for strayghte a yeare, & Itt will doe hiṁ no Good, Butt
Lessons. the Litle Galope will Cueur hiṁ iff he be

Curable.— Ther is nothings better for an Impatiente horse, then patience & Jentle | lessons Vppon a Jentle pace, Ande for | horses that retayne his forses with | all the viuasetie thatt Cañ be yett | with discretion. La browe sayes | the Calope [*sic.*] Is Contrarie to the trotte for | he muste aduance the Legg still within | the turne,— Iff a horse be disposed off him | selfe to Leape you had better Imploye his forses | thatt waye, then with chastismentes to | Corecte hiṁ, for one Is naturall the other | violence & a gaynste nature. |

[f.195^v] 10 The wall Is good for a horse thats heuie | off the hande for Itt puttes hiṁ vppon the | hanches, butt iff he be retenue Itt addes to | his vices & for a horse that Is desperate & | madd, Itt addes to his vise, beinge to greate | a Constraynte for hiṁ — to finishe vppon | an Easeye ^Λ or litle Galope & sumtimes to make Iñ | steade off the demie voltes, off one piste | will refreshe the horse wonderfullye | & keepe hiṁ more Alegre & yett Iñ | obedience.— I Coṁende verie much he | that cañ giue a Corection Iñ good time butt | I honor & admier hiṁ, thatt he Cañ preuente | a falte that he need nott Corecte & he Is | worthye off prayse thatt Cañ Juditiuslye | forgiue a falte.— iff a horse be heuie off | the hande his terra terra muste be shorter | & more off the hanches, & if to lighte off | the hande Contrarie.— Impatiente horses | are great Enemies to strayghte Lessons, yett | those de Quarto en quarto, are good for Impati- | ente horses for they giue them more libertie, | & keepes them nott so subiecte Vnder the | Aughtoretie.— Vppon the Lessons off quarters | you maye vse for a horse that Is to harde | off the hande In pullinge hiṁ back Vppon | Euerie line before you make the quarter | butt then you muste take heede Itt doe nott | make hiṁ restiue or Entier. The quarters | are the beste lessons Iñ the worlde eyther

| to teatch horses that are nott dosible or | else to rectefie those that haue
beene | debaushed & oute off Scoole. The oualls are | dayntie Lessons for
Impatiente horses & | that wante memorie, theye are so | Easeie & the
leaste Constraynte. ——— | all Ayres moste growe oute of the Alegres |
off the Harte as oute off obedience. |

[f.196^r] The square figures to worke a horse | bias, Is good to putt In scoole a
debaushed | Horse iff Itt be duñ by a discrete | master.— The foure quarters
& | the lines to be made bias Is good to | reduce a horse In Ayres, or Else
to begiñ | to make hiñ so when he Is fitt for Itt | & hath paste his other
Lessons. ——— |

Notes oute off ^{the} Etalien | & frenshe | Waye. |

Neuer to Galope your Horse Vntill he be | degourdie, Loosend & made easie
^{the} firste by the | trot Vppon euerie quarter off the | volte you shoulde helpe
hiñ with the | hande — The trot hath the propertie to | vntie & loosen the
sinne horse & the horse | off Greate force, to rayse the heuie & | abandoned,
& to putt In breath the slack | & Idle horse, so also the litle Galope | hath
the vertewe to assure & firme the | mouth off hiñ that hath a weake one |
& to sensible off the horse—man giues Itt | hiñ farge & with discretion iff
hee | be Impatiente & madd with Coller & | lisentiuslye In flighte for *Itt*
that sweet | & softe Galope pleases hiñ & takes | a waye all feare off rigur
& hurte | & breiflye doth abate the forses off a horse | that hath to mutch
back & strength | & woulde nott be easie vppon his Ayre before | thatt
weare taken off.— to Gallope | Countre mounte doth make a horse ——— |
haue a firme a pewie. ——— |

[f.196^v] [blank]

[f.197^r cancelled] The oblike line Eyther with the Cauatzane or the Bitt a lone
| Is the busines,— for iff the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne bee tied | to the
Poñell, thatt makes the Inwarde cheeke off the Bitt oblike | frome the
Turne, which Is the busines so Exselente Is the Cauatzane | my waye,—
Butt to worke the Horse onely with the Bitt, the | Inwarde Rayne muste bee
pulde Cross his neck, your knuckles | towards his neck, & this oblike line

pulls the Inwarde | cheek to you oblike, preses hiṁ oñ the barrs & Curbe
oñ the | Inside which Is righte this oblike line your hande lowe Is | for le
petit Gallope his croupe Iñ & for Terre a Terre the horse | legges preste oñ
the oute Side you & the Horse oblike which | Is bias, — *The In* & keepes
back his outwarde Sholder proper | for Terre a Terre,— the Inwarde Rayne
pulde Crose his neck | hie to your outwarde Sholder, presses the Horse on
the | Inside off th Turne & bringes Iñ his outwarde Sholder | the poyse
beinge oñ the Inside & therefore proper for paseger | his Croupe Iñ to bee
att libertie with oute the Turne | the same thinge also Is good for trottinge
or Gallopinge | large duñ piste or narowe duñ piste,— so Exselente Is |
this oblike line for all thinges Eyther with the | Cauatzane or onlye with
the Bitt,— This oblike line | with keepinge his Inwarde hinder legg still
oute Iñ | all thinges, These two are the quintesence off the | manege, with
Trottinge, stoppinge, le petit Gallope | Goinge back, & Raisinge hiṁ In
Pesates,— Vnder | a Greate master, that knowes wheñ & howe to aplye |
all these properlye, & Vppoñ seuerall ocations as theye | aughte to bee,— or
otherwise neyther these nor anye | thinge Else cañ dress a Horse disorderlye
applied, | or Iñ an Ignorante mans handes, & Heeles. |

When you worke with the outwarde Rayne off the Bridle | the outwarde
cheeke Is pulde to you, & therefore the mouth | off the Bitt goes oute & the
Horse Is preste oñ the oute side off | the Barrs & Curbe for still the mouth
goes contrarye to the | Cheekes, this for the Righte hande, & the Horse
lookes oute | off the Turne — butt you muste consider Itt cañ nott bee |
otherwise,— because hee Is nowe properlye wraughte for the lefte | hande
& you will make hiṁ goe oñ the Righte hande with the | same helpes which
are false & therefore hee muste looke oute | off the Turne because hee goes
oñ the Righte hande, for did | hee goe oñ the lefte hande with these helpes
hee woulde | both looke Iñ to the Turne, & preste oñ the Inside both off
his | barrs & Curbe, butt hauinge the same helpes goinge oñ the | Righte
hande, hee muste bee preste on the same Side both barrs | & Curbe, &
looke oute off the Turne because hee goes oñ the Righte | hande, for did hee
goe oñ the lefte hande the Helpes are | Righte & looke In to the Turne —
for the lefte hande the | outwarde Rayne workes the same Effects, though
tis wronge | with this the Horse bringes Iñ his outwarde Sholder, | because

his legges are preste oñ the Inside off the Turne | To pull the Inwarde Rayne
 frome his neck, presses the | Horse oñ the oute side barrs & Curbe because
 the cheekes | goes In to the Turne & so the mouth of the bitt oute | off
 the Turne,— for the righte hande This,— The same Is | for the lefte hande
 Iñ all thinges,- Therefore iff you woulde | goe on the Righte ^{hande} pull
 the outwarde Rayne frome his | neck, & iff you goe oñ the lefte hande pull
 the outwarde | Rayne frome his neck, & then hee will bee preste oñ the |
 Inside barrs, & Curbe — butt I doubtte this waye will staye | his sholders
 to much, & make them both stiff,— Therefore ther | Is no trewe waye, butt
 the Inwarde Raynes Cross his neck | your knuckles towarde his neck the
 oblike line the | hande lowe for Terre a Terre to kepe oute his outwarde
 sholder | his leggs preste oñ the oute side off the Turne — Ande for paseger
 | the hande hye to the outwarde sholder, to bringe Iñ the Horses | outwarde
 Sholder & his legges to bee preste withiñ the Turne | that his outwarde
 legges maye lapp ouer his Inwarde legges thus | the Horse lookes Into the
 Turne & Is righte this for Trottinge & | Galopinge duñ piste also, this Is
 the truth & quintesence | for workinge all Horses. ——— |

[End of last page of PwV21. The text continues on the first pages of the book]

[The following pages, although occurring at the beginning of PwV21, follow
 after f.197^v]

[f.-1^v cancelled. This is the paper pasted on to binding on 1st opening of book.
 The hand is still cramped.] I tolde you that whe=n the Horses sholders
 Coumes nott Iñ | Enough, that then you shoulde with the Raynes seperated
 Iñ | both handes, pull the Iñwarde Rayne, with your Inwarde | hande cross
 his neck the knuckles towardes his neck, & putt | your hande forwarder,
 this Dresses the Horse more, butt Itt | makes hiñ apte to stopp because
 Itt preses the Horse more | *the mo* therefore the hande more to you, which
 Is more oblike | will helpe him better because Itt doth nott press hiñ so
 much, | & yett bendes hiñ Enough, — & iff his sholders Coumes nott | Iñ
 Enough, helpe hiñ with the outwarde Rayne once | or twise & no more,
 & this Is the beste waye & doe nott | putt Iñ his croupe to much, butt
 lett the Horse goe bias & | thatt will bringe Iñ his Sholders to; — & putt

hiṁ more | oñ the Hanches,— This Is for paseger,- This way bendinge | & Suplinge his sholders so much, & pressinge his Croupe | moderatlye att the same time, crushes hiṁ so together | & putts hiṁ vppoñ the Hanches, & makes hiṁ so sensible | to the Hande & heele, & his bodye & legges to goe so righte | as iff hee weare In a frame, & no waye like Itt for Paseger. |

The Raynes seperated Iñ both your Handes, the Inwarde | Rayne pulde cross his neck, the knuckles towards his | neck the hande lowe, butt iff hee doth nott bende his neck | Enough then you muste pull Itt to your outwarde sholder | your knuckles still towards his neck, for that will | bende his neck & heade Extreamleye Iñ the Righte | place as Itt Shoulde bee, & make hiṁ looke In to the Turne | why puttinge your hande hye to your outwarde sholder | bendes hiṁ so much the Resoñ Is because your hande Is | remoued so much more Cross his neck as makes hiṁ | bende so much more Iñ to the Turne, — This Is the beste | & treweste helpe Iñ the worlde, both for terre a Terre | & paseger,— so your bodie bee oblike as I haue tolde you | before,— Concaue oñ the oute side for Terre a Terre, & | Concaue on the Inside for Paseger Butt that as ocatioñ | serues, iff hee bringe nott his sholders Iñ Enough, | then Concaue oñ the Iñside, Iff hee bringe nott his Croupe | Iñ Enough, then Concaue oñ the oute side, butt I muste | tell you thatt iff you putt Iñ his Croupe to much his | Sholders doth nott bende Enough, therefore hee muste | goe bias,— all this vppoñ paseger for in Terre a Terre | the Horse muste alwayes bee preste on the oute side | & your bodye Concaue oñ the oute side, & so the Horse | will bee,— pullinge the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne | or Inwarde Rayne off the bridle as I haue tolde you | Is the moste trewe, & Exselente thinge Iñ the worlde | to worke all mañer off Horses what soeuer In all | thinges, for Itt bendes his heade & neck righte as Itt | shoulde bee, makes hiṁ looke Iñ to the turne, Inlarges | hiṁ before to Imbrase the Turne the better, straytens | & narowes hiṁ behinde which makes him oñ | the Hanches,— presses hiṁ Iñ Terre a Terre oñ the | oute side to make his legges free withiñ the turne | to leade, which Is righte, & thus pullinge the | Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne or Inwarde Bridle | Rayne kepes back his outwarde Sholder, & bringes | Iñ his Inwarde sholder which Is proper for | Terre a Terre, & iff hee bende thus as hee sholde | doe hee alwayes goes bias as hee aughte to doe | & his forr

legg, & halfe his sholder withiñ the | Turne before his Inwarde hinder legg
& halfe | his croupe, this waye Is so naturall so Easeye & so | Trewe, &
so sweet as Itt makes all Horses goe with | the greateste freduñ, speritt,
strength, & Contentmente | In the worlde withoute anye forse att all or |
Constraynte & thaye take such pleasure & Joye In Itt | because Itt Is truth,
& truth Is alwayes Easey & | Naturall ——— |

[f.1^r uncanceled] This Is to followe the laste thinge In the Booke | a boute
workinge with the Cauatzane & the Bridle, | Ande firste for workinge with
the Cauatzane. | This Is for the Right hande. |

[cancelled] For the Cauatzane my waye Itt Is so Exselente as Instrumente, |
for the dressinge off all Horses what soeuer, as ther Is | no dressinge anye
Horse withoute Itt. ——— |

The Cauatzane I tolde you was Vppoñ his nose & workes | onlye ther
withoute barrs Or Curbe & Is much hier theñ | the bitt which workes vppoñ
the barrs, & curbe & the | Branches much lower then those two places, &
yett | Gouvernes those two places,— well then firste for the | Cauatzane that
workes onlye vppoñ his nose. ——— |

Iff you pull Itt on the Inside off the Turne frome his neck | Itt bringes In his
outwarde sholder & Is preste withiñ | the Turne, which Is fitt for Paseger,
trottinge & | Gallopinge duñ piste, large or narowe, — Iff you | pull the
Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne cross his neck which | Is the oblike line iff your
poyse bee oñ the Inside the | Horse Is so to & preste oñ the Inside off the
Turne | & Is fitt for Passeger & as I tolde you before,— Butt | iff you pull
the Inwarde Cauatzane ^{rayne} Cross his neck | the oblike line & the poyse
oñ the oute side then the | Horse Is preste withoute the Turne & this Is fitt
| for Terre a Terre,— Butt In all these workinges with | the Cauatzane, you
worke still vppon his nose on the | Inside, & Itt makes him still looke In to
the Turne & | giues hiñ the righte bente as Itt shoulde bee still | to looke In
to the Turne because Itt Is vppoñ his nose | so Exselente Is the Cauatzane
— & the diference off | workinge with Itt In seuerall wayes, & for seuerall
thinges, | *Is onlye the poyse on the Inside or oute side* | Butt nowe for to
worke onlye with the Bitt thatt | Is añ other Ingiñ,— for iff you pull the

Inwarde | Rayne Iñ to the turne, the Horse Is preste oñ the oute side, both
off the oute side *both* off his barrs & | Curbe & lookes oute off the turne
which hee muste needes doe — & iff you helpe with the outwarde | Rayne
off the Bridle, then the Horse Is preste | oñ the oute side off the barrs &
Curbe & muste | looke oute off the Turne,— iff you pull the outwarde |
Raynes frome his neck, tis trewe hee Is preste withiñ | the Turne,

{This Is for | the Right Hande |}

both barrs & Curbe, & lookes Into | The Turne, butt yett Itt Is false,
because you cañ nott | pull the outwarde Rayne butt you putt Iñ your |
Righte Sholder, & thatt putts oute the Horses sholders, | so consequentye
putts Iñ his Croupe before his | sholders which Is abhominable false besides
| you sitt all a wrie frome the Turne that the Horse | goes Iñ which Is as
false,— so you see what Is | good for the liuer, Is Ill for the Stomack;—
Butt nowe to haue a Cordiall mediciñ for both | thatt will bee a perfecte
quCuer, Theñ, |

Thus |

With the Bitt to worke alone, the Inwarde Rayne | pulde Cross his neck,
eyther hye to your outwarde | Sholder, or lower so Itt bee this oblike line;
——— | Itt fitts all kinde off workinge with the Bitt, so the poyse bee | oñ
the Inside, theñ the Horse Is preste oñ the Inside & att | libertye with oute
the Turne to lapp ouer his Inwarde | legges, which Is for paseger his Croupe
Iñ or for Gallopinge | duñ piste large or narowe because still his outwarde
| Sholder Is braughte Iñ, & prste [*sic.*] oñ the Inside which | Is proper for
these,— butt nowe |

[f.1^v cancelled] This oblike line cross his neck hye to your outwarde | Sholder, or
lower iff your poyse bee oñ the oute side | off the Turne, theñ the Horse Is
preste oñ the outeside | & his legges att libertye withiñ the Turne to leade
| & this ^{is} proper for Terre a Terre, & demye Voltaes for | Terre a Terre,
— The Resons off all I haue tolde you Iñ | the Chapter off terre, a Terre *so*
you see heer the poyse | doth the busines with the Inwarde Rayne oblike |
the Horse lookes Into the Turne with all these, as | hee shoulde doe, which

hee doth nott doe with anye | off the reste which Is miraculous,— so you
see you | Cañ hardlye make a falte with the Cauatzane, & | verye harde to
doe anye thinge with the Bridle | Raynes, butt to make faltes so dificulte Is
the bitt | to worke with thatt withoute the Cauatzane | For Terre a Terre
your Bridle hande rather lowe | theñ hie because the Horse shoulde goe
lowe, | quick, & preste,. ——— |

For Coruetts, I tolde you the Inwarde Rayne | to keepe hiñ vpp & to looke
Into the Turne | & nott helpe with your leggs att all,— The Resoñ | off
Euerye thinge I haue tolde you In the | Chapter off Coruetts. ——— |

A Trewe obseruation. |

That when the Horse goes Terre a Terre, the bridle Raynes | seperated Iñ
both your handes the Inwarde Rayne pulde Cross | his neck, your knuckles
towardses his neck that iff the Horse | offers to stopp, then you helpe hiñ with
the outwarde Rayne | once or twise Itt Is trewe Itt bringes Iñ his outwarde
Sholder | butt Itt Is as trewe Itt presses hiñ within the turne which makes
——— | hiñ bringe Iñ his outwarde sholder, both which Is false for Terre a
| Terre, besides Itt makes hiñ Looke oute off the Turne, because Itt preses
| hiñ oñ the oute side off his barrs & Curbe which Is false for | Terre a
Terre, - & more Itt doth nott bende his heade & neck att all | In to the
Turne, which Is false for Terre a Terre, — These all beinge | false you muste
nott vse the outwarde Rayne,— Butt the Inwarde | Rayne Cross his neck,
& iff hee doe nott bende his heade & neck | Enough then pull the Inwarde
Rayne Cross his neck to your | outwarde Sholder the knuckles towardses his
neck | & thatt will bende hiñ sutfientlye & trewlye Euerye | thinge as Itt
aughte for Terre a Terre & therefore neuer | vse the outwarde Rayne for that
Ayre; — For Paseger | Itt Is trewe that the Horse Shoulde bee preste withiñ
| the Turne, & att libertye withoute the Turne, that his | outwarde legges
maye Lapp ouer his Inwarde legges | & | therefore the outwarde Rayne maye
bee proper for thatt | because Itt presses hiñ oñ the Inside, & his legges
att libertye | withoute the Turne,— & the more proper because thatt | the
Horses actioñ off his legges Iñ Paseger, Is the actioñ | off a trot which Is
Cross & therefore Itt admitts the outwarde | Rayne the better for thatt,—

Butt yett I will shoue you a | better waye for paseger, *for tha* then thatt,
which Is the | Inwarde Rayne pulde to your outwarde sholder as I | tolde
you before with your bodye Concaue oñ the Inside | & thatt will bringe Iñ
his outwarde Sholder perfectlye | presses hiñ on the Iñside off the Turne &
presses hiñ righte | oñ the Inside off the barrs \wedge *&curbe* & makes hiñ lapp
ouer his |

{*In a*}

outwarde outwarde legges ouer his Iñwarde legges & trewe Iñ | Euerye
Thinge when the outwarde Rayne Is false | Iñ Euerye Thinge,— Butt you
muste remember that | your poyse bee oñ the oute Side or Else his croupe
will | goe false. This Is the trewe waye for paseger & makes | hiñ goe so
Easeye & suple both off his sholders & so | Sensible to the heele as possiblye
Cañ bee. |

[f.2^f uncanceled] The Truth off workinge onlye with the Bridle, ——— |

[canceled] I haue tolde you Exactlye euerye perticuler howe | the Bitt workes
Vppon the barrs & Curbe ackordinge | as you pull the Raynes, & oñ which
side still Itt workes, | & as the branches are pulde Iñ or oute, so the mouth
| off the bitt still workes Contrarye, which neuer fayles, | Soe to doe,—
howe you shoulde worke for Terre a Terre | I *am* haue amplye shewde you
the truth off Itt In the Chapter off Terre a Terre, & Iñ other places,— So
nowe | restes onlye howe to shewe you howe you shoulde | worke with the
Raynes, Iñ Paseger his Croupe Iñ, | which Is Thus. ——— |

For Paseger, you muste pull the Inwarde Rayne | Off the *Ra*Bridle, the
Raynes beinge seperated Iñ | both your handes the Inwarde Rayne muste
bee | pulde, Cross his neck, your knuckles towardes his | neck, the poyse
off your outwarde legg, or Else his Croupe | woulde nott bee kepte Iñ,— &
iff his sholders Coumes | nott Iñ Enough then to bende your bodye frome
the | waste a litle In to the turne, onlye to make you Concaue | withiñ &
no more,— Thus the Horses outwarde \wedge *hinder* legg | Is kepte Iñ with your
outwarde legg beinge a Gentle | poyse,— & the Horses outwarde Sholder
braughte Iñ | to bee free to lapp ouer his Inwarde leggs — Thus hee | goes

Juste both with his forpartes, & hinder partes | & lookes In to the Turne
as hee aughte to doe, & the Bitt | workes oñ the Inside off the Barrs, & oñ
the Inside off | the Curbe, which Is moste righte because hee lookes | Into
the Turne, & the Horse Is preste oñ the Inside | off the Turne,— This Is
Exactlye the Truth off | Paseger. ——— |

Terre a Terre, the Inwarde Rayne pulde the same |

{waye} |

Cross his neck, the knuckles towards his neck, | onlye the poyse harder
with your legg on the | oute side, your bodye oblike, & the oute side | off
your bodye to bee Concaue, which keepes the | Horses *S Inwarde Sholder*
outwarde Sholder | for Couminge Iñ which Is proper for Terre a | Terre
as I haue tolde you offteñ, so you see the | diferece Is your bodye to bee
Concaue oñ the | Inside, for paseger, & Conuex oñ the oute side | & for
Terre a Terre, concaue oñ the oute side, & | Conuexe withiñ the Turne &
this Is exactlye | the Truth off both . ——— |

[uncancelled] Butt nowe for the Piroyte ther Is no remedye | butt to helpe with
the outwarde Rayne, for | neyther off the former wayes will doe Itt | Tis
trewe Itt bringes Iñ his outwarde Sholder | because the Horse Is preste oñ
the Inside off | the Turne,— butt Itt Is as Trewe the Horse lookes | oute off
the Turne because you pull the outwarde | cheeke to you, & therefore the
mouth off the bitt | muste goe oute & so the Horses mouth & therefore |
muste looke oute off the Turne;— butt the beste | waye to remedye Itt Is
on the Righte hande to | turne vpp your litle finger to pull the outwarde
| Rayne butt moderatlye thatt Is your hande butt a | litle oñ the Inside,
Exsepte his sholders coumes nott | faste Enough a boutte, & then you muste
helpe hiñ | more with your hande & more oñ the Inside,— for | the lefte
hande turne vpp your litle finger, & your | hande a litle oñ the Inside,— &
Euerye time the Horse | goes helpe hiñ with your hande oñ the Inside off
your | Bodye, looke Iñ to the Turne, & Bringe Iñ your outwarde | Sholder
a litle, & helpe hiñ Gentlye | with your outwarde Legg. ——— |

[cancelled] {This Is the Righte waye for Terre a Terre, | & so for demye voltaes

vppon Pasadoes | yett vppon pasadoes I woulde rather | helpe hiñ as for
Terre a Terre hee will | goe Juster, & keepe the line as well iff | his heade
bee a litle frome the wall | which those helps makes Itt, these are | as
greate truthes as they are greate | Secretts, ——— |}

[f.2^v uncanceled] For the Cauatzane, for Paseger |

[cancelled] The beste waye Is the Inwarde Rayne, cross his neck, your | knuckles
towardses his neck, the poyse oñ the oute side to | keepe Iñ his outwarde
legg, & to make his outwarde sholder | to ^{bee} concaue withiñ the Turne,
& pull the Rayne oblike, your | bodye oblike & the Horse oblike, this Is the
beste waye |

{to coume In}

Butt iff his outwarde Sholder coum nott Iñ Enough then pull | the Inwarde
Rayne withiñ the Turne harde & close to you | or frome his neck to bringe
Iñ his outwarde Sholder more | which suples his sholders Extreamleye, your
bodye Concaue | withiñ the Turne, the Horse beinge preste oñ the Iñside
| his legges beinge att libertye oñ the oute side to lapp ouer his | Inwarde
legges, which Is proper for paseger, butt all the | danger off this laste waye Is
that this helpe with the | Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne bringes Iñ his outwarde
Sholder | So much, as the Horses Croupe Is apte to goe oute, therefore you
| muste looke to rectefye thatt & to keepe Itt righte with | your outwarde
legg,— all these wayes are for Paseger Is | Croupe In. ^{butt the firste waye Is}
the beste & the Treweste. ——— |

[uncanceled] Nowe for Terre a Terre with | the Cauatzane. |

[cancelled] For Terre a Terre, pull the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne | Cross his
neck, your knuckles towardses his neck & press | hiñ with your outwarde
legg, your Bodye nowe oñ the | oute side *which* Concaue, which presses hiñ
more, & sitt oblike | & this keeps his outwarde Sholder for couñinge Iñ |
which Is proper for Terre a Terre, I haue so amplye sett Itt | doune in the
Chapter off Terre a Terre, as Itt needes no | Repetitions. ——— |

The Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne tied to the poñell Is | the same oblike line

thatt I tolde you was Cross his neck | butt onlye Shorter, & workes all the effectes that the | other did that was Cross his neck when Itt was In | your hande, butt nowe you worke more off the Bitt, because | nowe you haue nothinge Else In your hande to worke | withall,. ——— |

The Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne tied to the poñell | Is Exselente for Coruetts or Pesates because Itt keepes | his Inwarde hinder legg for Coum̄inge In so for | stoppunge, or Goinge back, Itt keepes still his Inwarde | hinder legg for Coum̄inge In, which Is the greate | busines In the manege,— for stoppunge & goinge back | you maye doe Itt with the Inwarde Cauatzane Rayne | In your hande, butt nott In Coruetts, — Thus the | Cauatzane makes hiñ looke In to the Turne suples | his sholders Extreame, eyther duñ piste, large | or narowe, his Croupe oute or his Croupe In kepes back | his Inwarde hinder legg, which Is the busines, bringes | In his outwarde sholder, or keepes back his outwarde | sholder giues hiñ the right plye or bente In to | the Turne, preserues his mouth, barrs, & Curbe,— makes | his legges goe all righte as theye shoulde doe eyther | In trottinge Gallopinge le petit Gallope his Croupe In | or Terre a Terre so In all Ayres what soeuer | & thus the Horse shall neuer bee Entier which Is | añ Exselente thinge & to goe so Juste & so Easeye | In Euerye Thinge, as Itt Is miraculus,— Butt *ther* | theñ Itt setles his heade In the trewe place giues | hiñ a righte apewye neyther to Easeye nor to | harde off the Hande for beinge tied to the poñell | Is the righte place to setle his heade for iff hee | bee to lighte off the hande Itt pulls hiñ downe | to the Righte place off Apewye, & iff hee bee to | harde on the hande, Itt pulls hiñ upp to thatt | righte place off apewye So Itt Is miraculus for | so manye manye Exselente thinges, & manye | more theñ | Cañ sett doune for the presente, & | In a worde ther Is no dressinge or makeinge Horses | withoute Itt, So miraculus, Is the Cauatzane | In his manye Exselente operations In | The manege. ——— |

[f.3^f uncanceled] To worke onlye with the Bridle; ——— |

[cancelled] The Raynes seperated In both your handes, I haue tolde you for paseger | his Croupe In that the poyse muste bee on the oute side frome the | waste dounwar [*sic.*] which Is the outwarde legg harder vpon the |

outwarde sturope that legg a litle stiff, to keepe In the Horses Croupe, & iff his shoulders coume nott In Enough then keepe the poyse still | on the oute side as I haue tolde you onlye then bende your bodye | a litle frome the waste vppwarde on the Inside onlye to make | your bodye Concaue on the Inside butt no more, & this beinge | doñ neatlye no bodye can perceue Itt & this will bringe In | his sholders perfectlye — Iff the Horse bringe nott his croupe | In Enough then bende your bodye frome the warste vppwarde | on the oute side onlye to make your Bodye a litle Concaue | on the oute side & no more, so litle as no bodye can perceue Itt | & this will putt In his croupe as you woulde haue Itt, so frome | the waste Vppwarde to bee concaue on the In side bringes \wedge^{in} his | sholder, & frome the waste vppwarde to bee Concaue on the | oute side putts In his croupe thus with greate fasiletie | you shall worke hiñ as you liste both Sholders & croupe | & make hiñ goe perfectlye & Easeleye, — Butt then for the | Rayne beinge seperated In both your handes, you muste | pull the Inwarde Rayne Cross his neck your knuckles | towardes his neck which doth nott onlye | make hiñ looke to the Turne. ——— |

Butt bendes his neck Extreamleye & bringes In his outwarde | sholder, & makes hiñ lapp his outwarde legges ouer his Inwarde | legges perfectlye which Is the beste thinge for paseger In the | worlde, & his for-partes alwayes to goe before his hinder | partes, which Is the truth off paseger, — butt iff hee doe nott | looke In to the turne Enough, nor bende his neck Into the | Turne Enough, then you muste pull the Inwarde Rayne as I | haue tolde you befor, butt then you muste \wedge^{put} your Inwarde hande | that holdes the Inwarde Rayne a litle forwarde & so helpe | hiñ for thus the hande goes more on the Contrarye side & presses | hiñ more because Itt Is nerer the perpendiculer line, & will | bende both his heade & neck verye much, & make hiñ goe | Juste as you woulde haue hiñ butt iff the Horse staye vppon | his voltaes, then helpe hiñ a litle & butt once with the | outwarde Rayne, & that will bringe In his sholders, butt ——— | helpe hiñ butt once with Itt, because Itt will make hiñ | looke oute off the Turne,— Sitt strayte, & looke In to the | Turne. ——— |

Some sayes Iñ Terre a Terre the Horse shoulde bee preste on the | Inside iff hee bee so howe can hee goe freleye that Is bounde vppon | the same side that hee goes on besides hee cañ neuer goe forwarde | well,— & which Is worste off all his legges goes cross like a Trott | though hee doth nott shifte Euerye time, which Is vnnaturall Iñ | Terre a Terre constraynde & false,— Therefore Iñ Terre a Terre | the Horse muste bee preste oñ the oute side that his legges mighte | bee att libertye to leade on the Inside thatt hee goes oñ both his | legges oñ the Iñside, which Is proper both for le petit Gallope | & Terre a Terre; & this Is the trewe & right waye & Rationell | Itt Is trewe for the Piroyte the Horse aughte to bee preste on the | Inside because the Horse goes nott forwarde butt Rounde almoste | Iñ a place, & hee cañ nott goe faste Exsepte hee bee preste oñ the | Inside, nor cañ hee goe Easeye withoute Itt, so you see that Iñ the | Piroyte & Terre a Terre ther Is much difERENCE between them | & so Iñ theyr seuerall helpes, & sides. |

PwV22

[All writing in this book is in the hand that I have called Newcastle's cramped hand]

[f.1^r uncanceled] Horse–Manshipp |

[f.1^v This page is blank]

[f.2^r uncanceled] For Stallions [^] & *mares* sutch as I thinke beste | for Breedinge Ande mares, [deleted and illegible] for the | manege, *ruñinge Horses*, & *Huntinge* | *Horses* |

Firste for the manege, I holde a spanishe horse well | chosen the fitteste, thatt Is a shorte Horse, well Compacte together, | as the frenshe mañ Cale hiñ racoursie frome the nose to the | Croupe, with a fine Ande thiñ p^hande heade well sett oñ | necke thiñ & well turnede stronge & Coupled Good thies shorte | Back, well filleted shorte space Iñ the fillettes Ande for his forhande | nott to Longe, butt Iñ a worde [^]/_{all ouer} shorte, a good bodye, shorte legges | Leane sinewey, & stronge nott to litle shorte pasternes & a litle | bendinge, which alwayes makes hiñ nimble Ande good feete | tough, & nott brickle, Ande A superfluetie off Speritt, His Couller | with black playne

tayle legges & liste Broune Baye, brighte Baye or Black, or a Darke chestnutt,
well | marked — Ande a boue All, Nott to be vitius, butt off a good nature
 | tractable, & dosible, His heade nott to litle, Leane & well proportionde,
 | Ande Espetialye to Looke thatt he maye haue a full & good Eye, | &
 no soreseyes or Sicklye,— Iff sutch a Spanishe Horse Cañ nott | be well
 recouered or Gotten, then Iñ the Seconde place I doe recomēde | to you,
 a deñmarke Horse, off this shape, & Coullers, As the fitteste stallion nexte.
 Butt I beleue iff you haue a righte one you muste recouer hiñ | oute off the
 kinges race.— for these Horses are the moste proper | for the manege Iñ
 the worlde, Dutch are to heuie, Coursers mutch | decayde Ande none worth
 the byenge, Barbes the finest prettie horses | Iñ the worlde ^{in their lines} for
 shape, dispotition, & sinewe, strength, Ande the | Esiest Odressed, & will giue
 you the moste Contentmente Iñ your | trauell, & workinge off them, butt
 they seldum Gett Horses good for this Exercise, butt Exselente for Huntinge
 Espetialye | ruñinge, for breede with dutch or stronge [? barbes?], Ande
 you shall | see towe seuerall shapes Iñ one horse Ande those wronge plased,
 | or else theye mighte doe better. Thatt Is a dutch forhande & Barberie |
 Legges dutch Buttockes, Ande Barberie Bodie, & so forth.— your stallions
 | I woulde haue by no meanes to olde, frome seauen to teñ or twelue | Att
 the moste. ——— |

Whye I woulde haue my stallion | thus |

Tis trewe ther are Jades off All Countries, Ande ther are goode | Horses
 Iñ all Countries, whatt shoulde one Conclude theñ to haue | anye Horse;
 or to haue none, no to haue a prime horse well chosen | fitteste for whatt
 you Intende to breede for oute off the beste races | As the spanishe Horse
 thus chosen Is fitteste for the manege or denm | arke, whye I woulde haue
 hiñ thus shaped, maye Easelye a peer to | a Horse mañ for beinge thus
 thiñ before, Ande so stronge Euerie | wher Else [He?] Is the better able
 to Carie hiñ selfe & his rider | & beinge so shorte the Easier putt vpon
 the Hantches, Ande more | Comlye w[.../] both for the rider, & hiñ selfe,
 the better to Apeer | all off one peece, for the Coullers I wishe hiñ these
 because Itt Is añ | Exselente thinge to giue your race a good die though ther

are good | Horses off all Coullers, Ande off All shapes, therefore, Shoulde
one take off ill Coullers | or ill Shapes for |

[f.2^v] Your Stallion; No coṃonlye, like begettes his like, therefore | you aughte
to be verye Curius In the parentes for your | race; for his Legges to be
smalle & his bodie & other | partes Gross is Impossible butt to be a weake
Horse for | his disposition to be tractable & dosible, Is a greate | matter In
your Stallion Ande so for sorenses or sicklines | for sutch will the offspringe
be both In nature & diseases | Ande for Age, though they be neuer so
sounde theñ selues [??] | yett beinge olde theye will Gett both weake
Horses, | Ande Blinde, The Largenes, & fullnes off his eye | I like well for
Coṃonlye theye are Good Horses Ande | I selduṃ fayle by a Horse Eye
to knowe both his goodnes | Ande his dispotition; for his superfluetie off
Speritt your | stallion oughte [*sic.*] to be so, for his off springe will be off
Less | both the mares you breede off heer [=her], & the Coldnes off | the
Countrie will qualefie Itt, so thatt Is nesesarye | iff I shoulde be putt to
one off the Extreames I woulde | rather haue a weake horse well disposed
with a good speritt | Theñ a duple harted, stronge horse — besides wee see
Longe | Shaped Horses are putt Vppon the Hantches with thatt | difecultie
so agaynste Nature as Itt makes theṃ restie | *th* Butt the more often the
Indiscrete riders thatt Continually | Beate theṃ for they knowe nott whatt,
neyther knoinge | Whatt they woulde haue when they shoulde doe Itt or
howe | to make theṃ, butt Labor to litle purpose, like Walssinge [?] |
off a Blacka-Moore, since for the moste parte theye are | Imposebilities,
& Contradictories thatt theye Labor att one | ande the same time. Ande
then Ther Is towe beastes | together, butt the rider the more beaste. for
soppon [?] | ridinge off races by way off Comptition I like nott, as == |
sutch a Horse to helpe the shape off sutch a mare & so | Contrarie I like
nott butt both to be off perfecte shape | & goodnes for the Vse I Intende
thatt Is sutch as I | haue heer discribed for when theye are both off thatt
| shape I desier these are liklieste to produce the same | A Spanishe Horse
beinge frome a Hotter Countrie will | thiñ your race, for shoulde you Breede
still oute off | your one, theye woulde turne to be good Carte horses | att
Laste or sutch as thatt Countrey breeds wha[?] euer | Itt Is, I meane
prouince or sheer, or parte off thatt shyre [y?] | for wee see theye differ

often Extreamlye for take | the beste lankeshyre Bull [or?] kine, beste Northampton or | Buckingham sheepe, Ande bringe them In to anye other | place & they shall be Juste like the breede of thatt | place whatt-soeuer Itt is withiñ thre or foure | Jenerations, Ande so off Horses.— |

[f.3^r] I will nott dispute Philosophecallye wether Itt be the | Ayre or Erth or both, or whatt butt thus Itt is by | Experience founde daylye Ande therefore you muste | still renewe your Stallion which will still keepe | you In a Braue Race for Itt will still thiñ your race | Ande make them fine for handes Ande so keepe you | In a perfecte waye off breedinge. *both for [his] their | speritt & shape.* or otherwise Itt woulde faule to the | breede off the Countreye, butt sertenlye Heer In Englande | anye wher you shall finde *your Bre* the race off Horses | Growe oute Into thick Heades neckes, Ande shoulders | \wedge in a smale line [?] so thatt Itt is verie requisitt to Make & keepe your | Race perfecte, to haue still freshe spanishe stalliones. |

Whatt mares to breede off | for the Manege. |

For their shape Juste sutch as I haue discribed for | the Stallion well Chosen dutch mares, with thatt | shape & Coullers, or denmarke with sutch a spanishe | stallion as I haue mentioned , you Cañ nott brede better | for the manege. Iff a Deñ-marke Stallion, with sutch | mares, they Cañ nott chuse butt be lighter heer beinge | breadd, In this Countrie, butt for your Deñ-marke Horse | maye Couer Englishe mares Ande so maye your spanishe | Horse, iff theye be off sutch shape as I haue formerlye | writt off for \wedge ^{the mares} their stature as I haue formerlye writt | off for the stallions a midlinge, rather Inclininge to | the Leser sise for theye selduñ fayle for Bountie & | goodnes Ande the Larger Horses selduñ proue butt iff | theye doe I Confess beyonde all Horses. Butt verye trouble | suñ to mounte the sadle or dismounte espetialye for | ^{little} or midlinge sised meñ Indeed nott verye Comly for sutch | statures Butt for the mares, beinge thus shaped & | Coullerde I *wo* shoulde wishe you, to haue a greate Care | thatt theye maye haue hudge & greate Bodies, the more | roume for the fole, besides that your mares mighte be | younge for añ olde mare Is more dangerous then an | olde stallion to Breede off, for their offspringe are butt | weake,

Ande starued for wante off milke, Ande by | Experience wee finde theye are
Ill houed, which Is | the worste thinge a Horse Cañ haue since Itt Is the |
foundation off all the reste. ——— |

[f.3^v] Howe the stallion shoulde be fedd, before | hee mounte the mares, Ande
Iñ whatt mañer | he shoulde be turned to them, Ande what kinde | off
place, Ande att what time off the yeare. ——— |

Before his beinge putt to the mares I woulde haue | hiñ for tow monthes
before, be clenlye kepte well | fedd \wedge & cleane with good sweete Haye, Ande
walked a brode Jentlye | euerie daye, to keepe hiñ cleane & Iñ breath, Ande
| then Iñ maye I woulde haue you to turne hiñ loose | to your mares, butt
firste lett hiñ Couer a mare twise | Iñ hande, to A Bate his Courage, &
make hiñ more discrete, | for otherwise he mighte mutch soyle hiñ selfe &
hurte | suñ off the mares by forsinge off them espetialye those | thatt are
with fole, for thus he will hurte none butt | keepe them all together as a
Stagg doth hindes Iñ rutt | time Ande will nott mounte anye vntill shee woe
hiñ | Extreamlye to Itt \wedge & then both hee & shee are like to speede hath serued her
Ande so he will Goe ouer all the | mares Ande when he hath duñ so he will
trie them | all ouer Agen, & those thatt are willinge to take the | Horse he
mountes Ande those thatt are Vnwillinge | he passes ouer, Ande when they
are all serued thus | naturallye Iñ their kinde Ande thatt he hath | duñ his
yeares worke you maye Easlye knowe Itt ——— | for he will beate the Pale
to be Gone \wedge añ hee hath good [reas?ou] Ande then | you muste take hiñ vpp
which time off ackoumpaninge | the mares will be suñ seauen weekes or
towe monthes | att the moste, All this whyle the stallion ruñes with | them
he shoulde be well fedd with otes, pease, & Bredd | iff he will Eate anye,
Ande a mañ to Attende them all | thatt whyle Iñ the feilde to haue a litle
Cabeñ made | hiñ which maye Easlye tell you which mare was mounted,
when & howe offten, so thatt you maye | Gess when theye will fole, you
muste ^{haue} sutch a Conueniente | number \wedge ^{of mares} as the strength off your
stallion maye permitt | 10: 12: 15: or 20: butt the laste Is rather to manye.
——— | thus orderde & putt to your mares you need nott trouble | your
selfe which Is redie for the Horse Ande which is | nott, which Baren, which
with fole or hath newlye | foled Itt Is all one for wise |

[f.4^r] Nature Is wiser Iñ her one \wedge wayes & workes then anye arte Cañ | teatch her, Ande I dare saye verie fewe shall fayle Iñ | this waye, the place shoulde be a good Conueniente Grounde | to keepe so manye well & nott to sterue them, by reson to | Increase the milke off the mares, thatt haue foled & are | to fole, besides to Increase the Luste & desier off the bestes | Ande when the stallioñ Is taken vpp, you muste treat | him well with Good meate & tendinge for Else you shall | hardlye recouer him for his nexte yeares busines for | he will be mutch spent, Ande Leane when you take him | vpp, The mares then muste be remoued Iñ to a verye | Good Pasture Espetialye those with fole to Increase | their milke Ande the Place wher the stallion & | mares ruñ to gether muste be well fensed, suñ times | Itt hapneth the firste time a Horse ruñes thus with mares | thatt manye off the mares doe nott proue, nor the foles so | hansuñ, butt be nott discouraged with thatt for he will | mende vppon you Euerye yeare both for the Number off | the mares to be with fole Ande Iñ their Shape | & hansuñness. Vntill he be to olde for a stallion. |

The mares neyther to Leane | or tow fatt, for wante of luste to Conseaue, or tow lustie to Conseaue for wante off | strength to bringe fourth or [..inge] to | fatt to hinder the pasege | And so haue lese roume for | the fole to prosper. |

Howe Longe they shoulde suck ——— | when wayned, Ande theñ howe vsed. |

I woulde nott haue them suck longer then frome | folinge time to martle-mas — Ande then butt Iñ to | a Good lardge house, to ruñ loose, Ande be cleane kepte | with good litter, well fedd, with sweet haye, suñ | fewe otes, Ande Brañ to putt oute their Bellies, Ande | when Itt Is a fine daye suñ prettie lardge Courte to | playe them selues Iñ, a while, Ande then vpp with | them Ageñ, Ande as soone as freshe Grass Coumes thatt | ther Is plentie off Itt, turne them oute, Euerye Age shoulde | be sorted by them selues, Espetialye the Horse Coltes | Ande for the Grounde I añ nott so Curius so Itt be drie | spatius Ande well waterde, for iff he bee neer filled | once Iñ foure & twentie were Itt Is Enough for a Colte | Iñ Suñer, for ritch Groundes breede butt

thick fore-handes | Ill houes, weake Pasternes, foggeye & dull Jades, Ande Apte to sorenseys, with fleshye & Goutie Legges. Then the | nexte winter I woulde haue you take them vpp a geñ & | be well housed, Ande halterde, Ande made Jentle & well fedd | Ande ledd oute alwayes to their water, Ande sum̄times | for their Jentle Exercise Ande so turned oute to Grass | the nexte sūmer A Gayne. Ande then taken vpp | the nexte winter, Ande used |

[f.4^v] Ande fedd Iñ the same mañer, Ande so turned | oute as formerlye the nexte sūmer, Ande | then the nexte winter theye are to be taken | vpp for Good Ande All, beinge three yeares olde | Ande the Aduantage, Butt lett measure you this | bye my one Experience, thatt ther Is no beaste Iñ | the worlde Cañ worse Indure Colde or Ill fedinge | then Horse kinde Espetialye Colde, Ande this | Aduantage you will haue bye Itt, nott onlye stronger | by mutch with this warme & drie fedinge then | suckinge towe yeares which was a greate ^{old} Error | Ande made so Jentle which Is Sum̄thinge both to | the Horse & the rider ^{manye} beinge spoylde in the Backinge butt

off my worde off my one | knoledge this warme & drie fedinge doth make them | as fine fore-handes, Ande Leane & sinewe Legges as your | stallion or mares doth Conduce to Itt with their | hansūnes. for I dare saye take towe foles off Equall | shape by the same horse, & as fine a dañ, Ande lett | *youre* one Lie a brode, Ande fedd onlye with fogg | & Grass & the other vsed after my fation he Att | Grass shall Looke like a karte Horse for shape & | dullnes, Ande the other Iñ Comparison Like a Barbe | or a spanishe Horse, both for shape & speritt & strength | Ande freer teñ to one frome sorenses by sides his, | Jentlenes like a Lañ, Ande this I assure you | Is the Greateste secrett I knowe Iñ bredinge, |

Howe manye mares you shoulde | keepe I Cañ nott proportion Euerie | mañ thatt, His one discretion, Eyther for | his Abiletie or Loue to Itt muste directe | hiñ or both, *for* onlye this whatt number soeuer | he kepes off mares he muste Looke to haue & | prouide for ^{towe} fwe times as manye off Horse kinde | or neer Itt befor any be broughte Into the stable | thatt Is thre yeare & A Halfe with your number | off bredinge mares. I meane, Ande

Euerye | winter you muste see all those thatt are abrode | In harde times,
nay after you begiñ to fodder | vntill Grass Coume to be well fotherde twise
a | daye with good Haye. ——— |

[f.5^r] whatt mares, stallions & order I woulde haue | obserued In his ma:^{ties}
Royall race, Ande whatt | other Horses I woulde haue prouide for his |
ma:^{ties} Exercise off manege, Ande sadle for all his | sportes, Huntinge,
Haukinge, Padd naggges, Ande | Galopinge for the Hie waye,. ——— |

Firste for his ma:^{tie} race, I holde Itt verie vnworthye | Off a greate monarke
to breede for ruñinge, Huntinge, hie waye Galopers, or Padd-Naggges, butt
onlye for the | manege, Ande since I haue harde his ma:^{tie} shoulde saye
| his race att Titburie was quite decayde, I shoulde humbly | aduise to
begiñ a freshe as iff ther *were* ^{had} neuer Been any | sutch thinge as a
race att Titbury, for otherwise those thatt are ther | woulde Courrupte & make them
foreuer naughte | wence I woulde haue the stock, Shoulde be Naples suñ |
teñ or 12: choyse mares ther oute of the kinge off Spayne | race, Ande
suñ foure Horses choyce & well chosen for | stallions Indeed Horses off
reputation, Ande In suñ | yeares the better to knowe their strength speritt,
& | dispotition, Then I shoulde Likwise holde Itt verie | Conueniente to
haue as many prime mares outt off the | kinge of Spaynes race In spayne
Ande as many spanishe | Horses, for the reste oute off the prime race off
Englande | iff theye be worthy ^{off} his ma:^{tie} race then to bye them, butt |
these In a fewe yeares woulde quicklye furnishe his ma:^{tie} | stable. Then
I shoulde desier a litle Barbe made a purpose | or sum olde one Alterde
thatt Is made fitt for the transfo== | mation [?] off Horses, Inded Stables,
wher nowe theye all | butt ware houses, Ande so to haue all thinges made
fitt | for them, Espetialye for freshe water, Then this barbe | to make a
returne once In towe or thre yeares ^{ou[t?]e of Barberie} In [?] Barberie |
Ande ther with suñ smale presentes to the kinge off Morocko, | fess as our
mertchantes Cañ beste aduise In thatt Case | haue ^{presented} att Leaste
Leaue to bye the prime horses for ones moneye | Ande those that Goes to
all these places shoulde be Exselente | Horse-meñ with greate Judgemente
In thatt Arte Ande | well Informe them selues off the beste races & the
prime | Horses ther, Ande to bringe ouer 50: or 60: Barbes, All | younge

Horses, Ande his ma:^{tie} hauinge made his choyse, maye | dispose off the
reste to seuerall Lordes Ande Jentlemen thatt | are breders or to Incourage
them̄ to brede, Ande so Incadge | all those races for his ma:tie beinge the
founder off them | or the preseruer, Ande sertenlye oute off these, his ma:^{tie}
| woulde be furnished for Galopinge Horses for this | kingdome bredes fewe
Else, so *thatt*

[f.5^v] Iff any faules shorte the reste maye be | Easlye boughte heer. I shoulde
also wishe | this Barke to make a returne once In thre | or foure yeares, Iñ
to denmarke, for teñ or | 12: prime Horses, oute off his vnclē the | kinge of
Denmarkes race, for theye are | the beste Horses for the manege that euer | I
sawe frome Naples, & Spayne ther muste | be a Suplye still nowe & then for
stallions, | Ande wher ther are rare goinge Horses | because theye are nott
euerie wher I woulde | haue them̄ boughte for his ma:^{tie} Exercise | for the
mañer off bredinge I cañ saye I no | more then I haue writt formerly, onlye
| this I desier, Euery partition mighte | haue good Large houses to defende
them̄ | frome the Iniurie off the wether, both | Heates Ande Coldes. |

when you take your Colte vpp for | good Ande All then howe you shoulde
vse | hiñ vntill he be Bacte, when̄ to Back hiñ | Ande howe, Ande whatt
sadle & Bridle he | oughte to haue, Ande howe Longe thus to | be vsed,
Iñdeed this treatise merlye for the | Caualcadore, Iñ Bardelle, vntill he
Coume | to strayter Lessons which Is the perfection | off the Horse, which
belonges to the Cauelerice, | As the master off his Arte |

I supose nowe your Colte hauinge been taken vpp so | manye winters I
neede nott tell you howe he shoulde | be made quiett, neyther doe I meane
to treatē off euerie | bucle, Ande *when*^{howe} the Groume shoulde wipe his
face or | his tayle, Ande howe manye hollas he should giue before he | stopp
hiñ, or howe manye Clapps with his hande Iñ the | sadle before he mountes
hiñ, Ande spende a whole booke | howe a strapp shoulde Goe thorowe a
Bucle, Is a signe a | mañ hath Litle knoledge or att leaste presumes others
are | fooles, or else his whole añbition to write so mutch | nott *so good*
Caringe howe Ill Itt is | I confess ther hath been | to mutch writt |

[f.6^r] [^] in euery kinde Exsepte Itt had been better therfore I proffess I write to the
 | perfecte Horse-Mañ & no other Ande iff I thoughte I shoulde | nott bringe
 hiñ suñ newse I woulde nott trouble hiñ with | these — Then, your firste
 sadle a Bardelle, Ande a playne | Cañon a La Conestable *the Brantches*,
 the Cauetsane off a rope, | your trottinge off hiñ Large att firste & so
 narouer & narouer | by degree Ande worke hiñ still vppon the Cauetsane
 & so by | litle & litle wiñ his heade to thatt place you woulde haue | Itt
 butt one thinge I aduise you what soeuer you Gayne by | bringinge Iñ his
 head neuer suffer hiñ to gayne thatt off you | a gayne butt holde your towe
 handes with the Cauetsane as firm | as postes yett still be gayninge [*sic.*]
 off hiñ by litle & litle Ande worke | hiñ with your towe handes off the
 rope raynes, still donwardes | Ande when you stopp att the firste be sure
 to stopp frome a trot | to a walke, frome a walke by degree to stande still
frome for | sudden stopes spoyle all make theñ afrayde off Itt, Ande so |
 becoume restiue, or Else Iñ dispayre to bolte a waye with you | besides Itt
 weakens his hanches, Ande Iñ times will eyther | lame hiñ or spoyle hiñ,
 Att firste you muste tie the Curbe | downe to the brantches Ande after
 he Is a litle setled then | hooke Itt lardge Ande after Iñ his righte place
 when you | Galope hiñ from that to a trott frome thatt to a pace I meane
 | a walke, Ande so Jentlye stopp hiñ, Ande no other stoppes off a Greate
 whyle when you trot hiñ Att firste lett | Itt be a lustie trot ^{forwardes} thatt
 he maye worke Iñ the sholders | for that makes hiñ nimble Ande Is moste
 Grasfull, Ande therfore | a strawe sadle Is vsed att the firste because Itt
 doth nott binde | vpp his sholders as the tree off a sadle doth. besides Iñ his
 trot | he maye often ouer-reatch, therfore I woulde haue hiñ shodd | att
 firste with Lunetts, Ande his hinder feete cutt shorter | att the toes theñ
 ordinarie; when you walke, trot, or Calope [*sic.*] | a sircle, off eyther hande
 be sure to pull the Iñ-wardes Corde | alwayes, Ande worke his shoulders [^]
^{still} as souple as you Cañ | for, for his Croupe I Care nott till Longe after
 for thatt | is Easier mutch to sett Iñ order then his fore partes | Ande thus
 he will neuer be restiue or Antier. which are | good thinges, I woulde neuer
 haue you take tow mutch off | hiñ, butt still keepe hiñ Iñ Luste Ande be
 shie off Corections | Ande a prodigall off flateries & Careses towardes hiñ
 & | still the Jentlieste waye you Cañ & with the 'greateste | sweetnes thus

stoppinge Goinge Back Jentlye & thus | turninge off both handes trottinge
 & Galopinge thus | Ande all this vsed with swettnes, will make him easlye
 | a redie horse when he Coumes to my strayter Lessons & | my newe &
 perfecte Lessons for the dressinge all horses | butt when you take hiṁ vpp
 att thre yeares olde & a halfe | I woulde nott haue hiṁ backed vntill the |
 martch [=month] afterwarde |

[f.6^v] Ande then he Is almoste foure, theñ to be soyled | A month or sixe weekes
 merlye to thruste hiṁ | oute & predd hiṁ butt neuer after a boue a weeke
 | or eyghte dayes, for more then to scouer hiṁ you doe hiṁ | hurte besides
 the loss off ridinge for you will nott | gett hiṁ fitt to ride a Gayne off a
 greate while for | the olde Englishe Coustum̄ was butt to giue the | riders
 & Groumes more Leaue to be debaused. | well then after Hee Is soyled, I
 woulde haue you | to vse the same methode to setle his heade Ande | make
 hiṁ sensible to the Hande & the Heele butt | Espetialye the Hande vntill
 he be fiue, Ande | then my methode herafter you shall see shall | make hiṁ
 a perfecte Horse by sixe which Is | butt a yeare att the strayte Lessons off
 my methode | This waye I Coṁende Infenitlye for the furste, [sic.] | which
 Is the Italien waye, for the settlinge | off a Horse heade for for to begiñ with
 the | frenshe waye [^] the pillers att firste neuer doth Itt, butt mutch disorders
 | their heades, & neuer workes theṁ to a firmnes | off the hande, or serten
 a puie vppon the Barrs, butt mutch Contrarie.— Thus longe time | I take
 because I knowe howe rawe Ignorante & weake | a Colte Is att firste Ande
 no Arte Cañ make a boye | reade att the firste. Nor no arte Cañ make a |
 Boye a mañ, butt time,. therefore as soone as posible | one Cañ worke for
 his strength I begiñ which | I take to be four, att the sooneste, Ande then
 I | thinke I doe my parte iff I render [^] you him a redie | Horse, att sixe
 which I knowe I Cañ iff he | liue a sounde Horse I doe nott saye to make all
 | Horses a like, butt I will make hiṁ doe what nature | hath apted hiṁ for,
 what his speritt, strength & dispotition | Cañ afforde, for all meñ doe nott
 danse a like nor doth | nothings a like, Ande wee muste nott make horses
 | more resonable theñ Meñ, butt whatt sutch a horse | Cañ posiblye doe,
 I will make hiṁ, Ande Iñ thatt | time off a yeare I haue harde horse—meñ
 saye Iñ | their worke, Sumthinge off the |

[f.7^r] montebanke ther Is Iñ euerie drade [sic.], butt I renounce Itt, Iñ & IAnde
all his workes. ——— |

Heer mingled Iñ the mos [sic.] proper places. | I woulde haue figures putt,
to represente | The Bredinge mares with the stallion | The Coltes off seuerall
yeares, & so the | filleyes, Ande theñ the Takinge off them | vpp.— Ande
thus mutch for this busines | nowe for ridinge the Newe methode. |

A Supotition. |

I Suppose your Horse Iñ towe years, vnder | the Caualcadore, Is now by this
time, well | Setled oñ his Head & firme, trotts well | right forwards & vppoñ
his Turnes, Galops | so *well* stops well, & passes a Carere doth all | these
vppoñ His Circles, His shoulders well | supled, & suñ thinge His Croupe,
Aduanses, | Goes Back & withoute vice.— Ande Thus | I Shall take Hiñ Iñ
Hande for His strayter | Lessons.— which Iñ one yeare I make no doubtte |
butt to finishe.— Suñ pretye Gerer thatt Is | a pretender to the Profession
thatt woulde blur | anye thinge butt His owne Ignorance, Envienge | thatt
which Hee Coulede nott atayne to, will sweare | thatt añ Easeye methode
will make a Horse | thatt Is alredeye dressde to His Hande to lett a | the
Horse a Lone thus farr broughte oñ thatt | hee woulde doe Itt Hiñ selfe,—
Ande that thre | yeares was añ Age,— I Haue hade a Horse drete | my selfe
att three yeares ^{olde} & litle more. Butt I hadd | better lett hiñ a Lone for
hee was Spoylde with | Itt. butt my Scoffer knowes hee hath | duñ no sutch
greate | miracles. |

[f.7^v] Ande Lett hiñ Exsamine His Contience iff | Hee haue one.— or his Scill, Iñ
this Arte hee | will knowe thatt though thus forwardes | Hee Goes nott terra
terra, vppon his demi voltes | Pasadoes, change frome hande to hande le
croupe | de dans, Coruett In perfection, Gropadoes Balotatoes, | Capriole,
forwarde backwordes side wayes, | vppon His Turnes & Change, Ande |
all these beinge the Perfection off this Arte, | I Hope nowe my derider, &
detracter, will | Confess the other Is nott a redye Horse. |

The Actions & naturall Posture thatt | Horses putt their Leggs Iñ vppon
the | foote pace, Amble, trot, Galope, & ruñinge. |

1 The Foote Pace |

Tow Leggs All wayes oñ a Side att the same | time taken frome the Grounde
& the other | firme, butt the other no sooner sett downe, | butt the other
changes Imediatlye, Ande | shifte Juste as Iff hee hadd butt tow Leggs |
because towe Goes still att the same time, & | theñ the other remoues.
—— |

2 Añ Amble |

Is The verye Same Action Iñ all thinges | butt a Litle faster. |

3 A Trott.

Doth Litle Cross, the hinder Legg alwayes | Contrarye to the fore Legg
Lifted vpp att the | Same time, & so shiftes to the other | tow Leggs.
—— |

[f.8^r] A Galope |

Towe Leggs allwayes Vpp off a Side as a foot | pase, or Amble, yett differs
almoste as mutch | frome Itt *as a* for the Actioñ & time off Itt, as | A
Trott,— Because those tow Leggs thatt doe shifte | firste doe Alwayes Leade,
& Añ Amble & foote | Pase Shifte Euerye Time — Ande this Is one | Resoñ
thatt thorawe Pasde Horses seldum Galope | well, The Actions beinge So
differente, —— |

Ruñinge. |

Is the Same Actioñ of a Galope, sauinge | so mutch faster.— when they saye
| A Horse hath the wronge Legg before | Itt Is this thatt theñ Hee shifts
Cross which | Is the Actioñ off a Trott, ^{so a galopinge or ruñinge} trott contrarye
to his | Gallope which Is alwayes Towe off a Side | Leadinge, Ande so makes
him Apte to Coume | downe, Ande fumble Extreamlye, vntill hee | Lighte
towe off a Side Leadinge Agayne | Itt Is no matter which Side so alwayes
| one Side Leades Iñ Galopinge or ruñinge | Itt muste bee So, Thoug [*sic.*]
sum are nimbler | *theñ others off* off one hande theñ the other | Like righte
Ande Lefte Handed meñ, & sum | Equall, Ande this Nature & Coustum

makes | Thus hauinge the wronge Legg before as | theye Cale Itt I proteste
 the resoñ off Itt | I neuer vnderstoode vntill His Sacred | Ma^{tie} Pleasde to
 tell mee. Ande I Thinke no | mañ Euer obserued so mutch before Iñ thatt
 perticu== | lar. Butt Itt Is moste trewe & rationall.— Ande | Heer I muste
 nede saye for the Honor off Armes | & Horse—mañ shipp, withoute flattery,
 Thatt his | Ma^{tie} Is the beste mañ att Armes thatt Euer | yett I Sawe Indeed
 none Euer yett Came neere | hiñ nott his Teatchers, Ande I haue | Seene
 his ma^{tie} Hitt horses | Better. |

[f.8^v] Att the firste ridinge, then they thatt | made or dresde them, though
 the beste | Horse—meñ & so Ackounted.: ——— |

Suñ obseruations aboute | Posture off Horses. |

Tis trewe thatt off all Posturs the strayght | Line Is the Esieste, butt since
 Horse—meñ | Propounde sutch & sutch Ayres, & Voltes to | bee performde
 by Horses, then the Easieste | wayes, both for their Aprehention & their
 | motion, which Is Grantinge the Horse Is to doe | sutch thinges, which
 posture Crosses nature | the Leaste or goes with Itt to Helpe Itt to | thatt
 Ende,— For I doe nott thinke the Drssinge [*sic.*] | off Horses anye other
 thinge then to sett wilde Nature Iñ order, & make Itt methodiall, for | I
 vnderstande no Crossinge off Itt For nothings | thatt Is forste Is Eyther,
 Comleye, Easeye or right | Butt by methode & Conuerte Nature In to Arte
 | & by Coustum̄ to Conuerte Arte Into Nature | for euerye Horse muste
 take His owne Ayre | which Nature hath Apted Hiñ *for* to, thatt | muste
 bee followed, & maye bee mutch helped | butt you muste nott chuse Hiñ
 one, Coustum̄ | Is so stronge vppoñ Euerye thinge, As wee see | Heauie &
 Lumpishe Bodies beinge practised | frome their Childhoode howe Easeley
 they | valte when a more Agill Bodye, for the Sighte | farr, Cañ nott doe
 neer anye off those thinges | For wante off Arte & Practice. ——— | Thatt
 no Ayre whatt Soeuer anye Horse Euer | wente Iñ, Iff hee weare perfectly
 made by a | Greate Master,— did Euer Cross Nature | my resoñ Is thatt
 All Ayre thatt Euer was | Is Naturall to Horse kinde thatt Is to suñ | Horse
 or other,— For Example I my | selfe haue Seen Foles, Coltes & | younge
 Horses. ——— |

[f.9^r] Before Euer they weare touched or Handled | to Pass a Carere & stopp
as perfectly as anye | Arte Coude teatch them, Ande Aduance as | well,
Galop, & change frome Hande to Hande *Aduance* | *as well*. Serpeiare naye
which Is more terra, terra, | both releue, & tetermine [*sic.*], butt seldum
a boue a quarter | or a demie voltes the same I haue Seene Iñ Coruette,
demie | Ayre, Cropados & Caprioles; — Butt theye did nott Continew |
Longe, yett this shewes those Ayrs are all Naturall to | Horses, & nothings
vrgde vppon them more then to make | Itt Easeye to them, which withoute
vanety butt for | truth Sake I neuer Sawe any methode Like this, | Eyther
by my readinge, or Ridinge. ——— |

The Consideration thatt made mee Inuente | this newe methode & waye off
ridinge. |

Firste I was tierde as mutch with readinge longe | discourses to Confounde
both man & Horse as with | ridinge after a tetius [*sic.*] methode thatt
neither theye | nor I vnderstode, Ande sum thinge methoughte still | ther
was lefte thatt was nott yett founde oute so | I began to Consider & wente
as Deepe & Lowe as I Coude | because I woulde leaue litle or Nothings
behinde | mee, Then I Considered a Horse to bee as liuinge creatu== | re
with sutch a kinde of Shape, with 4: Legges, | which Shape & Leggs, oughte
to bee putt Into sutch a | Posture or Postures as hee mighte performe sutch
| Ayres with the Greateste Ease, & Comlines both | to Him selfe & The
Rider ——— |

The Beginninge off the | newe waye off | ridinge |

Lett a Horse stande strayghte vppon His Leggs | Ande theye are Paralele
— Then both His | Hinder Leggs drawinge straitte Lines frome His | Fore
Leggs, I woulde Haue His Hinder-feete | to stande within the Lines, & his
fore Leggs | withoute them, butt so theye are within Itt | makes no matter
howe litle only the more | theye are thruste vnder his | Bellye the narrower
| theye muste Goe |

[f.9^v] Ande So Consequently the more vppon the | Hantches, & thatt muste
needs ^{bee} the Beste | For the other keepes Him onlye thatt Hee Goes |

nott false, Thatt Is to bee butt Juste withiñ the | Lines Parelele with His
Hinder Feete. |

This figur shewes | Itt. |

[small diagram]

For withoute this Hee will neuer bee | perfectly vppon the Hantches &
withoute | thatt no Horse Cañ goe well Iñ anye kinde | Iff A Horse Stradle
whatt maye Hee bee vppon | His Bretch, butt nott vppon His Hantches for
| one Is Coweringe & the other Is Slidinge. | for Stradlinge putts Hiñ off
off Itt for they | Sett Hiñ wide when a Horse his Leggs are neer together
theye are Apter to Slide vnder | His Belly, which Is the righte waye to putt
a | Horse vppon the Hantches & no other. Like | a Stopp.— Ande hee Goes
forwarde with Itt. | which stradlinge Hee Cañ nott for hee Cañ nott | Goe
towe wayes att one time vppon His Turnes | for Stradlinge beyonde the
Lines parelels | apers as Iff wayte woulde breake Itt, besides | tis dangerous
to Incorde hiñ, besides the horrible | falsnes off Itt & Is oute off his strength
though | I haue seen Itt offteñ with mutch disguste. | Besides thatt Actioñ
off Stradlinge, tendes to | mutch to restiuenes for seldum shall you see a |
Horse displeased att a Stopp, butt hee will stradle | the onlye means Hee
knowes to opose your will to | putt hiñ vppon the Hantches, thus mutch
for | Forwardes. |

[f.10^r] Vppon His Turnes |

Wee muste nott Alter frome oure firste grounde | & principle, since you will
finde the Truth off Itt so | playnlye.— I saye theñ watt Actioñ soeuer |
the Horse doth, wether forwardes, backwardes | side-wayes, Turninge, the
hinder Leggs, muste still | bee withiñ the Lines off his fore Leggs. I meane
| the Lines Parelels For terra terra, Coruetts, & | All other Ayr, the fore-
Leggs, beinge pulde so | close & rounde, to His Bellye theye are mutch |
withiñ the Lines off His Hinder Leggs, butt yett | his hinder leggs mutch
within the Lines Parelels | Iff Hee stode still vppon the Grounde — or
Else | Hee woulde neuer Bee vppon the Hantches. | watt Action soeuer
hee makes Exsept his heade | to the Piller, muste haue his fore Leggs withiñ

| the lines Parels, Ande this Action will neuer | Fayle you so you fayle nott
 Itt. Butt produce | Admirable Effects, Iff you Aplie the remedie | For this
 Is the Grounde off All., Ande the | resoñ Is because Itt putts hiñ vppoñ
 the | Hantches, & so Easelye, Ande añ other Is | because his foreparts goes
 Alwayes before his | Hinder partes. Which Is resonable because | Naturall.—
 This I vnderstande when | Hee Goes vppoñ a Circle Itt Is \wedge ^{nott} after the
 | olde opinioñ thatt the Horses hinder partes | Is the Center, & His fore
 partes the Circumfer~~a~~nce, & so Contrarye His Heade to the Piller |
 For a Horse Is nott Like a Payre off Compases | Hee hath towe Leggs more
 So hauinge | 4: the Center Is neuer Iñ Hiñ, butt Iñ the | Piller. or añ
 Imaginarye one, which you | muste Alwayes remember, | Iff you Goe | off
 the |

[f.10^v] Right Hande, to haue the Center off the | Same hande, & towards the
 Croupe, & so | off the Lefte Hande the Piller or Center | off the Lefte Hande
 off you Alwayes | Shuñinge the Center Iñ this mañer, | For otherwise His
 Croupe woulde goe | before His Heade. which Is dangerous | & Vñnaturall,
 & so false. ——— |

Heer you shall see the Postures off the | Arteftiall Ayres off Manege. Both
 | theyr Bodies & Leggs. |

Nowe you muste vnderstande to your Imaginarye | Center, or Piller, your
 Horse makes 4: seuerall | Circles, with his 4: Leggs aboute Itt. Iñ terra,
 terra, | Thatt Is the Narr for Legg withiñ the Turne | makes the Greateste
 Circle, the farr fore Legg | the Seconde, The Narr Hinder Legg within the |
 Turne the thirde, & the farr hinder Legg withoute | the Turne the Leaste. —
 Nowe you muste note thatt | terra terra releue which Is the moste Coñoñ
 Ayre | Horses Goes Iñ, for determine selduñ. I meane which | For the
 Posture off a Horses Leggs, are as Iff Hee | Galoped, butt this difference,
 though the Hinder Legg | withiñ the Turne semes to followe the fore Legg,
 | for the Posture butt Itt alters Iñ this, thatt his | forleggs are both vpp
 att a time.— Ande so Imetates | a Corvett Iñ thatt, beinge once, though
 a very shorte | & quick all frome the Grounde att one time Like | other
 Ayres, & Therefore Terra, Terra maye bee | verye well Calde Añ Ayre, &

very Properlye | you muste Euer haue a relation to a *Circle* | Center.—
Ande \wedge ^{why} his fore Leggs shoulde make those | seuerall Circles In terra
terra | Is Thus. |

[f.11^r] A Horse Leggs beinge all Equall, when hee | bendes his Bodye to the
Forme off a Circle, as hee | muste alwayes doe, beinge parte off thatt Circle
to bende | Like a Hoope the same waye.— I saye then the outwa== | rde
forlegg, tendinge to Coume ouer the Inmoste forlegg | both Goinge on waye,
the outwarde muste needs | bee Shorter, & so makes the Less Circle, Ande
the | same In the Hinder Leggs.— Iff his Leggs weare | nott thus theye
muste eyther nott bee Euen besides | hee Coule nott bende His bodye
butt false. |

To Shew whatt makes him Goe | Easier or Harder vppon | His Turnes, |

Ther Is no diferance for the difficultie off a Horses | Goinge vppon his Voltes,
butt to opene the Angle | or to flye the Center more or Less, with his Croupe
| or Bodye. For Iff he Goes In a Less Circle | with his Croupe thatt Is neer
the Center. The Bente, | Flexure, or Hoope off his Bodye, Is mutch more |
So *Itt Is* mutch Harder. Ande Grante the | same Potition neer the Piller &
as neer the Line | frome the Center, you will finde Itt farr Easier | Vppon
the Larger Circumferance because the Plie | off his Bodie, or flexure, Is nott
Halfe so Greate, Ande | will Goe as mutch Grounde as Iff Itt weare strayght.
| In Comparison off the Less Circle The Grounde | Is mutch more which
makes Itt the Easier | This I saye Is In Case the Horse beinge In the | same
Potition to the Center, narowe as Lardge. | Butt Iff I opene the Angle, with
His Croupe | & flye the Center as mutch as maye bee I meane | alwayes his
Hinder Leggs withiñ the Line parelels | thatt Is withiñ His forleggs, then I
saye lett | the Circle bee neuer so narowe, yett shall hee | Goe mutch Easier,
then when the Angle Is Closed | though In a Larger Circle, So the Ease you
| See, Is In fienge the Center, as well as | In the Largenes off the | Circle. |

[f.11^v] The trewe Potition off a Horses Bodye | Vppon a Circle eyther off one
Piste, which Indeed | Is 4: Circles as I haue formerly shewde, or Else |
Terra, terra, which Is 4 Circles aboute the Center | as I haue mentionde
hertofore.— Iff hee bee off the | Hantches, which hee oughte to bee In

Euerye Actiōn | off the Manege. thatt Is his hinder Leggs withiñ x the lines
parelels or His forleggs, Theñ heer you muste Consider whatt | Circle soeuer
hee goes Iñ, he Is parte off Itt, & frome | his forleggs to his Hinder, Is the
Juste measure | for his bente or flexure, as so mutch off thatt Circle | &
alwayes bende Iñwarde, Ackordinge to thatt Circle | wether right Hande
or lefte hande, butt Coñonlye | the Circles are made by the Horse, & iff
the Horse | to the circles, Theñ Itt Is nott Enough for a Horse | to turne
Iñ His Nose Into the Turne or Looke | with one Eye Iñ.— Butt to Bende
Iñ his Shoulders | vppoñ the voltes, & as mutch as posibly maye bee | so
the hinder leggs bee withiñ the lines Parelele | for Else hee Is false & nott
off the Hantches, — Ande | this vppoñ a shorte trot \wedge or walke, butt theñ
Itt muste | bee the Actiōn off a trott Alwayes flye the Center | sumthinge,
Iff nott vppoñ the Actiōn off a trot | hee will bee off off the hantches.—
Ande Iñ | this Actiōn because His Leggs are moued | Cross,— Itt putt him
better vppoñ the hantches | beinge a more moderate pace Adds to Itt. |
Ande Iñ this Actiōn Itt Is cleer Contrary to | all others, for heer hee lapps
one Legg ouer | añ other, & the tow for leggs makes butt | one Circle. Ande
the Hinder Leggs añ | other. \wedge/x as this figure Contrary both to Galopinge &
terra, terra. Ande ther Is no sutch Actiōn as | this to Lerne horses off, or
to preserue them | when they are dresde.— Butt I muste | still putt you Iñ
minde thatt his Hinder | Leggs bee withiñ the Lines | Parelels perpetually |

[f.12^r] Iñ whatt soeuer hee doth or Else you will neuer haue | Him on the
Hantches. Besides vppoñ voltes, Iff his | outwarde Hinder Legg be withoute
the Line Parelel | to His outwarde forlegg, His Croupe Is oute, which Is |
false, Ande Iff his Inwarde hinder Legg, to the volte | bee withoute the Line
Parelel to his forlegg off the | Same side, theñ his hantch, or that parte off
his | Hantch, Is before his Shoulders, which Is horrible | False.— For Nature
Intendes the fore parte alwa== | yes to Goe firste, So haue I seene Ignorante
| People. So Spurr a Horse to keepe his Buttock Iñ | withoute Sustayninge
the other Hantch, & they | by nature beinge Parelels, & nott straytned
| because hee wroughhte butt off one Side so thatt | vppon nesetye the
more hee putt thatt hantch | Iñ, the more Hee made the other hantch to
| mutch Iñ, Ande so Goe before his fore parts | which besides the falsnes

make a Horse | Entier, & off off the Hantches, because his | Leggs are nott
 thruste vnder his Belly, butt | stradles because Hee works all off one side
 | one thinge I muste referr to the fowre Circles | aboute the Piller, thatt
 those Leggs thatt are | still nexte the Center muste make the leaste | Circles
 Ande so those thatt are further off | the Greater, & lardger, for Iff a horse
 Croupe | bee Iñ, his hinder Leggs the Leaste Circles, I | Saye still thatt
 which Is nexte the Center or | Piller, butt you will finde thatt Legg *thatt*
 | which Is nexte the Center, when hee standes | still, Is nott so when Hee
 Galopes, or goes terra | terra, butt the outwarde for Else hee Cañ | neyther
 Galope trewe to stande or Giue the | righte Flexure off his Bodye. Iñ terra,
 terra, | Butt vppoñ the Trott Itt Is Contrary, as I noted before because Iñ
 thatt Action his Leggs are | Cross & Iñ the Galope Itt muste followe, I saye
 | still worke the Shoulders what you Cañ For the | Croupe Is Easier made
 Sensible. |

[f.12^v] For the workinge off | His Croupe. |

You muste putt his heade to the Piller | butt nott after the same mañer
 as you did | His Croupe, for Iff you worke His *Heade* ^{Croope} off | the Lefte
 Hande, you muste haue the Piller | off the right Hande, or Else you will
 soone finde | thatt you will bee robde off your Intention so | Soone as
 Insteade off workinge His Croupe oute | Hee will haue His Croupe Iñ, Iff
 you worke | His Croupe off the Lefte hande Ande the Piller | off the Lefte
 Hande, therfor the Piller muste | bee Contrary still to whatt you worke the
 | Croupe, as Itt muste bee Alwayes off the same | Side when you worke the
 Croupe Iñ. | Heer Iñ this Action off workinge the | Croupe his Heade .^{to} the
 Piller, you will | finde his hinder Leggs makes the Greate Circle | & his for
 Leggs the Less Circle, beinge remoued | the further frome the Center, this
 action beinge | neuer faster then a Trott, or vppoñ thatt | motion.— For
 the Puttinge Iñ off the | outwarde Hantch, & the sustayninge off | Inwarde
 hantch, which makes his hinder | Leggs, make añ Angle to the Parels This
 | Is the Greate misterye off this worke, since | Itt doth all thatt Cañ bee
 duñ to make a | Perfecte trewe, & redye Horse; Butt for | this I will Shewe
 you the waye, when I sett | you a Horse-Back, & nott before, Exsepte | a
 Litle att the double Pillers, with the | Horses Naked. |

[f.13^r] The seuerall motions thatt Horses Goe Iñ | by Arte, which Is Iñ the
Perfecteste | Manege. |

Theñ firste for terra terra | the motions are these. |

The Legg withiñ the turne Leades & the | Hinder Legg Followes as Iñ a
Gallope, butt the | time off Terra, Terra, releue, Is Juste like a | Coruett,
butt Coñonlye a Litle faster, for all his | feete are frome the Grounde att
one time, & goes | pa ta pa ta pa ta The mañer Vppoñ the voltes I haue |
Exprssed [*sic.*] Hertofore. |

Terra, terra, determines |

Is Juste as a Horse ruñs Iñ a Carere, withoute | time, onlye vppoñ the voltes,
the Legg withiñ | the Turne alwayes Leades & the Hinder legg | off the same
Side followes Like a Galope, Ande | because hee Goes oñ the Hantches, Itt
Is 4: | Circles Lee Croupe de dans, otherwise the hinder | Leggs Nott withiñ
the Lines Parelels, theye | muste bee Parelels, & theñ theye are butt | tow
Circles. ——— |

A Coruett demie Ayre | Gropadowe Capriole. |

Ande All other Ayrs are Absolutly once | all the feete frome the Grounde
though | the Lower, the Less time, & the Hier | The Longer, For thatt Horse
thatt Goes | The Longeste time, goes the hieste | Iñ Capriole & ther Is |
Greate resoñ |

[f.13^v] For Itt, Iñ all these Ayrs, Pullinge his | Leggs close vpp to his Belly, makes
theñ | mutch closer theñ His Hinder Leggs | yett his Hinder Leggs muste
bee withiñ | the lines Parelels, or Else hee Is nott vppoñ | the Hantches,—
Ther Is no sutch Grace | Iñ these Ayrs, as to Pull His Leggs close | vpp to
His Bellye, Ande Hange Iñ the | Ayre, & when Hee faules to the Grounde
| quick vpp a Gayne like a Tennis Bale to | the time off pa. ta. pa. ta. pa.
ta. Butt | Euery Horse muste keepe his owne time | & nott bee Hastned
oute off Itt. A | Pase & a Lepp, or tow, or thre Pases, are butt | so manye
Coruetts betwene the Leape, & | these make Hiñ Goe Hier, because tis |
Like a ruñinge Leape, Hee hath more | force theñ when Hee Leape Euery

time | the paces differ so much from a Coruett, | as they muste bee as
Lowe as Cañ bee | for so Hee hath the more Force.— These | ayrs are proper
& fitteste for weake | Horses, & thatt are Lighte off the Hande | for as the
Pase makes Him Goe Hier, | so Itt putts Him vpon a apewie. |

The Posture a Horse shoulde | Goe In, when Hee Goes | In any Ayre, |

[f.14^r] Those Leggs thatt are neerer the Center makes | the Less Circle, & those
which are further off | The Greater, wether his for parts bee nexte the
| Center, or His Croupe, Ande absolutly His fore leggs | make Butt one
Circle, & his Hinder Leggs the | other, Iff Hee bee vpon the Actioñ off a
trott | Lapinge one Legg, ouer the other, — which I woulde | worke him
moste off, because thatt actioñ putts | Him so well vpon the Hantches.
Ande iff his | Croupe bee nexte the Center, you muste shun | Itt a litle &
haue Itt off the same side the Horse | Goes, butt iff his heade bee to the
Piller, Itt | muste bee still Contrary as I sayde before. | Iff you shun nott
the Center when his Croupe Is | In, his Croupe Goes before his Heade,
Ande | Iff you shun Itt nott & on the Contrary side | when his Croupe Is
oute then his Heade | woulde Goe before his Croupe which Itt | Shoulde
nott doe. For thatt weare false | Doctriñ In Horse-mañ shipp. | Ande note
Also vpon His walke In thatt | Posture, which Is Helped by the Ignorante
| by Pullinge the Contrarye rayne off the | Cauetzane oute off the turne,
makes him | Goe añ Angle, which Is hereseye In Horse== | manship iff nott
Blasphemie, because his | Croupe Is before His Heade. Ande the | whole
posture off his Bodye false, which | Is a moste Abominable thinge to See.
| I abhor añ Amble because Itt putts *him* | all false, yett I know I haue
both seene & | dresde Horses In All Ayrs thatt Ambled | Butt with Greate
Dificultie. |

[f.14^v] The Posture off a Horse vpon a | Strayghte Line In a walke, amble or
| trot, or anye other motioñ or | Ayre. |

Vpon a walke towe leggs off a Side vpon | añ Amble the like vpon a
Trott Crose | & Parels to the Same side, butt Iff hee | Bee putt vpon the
Hantches off any off | these, or anye thinge they are nott towe | Lines, butt

4: because his hinder leggs are | withiñ his forleggs, & nott theñ Parelels, |
though stayghte [*sic.*] forwardes. ——— |

The Posture vppoñ | His Turnes Thus. |

Iff hee Galope off one Piste Iñ a Circle lett | the Hoope off his Bodye bee
neuer so mutch | Grantinge His hinder Leggs to bee withiñ | His foreleggs,
which muste bee or Else hee | will neuer bee vppoñ the Hantches, & thus |
Itt Is 4: Circles vppoñ anye Action the | Horse Cañ make, Exsepte a trot,
vppoñ | voltes Lee Croupe dedans & thats butt | tow Circles.— The Posture
off a Horses bodye | Is Vppoñ His Turnes, to Bowe his Body | ackordinge to
the Circle Like a Hoope | to Bountch outwarde, & Hollowe withiñ | As Thus
to Bo^untch oute his Bodye, frome | the Turne, his outwarde Shoulder to |
Coume Iñ as mutch as Cañ bee, & his | Inwarde shoulder kepte Back his |
outwarde Hantch to | Coume Iñ |

[f.15^r] As mutch as Cañ bee, & his Inwarde hinder | Legg, kepte back, his
Buttock to Bountch a litle | Like his Bodye, His neck & Heade to Looke |
Into the Turne, & to turne so mutch as to | Looke *Into the turne* with both
Eyes. Iñ | Flienge the Center as Litle, with his hinder | Leggs withiñ the
lines Parelels thruste | vnder His Bellye, you will finde This the | quintesence
off makinge off Horses to keepe | Him oute, Forpartes, or Hinder parts
ackord== | inge to ocatioñ, I will Shewe you hear after | moste Easelye.
——— |

Betwene the Pillers a | Horse Naked to bee | wroughte my newe | methode.
| is Thus |

Heer you muste vnderstande thatt my | methode off workinge Horses
betwene | the Pillers Is with thatt Hudge Aduantage | as I worke them
betwene the Pillers for | the voltes, Eyther off the right Hande | or the
Lefte, Eyther for the Shoulders | or the Croupe, Ande Itt Is duñ by this |
methode, Firste I take the Longe rope | or Cauetzane rayne, Ande for which
| Hande I woulde worke Him, For the | Shoulders., As for Example, Iff I
woulde | worke His shoulders for the right Hande | Theñ I tye the righte
rayne verye Shorte & | The other Longe, yett nott so Longe as thatt | Hee

maye Goe thorowe, Theñ I rayse hiñ | before, & I haue one to stande by
off | the Contrarye Side |

[f.15^v] to the Shorte rayne, with mee, with a litle | Stick, with a prick Iñ Itt,
to putt his | Hantch Iñ, & one behinde Hiñ, with a Shamberiere to putt
hiñ forwardes, & Iff | Hee Stradles with eyther Legg, a mañ | with one off
those Litle Sticks, to putt thatt | Hantch Iñ, oñ the other Side, or off which
| Side Hee doth Square His Leggs, The | Bridle I meane the Bitt, beinge
Slack | & Loose, & so to worke Hiñ all vppoñ the | Cauetzañ, vppoñ His
nose preserues his | mouth wonderfully, putts hiñ vppoñ the | Hantches,
Incredibly giue hiñ the right | Plye, & Flexure off his Bodye, For the |
righte Hande both Shoulders & *Bodye* | Hantches.— Ande makes Hiñ nott
| onlye wonderfull Sensible, & Trewlye | wroughte to the Hande, butt Also
to | the Heele, vsinge those Litle Sticks | with Judgemente as theye aughte
| & still remember thatt the Hinder | Leggs bee withiñ the lines Parelels,
| as ordinarelye hee stands, nott when | his hinder leggs are stretchte farr
backw== | ardes, butt the truth Is His hinder | Leggs Cañ nott bee to Neer
together for | So theye Goe more vnder His Bellye | & so off nesesity more
off the Hantches | which with thatt Flexure. Nothinge | Cañ bee Easier
or righter to Hiñ. when | you rayse hiñ the Bitt slack, the Chambrieie |
behinde hiñ, thatt rayne tied so shorte | to Constrayne the Leggs withiñ
the | Flexure to Goe Back, & the litle sticks | to keepe the Hinder Leggs
within | the Lines Parelels | Howe

[f.16^r] Shoulde this Horse butt bee vppoñ the | Hantches, you muste take Heede
off prickinge | the Horse & mutch with those litle sticks | butt rather take
the Blunte Endes for feare | off Puttinge Hiñ Iñ to tow mutch furye, & |
Coller.— Ande thus when Hee will Goe | Easelye vppoñ His Ayre, as I haue
sett downe | Iñ this methode, Hee will nott onlye goe | forwardes with you
Perfectly, butt also | as well vppoñ his Turnes, As beinge wroughte | vppoñ
the righte Hande Hee Is putt vppoñ | the Hantches. His Leggs within the
| Lines Parelells His mouth preserued | the righte Flexure or Hoope off his
Bodye | for the volte off the righte Hande, Butt | also sensible both to the
Hande & the | Heele, Ande whatt cañ you doe more to | putt a Horse vppoñ

His Turnes, since | Itt Is de Ferme a Ferme to Frome whence | all Ayrs are
deriued Ande hath their | Juste Begininges.— The figurs Paynted |

To worke a Horse Croupe | as Hee standes tied alrebye | for the righte
Hande |

Vppoñ the voltes, you muste knowe | thatt then iff you worke his Croupe
Itt muste bee for the | Lefte hande, so you muste rayse hiñ, oñ which side
for you | to stande oñ that you thinke moste Conuenient, & lett | the other
mañ bee off the Side that the rayne Is shorte | & helpe hiñ eyther with
his litle stick, with the | Prick Iñ the Ende or with the Great Ende off his
rodd | backwardes, & his fore partes to Stande almoste Iñ a | place & theñ
you shall see the large rayne worke | his sholders as the short rayne did
before, & this | workes his Croupe as iff hee weare att the Single | Piller,
for the lefte hande & *better*, & so trewly as | nothinge Cañ bee better, iff
his Croupe | Goe to faste you muste | haue one to sustayne |

[f.16^v] Itt, off the other Side with the Great Ende off añ | other rodd, this
workes his Croupe as Trewly as the | prickinge off hiñ oñ the Contrary
Side doth the Sholders | for the more his Croupe Is putt the same waye the
shorte | rayne Is, the more Itt workes his sholders, off nesesity | Itt muste
bee so for Itt strayns the Corde more & so | on the Contrary Side Itt must
worke the Croupe | & the sholders for the Lefte hande, butt nott as | the
Circumferance off Greater Circles, butt off less | neer the Senter.— & still
Looke thatt his Hinder Leggs | bee narowe Enough & nott to Stradle that
Is as | narowe as you Cañ gett theñ, Ande Itt will bee | duñ best with towe
meñ with litle stickes on | both Sides, the horse Sides to putt hiñ Close
iff Itt woulde nott Gaule hiñ to mutch Pasternes for | his hinder Leggs
woulde doe Itt, Pastornes or his | fore Leggs doe horses mutch good, both
to make | theñ lifte their leggs Euen & hye & pull theñ | vpp rounde &
so putts theñ vppoñ the hantches | iff hee Goe to faste & will nott take
his time Easey | & Slower theñ putt oñ Spectacles & hee will mende | that
falte & bee more Vppoñ the hantches to : | Thus you see howe to worke his
Sholders & his | Hantches or Croupe, for thatt which workes the | Horse off
the Shoulders for the right Hande | workes his Croupe for the lefte hande

& | Contrary thatt for the Shoulders off the lefte | hande which Is the lefte
rayne Shorte workes | his Croupe off the right hande when̄ you please | to
alter your helps oñ the other Side So I need | nott repeate this ouer A
Geñ, since ther Is no | dificulty Iñ the vnderstandinge off Itt. |

Between the Pillers the | Rider Vppoñ Hiñ for the right | hande that Is the
right rayne tied shorte. |

The Rider to sitt Iñ his Juste posture & iff hee worke | his sholders the
Contrary legg to helpe him mutch | backwardes, & to turne his knee, for
offeringe butt | the Spurr, putts hiñ off off the hantches, & makes | hiñ a
litle towardes restiue, iff Itt bee | Continewed oute longe |

[f.17^r] & nott spurde, for hee Is afrayde off Itt all the while which | makes hiñ
nott free, butt the spurr giueñ quick, & to | holde hiñ oñ the hande as I
shall shewe you herafter | putts hiñ vppoñ the Hantches — his hande oñ
the | oute Side off the turne, & frome his neck, & slack | butt you maye
helpe hiñ a litle to sustayne hiñ hee | muste bee tide a litle Shorter theñ
ordinary | for feare off the riders legg agaynste the post | you muste oblige
hiñ, as mutch as you Cañ | vppoñ the hantches, with the Counter-poyse
off | your Bodye, & vse the Chambrier & the litle | sticks iff neede bee, as
well as iff ther weare no rider off hiñ, & when̄ you worke the Croupe helpe
| hiñ with the right Legg, & sustayne hiñ with | the Lefte, & helpe hiñ
with the hande still Contrary, | to the Legg & nott to Goe to Great steps,
for Iñ a | place de ferme a ferme Is the Grounde off all perfect | Ayrs, iff
a horse rise to hie & study vppoñ Itt you must | putt hiñ oute off Itt, for
that tendes towardes | restiuenes,. Itt muste bee duñ, with nott raysinge |
hiñ to hie thatt hee maye goe faster, & to giue the | time with your rodd
faster, & to shake Itt perpe== | tually withoute time, & so a Continuall
litle | beatinge vppoñ his Sholder with the rodd withoute | time to putt hiñ
oute off his Philosophy.— Iff hee | throwe oute his foreleggs, the Pastornes
oñ, & knock | hiñ with a Good Stick Euery time vppoñ his Legge or | tie
a smale lether rayne, to the midle off the Pasternes, | & lett Itt goe |

[End of PwV22]

